

**MR. RICE'S  
NOTEBOOK**



# **TABLE OF CONTENTS**

<b><u>INTRODUCTION</u></b> .....	5
<i>Chapter 1</i> THE BASIC DIFFERENCES BETWEEN MEN AND WOMEN .....	7
<i>Chapter 2</i> COMBATING THE PROBLEM OF LONELINESS .....	13
<i>Chapter 3</i> THE DO'S AND DON'TS OF DATING FOR GIRLS .....	17
<i>Chapter 4</i> THE DO'S AND DON'TS OF DATING FOR MEN .....	23
<i>Chapter 5</i> EMOTIONAL MATURITY .....	31
<i>Chapter 6</i> REAL CONVERSION .....	37
<i>Chapter 7</i> GENERAL GUIDELINES IN PREPARING FOR MARRIAGE .....	41
<i>Chapter 8</i> GOD'S APPROACH TO MAKING DECISIONS .....	45
<i>Chapter 9</i> GOD'S GREAT PURPOSE FOR THE WOMAN .....	51
<i>Chapter 10</i> THE HIDDEN CAUSES OF DISCOURAGEMENT .....	57
<i>Chapter 11</i> HOW CAN A MODERN DAY WOMAN SERVE IN GOD'S CHURCH? .....	63
<i>Chapter 12</i> HOW GOD ANSWERS PRAYER .....	67
<i>Chapter 13</i> HOW IMPORTANT IS YOUR SOCIAL LIFE TO GOD? .....	73
<i>Chapter 14</i> HOW TO DEVELOP YOUR FULL POTENTIAL .....	81
<i>Chapter 15</i> HOW TO HAVE AN ATTRACTIVE PERSONALITY .....	85
<i>Chapter 16</i> HOW TO INSPIRE A MAN .....	89
<i>Chapter 17</i> HOW TO KNOW THE TRUE FEELINGS OF SOMEONE YOU LIKE .....	91
<i>Chapter 18</i> HOW TO KNOW WHEN GOD'S SPIRIT IS LEADING YOU .....	93
<i>Chapter 19</i> HOW TO KNOW YOU'VE CHOSEN THE RIGHT MATE FOR MARRIAGE .....	99
<i>Chapter 20</i> HOW TO MAKE PEOPLE LIKE YOU INSTANTLY .....	109
<i>Chapter 21</i> COMMUNICATION BARRIERS BETWEEN THE SEXES: HOW TO SOLVE THEM .....	117
<i>Chapter 22</i> HOW TO BUILD TRUE SELF-ESTEEM .....	125
<i>Chapter 23</i> HOW TO GROW IN FAVOR WITH FELLOWMAN .....	133
<i>Chapter 24</i> HOW TO OVERCOME FEAR AND SELF-CONSCIOUSNESS .....	141
<i>Chapter 25</i> HOW TO TAKE THE CONFUSION AND FRUSTRATION OUT OF LIFE .....	143
<i>Chapter 26</i> HOW YOU CAN RECOGNIZE TRUE LOVE .....	151
<i>Chapter 27</i> "IF I WERE 21 AGAIN ..." .....	159
<i>Chapter 28</i> THE INNERMOST SECRETS THAT A.C. MEN AND WOMEN WISH EACH OTHER KNEW .....	163
<i>Chapter 29</i> IS THE BIBLE LIVING IN YOU? .....	171
<i>Chapter 30</i> JUST WHAT IS LIVING FAITH? .....	175
<i>Chapter 31</i> PERSONAL QUESTION AND ANSWER SESSION FOR GIRLS .....	179
<i>Chapter 32</i> THE POWER TO CHOOSE .....	183
<i>Chapter 33</i> PRACTICAL EVERYDAY WISDOM FOR GIRLS .....	187
<i>Chapter 34</i> THE PURPOSE OF DATING .....	191
<i>Chapter 35</i> SUCCEED IN LIFE WITH GOALS! .....	199
<i>Chapter 36</i> TWELVE PITFALLS IN MARRIAGE .....	201
<i>Chapter 37</i> "WHAT IS TRUE FEMININITY?" .....	207
<i>Chapter 38</i> "WHAT IS TRUE MASCULINITY?" .....	215
<i>Chapter 39</i> WHAT MADE CHRIST A GREAT TEACHER? .....	221
<i>Chapter 40</i> WHAT YOU SHOULD ACHIEVE AT AMBASSADOR COLLEGE .....	227

## **TABLE ON CONTENTS, continued**

<i>Chapter 41</i>	ARE YOU ABUSING YOUR FRIENDSHIPS? . . . . .	233
<i>Chapter 42</i>	ARE YOU HAVING A POSITIVE OR NEGATIVE INFLUENCE ON OTHERS? . . . . .	235
<i>Chapter 43</i>	CAN YOU BE TRUSTED WITH A CONFIDENCE? . . . . .	241
<i>Chapter 44</i>	DATING — A VITAL DIMENSION IN YOUR AMBASSADOR EXPERIENCE . . . . .	245
<i>Chapter 45</i>	FEMININITY . . . . .	249
<i>Chapter 46</i>	GENUINE LOVE IS SPONTANEOUS . . . . .	253
<i>Chapter 47</i>	HOW TO BE A WISE WOMAN . . . . .	255
<i>Chapter 48</i>	HOW TO BUILD AND SUSTAIN TEAM MORALE . . . . .	261
<i>Chapter 49</i>	HOW TO CREATE THE DESIRE TO ACHIEVE . . . . .	265
<i>Chapter 50</i>	HOW TO KEEP EMPLOYEES MOTIVATED . . . . .	271
<i>Chapter 51</i>	MILLION-DOLLAR DAUGHTER . . . . .	279
<i>Chapter 52</i>	ON GIVING ADVICE — HOW TO HELP YOUR BOSS SUCCEED . . . . .	281
<i>Chapter 53</i>	PARENTS: SHOW YOUR TEENAGERS YOU CARE . . . . .	291
<i>Chapter 54</i>	PRINCIPLES OF GOAL-SETTING . . . . .	295
<i>Chapter 55</i>	PRINCIPLES OF LEADERSHIP . . . . .	299
<i>Chapter 56</i>	PUTTING MAGNETISM INTO YOUR PERSONALITY . . . . .	305
<i>Chapter 57</i>	QUALITIES OF A TRUE GENTLEMAN AND LADY . . . . .	307
<i>Chapter 58</i>	THE SIMPLE SECRET OF TRUE CHRISTIAN LOVE . . . . .	317
<i>Chapter 59</i>	HOW CHRIST EDUCATED HIS DISCIPLES . . . . .	321
<i>Chapter 60</i>	ABUSING FRIENDSHIPS . . . . .	323

## **APPENDICES**

<i>Appendix 1</i>	FINANCES AND MARRIAGE PREPARATION ( <i>Dr. Hoeh, 23-Jul-1977</i> ) . . . . .	325
<i>Appendix 2</i>	HOW TO IMPROVE YOUR EDUCATION ( <i>Dr. Hoeh, 9-Jun-1979</i> ) . . . . .	337
<i>Appendix 3</i>	DATING ( <i>Dr. Hoeh, 4-Apr-1976</i> ) . . . . .	347
<i>Appendix 4</i>	PLANNING YOUR SOCIAL LIFE ( <i>Dr. Hoeh, 29-Oct-1977</i> ) . . . . .	363
<i>Appendix 5</i>	STUDY ON FINANCES ( <i>Dr. Hoeh, 16-Sep-1978</i> ) . . . . .	377
<i>Appendix 6</i>	THE NEED FOR GODLY FELLOWSHIP ( <i>Bob Fahey, 28-Apr-1979</i> ) . . . . .	391
<i>Appendix 7</i>	ETIQUETTE IN EVERY DAY LIFE ( <i>Bill Butler, 9-Feb-1980</i> ) . . . . .	401

### ***What is Mr. Rice's Notebook?***

***Richard Rice, former manager of the Mail Processing Center for the Worldwide Church of God in Pasadena, California, gave regular Bible Studies to the Ambassador College students. It is believed that all of these Bible Studies were given before 1986.***

***These Bible Studies covered a variety of topics, but most were related to dating, and developing Godly character.***

***Each Bible Study was summarized and placed in the Ambassador College Library in a spiral-bound notebook for later reference. They collectively became known as "Mr. Rice's Notebook".***

***If you had attended Ambassador College, you would have had the opportunity to hear these Bible Studies live. Now you are able to learn from these timeless messages.***



## **CHAPTER 1**

### ***THE BASIC DIFFERENCES BETWEEN MEN AND WOMEN***

I. Virtually all conflicts and misunderstandings between the sexes can be traced to one simple problem:

*"A failure to understand the basic God-created differences between men and women."*

- A. This not only applies to problems in marriage.
- B. But also to conflicts and frustrations in dating as well.

II. Probably, each one of you has some difficulty understanding the attitude and behavior of the opposite sex.

A. No doubt you as a man have been troubled and perplexed about the following questions:

- Why can't women make up their minds?
- What does it take to please her?
- Why does it take a girl so long to forget a misunderstanding?
- How can a girl be so happy and chirpy one day, only to find a day later that she's cold, distant and difficult to talk to?
- Why are little things and insignificant details so important to women?
- Why are they so temperamental, changeable and unpredictable in their day-to-day disposition?
- Why are women generally late with no reasonable explanation?
- Why don't girls show more excitement and enthusiasm when asked for a date?
- Why does a girl flirt with a guy, then turn down a date when he asks her?
- Why is it so difficult to choose topics of conversation that both fellows and girls can relate to?

B. Probably you as women have been equally distressed and frustrated with such questions as:

- Why aren't men more sensitive to women and their feelings?
- Why do men feel like they have to prove their masculinity instead of just being themselves?
- Why do they brag on themselves and put others down?
- Why do they sometimes act tough and macho?
- Why do they tend to be curt, blunt and use rough language?
- Why don't men place the same importance on special occasions like a dance or a dinner as women do?
- Why can't men realize that it isn't necessary to spend a lot of money to make a date successful?
- Why do men bottle up their emotions?
- Why are men so interested in external, physical things?
- Why are some men inconsiderate and thoughtless in waiting till the last minute to ask for a date?
- Why are some men more interested in dating the popular and attractive girls than they are in being a friend to all?
- Why are men so reluctant to express their feelings to let you know they really care?
- Why are men in general more wrapped up in outside activities — such as their jobs, plans, personal ambitions — than in their home and family?
- Why can't men perceive or understand what women need most — appreciation, gentleness and a caring attitude?

III. Today, we are going to answer these questions and explore the male and female differences.

- A. To do this in depth would require a full-year, three-unit course in college.
- B. For our purpose today, however, we'll cover the most important highlights.

IV. Let's begin with a number of general differences.

A. Seven major points:

1. Our physical anatomy should give us a clue that men and women were designed for two entirely different roles
  - a. The man has a larger frame, stronger muscles and a rugged appearance.
    - 1) He was designed to be the aggressor, protector and provider.
    - 2) He has 50 percent more brute strength and larger lung capacity than the woman.
    - 3) These characteristics give him dominance and make him the natural leader.
  - b. The woman has a smaller frame, delicate features and less strength and stamina.
    - 1) In 1 Peter 3:7 she is described as a weaker vessel. (Greek word for "weaker" means "more sensitive" or "fragile.")
    - 2) She was designed to be a helpmate, companion and mother.
    - 3) These characteristics point out her dependence on the man and make her the natural follower.
2. God equipped each sex with a different kind of brain to function according to his or her physical structure.
  - a. Each one thinks and acts differently to life's situations according to natural built-in laws.
  - b. Consider how unwieldy, unnatural and confusing life would be if their brains and bodies were cross-switched.
3. God created men and women with different qualities and complete each other.
  - a. This was made clear when God fashioned them.
  - b. Gen. 2:20-24 — *"And Adam gave names to all cattle, and to the fowl of the air, and to every beast of the field; but for Adam there was not found an help meet for him. (21) And the Lord God caused a deep sleep to fall upon Adam, and he slept: and he took one of his ribs, and closed up the flesh instead thereof; (22) And the rib, which the Lord God had taken from man, made he a woman, and brought her unto the man. (23) And Adam said, This is now bone of my bones, and flesh of my flesh: she shall be called Woman, because she was taken out of Man. (24) Therefore shall a man leave his father and his mother, and shall cleave unto his wife: and they shall be one flesh."*
  - c. These verses should teach us that neither sex is complete without the other.
  - d. It takes two halves to make a whole — it takes male and female to become one flesh.
  - e. Hence, it behooves us to learn and understand how vitally important these differences are in order to become a whole and balanced person.

(Items #4 and #5 were adapted from "*If Only He Knew*" by Gary Smalley, p. 17)

4. Virtually every cell in a man's body has a different chromosome and genetic makeup than that of a woman.
  - a. This startling fact reinforces how totally different we are.
  - b. We were designed to fulfill what makes us distinctly male and female.
5. Experts tell us that the seat of emotions in a man's brain is wired differently than a woman's.
  - a. He has strong drives and motivations that make him an adventurer and conqueror.
  - b. She has sensitive feelings and tender needs that equip her to be a companion, loving wife and mother.
6. According to a recent *Reader's Digest* article (Nov. 1982), men predominantly use the right hemisphere of their brain in certain phases of thinking while women use the left hemisphere.
  - a. This unique arrangement causes each to react differently under stress and pressure.
  - b. The article goes on to explain why men, when under duress, may explode with anger or violence while women tend to become depressed and fall apart.



7. To briefly summarize, we as men and women should deeply appreciate our God-ordained differences and strive to understand their true significance in God's great plan.
  - a. This will require thought, effort and consideration for the needs and feelings of each other.
  - b. It will bring new meaning to the golden rule in all our daily encounters and relationships.

*{There is some evidence that hormonal changes can be more readily excited or triggered in a woman than a man — thus causing fluctuations in her daily moods, attitude and temperament.}*

- V. To illustrate more pointedly these overall differences, let's notice a graphic quotation from the book, "For Better or For Best" by Gary Smalley, pg. 29.

A. Quote the following:

1. *"The best example...to illustrate these differences is to compare the butterfly with the buffalo. The butterfly has a keen sensitivity. It is sensitive even to the slightest breeze. It flutters above the ground where it can get a panoramic awareness of its surroundings. It notices the beauty of even the tiniest of flowers. Because of its sensitivity, it is constantly aware of all of the changes going on around it and is able to react to the slightest variation in its environment. Thus, the butterfly reacts with swiftness toward anything that might hurt it. (Try to catch one without a net sometime.) If a tiny pebble were taped to its wing, the butterfly would be severely injured and eventually die.*

*"The buffalo is another story. It is rough and calloused. It doesn't react to a breeze. It's not even affected by a thirty-mile-an-hour wind. It just goes right on doing whatever it was doing. It's not aware of the smallest of flowers, nor does it appear to be sensitive to slight changes in its environment. Tape a pebble to the buffalo's back and he probably won't even feel it.*

*"The buffalo isn't 'rotten to the core' just because he goes around stepping on pretty flowers. In fact, the buffalo's toughness is a tremendous asset. His strength, when harnessed, can pull a plow that four grown men can't pull."*

2. The analogy, of course, is obvious. The man is the "buffalo" and the woman is the "butterfly." Many times a man may "plow" through life's situations while a more sensitive woman will "feel" life and her environment. The "pebble on the butterfly's wing," the author suggests, "may take the form of a sarcastic remark, a sharp criticism, or even an indifferent attitude. Whatever it is, it can hurt and even crush" her and yet he may not even know what he's done.

3. Clearly, men and women were fashioned for two distinct roles in God's great plan.

- B. Failure to understand these differences results in much anxiety, tension and distress in social relationships with each other.

- VI. Listed below are specific differences between men and women.

- A. Please note that these traits are the norm — the natural bent — that each has toward life.
- B. These are by no means complete, and there will always be exceptions.

## **24 SPECIFIC DIFFERENCES**

### **MAN**

1. He is interested in ideas and things.
2. He is interested in status, career and personal ambitions.
3. He feels a strong need to provide and be the leader.
4. He is more aggressive, daring and adventurous — ready to step into the unknown and try new things.
5. He thinks with hard, cold facts — is more logical, analytical and deliberate in making decisions.
6. Once a decision is made, he is ready to step out and act.
7. He is oftentimes a slower thinker. He wants to be certain he has all the facts.
8. He has a broader perspective — sees the big picture.
9. He tends to suppress his feelings, but then blows up to get things off his chest.

10. He is more cautious in communicating his thoughts for fear of exposing his weaknesses.
11. When he feels insecure around women, he tries to impress them by boasting about his achievements or projecting a macho image.
12. He tends to have more intellectual vanity and expresses it by engaging in deep theories, concepts and philosophies.
13. He thinks long-range — maps out his life and drives himself to achieve his goals. He resents distractions or interruptions that impede his progress.
14. He is more outwardly bold and courageous — will confront danger head-on and take charge in emergency situations.
15. Security to a man is having a good job and money in the bank.
16. A man thinks money is to be saved.
17. He likes sameness and stability.
18. He is tough-skinned and can bounce back when criticized, corrected or defeated.
19. For all intents and purposes, he's the head of the human partnership.
20. Because of his personal pursuits and preoccupations, he's often cold, uncaring and insensitive to her feelings.
21. He has foresight.
22. He is the mainspring.
23. A man was made to love.
24. He needs a woman to love.

## WOMAN

1. She is interested in people and building relationships.
2. She is interested in marriage, establishing a home and starting a family.
3. She wants security, protection and the assurance that he cares.
4. She is fearful of the unknown and feels unsure of taking chances.
5. She is more impulsive — and when under pressure usually makes snap, emotional judgments.
6. She shies away from major decisions — would rather that he assume responsibility.
7. She's intuitive and perceptive — can usually get to the heart of a matter quickly and accurately.
8. She is more concerned about details and the finer points.
9. She expresses her emotions more freely — cries easily to release her frustrations. Tends to be moody.
10. She's more candid, honest and forthright and openly bares her feelings.
11. When she feels insecure and rejected, she withdraws, becomes self-conscious and depressed.
12. She is more interested in talking about practical everyday concerns and human-related topics.
13. She tends to think short range — can quickly adapt to new situations and take frustrations in stride. She is not as easily bent out of shape or upset over interruptions.
14. She is prone to be easily frightened, or may become hysterical and fall apart in a crisis.
15. Security to a woman is having a man to look after her needs.
16. A woman thinks money is to be spent.
17. She likes change and variety.
18. She is very sensitive to correction and is easily bruised by negative comments or cutting remarks.
19. She's the heart and nerve center.
20. Because she needs approval and acceptance, she is often crushed and mortally wounded by his calloused and indifferent attitude.
21. She has insight.
22. She is the balance spring.
23. A woman wants to be loved.
24. She needs a man to love her.

VII. The subject of male and female differences would not be complete without mentioning some of the essential needs of each sex.

A. **THE BASIC NEEDS OF A MAN.**

1. He needs to be admired.
2. He needs honest feedback.
3. He needs to be respected for his role as the leader.
4. He needs to be bolstered and encouraged.
5. He needs recognition for his achievements and success.
6. He needs the loyalty and support of the opposite sex.
7. He needs a challenge and to be understood for his masculine interests, drives and ambitions.
8. He needs a woman to be enthusiastic and responsive to his ideas, suggestions and requests.
9. He needs appreciation for the special things he does.
10. He needs a sense of self-worth.

B. **THE BASIC NEEDS OF A WOMAN.**

1. She needs attention.
2. She needs appreciation, approval and sincere compliments.
3. She needs people and personal relationships.
4. She needs to be loved, respected and treated with tenderness.
5. She needs a shoulder to cry on without fear of rejection.
6. She needs to know that her opinions count.
7. She needs to know that a man appreciates her differences and tries to understand her emotional makeup.
8. She needs a man to tell her of his plans so she'll know how to properly prepare for them.
9. She needs to be assured that he is mindful of her physical limitations.
10. She needs for a man to be sensitive, protective and caring of her total welfare.

VIII. In concluding this lecture, it would be helpful to realize that the needs and differences between the sexes can be summed up in two broad principles.

A. These two principles can best be remembered as two grand mottos.

B. Try to picture them as stamped on the forehead of each other or as a sign hung around the neck.

C. They are worded as follows:

- For the man — ***NEEDS A SENSE OF SELF-WORTH — TREAT WITH RESPECT.***
- For the woman — ***FRAGILE — HANDLE WITH CARE.***

IX. Drill these two mottos into your mind and you'll begin to build successful and harmonious relationships into your life.

-END-



## CHAPTER 2

# **COMBATING THE PROBLEM OF LONELINESS**

Loneliness is a self-centered, self-focused emotion. It comes from an over-concern about oneself. It is the inability to communicate — a feeling of being isolated. People have a lot they'd like to say or express, but they don't know how or else they are afraid to express it. Sometimes you can find the loneliest person in a whole room full of people.

All of us from time to time will suffer from the feeling of loneliness to one degree or another. For this reason we must all understand what causes people to feel lonely and also how to recognize a person who is suffering from this trauma. There are ways to overcome this feeling and methods to help others conquer it.

### I. CAUSES AND CONTRIBUTING FACTORS FOR LONELINESS

#### 1. The Cold and Stifling Influence of Society

Society today is becoming more and more depersonalized. Ours is the age of the computer and the impersonal assembly line approach. Mankind is becoming more preoccupied with his problems and survival than he is with anything else.

#### 2. Being Programed for Loneliness from Childhood

People can program themselves for loneliness from childhood by not constantly widening their circle of friends. Sticking with the same people all the time and never adding new names to one's list of friendships prevents a person from developing the art of acquiring friends. When circumstances separate them from their familiar circle, they find themselves lonely and afraid to reach out to others.

#### 3. Preoccupation With Self

Concentrating too much on self and one's own moods, condition and feelings causes one to be even more lonely.

#### 4. Change of Environment

Stepping into a new environment where people and circumstances are different from the old familiar faces and routines can cause loneliness. Changing one's environment can be compared to a baby bird that is used to its nest where it's warm and secure. In order for it to become strong, mature and healthy, it must grow to look out to the world around it. When it is forced to leave the security of the nest, it will be frightened by its new experiences and won't feel comfortable with the rush of cool air under its wings where it was always warm. Until it accepts this change in life, the bird will never really experience the thrill of flying.

If you are to mature and grow into a well-balanced personality you must also take a few daring steps and experience new challenges life has to offer

#### 5. Looking within to Past Memories

Dwelling on the pleasant memories of a comfortable past — friends, family and social life — can cause loneliness. Thinking about home and old friends is not bad in itself. But these thoughts should not consume so much of your time that you are neglecting the opportunity to make new friends, or neglecting to take full advantage of all that Ambassador College has to offer.

### 6. Homesickness

For many, this may be the first time away from home. A feeling of loneliness or homesickness may be only natural — but does not have to be long lasting.

### 7. New Pressures & Challenges

A new way of life with added pressures and demands such as term papers, tests, homework, club meetings, etc., may contribute to your feeling of loneliness.

### 8. A Fear of Self-disclosure — or a Lack of Self-confidence

As a stranger, you may feel uncomfortable and uneasy about meeting new people. This is generally because you fear others will discover your inadequacies, will not like you or accept you for what you are. The tendency is to withdraw and enjoy privacy within yourself.

### 9. Growing Pains

A new level of maturity must be faced, now that you are in college, and it may prove more difficult without the familiar crutches of family and close friends to help you make the adjustment.

### 10. Failure to Walk With God

The loneliest feeling you can experience is when you are cut off from God in this evil and darkened world. Get in contact with God and your symptoms of loneliness will start to disappear.

## II. STEPS YOU CAN TAKE TO CONQUER LONELINESS

1. Whole-hearted participation in classes, work and college activities
2. Don't hibernate in the dorm feeling sorry for yourself and expect the feeling of loneliness to go away.
3. Begin at once to make new friends.
4. Consider the fact that there are many others in the same situation as you and that you can be a big help to them by being friendly and giving encouragement.
5. Think of others first. Gear your mind to this end and discipline yourself in giving your time and service to others.
6. When you feel especially lonely, strike up a conversation with someone as soon as possible. Ask questions and be interested in finding out about his life. Soon you will find that you feel a lot better.
7. Smile! Don't just smile with your lips — smile from deep down inside. Show yourself friendly and you will begin to develop new friendships. (Proverbs 18:24.)
8. Assume people will like you and you'll discover they will.
9. Be approachable — make it easy for people to talk to you by showing them attention and being responsive.
10. Get others talking about subjects they're familiar with or are interested in. You can help others while you are helping yourself get over feeling lonely.
11. Sincerely compliment people by noting their accomplishments and successes. Notice little things such as a nice hair do, new dress, their inspiring examples. Be genuine — don't flatter.
12. Be a good listener. Listen with attention, interest and respect. Don't change the conversation to yourself — get them talking about themselves.
13. Eat with others and take time to talk — aim to learn as much as you can about others.
14. Do something for someone else — look for ways to help other people. Do something/anything for others. If you're good at writing prose or poetry, write something to him about himself. If you're good at handicrafts, make a gift. If you use your talents to do something for someone else you will both enjoy it much more. You will be learning to love.
15. Remember that part of your education at Ambassador College is personality development and building the qualities of leadership. A real leader doesn't have time to be lonely, because he is so involved and interested in others, that he doesn't have time to think about himself overmuch.
16. Don't make the mistake of making a few friends and then ceasing to widen your circle. Continue to make new friends regularly. This doesn't mean to forsake old friends but learn to include new people.

17. Beware of the pitfall of getting "involved" seriously with someone early in your college career. When you are feeling lonely, it is easy to attach yourself to the first friendly person who shows an interest in you. Dating widely throughout your college years provides an important outlet for personality development. Don't hinder yourself by getting serious too soon.
18. Don't forget God or your primary reason for coming to Ambassador College. Never allow physical interests to crowd out the spiritual values.

### III. HOW TO RECOGNIZE A LONELY PERSON

1. One who is shy and retiring and stays to himself/herself.
2. One who is unhappy and rejected.
3. Some may take the opposite appearance and be loud — bragging, etc., hiding behind a false front of bravado — when really he feels very lonely and insecure.
4. Discouragement is a sign of loneliness due to lack of involvement and participation.
5. A lonely person reflects a negative attitude to one degree or another.
6. A person's tone of voice can be a key to identifying a lonely person, whether it be mousey, quiet and soft-spoken or loud and boisterous.

### IV. HOW YOU CAN HELP OTHERS WHO ARE LONELY

1. Invite them to join you and your friends for a particular get-together. Then be sure to include them in your conversation, asking them questions and getting to know them. Spend more time with them than with your other friends to help them feel more comfortable and accepted.
2. When you see others sitting alone or off to themselves and looking unhappy, strike up a conversation. Sit down and get to know them, draw them out, and let them know that you are interested in their lives. Afterwards when you see them again, try to make it a point to stop and say hello, take time to see how they are doing — be concerned.
3. Ask them to help you on a special project for club or some other class or college function. Help them get involved.
4. If you are in the same class, you might start a study group — this could be helpful to you as well as to them. Be on the alert for ways that you can provide a social outlet for others and take the initiative and offer an invitation. By a study group I mean studying for tests together or mutually working on class projects, etc.
5. Be responsive and approachable, don't brush people off because you have "important" things to do.

### CONCLUSION

At Ambassador College you have the unique opportunity to be with others who are learning God's laws and who have God's Holy Spirit. You need not be alone. Loneliness is a negative emotion and one that God from the beginning did not intend that man should experience. Genesis 2:18 says, "And the Lord God said, it is not good that the man should be alone ...." Loneliness is an emotion that causes you to be a negative person, and in order to fight it, you must replace it with the positive emotion of love and outgoing concern for others.

Note: A word of recognition goes to Donna Butler and Robin Watkins for their help in preparing this lecture.

**-END-**





## **CHAPTER 3**

# **THE DO'S AND DON'TS OF DATING FOR GIRLS**

### **DO'S**

1. **WHEN ASKED FOR A DATE, BE RESPONSIVE AND RESPECTFUL**
  - a. This doesn't necessarily mean you have to accept the date.
  - b. It does mean that you be sensitive to the fellow's feelings and the way you come across.
  - c. The male ego is a fragile thing — try to be gentle, courteous and polite.
  - d. You destroy something of your own dignity and self-esteem by acting disinterested and cold — especially on the telephone.
  - e. Whether you accept the date or not, always try to reflect feminine kindness and diplomacy.
  - f. Incidentally, men do talk! If your general approach is unduly curt and cutting, the word gets around.
  - g. Don't be surprised if the guys start snubbing you.
2. **WATCH YOUR APPEARANCE AND DRESS FOR THE OCCASION.**
  - a. Your outward appearance says an awful lot: it's a reflection of your background and training — but more importantly of what you think of yourself.
  - b. It's also a reflection of how you view the fellow — at least he looks at it this way. If you're not concerned about your appearance, he takes it to mean you're not concerned about him either.
  - c. Intelligent and cultured men detest slovenliness — wrinkled clothing, unmatched outfits that are hurriedly put together, oversized shirts, clodhopper sandals (unless you're going to the beach), etc.
  - d. Bodily hygiene plays a big role — smell fresh, look trim and neat, and watch your breath.
  - e. Give special attention to your hair — even on hikes, picnics, and mountain trips take care of it as much as possible. Be balanced in this, however!
  - f. If the fellow doesn't make clear the type of date he's taking you on — ask to find out and dress appropriately.
3. **RADIATE FRIENDLINESS, ENTHUSIASM AND A ZEST FOR LIFE.**
  - a. A man finds it difficult and exasperating to date a girl who is noncommunicative, lifeless and limp. He doesn't enjoy the type who responds with nothing more than "yeah" or "huh?" to a question — the kind who's slow moving, droopy-eyed and drags herself around like a tortoise.
  - b. He likes for her to bubble with excitement and to enjoy life.
  - c. He likes to see her beam with smiles, happiness and good cheer.
  - d. He's looking for a girl who's outwardly positive — who radiates a warmth, glow and vibrancy that you can feel.
  - e. No one expects every minute to be euphoric! But liveliness, friendship and enthusiasm should be the underlying tone of your personality!
4. **CONCENTRATE ON GIVING YOUR DATE A GOOD TIME.**
  - a. Let him lead in the conversation and respond to the things he likes to talk about.
  - b. In the more vigorous activities, be fun-loving and spirited — join in with him and try to enjoy the things he does, even if you aren't very proficient at them.
  - c. In group situations where several are present, defer to him. Don't flirt with other guys or divert your attention elsewhere.
  - d. You can always learn something new from anybody — observe and listen.
  - e. Think of your date as being a unique, interesting and important person — for at that moment he really is.

5. CONTRIBUTE TO THE CONVERSATION AND TRY TO GO DEEPER THAN JUST THE TRIVIAL THINGS OF LIFE.
  - a. This is one of the biggest criticisms that men have made: girls tend to be shallow and "air-headed" when deeper subjects are introduced.
  - b. Female minds are generally on everyday trivia — dates, problems, latest fashions, parties, aches, pains, problems back home, etc.
  - c. Trivia is important and plays a role in dating — for this is what everyday life is made of and constitutes a necessary part of human interchange.
  - d. But you should broaden your scope of interests and become knowledgeable on a wide range of subjects — including geography, politics, world news, etc.
  - e. Talk about your background, your goals, desires, likes and dislikes — let others get to know you and see inside you as a person.
  - f. Discuss the Bible, sermons, classes — show a mature interest in the spiritual things of God.
  - g. Learn to be perceptive and discriminating — explain your views to your date and solicit his honest feedback.
  - h. Intelligent and hearty conversation is essential if you're to grow and mature as a woman and build meaningful friendships.
6. DO LITTLE THINGS FOR THE GUY TO LET HIM KNOW YOU CARE.
  - a. These can be simple acts of courtesy such as: unlocking his side of the car once you're seated, baking his special kind of dessert if you are going on a picnic, fixing your hair a way that he especially likes, or playing a particular type of game (cards, dominoes, checkers, chess) he may suggest.
  - b. The big things are important — but it's these smaller, private, tailor-made gestures that really make the difference.
  - c. They tell the man that you are a well-bred, empathetic and deeply thoughtful person.
7. SHOW AN INTEREST IN THE FELLOW'S LIFE.
  - a. When dating a guy, watch for clues that will indicate what he values and considers important.
  - b. Draw him out by asking his opinions and viewpoints on particular questions or social issues of the day!
  - c. Encourage him to talk about himself — his hobbies, his background and family, his hopes, dreams, career and plans for the future.
  - d. If you can do so honestly, let him know you value his judgment and that you find his insights helpful and scintillating.
8. TRY TO MAKE HIM FEEL CONFIDENT AND COMFORTABLE AND TO INCREASE HIS FEELINGS OF SELF-WORTH.
  - a. This requires that you be warm and open, and reflect a mature understanding of man's sensitivities.
  - b. Exercise care by not putting him down or making him feel uptight and defensive.
  - c. Regardless of whom you're dating, always try to show respect. God says in 1 Peter 2:17, "Honor all men."
  - d. Treat him as a fellow human being made in God's image, and a potential son of God.
  - e. Men generally will rise to new heights of dignity and confidence when you increase their feelings of self-esteem.
9. LEARN TO ADAPT TO NEW EXPERIENCES AND TRY OUT NEW ACTIVITIES HE MAY SUGGEST.
  - a. Men like girls who are willing to respond to new challenges and opportunities.
  - b. We are talking about on-the-spur-of-the-moment, out-of-the-blue type of things.
  - c. This might include such suggestions as: a game of volleyball on the beach, a game of checkers, a new card game he learned, a race to a specific point and back (with him giving you a head start, of course), a helicopter ride, etc.
  - d. So long as his ventures are appropriate and harmless, make a sincere effort to enjoy them.
  - e. Learn to be flexible and fit in with his plans.

10. ALWAYS BE SWEET NATURED AND POSITIVE, NO MATTER WHAT THE CIRCUMSTANCE.
  - a. Don't allow the pressures and problems of life to overwhelm you.
  - b. Don't magnify trifles and get bent out of shape.
  - c. In spite of heartaches and trials, bounce back and keep your emotions in check.
  - d. Maintain a cheerful, optimistic outlook.
  - e. Try to smooth out the rough edges and accept defeat with a smile.
  - f. People will love you a great deal more when you're calm, collected and don't react.
  - g. Always be mentally prepared to handle the unexpected when disaster strikes.
  
11. IN ANY DATING SITUATION, SHOW KINDNESS AND COMPASSION TO OTHER PEOPLE.
  - a. Most men will think "you're unusually special" when they see your love and concern for others.
  - b. True feminine kindness is one of the most desirable qualities you could hope to attain — it says practically everything.
  - c. If you want to add several inches to your stature as a woman, incorporate this godly virtue.
  - d. Get involved with people and make an effort to serve — visiting the sick, spending time with the elderly, encouraging a friend, etc.
  
12. DEVELOP A BEAUTIFUL, GENUINE, SINCERE PERSONALITY.
  - a. Enough can hardly be said about this phase of personal development — it's a high and lofty hallmark that sets you apart.
  - b. Have conviction in your standards — strongly live up to them.
  - c. Physical beauty means less and less to a man — once your inner charm and character start to emerge.
  - d. It's not always the physical that attracts the guy — it's your inner self-poise, graciousness, tender emotions, spontaneity, and the outward radiance of your personal qualities.
  
13. PLEASE SUGGEST WHAT YOU'D LIKE TO DO IF ASKED.
  - a. Some guys may run out of ideas and would like a suggestion from you.
  - b. If you sincerely have a preference, enthusiastically say so.
  - c. Normally this should not be expected — after all, he's supposed to be in charge.
  - d. But on occasion you can help him out by giving your input.
  
14. SUGGEST GOING "DUTCH" FROM TIME TO TIME, OR AT LEAST OFFER TO HELP WITH SOME OF THE EXPENSES.
  - a. Most young guys are broke like you are — and don't have a lot of extra money to spend.
  - b. Every so often, you might suggest paying your own way to the movies, picking up the bowling tab, or chipping in to help buy food.
  - c. This is not the normal custom — but it's perfectly "legal" and acceptable.
  
15. BE DEEPLY DEDICATED TO GOD AND THE CHURCH, WITHOUT APPEARING GUSHY.
  - a. We call this attitude a "spiritual mentality."
  - b. It's an aura — an underlying love — that men admire. They are impressed when you show an interest in the things of God.
  - c. Little else needs to be said when your example is telling the story.
  - d. Such demeanor can come only from prayer, Bible study, and walking daily with God.
  
16. SHOW APPRECIATION FOR THE DATE.
  - a. It's customary and proper at the conclusion of the date to express your thanks and let the guy know you had a nice time.
  - b. Send a "thank you" note for a very special occasion — particularly if he's bought you a flower and taken you to a fancy restaurant.
  - c. Remember that some guys go all out to give you a good time — in some cases spending more money than their budgets allow.
  - d. Your personal acknowledgment and appreciation goes a long way in building your esteem in his eyes, and makes him think you are a discerning and grateful person.

## DON'T'S

1. DON'T KEEP YOUR DATE WAITING — TRY TO BE ON TIME.
  - a. This applies as much to group dating as to personal dates.
  - b. So often, several people are made to wait because one or two stragglers show up late.
  - c. To detain your dates as a frequent practice says that you're not in control of your life and also implies that you don't have much regard for the fellow.
  - d. A lack of punctuality is a source of irritation to most men and may hurt your chances of building a meaningful relationship later in life.
  - e. Think long-range about the repercussions your present actions can bring.
  
2. IF YOU CAN'T ACCEPT A DATE, BE CAREFUL NOT TO LEAVE HIM BRUISED AND WOUNDED.
  - a. For many guys, it's hard enough to ask for a date in the first place.
  - b. To be rejected — coldly and rudely — without good cause, can deal a crushing blow to his ego.
  - c. He may feel humiliated, rejected and that he's an abysmal failure.
  - d. If you can give a logical reason, your refusal will be much easier to accept.
  - e. You might say, "I already have other plans, but could we make it some other time?" Or, "I really must study for a test, or do a term paper tonight, but I will be free later this week."
  - f. Your thoughtfulness will soothe his feelings, and open the way for a continuing friendship.
  
3. ON THE OTHER HAND, DON'T ACCEPT A DATE JUST BECAUSE YOU'RE AFRAID OF HURTING HIS FEELINGS.
  - a. Perhaps the guy is coming on too strong — he's assuming too much and taking you for granted.
  - b. Perhaps he's socially clumsy and unskilled! He's starting to get possessive and wants you to get serious with him "right now"!
  - c. Maybe he's misreading your intentions too early in the game.
  - d. It's better to be forthright and tell him how you feel! Honesty is the best policy — but be tactful.
  - e. Generally speaking, most men want the truth and would prefer to know where they stand — even though it may deeply hurt at the time.
  - f. Future dates would be uncomfortable for both if you were tense and unhappy and really didn't want to go out with him.
  
4. PLEASE DON'T CRITICIZE THE GUY IN FRONT OF YOUR FRIENDS JUST BECAUSE HE DOESN'T MEASURE UP.
  - a. You may do irreparable damage to his reputation — or at least create a bad impression of him.
  - b. This thoughtless cruelty will drive girls away and make it harder for him to get dates — if you've labeled him as "Mr. Oddball" or "Mr. Creep."
  - c. Maybe your opinions are partially justified, but let others judge for themselves.
  - d. Suppose he's just terribly shy and self-conscious?
  - e. Wouldn't it be better to overlook his idiosyncrasies and try to encourage him as a friend?
  - f. The Bible pronounces a dire warning against offending a little one. It even states that one who's guilty is in danger of the judgment. See Matthew 5:21-22.
  
5. DON'T BE TOO AGGRESSIVE AND FLIRTATIOUS, OR TRY TO ENSNARE HIM BY YOUR COQUETTISH CHARMS.
  - a. To be perfectly honest, most men don't like flirts.
  - b. You may momentarily capture his attention and cause his blood pressure to rise, but in the end he'll question your integrity and cast you aside.
  - c. A certain amount of aggressive behavior is purely natural and to be expected in normal dating relationships such as teasing, joking, and frolicking around in a spirit of clean fun and enjoyment.
  - d. We're referring to the type of girls on ego trips who try to tantalize, mesmerize, hypnotize, and subdue every guy in town.

6. DON'T ASSUME THAT EVERY GUY IS THE SAME AND THAT ALL ARE TO BE TREATED ALIKE.
  - a. Every fellow is unique and has his own individual tastes and standards.
  - b. Some like sports and outdoor life; while other less active types enjoy reading, writing poetry and listening to music.
  - c. Learn to figure each one out, and try to adapt to his particular personality.
  - d. Look on every date as a unique challenge and a learning opportunity that will enrich and round out your total life.
  
7. WATCH THE TENDENCY TO COMPETE AND MAKE HIM LOOK INFERIOR.
  - a. Hearty interchange of opinions can make a scintillating discussion.
  - b. But when you try to make yourself look good and put him down, you render a great disservice to yourself.
  - c. Men resent a belligerent, arrogant, competitive spirit in a woman, and will in due time lose respect for her.
  - d. The Bible condemns this type of behavior and labels her as "an odious woman" or by today's definition "a women's libber."
  - e. Bruising a man's ego is the greatest blunder you can make in dating.
  
8. DON'T WHINE AND COMPLAIN OR ACT SPOILED AND IMMATURE.
  - a. Whiners and complainers are a bore to be around, and can spoil an otherwise beautiful evening.
  - b. Such girls are totally self-centered and seem to care less how others may feel.
  - c. They complain about the weather, about their job, about their parents, about their teachers and grades, about living conditions — about any and everything.
  - d. Look for the good, the lovely and the pure in all your experiences and associations.
  - e. Check up to see if you're infected with "complaintitis." You'll never be popular and have many friends until this attitude is changed.
  
9. DON'T LEAD A GUY ON UNLESS YOU'RE REALLY INTERESTED IN HIM OR READY TO GET INVOLVED.
  - a. Some girls manipulate men like puppets on a string.
  - b. And some naive men allow themselves to become entangled in their web — usually ending up deeply seared and scarred.
  - c. These girls like to have a reserve to fall back on in case their other relationships don't work out — plus they like the attention of men.
  - d. It's deceitful, cruel and fiendish to lead a guy on when you have no intention of getting serious.
  
10. DON'T DISCUSS OTHER GUYS OR PAST DATES.
  - a. This is an Unpardonable sin" in dating.
  - b. Such behavior evidences a gross lack of wisdom, discretion and maturity.
  - c. Few things will turn a guy off faster than to be compared to other men or to share the spotlight with them.
  - d. Your first duty is to give your date a good time and make him feel appreciated and important.
  
11. DON'T BE FLAMBOUYANT, LOUD-MOUTHED AND BOISTEROUS-FOREVER CALLING ATTENTION TO YOURSELF
  - a. Even the dogs would tuck their tails and run if they beheld this type of behavior.
  - b. It's crass, vulgar and totally unbecoming of a lady.
  - c. Such a person would probably do well behind home plate as an umpire — but would usually strike out and rarely get a hit if she should play the game.
  
12. DON'T MAKE YOURSELF THE CENTER OF THE CONVERSATION.
  - a. This weakness indicates a lack of confidence and low self-esteem.
  - b. It's an effort to prove that "I'm somebody just in case you didn't know it."
  - c. This problem can be resolved by filling your mind with knowledge outside the tiny little bubble that surrounds your life.

- d. Project your thoughts and comments upward to higher ideals and to the good you see in others.
  - e. Monitor your words! You may be shocked at how often you refer to yourself.
  - f. Heavy doses of self-praise or an ongoing diary of your life can become a drag.
13. DON'T ACT AS THOUGH YOU'RE TOTALLY INDEPENDENT AND DON'T NEED THE HELP OF YOUR MALE COUNTERPART.
- a. This is not according to nature.
  - b. At heart, men want to be your protector and defender.
  - c. They want to be sweet and do tender things for you — such as opening doors, picking up books you may have dropped — playing their role as a masculine leader.
  - d. By acting cool and ungrateful toward their gestures you rob them of a satisfaction that God meant for them to experience and enjoy!
14. DON'T TURN A GUY DOWN AT A DANCE JUST BECAUSE YOU DON'T LIKE HIS LOOKS OR HE'S A NOTCH BELOW YOUR SOCIAL STANDARDS.
- a. This is devastating to a man, and especially so if he's a Church member in good standing.
  - b. Such prejudice and favoritism should never exist among God's people.
  - c. If you have a legitimate reason for not dancing and must decline his request — remember his feelings and be considerate.
15. DON'T CANCEL A DATE AT THE LAST MINUTE UNLESS IT IS ABSOLUTELY UNAVOIDABLE.
- a. If you must do so because of circumstances outside your control, apologize and give an explanation.
  - b. Don't set him up with someone else.
16. DON'T TRY TO BREAK UP SOMEBODY ELSE'S ROMANCE OUT OF SPITE, ENVY AND JEALOUSY.
- a. It's sinister and evil to destroy another girl's relationship just because you can't have the guy she likes!
  - b. Taking vengeance by spreading rumors or fabricating stories to break them up does greater harm to you — you destroy something of yourself.
  - c. If you resort to fraud or trickery to win a guy over, you're headed for disaster.
  - d. If it's a matter of your being hurt, forgive and forget and bury the past.
  - e. Continue to make yourself look beautiful by upgrading the inner qualities of your life.
  - f. Rest assured if you've laid the right foundation and are properly playing the role God intended, you'll have no trouble getting dates and eventually attracting the right man.

-END-

# CHAPTER 4

## THE DO'S AND DON'TS OF DATING FOR MEN

### DO'S

1. COME TO UNDERSTAND WHY DATING IS IMPORTANT AND WHAT ITS PURPOSE REALLY IS.
  - a. Purposes and reasons:
    - (1) To have fun and enjoyment.
    - (2) To develop a well-rounded personality.
    - (3) To expand socially and culturally.
    - (4) To broaden your education.
    - (5) To develop the art of conversation.
    - (6) To overcome self-centeredness.
    - (7) To experience a wide range of personalities.
    - (8) To build confidence.
    - (9) To prepare for courtship and marriage.
  - b. Learn to view casual dating, as opposed to serious dating, as an opportunity to accomplish two grand goals:
    - (1) To develop into a colorful and dynamic personality.
    - (2) To be a source of genuine encouragement and inspiration to others.
  - c. Unless we get the overview in mind, there's always a tendency to date for entirely the wrong reasons — first and foremost to get married.
  - d. Obviously, marriage plays a vital role in dating — but more importantly is laying a stable, strong and mature foundation before contemplating matrimony.
2. IF THE GIRLS KEEP TURNING YOU DOWN, FACE THE FACTS HONESTLY AND SEEK HELP.
  - a. You may be trying to do everything right and consider yourself a fairly nice guy.
  - b. Yet, the girls keep making excuses and seem disinterested in you as a person.
  - c. If such be true, there may be something abrasive in your personality that's turning them off.
  - d. To nail down your problem, you need the guidance and professional help of a skilled counselor.
  - e. Don't go to friends and acquaintances who will sympathize with you.
  - f. Honestly seek the truth, however painful the answer may be.
  - g. Don't argue, justify or make excuses — face reality and go to work!
  - h. Your problems will always haunt you until you make the change.
3. LEARN HOW TO PROPERLY ASK FOR A DATE.
  - a. Don't approach a girl with, "What are you doing Saturday night?"
  - b. Statements like this are an intrusion of privacy and reveal a lack of experience and good breeding.
  - c. State what you would like to do and ask the girl if she would be free to join you...that you would enjoy her company.
  - d. Give an idea of what's appropriate to wear, what time to be ready, etc. Many times a girl has to ask for this information.
  - e. It all comes down to having a mature handle on the situation!
  - f. If for perfectly good reasons the girl can't accept the date, don't take it personally and become offended.

#### 4. WATCH YOUR APPEARANCE — LOOK NEAT, TRIM AND SHARP.

- a. The attention you give to this aspect of life says a great deal about your character.
- b. Conversely, sloppy dress and careless hygiene indicate gross indifference and lack of respect both to yourself and others.
- c. Examples:
  - (1) Soiled and wrinkled clothing.
  - (2) Unpolished shoes and white socks.
  - (3) High-water trousers and ill-fitting clothes
  - (4) Untrimmed facial hair.
  - (5) Bad breath, dandruff and dirty fingernails.
- d. You can enhance your image in any girl's eyes if you give more time and attention to your appearance.

#### 5. EXPECT TO HAVE A GOOD TIME, AND YOUR DATES WILL USUALLY BE A SUCCESS.

- a. Have a positive attitude when you call up a girl — in other words, don't call expecting her to turn you down.
- b. Express excitement and enthusiasm for the date itself and toward the girl you're asking.
- c. Stay in a positive, happy attitude — even when unexpected circumstances interfere.
- d. Inject humor — learn to laugh at yourself.
- e. Concentrate on giving your date a good time by being solicitous of her comfort, happiness and welfare!
- f. Be creative and use your imagination in coming up with new ideas before you even ask for a date.

#### 6. LEARN HOW TO CARRY ON AN INTERESTING AND INTELLIGENT CONVERSATION.

- a. To do this you must be informed, know what's happening in the world, read widely and have special areas of interest such as in hobbies, music, art, sports, etc.
- b. To break the ice, you can always start with trivia.
  - (1) A recent movie you've seen.
  - (2) Something special about last week's party.
  - (3) An interesting experience you've had.
  - (4) Class lectures.
- c. As the date progresses, move into heavier topics.
  - (1) Her interests — what she plans to do with her life.
  - (2) Travel experiences.
  - (3) Observations and recent lessons learned.
  - (4) Your career and interesting things about your job.
  - (5) World news, the Bible, sermons, a book you're reading, etc.
- d. You'll want to break up the pattern, but don't allow the date to degenerate into useless chatter and shallow thinking.
- e. Keep the conversation moving by asking for her opinions and comments on different subjects.
- f. Really listen and pay respect while she is talking.

#### 7. LEARN TO BE COMPOSED, CONFIDENT AND SELF-ASSURED IN ANY TYPE OF SOCIAL SITUATION.

- a. This has to do with developing poise and finesse in blending in with people regardless of their station in life.
- b. It's having the ability to relax others, drawing them out and making them feel at ease.
- c. It means being responsive and making people feel important and appreciated.
- d. It further means just being yourself — natural, spontaneous, lively and uninhibited.
- e. This requires patience, courage and a determined attitude, but the fruits of your efforts will pay rich dividends in gaining friends and being popular.
- f. Most girls are very understanding and will overlook an innocent faux pas.
- g. But they find it difficult to admire the guy who's coarse and socially awkward if he shows no signs of wanting to improve.



**8. SHOW THAT YOU'RE STABLE AND IN CONTROL OF YOUR LIFE.**

- a. This covers a wide gamut of characteristics.
  - (1) Having a steady job and positive goals you're working toward.
  - (2) Self-discipline over your mind, body and appetites.
  - (3) Not by being naive and gullible — but thinking for yourself.
  - (4) Working to improve your life and growing in overall balance and confidence
  - (5) Consistently sticking with your goals until you see them through.
- b. When you grow in this kind of stature, you win the hearts and admiration of all.

**9. BE SPIRITUALLY STRONG AND CONSCIENTIOUS WITHOUT APPEARING GUSHY.**

- a. If you're not a strong spiritual leader, and show little interest in the things of God, the deeply converted girls feel insecure with you.
- b. This is not to say that you must always be talking religion and lecturing to the girls. Nor should you force your views about the Bible on them.
- c. But there should be a strong undercurrent of loyalty to God and the Church running through the whole of your life.
- d. If you're God-fearing, it's going to shine through as much in what you do as in what you say.
- e. Maintain high standards of conduct, but avoid the appearance of being "holier-than-thou."
- f. When you're growing, you will inspire the girls you date to grow too.

**10. TREAT THE GIRL AS SOMEONE SPECIAL AND BE CONCERNED ABOUT HER FEELINGS.**

- a. Be genuinely courteous and do little things to let her know you care.
- b. Pamper her in a mature way, as someone who needs protection.
- c. Examples:
  - (1) Opening doors.
  - (2) Bringing her a flower.
  - (3) Being thoughtful of her physical comforts such as giving her your coat if she is shivering, closing a car window if it's blowing her hair, removing her coat at a dance or party, bringing her refreshments so she doesn't have to stand in line, seeing that she gets into her dorm or apartment safely.
- d. Forget yourself — think in terms of giving her pleasure and happiness, being truly thoughtful of her feelings.
- e. Respect her views and values; her intelligence and natural abilities.
- f. Focus your attention on pleasing her as a Christian without getting mushy.
- g. Treat her as a queen, and she'll treat you as a king.
- h. Notice and compliment the girl on such things as her hair style, new dress, and appearance overall, and she'll consider you a very discriminating person.

**11. LEARN TO LEAD — NOT DOMINATE.**

- a. A girl admires the guy who takes control when necessary — that is, reacting to problems maturely, making right decisions and taking charge of situations with confidence.
- b. This kind of leadership imparts to her a feeling of security and a deep sense of respect for the man.
- c. To re-emphasize a point, proper dating is done with gentleness.
- d. He generally lays out plans ahead of time with her interests in view, but gets her input if changes need to be made.
- e. You'll always receive high ratings in a girl's mind when you radiate confidence and the ability to lead.

**12. SOME DATES CAN BE "SPUR-OF-THE-MOMENT."**

- a. A quick cup of coffee.
- b. A brisk walk around the block.
- c. A bicycle ride.
- d. Many girls enjoy simple companionship and a break in routine.
- e. These dates cost you very little, if anything, and can be a most stimulating and healthy way to enjoy a few moments with another.
- f. Every date doesn't have to be a big, formal splash to give happiness.

13. REALIZE THAT ALL GIRLS ARE NOT ALIKE IN PERSONALITY AND TEMPERAMENT.
  - a. Before typesetting a girl and allowing an opinion to form in your mind, spend time in getting to know her.
  - b. Be flexible and learn to adjust to her likes, tastes and differences.
  - c. Create an atmosphere of warmth and encourage her to be herself.
  - d. The more you date a wide range of personalities, the better your chances of choosing the right mate when you decide to get married.
  
14. DEVELOP A CHRISTIAN ATTITUDE OF LOVE AND SERVICE.
  - a. A guy will grow in popularity who's considerate, thoughtful, compassionate and sensitive to the needs of others.
  - b. This also has to do with showing concern toward the weak, poor and elderly.
  - c. It seems that most young men today are so preoccupied with themselves and their interests that they have lost sight of the value of service.
  - d. "Let the other guy do it," is the hue and cry of the day.
  - e. Being considerate of others also involves carrying your share of the financial load and reciprocating favors shown. Example: A girl invites you over for dinner. Out of courtesy, you might ask if you can bring a bottle of wine or some item of food to help share expenses.
  - f. inscribe this motto deep into your subconscious: "Greatness IS service."
  
15. EXPRESS GRATITUDE AND LET YOUR DATE KNOW YOU ENJOYED HER COMPANY.
  - a. A follow-up phone call or a handwritten note after the date means an awful lot to a girl.
  - b. It tells her that you're uniquely different, and that you really care.
  - c. Mention a few things that made the date enjoyable.
  - d. Such a practice builds goodwill and enhances her feelings of self-esteem.

## DON'T'S

1. IN CHOOSING DATES, DON'T TAKE THE SELFISH APPROACH: "WHO CAN GIVE ME A GOOD TIME?"
  - a. What girl is the most friendly and outgoing — the one I can relate to best?
  - b. Who's best able to subdue my fears and make me feel relaxed and comfortable?
  - c. Avoid the attitude of "What's in it for me? What can I get out of it? Who can give me the greatest happiness and fun?"
  - d. Shift the emphasis away from self to an active concern for others.
  - e. Think of dating as a growing experience, to be shared with a wide range of personalities.
  
2. DON'T DATE A GIRL JUST FOR LOOKS.
  - a. Don't reject the so-called "outcasts" or the "less desirables" in preference to the glamour girls with the prettiest faces and sexiest figures.
  - b. To limit your dating to the knock-out sex-bombs may bolster your ego and arouse envy in the other guys, but such a practice degrades your worth in God's eyes.
  - c. Girls can generally sense when a fellow's motives are wrong:
    - (1) By his stares and sensuous demeanor.
    - (2) Taking her places to "show her off," yet leaving her empty and unfulfilled!
    - (3) By pouting when she's not giving him 100% attention or responding to his "cry-baby" whims.
  - d. Some fellows have been heard to say: "I'll never date an ugly girl."
    - (1) Why? She's a human being made in God's image with feelings and sensitivities as any other person.
    - (2) Was Jesus Christ partial in His treatment of people, favoring only the elite? Of course not!
    - (3) Did you know there's not an ugly woman in God's sight, unless she's made herself ugly through acquiring wrong attitudes and habits.
    - (4) You're a greater gentleman in God's sight when you give yourself in equal time, attention and consideration to all the girls with whom you have contact.

### 3. DON'T SIZE UP EACH GIRL AS A POTENTIAL WIFE.

- a. No self-respecting girl appreciates being looked over, studied and analyzed as a future wife.
- b. In fact, this not only irritates her — she resents it deeply.
- c. Such scrutiny makes her feel like a horse, cow or used car on display at a public auction.
- d. Symbolically, the prospective buyer with clipboard in hand goes down a list of good and bad qualities checking off those he likes or doesn't like.
- e. A fellow who's wife-shopping too early in the game betrays his motives by asking personal questions such as:
  - (1) At what age do you plan to marry?
  - (2) Do you intend to go to college and graduate
  - (3) How many children would you like to have?
  - (4) What are you looking for in a husband?
  - (5) is there a history of insanity in your family?
- f. This thoughtless approach puts a strain on the girl, causing her to withdraw and play an unnatural role.

### 4. DON'T GET SERIOUS AFTER THE FIRST DATE OR TWO.

- a. This attitude, similar to the one above, puts a girl on edge and makes her uptight and nervous.
- b. It may cause her to act cool and distant or scare her off completely!
- c. Intelligent and mature girls don't want to be rushed or pressured into a premature courtship.
- d. It isn't that they've decided they don't like you — they simply need more time.
- e. Why do fellows get turned on so fast?
  - (1) Physical attraction and sex appeal.
  - (2) Personality of girl.
  - (3) Getting caught up in an aura of infatuation and romance.
  - (4) Yet, he hasn't dated long enough to get to know her.

### 5. DON'T GET TOO PHYSICAL.

- a. Sitting too close.
- b. Holding a girl too tightly while dancing.
- c. Putting arm around girl at movie or attempting to hold hands.
- d. Getting carried away and attempting to indulge in heavy petting.
- e. Girls resent the idea of being pawed over and having to engage in a wrestling match to protect their morals!
- f. They want to be treated like ladies and will respect you a great deal more when you treat them with dignity and honor.

### 6. DON'T PUT ON AIRS AND TRY TO BE SOMEBODY ELSE.

- a. Be yourself — warm, open, honest and sincere.
- b. Trying to project an artificial image makes one phony, unnatural and hard to get to know.
- c. Let your feelings, convictions and opinions come out — just be humble and discreet in the way you express them.
- d. Why do people put on airs?
  - (1) They feel insecure about themselves.
  - (2) They're afraid others will not like their personalities and accept them for what they are.
- e. This exercise in play-acting not only takes the fun out of dating, but creates barriers of mistrust and doubt.

### 7. QUIT TRYING SO HARD TO MAKE A DATE SUCCESSFUL.

- a. Don't become overly concerned about how things are going, or whether you are making a good impression.
- b. Don't worry about every detail and doing everything right — learn to relax, enjoy yourself and give your date a good time.
- c. By getting so involved with the mechanics of the date, it's easy to forget that the girl is a person.

- d. Dating relations should be easy, free, natural and spontaneous.
  - e. But when dating is taken too seriously — worrying over it and thinking it's not turning out right — you defeat its purpose altogether!
8. DON'T COMPETE ON A DATE BY ENGAGING IN DISPUTES AND CONTROVERSIES.
- a. A friendly exchange of opinions can be healthy and stimulating — but you should never try to show the girl up and make her feel inferior.
  - b. Don't overwhelm her with facts and knowledge and the brilliance of your mind.
  - c. Avoid backing her into a corner by challenging her views and making her feel that her opinions don't count.
  - d. Find out why she thinks as she does and welcome her points of view.
  - e. You might just discover she's keenly perceptive and can offer intelligent answers to many of life's problems.
9. DON'T PRY FOR INFORMATION A GIRL CONSIDERS PRIVATE AND CONFIDENTIAL.
- a. Her personal IQ
  - b. Past romances and names of boyfriends.
  - c. Sexual views — is she a virgin?
  - d. Personal hangups and family problems.
10. DON'T ACT MOUSY AND HANG ON TO A GIRL LIKE SHE'S YOUR MAMA.
- a. There are few things that will turn off a girl quicker than for a male to be unsure of himself, fail to assert his leadership and take initiative, wait for her to make the next move and become overly dependent.
  - b. She can overlook a lot of faults and be very understanding when the guy is trying, but this type of weakness is grossly repulsive.
  - c. Show some spunk, leadership and independence! Be a real man — not a quiet and timid mama's boy.
  - d. Watch that you don't become possessive and attach yourself to her like a leach at social gatherings.
  - e. Special note: Don't make a nuisance of yourself at parties and dances by monopolizing her time — especially if she's not your date for that occasion.
11. DON'T TALK ABOUT PAST DATES.
- a. This may give the girl the feeling she's not measuring up to your standards or pleasing you.
  - b. Don't discuss other girls' weaknesses, faults and idiosyncrasies.
  - c. Don't give the impression you have an interest in certain girls and are considering their merits for marriage.
  - d. Girls resent being compared to each other.
12. DON'T BECOME CRITICAL AND NEGATIVE TOWARD LIFE.
- a. A guy who's negative — who whines and complains about his bad breaks and misfortunes — is an obnoxious bore to be around.
  - b. Moreover, a downcast, critical temperament makes you appear weak.
  - c. Steer clear of personal gripes, problems and hangups — at least wait until you get to know the girl as a friend.
  - d. A guy who feels sorry for himself and is generally negative toward others and life overall, can have little hope for building meaningful friendships until he truly sees himself.
13. DON'T LEAD A GIRL ON, AND THEN DROP HER WITHOUT WARNING.
- a. This is one of the cruelest things you can do to the opposite sex.
  - b. Particularly, if you've been dating regularly and have given the impression you're getting interested and serious.
  - c. A sudden change without explanation can utterly crush her heart, destroy her feelings of self-respect, and do irreparable damage in building other relationships.

- d. Don't allow yourself to get carried away and become that involved with any girl until you know you're basically right for each other.
  - e. The key is to get to know each other inside and out, and to know that you're deeply in love before making any plans for marriage.
14. DON'T OVERDOMINATE AND GIVE THE IMPRESSION. "I'M THE BIG MALE LEADER."
- a. Girls detest a guy who's overconfident, arrogant and cocky, who struts around like a proud peacock.
  - b. They want to be lead — but not stomped on or stampeded over.
  - c. In this connection, don't treat a girl like one of the boys. Example: Slapping her on the shoulder, saying in a raucous tone, "Come on down to the gym and watch me lift weights!"
  - d. Further, don't give the impression, "I'm doing you a big favor by taking you out. So you had better appreciate me."
  - e. Being masculine doesn't mean throwing your weight around and popping buttons!
  - f. Learn the art of being gentle, and you will have discovered one of the greatest marks of Christian leadership. It takes strength and intelligence to be gentle.
15. DON'T WAIT UNTIL THE LAST MINUTE TO ASK FOR A DATE.
- a. There may be exceptions, but normally you can avoid this situation if you try.
  - b. A girl doesn't like to be thought of as a nobody who's been passed over several times and she's all that's left.
  - c. Consider the fact that it takes time for girls to prepare for the more formal dates — ironing clothes, fixing their hair, etc.
  - d. Let her know the type of date so she can dress appropriately.
  - e. Be punctual — don't keep her waiting.

**-END-**



## CHAPTER 5

### **EMOTIONAL MATURITY**

#### I. LET'S BEGIN OUR STUDY BY DESCRIBING FIRST THE GENERAL CHARACTERISTICS OF EMOTIONAL IMMATURITY.

##### A. SIGNS.

1. Being moody and depressed too much of the time.
2. Crying, pouting, losing temper and screaming over trivial matters.
3. Being late for appointments or allowing pleasures to get in the way of school assignments or other responsibilities.
4. Staying up too late at night when you should be getting your rest — then sleeping in too late for classes or work.
5. Staying in bed and calling in sick when you feel a little tired or down, rather than disciplining yourself and putting your responsibilities first.
6. Getting mad if you aren't the center of attention and the most popular girl around. Or, getting irritated and insolent when you don't get your way.
7. Being demanding of other people and feeling that they should cater to your desires and needs first.
8. Buying on impulse — failing to consider the price, or whether you have the resources.
9. Failing to say "NO" to yourself — giving in to your desires and wants without restraint — disregarding the consequences.
10. Failing to reason out a situation or problem from beginning to end before making a decision — acting first and thinking later.
11. Being easily influenced by others, instead of using your mind and making your own decisions.
12. Daydreaming — wasting your time in a world of fantasy and make believe instead of thinking constructively.
13. Reacting emotionally and falling apart in an emergency. Failing to collect your wits and act with a clearthinking head after the initial blow has passed.
14. Finding fault with everything and everybody, instead of trying to get along with people. In other words, being generally negative and critical toward life.
15. Using the excuse that since you're a woman and therefore more emotional (especially at certain times of the month), you don't have to keep your emotions in tow.
16. Failing to take the blame or being too stubborn to admit it when you are wrong.
17. Feeling inadequate and easily discouraged — particularly when associating with peers who are self-assured, multitalented and successful.
18. Other general manifestations:
  - a. *Shyness — loner-type*
  - b. *Fearful of taking new steps*
  - c. *Impetuous*
  - d. *Self-indulgent*
  - e. *Insensitive and inconsiderate*
  - f. *Whines, complains and cries easily*
  - g. *Overly concerned with your health*
  - h. *Moody, changeable, unstable*
  - i. *Easily offended*
  - j. *Accusing*
  - k. *Competitive — win or else — always have to be first*

- l. Argumentative and intolerant*
- m. Impatient — everything must be "now" — never later*
- n. Sarcastic and cynical*
- o. Unable to be serious and level-headed*
- p. Disorganized*
- q. Unable to concentrate*
- r. Irresponsible-and undependable*

## II. WHAT EMOTION IS — WHY YOU ACT AND REACT THE WAY YOU DO.

- A. Emotion is the energy which makes the mind work — it supplies the energy for survival.
  - 1. Emotions — physical and mental feelings — are necessary for life and stimulate you to behave in a certain way
  - 2. In that sense, we are all emotional people.
- B. There is a difference, however, between emotional maturity and immaturity.
  - 1. The difference lies in whether you let this energy (emotion) rule you to your own hurt and the hurt of others, or whether you, through careful thought, put it to use constructively
  - 2. You can't stop the energy that is emotion, but you can control and direct it into constructive channels.
- C. How to control emotion.
  - 1. Realize there are negative and positive ways to react to an impulse that comes into your mind.
  - 2. Understand that you have been programmed from infancy to react the way you presently do.
  - 3. Realize, further, you can develop the ability to choose the way you want to react, rather than allowing it to be automatic. In other words, you can reprogram your behavior.
  - 4. The following quote shows how this process works.
 

*"Once the lever has been pulled, the water (emotion) rushes on inevitably. There are, however, several channels in which the stream may be diverted, labeled: brave, fairly brave, cowardly, stupid, smart, immature; and the individual has the power to direct the stream, so that even though he cannot stem the tide, he can cause it to flow in the channel of his choice."*  
(*Discovering Ourselves*, Edward A. Strecker and Kenneth Appel.)

## III. CAUSES OF NEGATIVE RESPONSES OR EMOTIONAL IMMATURITY.

- A. There are basically three factors that contribute to emotional immaturity.
  - 1. Conditioning.  
This involves how you were treated as a little girl, as well as what was expected of you. If you were treated as a fragile, timid doll, rather than as a child, and that kind of behavior was reinforced with approval, either verbal or nonverbal, you probably carried this pattern into adulthood. As a female, you undoubtedly were expected to cry easily, pout, think superficially and selfishly. You also learned to tell "white lies" to manipulate your parents, and men. This background probably contributed to your present make-up as an adult.
  - 2. Modeling.  
Children are imitators. Adults are your mirror, especially your parents or parent-figures. So whatever the model of the person you identified with as a child — your mother, schoolteacher, Hollywood star, etc., you will in some way become like that person.
  - 3. Cognitive Development.  
This is the process by which you determined that certain behavior was or was not to your advantage. Crying, sulking or throwing tantrums to get your own way, became a lifelong manipulative device. It's called "water power" or "the silent treatment." These are negative techniques immature women have learned to use to get their desired results.

*NOTE: There are as many different techniques in childhood that go into creating this manipulative phenomenon as there are individual families. These factors are meant only to give a general basis. Too much pampering on one side of the pendulum and neglect on the other will net the same results. An overpampered child will learn to expect too much from others without ever giving. Neglected children can grow up har-*



*boring such deep-seated anger and resentment that they become demanding and inconsiderate. An over-pampered and protected child develops a self-indulgent attitude that prevents him from coping with the frustrations and realities of his future life. On the other hand, a neglected child often has to learn to solve his own problems and can develop attitudes of independence and "omnipotence."*

B. What you as a potential parent can do to teach your children emotional maturity and self-control.

1. Teach your children at a very early age that they can't have their own way by pouting, crying or displaying other selfish emotional outbursts.

Children starting out young will try temper tantrums to get what they want.

2. Don't allow them to be selfish.

Teach them they can't always be first or have their way. Help them learn to give in at times and let others have a chance.

3. Teach your child self-restraint.

To allow a child to uncontrollably vent his anger instills in him an attitude of self-will which leads to overt rebellion and hostility later in life.

4. Teach your child to handle his emotions.

Example from the parent can do a lot here. Emotions by themselves are not wrong; we all feel anger, hurt, love, lust, etc. What is wrong is failing to control them. You want a child who can express his/her emotions, but you don't want a child who can't control his life.

For example: The child who is angry when a friend wants one of his toys. Normally a child will strike out, hit, scream, bite or use violence to get his toy back. The child who is not taught from the beginning to control these emotions will very possibly become the adult who uses a knife or gun out of anger to get what he wants. The child who is self-ish, who grows up thinking the world owes him a living, becomes the adult who will rob a bank. He is unwilling to work for what he gets, but feels he deserves the money and takes what he wants.

5. Teach your children how to work.

Don't wait on them hand and foot. Often parents will do this unthinkingly. Out of love they place their children on a pedestal from which they never come down. Thus, the children are unrealistic about life and expect the outside world to treat them as their parents have.

6. Teach your child responsibility.

Give him or her jobs to do. Encourage your child to finish what he starts. Be sure he carries through with his work at home or school, and other projects such as music lessons, etc.

7. Allow your child to do the job himself.

Sometimes it is easier for Mom to do the job, rather than take the time to teach the child how to do it. It requires much time and patience for a child to learn; he is slower and often messier. But if he doesn't try, he won't learn.

8. Allow your child to make mistakes.

The child who has never made mistakes is the child who has never tried.

9. Let your child start making decisions.

You as a parent must guide the decisions he or she makes, but you need to help him build up his confidence in his ability to think for himself. After all, the time will come when he will be on his own with nobody to make his decisions for him. Often a person who is immature has never had an opportunity to think for himself. A young woman reared in this type of atmosphere will rely too heavily on her husband to make all her decisions, just as she leaned on her parents before. During courtship this may make a man feel good knowing his girl "needs" him. But after marriage when he is burdened down with every little decision and cannot rely on his wife to handle the things that come up every day, he will find she is not really a "help meet."

10. Give your children praise and encouragement.

This kind of attention builds up their confidence and self-esteem, and will motivate them to achieve higher levels of success.

A word of caution: Don't over-compliment so as to avoid building vanity and conceit into their personalities.

IV. HELPS IN BECOMING MORE MATURE.

A. START BY EXAMINING YOURSELF.

A good place to begin is to isolate your emotional hangups and become totally familiar with yourself. When you discover problems in your life that contribute to unwanted behavior, go to work on them. When you become emotional, ask yourself why you feel as you do. Be aware of "low days" and discipline yourself. There are definite reasons why your emotions are getting out of hand — seek to understand "why." Don't be satisfied with saying, "I'm just that way," or "My mother was like that," or "It runs in the family." God expects you to improve, change and grow.

Remember that coming to understand yourself gives peace of mind, eliminates stress, and imparts inner strength. Learn to identify your true feelings and call them what they are — anger, resentment, jealousy, hatred, etc. Don't be afraid or ashamed to examine your feelings. If they are wrong, ask God's forgiveness and ferret out the cause (this requires work). Deal with your problems from God's point of view, rather than from human instincts and feelings only. Most women, when asked why they feel a certain way, will answer "I don't know." Remember, cause is important. Be willing to change and work on your problems, and growth will come.

B. SPECIFIC THINGS TO DO.

1. Grow in confidence and self-esteem.

So often, emotional reaction results from a woman's feelings of inadequacy — physically, socially and professionally. That is, is she attractive? Is she accepted by the important people in her life? Does she feel like a mis-fit around her coworkers?

For example, have you gotten up in the morning and started to get ready for work. Your hair just won't do what you want it to, and you feel lousy in what you are wearing. It seems like nothing goes right the whole day. You're given an important assignment to do at work, but you fall apart emotionally because you started out the day lacking confidence and from then on things keep getting worse.

2. Learn to discipline yourself.

When confronted with some form of self-doubt, the mature woman contains her emotions and calmly devises a plan to deal with them.

When questioning her appearance, popularity and professional competency, rather than explode, she should consider those who excel in these areas and take pointers from them.

3. Overcome selfconsciousness.

Force yourself to talk to others, even if it makes you feel uncomfortable. Find out about their lives and be responsive to the things they are interested in. Take the initiative, even though painful, until you form a habit of meeting people. Accept invitations to do new things, instead of finding excuses to avoid them. Remember, action conquers fear; inaction prolongs it.

4. Overcome selfcenteredness.

Show concern and consideration for others. Specific ways you can do this:

1. Occasionally make a roommate's bed for her, especially if you know she has an unusually heavy schedule that day.
2. If you are going shopping, offer to pick up items she may need.
3. Keep in touch with your family — letters, calls, etc.
4. Build time in your schedule for other people by learning to listen and encourage.
5. Volunteer for class or club projects and get involved in a common goal with others.

5. Eliminate self-pity.

Recognize the problem and realize you have to reprogram your mind. When your feelings have been hurt, ask yourself the following questions: "How important is this really? What did I do to cause this? How am I to blame?" See things from the other's viewpoint and give him/her the benefit of the doubt. Don't harbor resentments — talk things out. Negative feelings, resentment and tension can actually cause ill health. Try to be more understanding, tolerant and forgiving of others and you will build happiness into your life. Don't blame others for your mistakes.

6. Learn to be a good loser.

Develop an attitude of having fun instead of being overly concerned with winning. Congratulate and praise others when they win — be a good loser.

7. Don't be flippant and scatterbrained.

Meet problems and obstacles as they arise. Take time to think things out. Learn to react slower, after you have had time to plan a course of action. Get your own mind in gear and make it produce — don't procrastinate. Get organized. Jot things down. Map out plans to solve problems. Set definite goals. Schedule your time instead of wasting it. Set priorities. Learn to say "NO." Think! Think! Think!

8. Select a mature female model (Proverbs 31).

Study others whom you consider a good example of maturity. Observe how they make decisions and conduct themselves. Make friends with serious-minded, Godfearing people.

9. Learn to think before you verbalize your feelings.

The idea of counting to ten before getting angry is not such a bad one. Sometimes we need a few moments to get our emotions in control before we say or do anything. Remember the scriptures on bridling the tongue. Often if you had thought first, many things would be left unsaid.

Learning to think before you act or speak provides another benefit. It teaches you to make quick decisions and reason rationally.

10. Learn to be flexible.

Ask yourself, "How can I get the results I want in a more constructive and uplifting way?" There are always alternatives. Break out of old patterns and the shop-worn ways you have always done things.

11. Don't be afraid to ask for help.

Ask someone who's a close friend to work with you and remind you when you are slipping into old, unwanted habits. For the "knottier" problems, seek counseling from someone you respect, trust and who is qualified.

12. Take control of your life and learn to be tolerant of others.

Don't think in terms of winning or losing in a confrontation — this is what a child does. Look for points to agree with others instead of voicing your differences. Teach yourself tolerance — accept human differences and limitations. Learn patience. Realize it takes time for human beings to see themselves. Be adaptable and willing to change. Learn to give in to others and not insist on your own way. Think self-control, and seek the best results. Pray about it, and God will help you.

V. WHAT DOES IT MEAN TO BE EMOTIONALLY MATURE?

- A. A simple definition of "mature" is having completed natural growth. A mature woman will display certain characteristics that are a joy to experience.
- B. Another definition is: The art of living in peace with that which we cannot change, the courage to change that which SHOULD be changed, and the wisdom to know the difference.
- C. Summary of characteristics that describe an emotionally mature woman:
  1. Composed.
  2. Reserved.
  3. Purposeful.
  4. Has sense of values.
  5. Goals defined.

6. Able to cope with crises.
7. Cultured and refined.
8. Able to control anger and settle differences.
9. Patient.
10. Determined.
11. Capable of facing unpleasantness and frustration.
12. Humble.
13. Joyful and happy.
14. Compassionate.

D. How to attain emotional maturity.

In all relationships, think of your emotional reactions and how you will affect other people. This behavior must be learned and developed. It is a change of attitude from a state of taking to a state of giving and sharing. It comes through godly knowledge, creative thinking, right decisions and strong self-discipline. Emotional maturity does not crucify or anesthetize emotions — it guides and controls them with right knowledge and true wisdom.

E. Plan now to grow in emotional maturity.

Determine the weak areas you need to overcome. Set goals and guidelines. Establish checkpoints for reevaluation along the way. Don't be discouraged if you occasionally slip and make mistakes — concentrate on the things you do right, and the many times you succeeded in mastering a situation. This will help you to gain confidence, pick up momentum, and eventually reach the fulfillment of your goals.

## VI. SUMMARY.

In essence, emotional maturity can be summed up in I Cor.13:4-7, in the Living Bible:

*"Love is very patient and kind, never jealous or envious, never boastful or proud; Never haughty or selfish or rude. Love does not demand its own way. It is not irritable or touchy. It does not hold grudges and will hardly even notice when others do it wrong. It is never glad about injustice, but rejoices whenever truth wins out. If you love someone you will be loyal to him no matter what the cost. You will always believe in him, always expect the best of him, and always stand your ground in defending him."*

Emotional maturity is learning to develop love to its fullest extent so that it becomes our chosen response — the automatic channel into which we divert the stream of all other human emotions.

NOTE: Special recognition and thanks must be given to the following people who helped me immeasurably in researching and writing this report: 1) Mrs. Gladys Sniffen; 2) Mrs. Donna Butler; 3) Mrs. Pam Stocker; 4) Mrs. Jeanne Kloster

## FLASH!

The following paragraph was just handed me by my secretary, Barbara Saye, after the final notes were typed:

"Two prominent psychiatrists, Glasser and Harrington, did a study of patients in a mental hospital, and came up with the following opinion:

*"There is no such thing as mental illness. These are people who have mastered the art of irresponsibility. They pass the buck to other people. There is a moment when they have an opportunity to choose their course of behavior. Some people are childlike, never having grown up. They must be taught to assume responsibility for their own behavior. When they start a tantrum, command them STOP THAT! YOU'RE ACTING CRAZY!"*

"Over 70% of the patients treated by Glasser and Harrington were able to be released from the mental hospital and return to a normal life within 17 months of treatment. They had been conditioned to assume responsibility for their own actions and reactions."

-END-

## CHAPTER 6

### **REAL CONVERSION** — **A Change In Looks or A Change In Outlook** **or "EXCEPT YE BE CONVERTED"**

"EXCEPT YE BE CONVERTED, and become as little children, YE SHALL NOT ENTER INTO THE KINGDOM OF HEAVEN (Matt. 18:3).

Jesus Christ left little doubt that conversion is a matter of life and death. Unless you are converted, you will never receive eternal life!

But what is conversion? Is it something a Christian can and must demonstrate in his or her life? Is it a sign of a true Christian?

#### THE SEARCH FOR OUTWARD SIGNS

Down through the centuries thousands of sincere individuals have sought the "conversion experience." They have tried to manifest it by inventing innumerable religious badges, signs, symbols and rituals.

Some change their dress, personal appearance, and diet. Others measure their conversion by the amount of good works performed and so spend years establishing orphanages, helping the poor, passing out food to derelicts on Skid Row — even knocking on doors and proselytizing neighbors. Still others express their conversion as soldiers for Christ by marching down main street while blowing a tuba or shaking a tambourine.

In short, much of what mankind has invented as Christian conduct to represent conversion is primarily visible and external.

#### CONVERSION NOT AN OUTWARD SHOW

The attitudes behind various "Christian endeavors" are no doubt sincere. And granted, Christianity is a way of life that produces many works and acts of service to mankind. But true conversion goes far deeper than physical works.

Concerning the self-righteous attitude and works of the Pharisees, Christ said: "Woe unto you, scribes and Pharisees, hypocrites! For ye make clean the OUTSIDE OF THE CUP AND OF THE PLATTER, but WITHIN they are full of extortion and excess. Thou blind Pharisee, cleanse first that which is WITHIN the cup and platter, that the OUTSIDE of them may be clean also. Woe unto you, scribes and Pharisees, hypocrites! For ye are like unto whited sepulchres, which indeed APPEAR BEAUTIFUL OUTWARD, but are WITHIN full of dead men's bones, and of all uncleanness. Even so ye also OUTWARDLY APPEAR RIGHTEOUS unto men, but WITHIN ye are full of hypocrisy and iniquity. Ye serpents, ye generation of vipers, HOW CAN YE ESCAPE THE DAMNATION OF HELL? (Matt. 23:25-28, 33).

If we are to believe Christ's own words, conversion involves more than outward looks and services. It involves a deep personal relationship with God. A relationship which actually develops God's mind and very character in us!

#### THE EXAMPLE OF CHRIST

Jesus Christ is the living example of what conversion is all about. He demonstrated the real meaning of conversion in those final hours before His death. With all the fervency of His being He prayed, "... Father, if Thou be willing, remove this cup from me; nevertheless, NOT MY WILL, but THINE, be done!" (Luke 22:42).

This attitude, THY WILL BE DONE, was the keynote of Christ's life — an attitude that will exist in

us, too, if we also are deeply converted. In all His actions and conduct, Christ continually expressed supreme loyalty and respect — a converted attitude — toward His Father.

Notice the attitude He expressed:

"Jesus saith unto them, My meat is to do the WILL OF HIM that sent me, and to finish His Work" (Jn. 4:34).

*"The Son can do nothing ... but what He seeth the Father do ... I can of mine own self do nothing ...*

*because I SEEK NOT MINE OWN WILL, but the WILL OF THE FATHER which hath sent me" (Jn. 5:19, 30).*

*"For I came down from heaven, not to do mine own will, BUT THE WILL OF HIM that sent me" (Jn. 6:38).*

*"I do nothing of myself, but as my Father hath taught me, I speak these things...I SEEK NOT MINE OWN GLORY...If I honor myself, my honor is nothing; it is my Father that honoureth me..." (Jn. 8:28, 50, 54)*

How apparent! Doing the will of God from the heart, above any personal desires or interests, was the real test of Christ's conversion.

## **TWO KINDS OF WILLS**

Jesus Christ knew, as He plainly taught, that there are two kinds of wills — God's will and self-will. That's why Christ said, Not my will, but thine, be done."

Human self-will is the direct opposite from the revealed will of God. It often takes the form of selfishness, greed, contempt for law, rebellion, and all the other characteristics of the carnal mind. Self-will is a combination of man's instinctive nature and Satan's spiritual influence. It runs the gamut from mild reluctance to open rebellion against God's law and government. As Paul wrote, "The carnal mind is enmity against God: for it is not subject to the law of God, neither indeed can be" (Rom. 8:7).

Jeremiah said, "The heart is DECEITFUL above all things, and desperately wicked: who can know it? (Jer. 17:9).

There probably is no other scripture that better describes the natural state of man. He is cunning, deceitful and wicked to the core.

The word "deceitful", the nature of man's heart, means "falsehood". Man is false, sneaky, hypocritical and vain — he cannot be trusted. He works the angles, looks out for his own self-interests, is tricky, subtle and mean. Manifold are the scriptures describing the evil heart of man.

God's desire for man, then, above all things is for him to repent of his wicked nature and THROUGH CONVERSION take on the true nature of Christ. He wants us to enter into a relationship with him of highest honor and integrity so that he can eventually trust us with power and eternal life.

Boiled down to a simple explanation, conversion is a wholesale return to God and complete turning away from sin. It occurs when man fully places God's will above his own and receives the Holy Spirit.

## **YOU MUST DENY YOURSELF**

Clearly, then, conversion is a process of dying to one's own will, his inherent carnal nature, and surrendering freely to God's will.

This is what Christ meant when He said, "...if any man will come after me, let him DENY himself and TAKE UP HIS CROSS DAILY, and follow me. For whosoever will LOSE his life for my sake, the same shall save it" (Luke 9:23-24).

In like manner, Paul admonished: "Lie not one to another, seeing that ye have PUT OFF THE OLD MAN (carnal self-will) with his deeds; and have put on THE NEW MAN (God's will — conversion) which is RENEWED in knowledge after the image of him that created him" (Col. 3:9-10). "And they that are Christ's have CRUCIFIED THE FLESH with the affections and lusts" (Gal. 5:24). Our self-will must die so that we can live to do God's will.

## **WHAT ARE YOU DOING ABOUT IT?**

What about it? Have you deeply repented and turned to God with your whole heart? Are you responding willingly and obediently to God's Word, and searching it daily for help in overcoming and growing?

Are you building a track record of being loyal, genuine and true to God even though you may sometimes suffer persecution, hardship and shame? Is your word good? Do you conscientiously keep your promises, commitments? CAN YOU BE TRUSTED? Are you converted or growing in that direction?

Or are there still dark and shady spots in your heart? Do you say one thing and mean another for personal advantage? Are there traces of guile, malice, duplicity and evil still lurking within? Are you placing the will of God above all things in your life?

You need to be sure, for I feel that not only your future reward, but also eternal life rests on the answer.

### **CONVERSION MUST BE MAINTAINED CONSTANTLY**

There will be instances in your life as you seek to live as Christ where you'll be tempted to revert to old habits and patterns — your own self-will. The fight will be painful and intense. Whether or not you win the battle and remain in right standing with God will depend on how closely you are walking with Him and the depth of your conversion.

To insure that your conversion remains constant and true, you must conscientiously bring every thought into subjection to the will of God and die to your own will daily. Solomon said: Be thou in the fear of the Lord ALL THE DAY long" (Prov. 23:17). And David admonished: "Blessed are they that keep judgment and HE THAT DOETH RIGHTEOUSNESS AT ALL TIMES" (Ps. 106:3).

In summary, conversion is a change in heart and attitude from a former life of rebellion, carnality and self-will to that of wholehearted obedience and surrender to the will of God.

Whose will are you following — yours or God's?

**-END-**





## CHAPTER 7

### **GENERAL GUIDELINES IN PREPARING FOR MARRIAGE**

#### I. OVERALL CONCEPTS AND APPROACHES

##### A. EIGHT POINTS

1. Prepare first and look to God to provide the right mate.
  - a. Exercise faith and stand by this principle.
  - b. Embark on a quality program of thorough preparation.
  - c. Make this your first priority.
  - d. Be patient and faithful — God will reward you richly in the end.
  - e. He will provide if you stand by His side.
  - f. Ps. 37:3-4 — *"Trust in the Lord, and do good; so shalt thou dwell in the land, and verily thou shalt be fed. Delight thyself also in the Lord; and he shall give thee the desires of thine heart."*
2. Study to understand your God-appointed role.
  - a. Realize that God had a specific purpose in creating the woman — to serve and be a helpmeet to the man.
  - b. To step out of this realm is contrary to God's divine plan and will lead to frustration, misery and condemnation.
  - c. Study the Bible until this point becomes firmly fixed in your mind.
  - d. Take special note of the following key scriptures defining your role.
 

1. <u>Gen. 2:18-24</u>	5. <u>Tit. 2:4-5</u>
2. <u>I Cor. 11:3, 7-9</u>	6. <u>I Cor. 14:34-35</u>
3. <u>Eph. 5:24-25, 33</u>	7. <u>I Pet. 3:1-6</u>
4. <u>I Tim. 2:9-13</u>	8. <u>Prov. 31:10-31</u>
  - e. All other physical functions of the woman come under, and are secondary to, this number one priority.  
*NOTE: It is to be assumed that the woman's first duty and calling is to serve God and be in His Kingdom. But on the physical plane, God specifically created her to be man's helpmeet and companion (as the above scriptures prove). All her other roles logically follow.*
3. Keep a notebook of ideas.
  - a. This could prove to be one of your best investments.
  - b. As you learn key lessons and pick up important concepts in preparing for marriage, record them in this notebook for reinforcement and future reference.
  - c. Do this quickly — while the iron is hot and the memory is fresh.
  - d. Since your notebook will not always be readily accessible, keep paper and pen handy to jot down thoughts and ideas. Transfer to your notebook later.
  - e. Reviewing this notebook regularly will aid you greatly in bringing important points into focus.
4. Seek the advice of older women.
  - a. This is in keeping with God's instruction in Titus 2:1-5.
  - b. Consider what a priceless storehouse of information they have to share.
  - c. It's yours free for the asking.
  - d. We have many such qualified women in the Church who would be glad to help.
5. Prepare yourself as though marrying Christ.
  - a. In effect, this is what Ephesians 5:22 implies.
  - b. This verse says, "Wives, submit yourselves unto your own husbands, as unto the Lord."

- c. Let this sobering thought sink deep into your heart and mind and truly live it in your everyday life.
- d. Prepare diligently and conscientiously for your future marriage with this spiritual focus in mind.
- 6. Strive to develop good judgment, wisdom and common sense.
  - a. One of the lofty characteristics of the virtuous woman is wisdom.
  - b. Prov. 31:26 says, "She openeth her mouth with wisdom...."
  - c. Make it your aim to pray for this priceless gift (Jas. 1:5).
  - d. Observe the example of others who have it.
  - e. Search it out as though you are looking for hidden treasure (Prov. 3:13-18).
  - f. To the degree that you acquire godly wisdom, good judgment and common sense, is the degree that you will build a successful marriage.
- 7. Develop the graces and virtues of Christian character.
  - a. Make it a goal to study the lives of the virtuous women of the Bible to see what made them holy, righteous and great in God's eyes.
  - b. Pray for God's Spirit and the ability to express His Word through your life as a refined, dignified and cultured lady.
  - c. Read and study again I Peter 3:1-6.
- 8. Prepare for motherhood.
  - a. This involves a wide scope of knowledge.
    - 1) Build up your health through proper nutrition and regular exercise.
    - 2) Become knowledgeable about childbirth.
    - 3) Start learning all you can about God's principles of childrearing.
  - b. Don't wait until you're married to acquire this vital information.
  - c. Develop a curiosity, sensitivity and consciousness in preparing as a potential future mother.

## II. PRACTICAL TIPS AND SUGGESTIONS

### A. SEVEN POINTS

1. Try to be free of debt.
  - a. If at all possible, avoid starting your marriage under heavy financial burdens.
  - b. If deep in debt, it would be wise to postpone marriage until you are financially solvent.
  - c. Don't become ensnared by the use of credit cards.
  - d. One of the major causes of divorce today is poor financial management and being in debt.
2. Make it a goal to have money in savings.
  - a. There will be many unexpected and hidden expenses that you will not anticipate.
  - b. Having disciplined yourself to put aside a savings will show your future husband that you are a wise steward of money.
3. Learn how to balance a checkbook and keep records.
  - a. This knowledge and experience will be a valuable asset to your husband.
  - b. Learn to keep records and receipts in a secure place for quick and ready reference.
4. Start building a dowry of basic essentials that can easily be stored.
  - a. This goal may apply more to after graduation than while in college.
  - b. Look for quality bargains on sale and at discount stores.
  - c. Examples may include: linens, blankets, cookware, Tupperware, etc.
  - d. This kind of initiative indicates that you are a responsible, thrifty and discriminating homemaker.
5. Develop orderly and tidy housekeeping habits.
  - a. Titus 2:5 says that a good wife should be a keeper of the home.
  - b. Although this means more than simple housekeeping, it certainly includes that duty.
  - c. Don't desecrate the sanctity of your marriage by becoming sloppy, dirty and illorganized in the way you keep your home.
  - d. Start now to develop these habits in your present living quarters so that they will carry over automatically into marriage.
  - e. You should never bring dishonor to your husband or children by being a sloppy housekeeper.
  - f. Practice Benjamin Franklin's philosophy — "a place for everything and everything in its place."

6. Experiment with new recipes and menus and develop cooking skills.
  - a. This kind of dedication and diligence will win a man's heart.
  - b. The time and skill that you put into your meals says "I care."
  - c. It also indicates that you are a master of your craft — a well-disciplined helpmeet.
  - d. With every opportunity you have, practice home cooking so as to develop skill and confidence.
7. Learn to be frugal by being creative.
  - a. In these inflationary times, pennies, dimes and quarters do count.
  - b. Study and search for ways to cut costs in all of your homemaking responsibilities.
  - c. All women's magazines run articles regularly on how to stretch the family budget.
  - d. Learn the art of making things with your hands rather than buying ready-made commodities.
    - 1) Curtains and drapes.
    - 2) Clothing
    - 3) Flower arrangements.
    - 4) Crocheting, knitting, etc.
    - 5) Baking.

### III. HOW TO ATTRACT THE RIGHT MAN.

#### a. POINTS

1. Work on grooming, appearance and making yourself attractive.
  - a. A woman's attire and appearance reveal her inner feelings and attitudes about herself.
  - b. These outward signs show whether she's well-bred, educated and knowledgeable of proper fashions.
  - c. Sloppy and careless grooming habits carry negative connotations to a man.
  - d. They imply carelessness, laziness and a lack of self-respect.
  - e. Your appearance is the first impression you make. Try always to make the best one you can.
2. Live the kind of life that will lead to self-respect.
  - a. Keep up your standards in the whole of your life.
  - b. Maintain a clean and pure conscience before God and man.
  - c. Make walking with God your supreme desire.
  - d. Practice the law of love — true agape love — until it becomes an ingrained habit.
  - e. Guilt and sin destroy self-respect.
  - f. Repent quickly, therefore, the moment you begin to stray.
  - g. Eph. 1:4 — *"According as he hath chosen us in him before the foundation of the world, that we should be holy and without blame before him in love."*
3. Learn how to show honor and be submissive.
  - a. This attitude is the hallmark of a virtuous woman.
  - b. When properly expressed, it will intensify and heighten a man's respect for you as a real lady.
  - c. Virtually all the key scriptures describing your role as a woman underscore the need to practice this attitude.
  - d. Notice Eph. 5.22-24 — *"Wives, submit yourselves unto your own husbands, as unto the Lord. For the husband is the head of the wife, even as Christ is the head of the church: and he is the savior of the body. Therefore as the church is subject unto Christ, so let the wives be to their own husbands in everything."*
  - e. Get into the habit of practicing submission so that it will carry over into your marriage.
  - f. If you are unsure of how to practice submission, seek counsel and ask God to reveal the answer.
4. Learn the art of giving encouragement and being supportive.
  - a. This is one of the most important areas of being a helpmeet.
  - b. It has been said, "A woman can make or break a man."
  - c. There's a great deal of truth to this.
  - d. A man wants and needs his wife by his side through thick and thin — through good times and tough times.
  - e. Enter into his life, thoughts and dreams — lend support when he needs you the most.
  - f. When he's down, discouraged or defeated, point him to God and express confidence in his ability to forge ahead.
  - g. Be strong, deny yourself and stand by him until death.

5. Develop emotional maturity and learn how to handle conflict.
  - a. Man's days are full of woes and tribulation (Job 14:1).
  - b. Satan is forever waging war against the saints.
  - c. One of the areas where he works most violently is in human relationships.
  - d. He creates strife and discord at every turn.
  - e. Be on guard! Resist these attitudes and urges.
  - f. Start practicing self-control and learn the delicate art of making peace.
  - g. Start fine tuning your life now so that you will know how to handle conflict in marriage should it arise.
6. Acquire a good sense of humor.
  - a. No one enjoys the company of a sourpuss.
  - b. Laughing with others (not at them) makes one personable, warm and friendly.
  - c. Learn to laugh at yourself in fun and lightheartedness.
  - d. Try to see the humorous side of situations — take things in stride.
  - e. Being able to appreciate clean and wholesome humor will enhance the quality of your personality.
7. Be positive and enthusiastic.
  - a. God's basic outlook and disposition is one of joy and good cheer (Ps. 16:11).
  - b. As a begotten child of God, you should radiate these same qualities.
  - c. Such an attitude is contagious.
  - d. Men by and large are highly attracted to this type of personality — not so much romantically but in giving them a sense of courage and motivation.
  - e. Make being positive a natural and spontaneous approach to life.
8. Build trust and responsibility into your life.
  - a. One of the most noble characteristics of the virtuous woman is that she is reliable and trustworthy.
  - b. Prov. 31:11 — "The heart of her husband doth safely trust in her...."
  - c. Keep your word; carry through with your commitments.
  - d. Jot down requests or little favors others may ask of you.
  - e. Establish a good reputation and build a solid name for yourself.
  - f. Prov. 22:1 — "*A good name is rather to be chosen than great riches, and loving favor rather than silver and gold.*"
9. Never marry a man you don't respect
  - a. This is not to say, "Disrespect him or treat him dishonorably."
  - b. It simply means, don't allow yourself to get involved with someone you have reservations about.
  - c. Make sure that he's deeply converted, supports the Work and lives God's way.
  - d. Also make sure that he's strong enough to lead you in right paths.
  - e. That he will make a good father and be a responsible provider.
  - f. Marry only someone you can look up to with deep love, admiration and awe.
  - g. Remember, your salvation may rest in part on the choice you make for a husband.

-END-

## CHAPTER 8

# **GOD'S APPROACH TO MAKING DECISIONS**

### INTRODUCTION

Each day is filled with a rash of decisions. YOU have to decide what time to get up, what to put on, what to eat, etc. However, it is the more important and bigger decisions that are really important — buying a car, going to college, being baptized, getting married, etc.

Unwise decisions can cause a great deal of unhappiness and frustration. They can sometimes take years to straighten out. To make right choices and wise decisions is not a matter of luck or chance. It is a matter of knowing and applying the keys that God has revealed.

Before delving into the mechanics of decision-making, let us first examine some overall spiritual principles. Unless God is a partner in every facet of your life, you will surely go wrong in the end.

Solomon admonished: "Trust in the Lord with ALL THINE HEART; and lean not unto thine own understanding. In ALL THY WAYS ACKNOWLEDGE HIM and He shall direct thy paths" (Prov. 3:5-6). By contrast, however, "The Lord is with you while ye be with Him; and if ye seek Him He will be found of you; BUT IF YE FORSAKE HIM, HE WILL FORSAKE YOU" (II Chron. 15:2).

How vital it is to keep God at the center and seek His divine guidance in the whole of your life. The moment you break away from Him in a spirit of pride, self-sufficiency, or independence, you are on the road to disaster.

### I. OVERALL PRINCIPLES:

#### A. NINE POINTS

1. Link every decision in your daily life to the Kingdom of God.
  - a. Keep your eye on the day of Christ's coming the day of the glorious resurrection.
  - b. Measure and weigh the value of every decision against the backdrop of the judgment.
  - c. Ask yourself, "Will this decision help me to grow, overcome and build character?"
  - d. Will it add to the quality of my spiritual life or detract from it?
  - e. Make sure every decision leads you in the direction of God's Kingdom.
2. Continually walk with God and keep in tune with His Spirit.
  - a. When God is in all your thoughts and you are tuned into His wave-length, your chances of making a right decision have increased a hundredfold.
  - b. You have the benefit of God's direct intervention leading you to see the right answer.
  - c. God's Spirit will work to inspire your mind with clarity of thought and understanding.
  - d. Eph. 1:16-19 — *"Cease not to give thanks for you, making mention of you in my prayers, That the God of our Lord Jesus Christ, the Father of glory, may give unto you the spirit of wisdom and revelation in the knowledge of him: THE EYES OF YOUR UNDERSTANDING BEING ENLIGHTENED; that ye may know what is the hope of his calling, and what the riches of the glory of his inheritance in the saints, And what is the exceeding greatness of his power to usward who believe, according to the working of his mighty power."*
3. Fill Your mind with the total Word of God.
  - a. The Bible is a complete book touching on every facet of human life and conduct.
  - b. It contains truths and principles that answer any problem you may encounter.
  - c. The more of God's word you have mastered, the more apt you will make the right decision.
  - d. The key is to so fill your mind with God's word that when called on to make a decision, the appropriate scriptures will leap into your mind.
  - e. 2 Tim. 3:16-17 — *"All scripture is given by inspiration of God, and is PROFITABLE for doctrine, for reproof, for correction, for INSTRUCTION in righteousness: That the man of God may be perfect, THOROUGHLY FURNISHED unto all good works."*

4. Make "Thy will, not mine be done" a constant way of life.
  - a. In truly seeking God's will in all your undertakings, you stir His heart to guide and direct you.
  - b. Your chances of succeeding are multiplied many fold when you earnestly look to Him to show you what is right.
  - c. Ps. 37:4-5 — *"Delight thyself also in the Lord; and he shall give thee THE DESIRES OF THINE HEART. Commit thy way unto the Lord; trust also in him; and HE SHALL BRING IT TO PASS."*
5. Have the courage to accept God's answer.
  - a. The wheels of God grind slowly — He doesn't always answer immediately or give you what you want.
  - b. He sees a bigger picture in your life than you do and knows what's best in the end.
  - c. Be patient and content in your circumstances until all the pieces fall into place.
  - d. A temporary "no" from God may be compared to the example of a plane sitting on a runway awaiting takeoff. God is the traffic controller in the tower who sees the dangers all around not visible to the pilot in the plane. Only when it is clear and safe for takeoff will God give approval.
  - e. Don't be discouraged with the "holding patterns" you may encounter in life — be confident that God is imminently in charge!
  - f. Prov. 16:3 — *"Commit thy works unto the Lord, and thy thoughts shall be established."*
6. Realize that God requires you to make decisions in order to grow and build character.
  - a. Learning how to think by using the Bible and incorporating God's mind is essential to spiritual maturity.
  - b. God does not want you to be a spiritual robot, dullard or simpleton.
  - c. God has endowed you with the power to choose He requires you to use it, but according to His will.
  - d. Realize that decision-making and its consequences ultimately rests with you.
  - e. Don't expect someone to tell you what to do as when you were a child.
  - f. Be willing to face your problems and decisions squarely.
    1. You can't be an ostrich and expect a decision to take care of itself.
    2. Realize that you can't sit on the fence either — vacillating back and forth.
    3. You must take positive action.
  - g. James 1:6, 8 — *"But let him ask in faith, nothing wavering. For he that wavereth is like a wave of the sea driven with the wind and tossed. A double minded man is unstable in all his ways."*
  - h. Deut. 30:19 — *"I call heaven and this day against you, that I have earth to record set before you life and death, blessing and cursing; therefore choose life, that both thou and thy seed may live."*
7. Realize that decision-making requires action and follow-through.
  - a. You must, with God's help, learn to control and regulate your life.
  - b. Growth demands affirmative action and discipline.
  - c. Set your will toward a pre-set goal and forge ahead until you reach it.
  - d. Allow no barrier, roadblock or temporary failure to stand in the way or discourage you.
  - e. Luke 9:62 — *"And Jesus said unto him, No man, having put his hand to the plough, and looking back, is fit for the kingdom of God."*
8. Learn and heed if you make an occasional wrong decision.
  - a. Possibly you didn't have all the facts and judged the situation prematurely.
  - b. Perhaps emotions or personal drive, ambition and desire influenced you.
  - c. Maybe you deceived yourself into thinking you knew God's will in the matter when in reality your motives were self-seeking.
  - d. Whatever the circumstance, glean wisdom from the experience and profit from it.
9. Trust in God with all your heart and He will bless YOU in the end.
  - a. If you lean on Him in perfect faith, He will prevent you from making a fatal mistake.
  - b. He will in most cases make a wrong decision turn out right.
  - c. The key is to pray and wait patiently until you're confident of His will.
  - d. Don't carnally convince yourself you're right — prepare, pray and persevere.
  - e. Remember the example of Job, who after much suffering, was bountifully blessed in the end.
  - f. Rom 8:28 — *"And we know that all things work together for good to them that love God, to them who are the called according to his purpose."*

## II. THE SYSTEMATIC METHOD OF SOLVING PROBLEMS AND MAKING DECISIONS.

### A. TEN PROCEDURES

1. When faced with a decision, the first thing to do is to go to God in prayer.
  - a. This should always be your first desire and motivation.
  - b. Never try to go it alone — look to God to help and guide you.
  - c. Consider Him your invisible, earthly counselor and companion in all your earthly ventures.
  - d. Expect Him to intervene to show you His will — seek to please Him first.
  - e. Remember: *"In all thy ways acknowledge Him, and He shall direct thy paths"* (Prov. 3:6).
2. Identify the problem and write it down on paper.
  - a. Your exact problem may be vague and fuzzy until you boil it down and put it in clear focus.
  - b. Writing it down forces you to think clearly, succinctly and precisely.
  - c. Is it a simple problem or one with two or three parts? If they are related — show how!
  - d. Define! Identify! Simplify!
  - e. Get a handle on what it is you're asked to decide.
3. List the obstacles that are preventing you from solving it.
  - a. This requires honest searching — but have the courage to do it.
  - b. First, list the known and obvious factors.
  - c. Then search deeper for hidden reasons.
  - d. Are you trying to shirk responsibility? or afraid to face reality?
  - e. Are you simply procrastinating or are there valid reasons for the delay?
  - f. Are you mentally lazy and loathe to exert the energy?
  - g. Make this effort a real challenge and don't despair until you've exhausted every reason or possibility.
4. List the advantages and positive benefits in solving the problem.
  - a. Be realistic — don't put down dreamy-eyed hopes or possibilities.
  - b. Don't delude yourself with wishful thinking or imagined blessings — be certain they're based on fact.
  - c. On the other hand, don't allow doubt and fear to blind you to the advantages and assets that are true and real.
  - d. The key is to make sure your list is well thought out and valid.
  - e. Writing down all the positive benefits will motivate you to action.
5. Search out and list as many possible solutions as you can think of.
  - a. Spend enough time to think this through.
  - b. As in all the above steps, you've got to apply your mind and dig down deep.
  - c. The more possibilities or options you uncover, the closer you will come to finding the right answer.
  - d. A clear solution will begin to emerge when you examine all the facts.
6. Try to see the end result of each solution.
  - a. Look beyond the temporary benefits or rewards — consider the impact or end result.
  - b. Envision what it would be like to achieve the solution — see yourself having arrived and winning the victory.
  - c. In other words, as far as possible, capture a complete overview.
  - d. Retrace your steps until you have considered all avenues and see the problem in its entirety.
7. Throughout this exercise, let the Bible be your guide.
  - a. In addition to looking to God, think on His Word.
  - b. Search for and meditate on Bible principles that will give you wisdom and insight.
  - c. Think of all the scriptures that would apply in this given situation.
  - d. Examine your motives — are you honest with God and yourself?
  - e. Are you really putting His will and word first? or looking for a reason to justify your action?
8. If you are making a major decision, seek expert advice.
  - a. If the decision involves a spiritual matter, go to God's true servants for help.
  - b. Don't spare — open up and tell the complete story.
  - c. The advice they give you will be in proportion to the facts you give them.

- d. In other areas of life, you may want to consult the experts who are skilled in their special fields of endeavor.
- e. Again the key is to clearly establish the pros and cons before moving ahead.
- 9. In formulating an answer ask yourself, "How would Jesus Christ decide?"
  - a. Christ always put His Father's will first.
  - b. This does not mean to imply that your decisions must always be negative or that God's will is usually contrary to what you desire.
  - c. It does mean, however, that you have dutifully weighed and considered Christ's example and tried to determine the course He would take.
  - d. If your basic motive is pure and God-fearing, the majority of your decisions will have God's blessings.
  - e. Decide the way you sincerely think Christ would and you'll be right most of the time.
- 10. Step out in faith and make the decision.
  - a. Having gone through the above steps, gotten the facts, prayed to God and slept on the matter, it's time to decide.
  - b. You've done all you can — your perspective is hopefully clear.
  - c. What's left is decisive action and follow-through.
  - d. Stick with it — don't falter or give in to despair.
  - e. You may have to adjust your plans along the way when unforeseen problems arise.
  - f. Keep looking to God and He will see you through.

*Note: Credit is to be shared with the Earl Nightingale Program (No. 100) for some of the above points Section II.*

### III. HOW YOU CAN KNOW GOD'S WILL

In order to make a right decision, we should strive to know the will of God. Eph 5:17 states that we can know what God's will is. "Wherefore be ye not unwise, but understanding what the WILL of the Lord is."

Rest assured that God's will is always right and best for us regardless of the way circumstances appear.

We must remember that God can see the overall picture. He knows what the future holds and can direct our lives accordingly. We must always trust Him with the outcome even though we might choose a different way.

Knowing then that we should base our decisions on God's will, how can we know what His will is?

#### A. WAYS THAT GOD REVEALS HIS WILL

##### 1. The primary way God reveals His will is through His Word, the Bible.

- a. The Bible is God's revelation to man His instruction book for us.
- b. The whole Word of God is His will for all of mankind.
- c. God gives us hundreds of promises in the Bible and among them is His commitment to guide and direct us in making wise decisions.
- d. His Word contains many principles that are designed to aid us in the decision making process.

##### e. Examples:

1. What should you do as a young baptized member if you are seriously contemplating marriage to someone who is unconverted?

II Cor. 6:14 — "Be ye not unequally yoked together with unbelievers: for what fellowship hath righteousness with unrighteousness? and what communion hath light with darkness?"

2. What should you do if a friend wants to borrow money from you to invest in a business venture?

Prov. 22:26 — "Be not thou one of them that strike hands, or of them that are sureties for debts."

Prov. 6:1-2 — "My son, if thou be surety for thy friend, if thou hast stricken thy hand with a stranger, Thou art snared with the words of thy mouth, thou art taken with the words of thy mouth."

3. Suppose you, a young woman, have been offered a job as a model at a fashionable department store, but one of the items you must model is a bikini. Should you take it?



1 Tim. 2:9-10 — "In like manner also, that women adorn themselves in modest apparel, with shamefacedness and sobriety: not with broided hair, or gold, or pearls, or costly array; But (which becometh women professing godliness) with good works. "

4. Maybe you've been offered the opportunity to get into the acting field. Should you accept it?

What kind of parts will you be asked to play? Will cursing and profaning God's name ever be part of your lines? Will the Sabbath be a problem? What about sexual overtones or involvement with someone else's mate? Will your life and mind become so absorbed in a fairy tale, makebelieve world (a pretense of being something you are not) that you violate the principle of the ninth commandment? Ex. 20:16.

2. Another way that we can know God's will is by counseling with His ministers.

a. One of the main jobs of the ministry is to counsel and advise.

Eph. 4:11-12 — "And he gave some, apostles; some, prophets; and some, evangelists; and some, pastors and teachers; For the perfecting of the saints, for the work of the ministry, for the edifying of the body of Christ."

b. Because of their training and experience, the ministry has a better overview of the Bible and how it applies in a practical way.

c. Because they are older spiritually, the ministry can glean principles from the Bible revealing God's will in most situations.

3. By getting all the facts and using common sense, you can, in most cases, determine God's will.

a. The facts usually speak for themselves and show you what route to take.

b. The key is to be sure that you've taken enough time to thoroughly do your homework.

c. Example: You've been wanting to purchase an expensive stereo unit for your home. A major department store is liquidating its stock and is selling a top name brand at 50% off. But you've just learned that your wife is pregnant and the hospital bill will deplete your reserves. In spite of the fact that it's an excellent buy, common sense shows that you should wait.

4. God may open doors to reveal His will.

a. When we have been diligently praying about a decision, God will often intervene to show us the answer.

b. This might involve an exciting new job with higher pay, travel opportunity, or a business breakthrough, etc.

c. "The key is to fervently pray and trust Him in faith.

Matt. 7:7 — "Ask, and it shall be given you; seek, and ye shall find; KNOCK, AND IT SHALL BE OPENED UNTO YOU:"

d. God may even open several doors, but leaves it to us to decide which option to take.

e. The point to be emphasized is that God will often show us His will by directly creating a new opportunity and leading us to it.

5. God may use natural circumstances to show us what we should do.

a. This He may achieve through the natural course of events.

b. Example: Perhaps you are a college student trying to decide whether to go home for the summer. You've been offered a very good job, but you are in doubt whether it's wise to take part of your savings for the plane ticket. You pray about the matter and ask God to help you decide. You're still debating the question when one day at lunch, you happen to sit down next to a friend from your local church area. He is planning to drive home for the summer, and invites you to go along. God has used a normal circumstance to answer your prayer and help you make the decision.

6. God reveals His will through direct revelation or inspiration.

a. Sometimes when we are praying and thinking through a problem, the answer suddenly becomes clear in our mind.

b. God has used His Holy Spirit to bring the answer to light.

c. At other times, God may flash the solution into our mind when we're least expecting it.

d. The important thing is to be certain that we're on God's wave-length so that He can effectively work in our lives.

7. God can put certain doubts in our minds to prevent us from making a wrong decision.
  - a. We may think we have arrived at a right conclusion, but for no apparent reason we keep having nagging doubts.
  - b. This could be God's way of warning us of a danger or mistake that only He can perceive.
  - c. When this happens we should reconsider or evaluate the situation until our doubts are resolved.
  - d. Example: An uneasy feeling keeps haunting you about a cross-country automobile trip you had planned to make with some friends. You declined to go only to learn that they were involved in a serious accident.
8. Sometimes God reveals His will only after we have prayed continually over a long period.
  - a. God may test our faith and our patience to see if we're for real.
  - b. He may also want to determine our true motives for asking.
  - c. We must be persistent until God answers.  
Luke 18:1-7 — the example of the importuning widow.  
Ps. 37:7 — "*Rest in the Lord, and wait patiently for him; ....*"  
Ps. 40:1 — "*I waited patiently for the Lord, and he inclined unto me, and heard my cry.*"
9. Sometimes we are forced into making an emergency decision on without a clear knowledge of God's will.
  - a. In such a circumstance our only safe stand is to ask, "How would Christ decide?"
  - b. Rom. 14:23 — "*...for whatsoever is not of faith is sin.*"
  - c. When this kind of situation arises, we must decide in faith and look to God for His guidance, deliverance and protection.
  - d. Usually, at some point during the crisis, God's will is made clear.
10. God at other times reveals His will by eliminating all other options.
  - a. God closes some doors but opens others.
  - b. He intervenes in circumstances to bring His will about.
  - c. Example: You have applied for two different jobs and been accepted for both. Each offers equal advantages. It is a difficult decision. Then one of the employers calls to inform you that the company can no longer offer you the job because of budgetary cuts. Clearly, God has shown you the right answer.

#### B. GOD'S OVERALL WILL ULTIMATELY TO BE MADE KNOWN

1. In 95% of the cases we can know what God's will is — if we trust Him in perfect faith and have patience.
2. There are rare instances, however, where God's dealings are not always clear. Example: Allowing a church member to die prematurely, permitting a serious accident that impairs one's health for life, permitting one's house and furnishings to be burned, etc.
3. Because God has perfect character and cannot sin, we must conclude that everything He allows is for a purpose.
4. He is in total control of all laws and has all power over Satan — nothing can hinder or thwart His plan.
5. In these few perplexing cases, we must believe in God's great wisdom and commit our lives to Him in complete surrender.
6. Ultimately, some day we will understand.
7. Heb. 13:5 — "*...for He hath said, I will never, leave thee, nor forsake thee.*"
8. Matt. 28:20 — "*...and, lo, I am with you alway, even unto the end.*"

-END-

## **CHAPTER 9**

### **GOD'S GREAT PURPOSE FOR THE WOMAN**

*When God created the woman, He had in mind a greater and nobler purpose for her than what is commonly known. You'll be surprised to see in your Bible what God's attitude is toward the woman, and the beautiful role He intends for her to play!*

Ask the average woman in God's Church what she thinks her role is in this physical life, and she'll probably say: "To get married, have children, obey my husband, and look after the home." In other words, she views her calling as that of a mother and wife whose primary responsibility is to do physical work and serve the needs of the family!

Now, obviously these basic duties are absolutely necessary and required — they are bedrock and foundational! But in too many cases, the modern-day woman in God's Church has drawn her circle of usefulness far too small. Much more is allowed! Much more is expected! Not that she should neglect or detract from these essential responsibilities in pursuit of outside interests — but that a great deal more is to be added to her life if she's to reach the fullest potential that God intends!

#### **WOMAN IS DESIGNED DIFFERENTLY**

It's no accident that a woman is designed as she is! There's a reason why God fashioned her differently from a man — why she is appealing and gloriously beautiful in his eyes. Why she was created with a unique capacity for insight, common sense and understanding that he needs and should deeply appreciate. Yes, God created the woman to fulfill a beautiful and significant purpose — and she'll never be happy nor successful until she discovers what it is. I'd like to discuss that wonderful purpose with you in this article, and show the ways you can achieve it now.

#### **WHY WERE YOU BORN?**

We understand the basic truth that God wants all human beings ultimately to become spirit-born sons or daughters in His universe ruling family. That's the ultimate reason why we were born. But, why were YOU born as WOMEN? There is a wonderful purpose involved!

To answer this question, let's go back to the beginning and analyze the reason WHY woman was originally created. Genesis 2:19-20 states: "And out of the ground the Lord God formed every beast of the field and every fowl of the air; and brought them to Adam to see what he would call them: and whatsoever Adam called every living creature, that was the name thereof. And Adam gave names to all...but for Adam there was not found a help meet for him."

From this brief account, God gives the reason for the existence of the woman. Although Adam searched among the creatures God had made, there was none that could fill his needs and longings for companionship. He experienced a deep void in his life — he was lonely and incomplete. An element necessary to his success and well-being was missing. HE NEEDED SOMEONE LIKE HIMSELF. Even God noticed and said, "It is not good that thee be alone; I will make AN HELP MEET (suitable) for him ..." (Gen. 2:18).

"And the Lord God caused a deep sleep to fall upon Adam, and he slept: and he took one of his ribs, and closed up the flesh instead thereof; And the rib, which the Lord God had taken from man, made he a woman, and brought her unto the man. And Adam said, This is now bone of my bones, and flesh of my flesh: she shall be called Woman, because she was taken out of Man. Therefore shall a man leave his father and his mother, and shall cleave unto his wife: and they shall be one flesh" (Gen. 2:21-24).

### **CREATED TO HELP THE MAN**

So our first clue in understanding the role of a woman is that SHE WAS CREATED SPECIFICALLY TO ASSIST THE MAN as his companion and helpmeet. She was designed to fill a tremendous need in his life — a need that no other creature could fulfill. She was made for him — and God intended that she be supremely happy in this position. The Apostle Paul confirmed the fact that woman was made for man in I Corinthians 11, verses 8-9: "For the man is not of the woman; but the woman of the man. Neither was the man created for the woman, BUT THE WOMAN FOR THE MAN."

Thus, the woman was originally created for the man to fill a very great need in his life.

Later in this article we will expand how magnificent and lofty this calling really is and how that God expects immensely greater things from her than just "changing diapers, and washing dishes."

### **GOD'S PLAN TO BE JOINTLY SHARED**

But let's now notice some other aspects of the woman's role in Genesis 1:28: "And God blessed them, and God said unto them, be fruitful and multiply and replenish the earth, and subdue it, and have dominion...."

Note this carefully! These words were spoken to BOTH the man and the woman. They weren't given to the man alone — God's plan was a joint venture and the woman was to figure significantly into the purpose God had in mind.

Take the command to "multiply and replenish the earth." How could the man obey these instructions without the aid of the female sex? He could engender offspring, but he certainly could not produce children, nor bring them into the world. No! It was to the woman that God gave this part of the command. Not only was she responsible for bearing children, but also for nurturing them and giving them most of their early training and guidance. Frankly, the very existence of the human race continues BECAUSE of the all-important work and role of the woman! Her function becomes immensely more important when we consider that mankind — her offspring — is destined to become sons of God.

Thus, as the scriptures show, man alone could not do the job. He needed a helper, someone to work WITH HIM and assist him in achieving the goals God had given them both. As the Apostle Peter later described the relationship between husband and wife, man and woman are "HEIRS TOGETHER of the grace of life". (I Peter 3:7).

Being a woman is a position of HONOR and RESPECT! And, God wants her to realize the importance of her goals, her destiny — and work toward them in her life!

### **POSITIONS OF AUTHORITY**

Because God is a God of order and organization, He has established a system of government between man and woman. And, in His wisdom God has decreed that man is to be over the woman in authority, as a general rule of life. The law of nature and common sense further substantiates this point. The man is taller in stature, has broad shoulders, has heavier bone structure and muscular build. The woman, by contrast, is smaller, more delicate and tender, and by biblical definition is called the "weaker vessel." By virtue of stature and physical appearance, then, the man is visibly stronger than the woman and over her in power and authority.

This does not mean that she is inferior to the man, that she is to be a "slave" or "doormat" for him to walk on, or to be subservient to a chauvinistic tyrant.

But, she is to be in subjection to her head, and to be a helper to him as they both work toward mutual destinies! "But I would have you know, that the head of every man is Christ; and THE HEAD OF THE WOMAN IS THE MAN; and the head of Christ is God" (I Cor. 11:3).

This is one reason why women are to have longer hair than men: as a sign of their loyalty and subjection to the man whom God has placed over them. (I Cor. 11:9-10) It is a symbol of willing obedience and reverence — based on a deep relationship of love — and acts as a sign that even the angels can respect! "If a woman have long hair, IT IS A GLORY TO HER; for her hair is given her for a covering" (v. 15).

The woman who has such an attitude of submissiveness, who is joyfully being a HELPER to her husband, is a GLORY to him! "The woman is the GLORY of the man" (v. 7).

The deeply converted woman who understands God's will, wants to be ruled over — but with love, gentleness and understanding. When a man fails to exercise his role as the head, he brings frustra-

tion and discouragement to his wife, oftentimes causing her to step into an authoritative and arrogant role that's unnatural to her mind and into a position that God never intended!

### **WHAT IT MEANS TO BE SUBMISSIVE**

In Ephesians 5:22-24 God emphasizes the ATTITUDE a true, mature Christian woman should have:

*"Wives, submit yourselves unto your own husbands, AS UNTO THE LORD. For the husband is the head of the wife, even as Christ is the head of the Church; and He is the saviour of the body. Therefore as the Church is subject unto Christ, so let the wives be to their own husbands in every thing."*

Being submissive means being actively concerned about her husband and responsive to his wishes, needs and suggestions. It has more to do with an attitude of service and respect than just reacting mechanically and coldly to his commands. There should be a sense of eagerness and spontaneity in the way she fits in with his plans and tries to make his decisions work.

Being submissive does not mean a woman can't make suggestions herself, offer advice and help her husband see his faults. Nor does it mean she must put up with continual physical or verbal abuse. It does mean that she should do everything within her power to fulfill her role as a wife the way God commands and in a spirit that will inspire her husband to his greatest heights. Proper feminine submissiveness shows itself in humility, warmth, and a deep inner calm. When practiced the way God intends, it's a quality that will elevate her to a new realm that all people will admire and want to emulate.

1 Peter 3:4 further explains the type of submissive attitude a Christian woman will have: let the primary adorning be that of "the hidden man of the heart, in that which is not corruptible, even the ornament of a meek and quiet spirit, which is in the sight of God a great price."

Think of it! God plainly says that this submissive quality is of great price to Him. The woman who is deeply converted and obeys her Creator willingly from the heart shows it in her life. Her whole being radiates a glow, charm and charisma that others can readily see. They are attracted to the attributes of God's very nature working in her.

A meek woman, for example, doesn't retaliate when offended or hurt. She doesn't sulk or pout. She doesn't "bad mouth" her offenders or stir up discord. Instead, she strives for peace.

Experience has taught that ladies who have fulfilled this rich, rewarding life as a mother and wife — being submissive, responsive and positive minded toward their husbands, families and others, are the ones who become the type of person mentioned by Peter. Often it is the ones who are proud and vain, stubborn and resistant, selfish and unkind who become grouchy, frustrated and miserable in their behavior and outlook!

### **A CALLING OF SERVICE**

Yes, God has called women to a role of submissiveness, honor and respect to man as their head. But, really, we are ALL — whether men or women — under authority in one way or another. And, ultimately each one of US is under authority to God The Father — even Jesus Christ. God has organized His creation in this fashion to prepare US for our grand destiny in eternity! Ephesians 5:21 says, "SUBMITTING yourselves ONE TO ANOTHER in the fear of God." Note that husbands and wives are to submit to other IN LOVE. When both truly love each other, they are less concerned about authority as they are with serving each other.

God shows that woman has a GRAND calling, just as glorious as given to any man — and that it involves the attitude of being a servant — a helper in fulfilling God's Plan — just as Jesus Christ Himself. "Let this mind be in you, which was also in Christ Jesus: Who being in the form of God, made self no reputation, and took upon Him the form of a SERVANT" (Phil. 2:5).

God shows that the women of old whom He loved and honored had this kind of attitude: "Even Sarah obeyed Abraham, calling him lord: Whose daughters YOU are, as long as you do well" (1 Peter 3:6) Also, the very mother of Jesus expressed an attitude of willing service before God. When told of God's intent for her in her life, she responded, "Behold the handmaid of the Lord; be it unto me ACCORDING TO THY WORD" (Luke 1:38).

It is through a spirit of meekness and humility that women are called to a position of honor and service. And, those who humbly and willingly seek to do God's will and follow His plan of government can expect to receive a great reward in His family.

### **THE FANTASTIC GOALS OF WOMANHOOD**

God wants each woman to realize her greatest potential even in this life now. Notice the richness, depth and purpose which God gives to the calling of true womanhood, as described by the Apostle Paul in Ephesians 5:

*"Husbands, love your wives, even as Christ also loved the Church, and gave Himself for it that He might sanctify and cleanse it with the washing present it to Himself a glorious church, such thing; but that it should be holy of water by the Word, that He might not having spot, or wrinkle, or, any and without blemish" (v. 25-27).*

These words hold a tremendous lesson for US as to what God has in mind for women in His Church to achieve!

If Jesus Christ had selected a physical woman for a wife when He was on earth, what kind of woman would He have chosen? No doubt He would have been very circumspect and careful. Probably He would have chosen a woman like Mary or Elizabeth, or some other great woman of the Bible. He would not have selected a wife who was immature, careless in her conduct or example, or who was flighty, feisty, spoiled and selfish. He would have chosen a very fine, upstanding, intelligent woman in every respect.

Yet, notice what Christ's attitude is toward His future wife, the Church — the figurative woman He plans to marry: "...that He might present it to Himself (this figurative woman) a **GLORIOUS** church, not having spot or wrinkle, or any such thing; but that it should be holy and without blemish" (Eph. 5:27).

Christ's desire for her, as illustrated by this scripture, is that she become a **BETTER PERSON** even above what He originally found in her! He is going to elevate her, edify her, lift her to a higher realm of culture and beauty — encourage her total development!

Christ's wish for His future wife (and all women) is that in her relationship of **LOVE** to Him she develop her highest talents and abilities, but always in submission and respect to His headship.

Obviously, this is not the role of a "slave" or "doormat."

So, we can see that God's design for a woman is not that she be confined solely to the house, or just caring for the children and day-to-day routine things. **THERE IS MORE TO LIFE THAN JUST THE PHYSICAL ASPECTS!** Of course, such responsibilities are vital and are to be given **FIRST PRIORITY** — but she **CAN** and **SHOULD** go beyond these areas in attaining higher levels of maturity, growth and usefulness. She should be continually developing her mind so that she can give wise counsel to her husband and be an interesting conversationalist — adding color, life, zest and wisdom to the total family environment!

Remember the original charge given at creation, Genesis 1:28? The command to "multiply and replenish the earth" (which involves marriage, establishing the home, caring for the children) was given to **BOTH** sexes! And, the charge to "subdue" the earth and "have dominion" (which involves rulership, growth, expansion, etc.) was **ALSO** given to **BOTH** the man and the woman!

It's obvious that God wants both husbands and wives to grow together and to encourage each other's complete and total development in all His ways.

### **LESSONS FROM PROVERBS 31**

When you look at Proverbs 31 you see the kind of woman Christ wants His bride to become. He breaks down and lists the **MANY** things a woman can do even outside the routine chores of housework.

Let's look at this passage in Proverbs 31 and learn from it. It has been preserved in the Bible for 3,000 years and is **INSPIRED OF GOD** to help the woman of today grasp and understand the type of life she should be living.

Beginning in verse 10 God calls attention to the **TREMENDOUS** value of the "**VIRTUOUS**" woman. He shows how she buoys up, strengthens and encourages her husband (verse 11).

This passage also shows how the Christian woman **WORKS** toward building her family — and, **HOW SHE SHOULD HAVE THE RIGHT KIND OF INITIATIVE AND CONFIDENCE** in certain types of business matters.

Verse 14: "She brings food from afar." In many areas wholesome foods are not readily available and these must be sought out and ordered from many different sources.

Verse 16: "She considers a field and buyeth it: with the fruit of her hands she planteth a vineyard (garden)." Obviously, this kind of woman has developed experience and proficiency in the business world. She has good sense and judgment, and can perceive a good bargain. She raises foodstuff for her family, and lays some in store for winter. She is a **THINKING** person, frugal, but not selfish.

Verses 17-22 show that a Godly woman will also be hard-working and **INDUSTRIOUS**. She provides appropriate clothing for her family, either by sewing it herself or carefully shopping for good buys. She puts money aside for family emergencies. But these verses also show that she should reserve time for personal development. She should continue her education by reading and keeping her mind stimulated with new ideas and concepts. She might even try her hand at poetry, music, art or other creative outlets. Even the husband will benefit from all these endeavors, because they will spark ideas in her mind which will **HELP HIM** in his job or outside activities!

Verses 25-26: "STRENGTH and HONOR are her clothing; and she shall rejoice in time to come. She openeth her mouth with WISDOM; and in her tongue is the LAW OF KINDNESS." These verses give weight to the magnificent purpose for which she was created! And, they indicate that she should continue to grow and develop her character and personality in the process!

The Apostle Paul also refers to the fundamental duties in Titus 2:3-4 where he discusses how that older women can impart wisdom to younger ones: *"The aged women likewise, that they be in behaviour as becometh holiness...teachers of good things; that they may teach the young women to be sober, to love their husbands, to love their children, to be discreet, chaste, keepers at home, good, obedient to their own husbands, that the Word of God be not blasphemed."*

Yes, a women should be able to cook meals, wash dishes, keep the house looking neat, clean and attractive and look after the children — but she should also go beyond these primary things in rounding out and completing her life. In fact, God wants her to.

True Christian womanhood is a position of **GREAT HONOR**! A woman has been designed by God to fill out a part of man's life that he doesn't have — both physically, emotionally and mentally! She is a complement to him. Together man and woman make a complete whole — "one flesh" as the Bible says! Man needs and hungers for the **COMPLETENESS** which only the woman can provide!

### **THERE IS YET ANOTHER ROLE**

Let's now consider another question which puts the capstone on the entire subject: Why should a woman want to improve her life, to upgrade her personality and character? Is it to compete with men, to prove to others she can succeed, to gain personal esteem and recognition — or to make the best use of this physical life?

Or, is there a **GREATER, TRANSCENDENT** reason?

In I Corinthians 7:16 the Apostle Paul made a profound statement concerning what the woman's influence can accomplish when rightly channeled: *"For what knowest thou, o wife, whether thou shalt SAVE thy husband?"*

Again the Apostle states: *"For the unbelieving husband is SANCTIFIED else were your children unclean; but now are they HOLY" (I Cor. 7:14).*

Moreover, I Peter 3:1-2 states: *"Likewise, ye wives, be in subjection to your own husbands; that, if any obey not the word, they also may without the word be won by the conversation of the wives; While they behold your chaste conversation coupled with fear."*

The powerful implication of these scriptures is that the conduct, example, love and true concern expressed by a Christian woman can have an **IMPACT** on how another person **RESPONDS** to the truth of God — just as is true in the case of a man.

This is a concept of far-reaching importance.

A Christian woman should not cultivate all the traits and qualities heretofore described — just for herself. She must realize that through her God-fearing example, and the development of righteous, feminine character, she can influence the **SALVATION** of others — members of her own family, her husband, as well as others with whom she has contact in society.

Think of what she can accomplish with her life if she fulfills her role the way God has ordered — to allow the living God to live in her and radiate His qualities out to others.

This is why — in its spiritual application to the modern Christian woman — the Bible can say: *"Many daughters have done virtuously, but thou EXCELLEST them all. Favour is deceitful, and beauty is vain, but A WOMAN THAT FEARETH THE LORD, SHE SHALL BE PRAISED! Give her of the fruit of her hands; and LET HER OWN WORKS PRAISE her in the gates" (Prov. 31:29-31).*

And again, because of her example of love, kindness, thoughtfulness and self-sacrifice, *"Her CHILDREN arise up and call her BLESSED; her HUSBAND also, and he PRAISETH her!" (Prov. 31:28).*

**WHAT A COMPLIMENT! HOW DYNAMIC THE POWER OF EXAMPLE!**

Think of it! Just as the woman has the capacity to bring physical children into the world, she also (as the man) has the potential through her righteous example conduct and outflowing of God's Spirit to help bring SPIRITUAL sons into His Kingdom.

Please notice that nothing is said about preaching the gospel or trying to convert others to the truth through verbal persuasion. The emphasis is on the outpouring of inner qualities of character and personality — a mature and godly submissiveness that attracts the right kind of attention inspiring others to want to follow.

This, then, among other things mentioned is one of her highest goals! What a truly great and awesome role to play!

### **A WORD TO THE SINGLE AND UNMARRIED**

Not every woman will become a wife and mother! Some may choose to remain single for whatever reasons. Yet, the spirit and essence of every principle given in this paper still applies.

Once the concept of true womanhood is understood, it should be applied in all human relationships, whether on the job, at school, in the community or in any kind of social setting.

The woman's role is indeed glorious in God's eyes and she should always strive to upgrade and preserve the qualities that make her unique and beautiful!

### **SUMMARY**

When God looked at Adam's situation, He knew that the man needed a "help meet" to give him love, warmth and encouragement. He needed someone to share his life with — one he could GIVE LOVE TO. So woman was made — to fill that void and help make man complete.

A lesson can be drawn from the dream that God gave to Joseph in Genesis 37. His father was portrayed as the sun and his mother as the moon, showing that a woman reflects the glory, warmth and honor of her husband, radiating his leadership and love.

Having a husband who is warm, radiant, loving and encouraging — whose example shines brightly as the "sun" — is tremendously inspiring to the woman! Proper masculine leadership can actually give her greater confidence and happiness!

The woman was designed to be a reflection of the man, but at the same time TO EXPAND HER USEFULNESS as Christ says He wants His bride to do. She should be ever improving and growing in all areas — and always alert to ways she can uplift and serve her fellowman!

Many women have a narrow view of their God-ordained role. They tend to think of womanhood only as cooking, mending, washing, bearing babies, etc. But there is more to it. Christ wants HIS bride to be GLORIOUS, without spot or blemish. This is how EVERY woman should be!

The role of true Christian womanhood encompasses a far greater dimension. IT INVOLVES THE DEVELOPMENT OF THE TOTAL SELF — of inner charm and beauty, sweetness of temperament and the glory of God.

If these qualities are present, she is going to have a tremendous influence on those around her! Being a true total woman doesn't mean narrowing down goals. Rather, it means EXPANDING goals! Think bigger! Try to become as Christ says He wants His Church to become — a woman who is fully mature, emotionally balanced and who has developed holy, righteous character!

As the women of God's Church, you have before you the breathtaking opportunity of becoming a member of His divine family! But at the same time, you also can have a part in helping others to make it, too!

Enlarge your horizons and think big. Think sacrifice and service! Become GLORIOUS BEFORE HIM — in humility and submission — just as Christ wishes for His Church!

"For ye are bought with a price; therefore GLORIFY GOD in your body and in your spirit, which are God's" (I Cor. 6:20).

**-END-**



## CHAPTER 10

# **THE HIDDEN CAUSES OF DISCOURAGEMENT**

Discouragement is one of the most powerful and devastating emotions known to man. Like the withering affect of a scorching wind, it can leave us weak and helpless, fruitless and "dead."

Discouragement is a negative force that snuffles growth, drains enthusiasm, inhibits drive, and disorients one's mind. Of all the causes of failure in life, it is probably the most difficult to overcome.

The irony of it all is that discouragement is oftentimes elusive — hard to trace or get a handle on. Some causes we can readily identify such as loss of a job, sickness, criticism, rejection, etc. But other types seem to appear out of nowhere from causes unknown.

In this discussion, I plan to isolate some of the hidden causes of discouragement, and offer solutions that will work. Once we understand the subtle workings of this enemy, we will be much better prepared to cope with it.

### WHAT DISCOURAGEMENT MEANS

To begin, let's examine the word "discouragement" itself. The prefix "dis" means without, to do the opposite of, deprive of, exclude or expel from, opposite or absence. Discouragement, then, means **WITHOUT COURAGE!** To be disheartened — lacking the courage to try or go on.

Here's where many people come up short. When problems strike they become fearful, think the worst will happen, run from their troubles and leave the results to chance. They may be weak-willed, lazy-minded or simply afraid to face reality — afraid they will not measure up and fail. Obviously this approach only leads to deeper discouragement because nothing is done to remove the cause — the problem still exists.

Let's now look at some of the underlying causes behind this destructive emotional disease.

### SATAN THE PRIMARY INSTIGATOR

Satan the Devil is the foremost cause behind discouragement. He is man's greatest foe. To overthrow man and wear him down, Satan has saturated this world and all of its social systems with his diabolical lusts and venom. Like a devious snake studying its prey, Satan watches and waits to ensnare man in his weakest moment — when he least expects it or is caught off guard.

Often as not, the feelings of guilt and shame, failure and despair are direct attacks of Satan. He relentlessly tries to undermine man's faith in God and to destroy his feelings of self-worth. His objective: to cause us to lose heart, think lowly of ourselves, throw in the towel, give up and forsake God.

The Apostle Paul says that Satan **WORKS** in the hearts and minds of people. "...wherein in time past you walked according to the course of this world, according to the prince of the power of the air, the spirit that now **WORKETH** in the children of disobedience" (Eph. 2:1-2). This means that he's constantly trying to get at us — "Because your adversary the devil, as a roaring lion, walketh about, seeking whom me may devour" (1 Peter 5:8).

Our strongest defense against Satan's power is first to recognize who he is (man's greatest enemy) and turn to God for help in order to resist his evil, negative thoughts and moods.

A powerful resolve and a firm commitment to stand steadfast against Satan will drive him out of your life. "Resist the devil, and he will flee from you" (James 4:7).

The next time depressing moods fill your mind for no apparent reason, stop and think. Satan may be seeking a door of entrance.

### THE MOUNTAINS WE PACE

Another major cause for discouragement is that some people see the goals and tasks they would like to achieve as being so big, awesome and overwhelming as to be virtually impossible to reach.

They become frightened with the complexities of life and wonder if they can make the grade. It seems there is so much to do, so many problems to overcome, so many habits to break, so much knowledge to learn and inculcate, that there's not enough time to do it all. The Kingdom itself is so ethereal and far away, that it's hard to grasp its reality and bring it down to everyday life.

It's like trying to scale a rugged cliff which towers into the sky. The climber sees himself, weak and small, at the base of the mountain. His goal is to reach the top — but the summit is high and far away. The footing is unsure — not to mention the unseen obstacles along the way. The journey is threatening — forboding.

On the spiritual plane, people look at their shortcomings with inner misgivings and doubts. They see in their mind's eye the giant goal God has placed before them — that of becoming sons of God in His Kingdom. One of Satan's devices is to use this great goal to cause doubt and apprehension in our minds — the "climb" is too steep, or the "path" is too rough. The tendency is to give up and quit before one even starts.

The reason: "It's easier to stay on ground level than to advance forward and fail." But such individuals have failed already by exerting no effort and standing still.

The key lies in the meaning of faith and courage. When one steps forward and faces all obstacles, he learns a great lesson. Not only can he advance, but it's far easier than what appeared.

### **DISCOURAGEMENT COMES FROM HAVING NO GOALS AND FAILING TO GROW**

While some people become fearful at the enormity of their goals and responsibilities, there are countless scores of others who get depressed because they have no goals at all. They are lazily drifting along, whiling away their lives. They are like a ship at sea, jostled by the waves, with no tangible ports in sight.

Deep inside such people is a lingering, nagging frustration. They're downcast and miserable because they are accomplishing nothing worthwhile.

The reason for this type of discouragement: GOD CREATED IN MAN A DESIRE TO GROW, A DESIRE TO ACHIEVE, A DESIRE TO SUCCEED. Growth is the principle that governs life. It's a principle that you see manifested in all of creation. From the sprouting of a seed, to the birth of a child, life starts small but ever grows and progresses through many stages of development until it reaches maturity. Life is an active, ongoing process — forever reaching upward and onward to higher levels of growth and usefulness. A quick glance at the glories of creation will prove that God who created and sustains all things is a moving, progressing, dynamic God.

Now the Creator placed within man the same creative urges — a fundamental desire to grow and achieve!

Whenever man fails to grow in character and develop his life, he experiences a deep sense of emptiness, futility and failure.

How vital it is, then, to embark on a program of positive goal setting in order to grow and be happy, and to lead a rich and productive life.

### **BRING GOAL ATTAINMENT INTO EACH DAY**

We need to think in terms of reaching our goals on a daily basis. This will prevent us from being overwhelmed with the "bigness" of our tasks and reduce them to steps we can easily manage. By approaching our goals with this in mind, we will grow in courage and confidence — one step at a time.

Success breeds success. One step leads to another, and on to the next until finally our goals are reached. The joy and pleasure that comes from succeeding will serve as a stimulus to push us forward.

The most rational way to face mountain-size tasks is simply to shovel them away one scoop full at a time. It may be a huge mountain that will require a lot of scoops, and many hours of diligent effort. But each shovel full will bring us that much closer to final victory.

The key is to begin. You have to start before you can finish — and be determined to follow through.

Remember, it's standing still — failing to take hold of life and grow — that causes discouragement.

Once you start moving in the direction of your goals, you will lay down a track record of success. As you continue to progress, even if only a step or two, you will gain confidence and self-respect. Thus, with a success pattern firmly established, you will eventually achieve a full and satisfying life.

You will no doubt meet with hardships and obstacles on your journey. But those who are positively determined, look on obstacles as challenges or opportunities — not as roadblocks that stop them cold. They become bolder, wiser and stronger with each new trial.

Take a step forward with renewed determination, and before you know it, you will have reached your glorious quest.

### **SUCCESS COMES THROUGH PERSISTENT EFFORT**

Once we have firmly established our goals (and only we can determine which are important to us) we must set sail in their direction. This calls for one hundred percent commitment, hard work, raw determination and persistent effort. Only those who start the journey and keep sailing onward will ever reach their destination!

Most people have good intentions and resolve to go all out. But when they meet with unexpected problems, they get discouraged and quit.

Thus they fail! They stop trying! A little more push, a higher reach, a stronger and more powerful self-command would likely have made the difference between present failure and the next success.

Either they feel incapable of bearing the pain from exerting effort or they lose confidence in their abilities to forge ahead. The result? They slip backward into a lifestyle that's more comfortable and less demanding.

But such backsliding brings a penalty — a penalty of deep depression and doubt. The innate desire God placed in them for growth and development has been stifled. The curse of failure then takes its toll in forms of guilt, despondency, and varying degrees of self-contempt.

Clearly, the only sure cure to master discouragement is to establish meaningful goals and grow daily toward their fulfillment.

### **THE FORMULA FOR SUCCESS**

It's interesting to know that God gave mankind the basic formula for success clear back in the Garden of Eden: *"The Lord God took the man, and put him into the garden of Eden to dress it and to keep it"* (Gen. 2:15).

Here God gave man a meaningful activity — a program of work to keep him busy. Adam was not put in the garden simply to lay back under the trees, eat bananas and apples, and play with the monkeys.

He was to dress the garden — to cultivate it, nurture it, enlarge it and guide the growth of the plants. Here was a tangible plan of action to enable man to use his mind and grow — to achieve, to produce, to succeed and find fulfillment.

But in addition to working the garden and expanding its size, God also gave Adam something else to do. HE WAS TO KEEP IT. That is, he was to maintain and preserve its beauty lest the garden grow up in weeds and fall into disuse.

How demoralizing it would have been for Adam to have invested time and energy into developing each plot of ground, only to come back later and find it ragged and ugly and choked with weeds. Not only was it necessary for him to work — dress the garden — but also to maintain his successes along the way.

And so it is with a Christian. If we fail to secure our steps and build on solid ground, we too may look back some day and discover our work has rusted away. Jesus Christ said to the Philadelphia Church: "Hold that fast which thou hast, let no man take thy crown" (Rev. 3:11).

How vital it is to protect our successes lest in our eagerness to experience new challenges we allow our foundation to rot away!

The formula God gave Adam: "Dress the garden and keep it" is an excellent motto to keep in mind.

### **TRUE SUCCESS COMES THROUGH CHRIST**

In the final analysis, the secret of success lies in the power and might of Jesus Christ. We have our part to play, and much is required — but we can only go so far. If we are to accomplish goals that bring lasting success, we must be spiritually united to Christ. This is a vital key!

Jesus said, "Abide in me, and I in you. As the branch cannot bear fruit of itself, except it abide in the vine no more can you, except you abide in me ... for without me, ye can do nothing" (John 15:5-6) "For in him we LIVE, and MOVE and HAVE OUR BEING" (Acts 17:28). "But THOU SHALT REMEMBER THE LORD THY GOD: for it is he that GIVETH THEE POWER to get wealth (Deut. 8:17-18).

And again, "Now unto him that is able to do exceeding abundantly above all that we ask or think, ACCORDING TO THE POWER THAT WORKETH IN US ..." (Eph. 3:20).

These scriptures clearly prove that human strength alone is insufficient — the power of God is vitally needed.

What does God's Spirit do? It enlightens our minds, opens our understanding, impowers our wills and imparts the courage and motivation to press forward. God's Spirit is an added force or energy, just like the flow of electricity, that infuses new life.

Here lies another great pitfall of discouragement. The influences of the devil and the trials of life can undermine our efforts and desires — if we allow it. But, God is able to circumvent these forces through imparting to us the power of His mighty Spirit. With this new energy which God's Spirit gives, "all things are possible." God will see us through any problem or circumstance as we continue our journey, if we will but believe and act on His Word.

### **SIN BLOCKS GOD'S SPIRIT AND PRODUCES FAILURE**

Sin is a force that produces discouragement because it breaks our contact with God and the flow of His Spirit.

Remember, it is God who's the source of our strength and imparts to us the confidence and power to accomplish our goals — that is, the vision, the courage and inspiration to move ahead in spite of all odds. "For it is God which worketh in you, both TO WILL and TO DO of His good strengthens me" (Phil. 2:13). "I can DO ALL THINGS through Christ who strengthens me" (Phil. 4:13).

Walking with God, then, in a spirit of willing obedience produces success. But when we sin and break His laws, we cut ourselves off from His power. "But your iniquities have separated between you and your God, and your sins have hid His face from you, that He will not hear" (Isa. 59:2).

Thus sin not only blocks the flow of God's Spirit (His life and energy in us) which is vital to our success, but it also creates negative attitudes that bring failure. When we sin, we condemn ourselves and fall prey to depressed moods and syndromes of guilt. Subsequently, we lose interest in our goals and direct our energies to other pursuits. Instead of repenting and getting our lives in harmony with God, we run away and hide (escape) to deaden the pain of guilt.

Clearly, then, sin produces failure because it inflicts guilt and destroys our purpose for living. The growth principle essential to life has been interrupted.

If we are discouraged, we would be wise to see if sin has entered in and broken our relationship with God.

### **SIN MAKES US NEGATIVE AND CRITICAL**

A subsequent problem which sin causes is that it transforms one into a negative and critical personality. This condition naturally follows when he has broken the growth principle.

The subconscious realization that he is sinning, and cut off from God, leads to self criticism and disrespect. Because he is unhappy with himself, he reacts by being negative and critical of others. Instead of correcting his mistakes, he starts to blame others for his problems in life.

On the other hand, one who's growing and overcoming is genuinely happy and reflects a positive outlook. He expresses an outward concern for others, and attracts to himself many friends. He's a real inspiration to be around.

What is your overall bent toward life — negative or positive? Be honest with yourself. For there is no way you can experience total fulfillment unless you are walking with God and are routing sin out of your life.

### **SUMMARY**

These are the hidden causes of discouragement. To overcome them, we must remember that: God created in man a desire to achieve, to grow, to succeed. To fulfill this desire, we must set firm goals. The Spirit of God will help guide our minds in determining what they should be. Goal attainment must be brought into each day and is a step-by-step process. Success is attained through "bite-sized accomplishments." The little daily steps of progress we make — no matter how small — will give us joy and confidence because they bring us closer to success.

Success comes through diligent effort — there is no genuine achievement without it. Just one more push, a higher reach, a second effort may make the difference between success and failure.

The overall achievement of a successful life is like weaving a beautiful tapestry. The final product is made up of many little fibers. The threads of and by themselves may not seem that important, but put together, they're all necessary and form a beautiful masterpiece.

And, the Spirit of God blends everything together for the right result. As God works in us, and unites us with His mind — we cannot help but be successful. It's guaranteed.

This, then, is the secret to overcoming discouragement and experiencing a fruitful life.

**-END-**



## CHAPTER 11

### **HOW CAN A MODERN DAY WOMAN SERVE IN GOD'S CHURCH?**

#### I. AS AN OVERALL PRINCIPLE — GET YOUR PRIORITIES STRAIGHT.

- A. It is vital to know the job description that God has written for you as a woman.
- B. Otherwise, you may devote too much time to the lesser responsibilities and neglect the most important.

#### II. LISTED BELOW IS A GENERAL OUTLINE OF PRIORITIES WHICH IF CONSISTENTLY FOLLOWED WILL ENABLE YOU TO LEAD A RICH, REWARDING AND FULFILLING LIFE.

A. A suggested sequence of priorities for the average married woman in God's Church.

##### 1. YOUR RELATIONSHIP TO GOD.

- a. Prov. 31:30 "... but the woman that feareth the Lord, she shall be praised."
- b. If this is not right, everything else is wrong.

##### 2. YOUR RELATIONSHIP TO YOUR HUSBAND.

- a. The woman was created to be man's helper.
- b. Gen. 2:18 "...it is not good that the man should be alone; I will make an help meet for him."
- c. I Cor. 11:9 "Neither was the man created for the woman; but for the man."
- d. We list this as No. 2 as a principle of government regulating the home.

##### 3. YOUR RELATIONSHIP TO YOUR CHILDREN.

- a. This can be a demanding and time-consuming job, especially if the children are young and need continual attention.
- b. But when viewed from God's perspective, it's one of the most glorious and rewarding of all earthly responsibilities.
- c. Think long range — of molding and guiding their lives and preparing them for God's Kingdom.
- d. The kind of training you give could very well affect their conversion and eternal destiny.
- e. "Train up a child in the way he should go: and when he is old he will not depart from it."

##### 4. YOUR DOMESTIC DUTIES AS A HOMEMAKER.

- a. Prov. 31 places significant emphasis on this duty.
- b. Titus 2:1-5 "... keepers at home."
- c. The appearance of your home and overall living environment reflects the quality of your character and love for family.
- d. This point also includes food preparation and proper clothing for the family.

##### 5. CHURCH INVOLVEMENT AND RELATED ACTIVITIES.

- a. Overall principles.
  - (1) Before getting involved, be sure you've fulfilled your first priorities.
    - (a) We're referring to such matters as not neglecting the home and children in pursuit of outside interests that appear more "exciting."
    - (b) The key to remember: ALL THINGS IN BALANCE.
  - (2) Examine Your motives — make sure they're founded on love, not on vanity.
    - (a) is your desire to serve truly genuine?
    - (b) Or is it to elevate self and be seen by others?
    - (c) Or perhaps to escape from domestic duties?
  - (3) Be a bright and shining example.
    - (a) At all times and in all places.
    - (b) I Peter 3:1-6 = "...the ornament of a meek and quiet spirit."
    - (c) Watch your tongue and reflect a positive and sweet-natured outlook on life.

- (4) Respond to little things that need to be done.
  - (a) Don't wait to be asked when the need is obvious.
  - (b) Serving the handicapped at picnics.
  - (c) Helping to tidy up restrooms at church.
  - (d) Helping a young mother with several children.
  - (e) Spending time before and after services in getting to know others and especially in drawing out those who are shy and reticent.
- b. Getting down to specifics.
  - (1) Personal service
    - (a) General fellowship at church — radiate friendship and good cheer!
    - (b) Participating in service teams.
    - (c) Visiting the sick and elderly.
    - (d) Baking and sewing for the needy.
    - (e) Sending get-well cards.
    - (f) Writing letters of encouragement.
    - (g) Telephoning widows, shut-ins and others you feel need cheering up.
    - (h) Being hospitable — having people over and sharing your home.
  - (2) Organized church activities
    - (a) Volunteering to help with Sabbath School.
    - (b) Helping with Y.O.U.
      - 1) Fund-raising — paper drive, bake sale, etc.
      - 2) Chaperoning dances and outings.
    - (c) Women's Association.
    - (d) Women's Alliance (AICF).
    - (e) Girl Scouts.
    - (f) Church sponsored workparties.
    - (g) General fund-raising for church activities — garage sales, rose parade, etc.
    - (h) OUTREACH
6. Ways to Serve in the immediate Neighborhood.
  - a. Suggestions and opportunities.
    - (1) Caring for the sick.
    - (2) Having a tea for widows.
    - (3) Visiting shut-ins and the elderly — taking them out for a ride.
    - (4) Baking cookies, bread & sharing canned goods with those truly in need.
    - (5) Sharing produce with neighbors from home garden.
    - (6) Running errands.
7. Larger Community involvement.
  - a. General opportunities that are open.
    - (1) School volunteer work.
    - (2) Visiting nursing homes to read, visit or aid in other ways.
    - (3) Working with handicapped.
    - (4) Red Cross volunteer
    - (5) Offering services to children's institutions or homes for veterans.
8. Development of Special Skills & Talents in the Home.
  - a. Crafts & hobbies.
    - (1) Macrame.
    - (2) Crochet.
    - (3) Knitting.
    - (4) Dressmaking.
    - (5) Writing for fun.
    - (6) Recording information to be passed on to children.
    - (7) Poetry.
    - (8) Music.
    - (9) Voice lessons.



(10) Gardening — raising prize-winning plants, flowers, etc.

(11) Collecting recipes and experimenting with new dishes.

9. Continuing Education for Personal Growth & Expansion.

a. Suggestions on how to increase your scope of usefulness.

(1) Enrolling in home study courses to further education.

(2) Take part-time classes at local colleges.

(a) Knitting.

(b) Cake decorating.

(c) Flower arranging.

(d) Interior decorating.

(e) Sewing.

(f) Meal-planning.

(g) General handcrafts.

(3) Attend church sponsored seminars and lectures.

(a) Child rearing.

(b) Marriage relationship.

(c) Personality development.

(d) Coping with stress.

(e) Time management.

10. Exercise & Recreation.

a. General suggestions:

(1) Ice skating.

(2) Roller skating.

(3) Ballet.

(4) Health Spa.

(5) Volleyball.

(6) Jogging.

(7) Swimming.

(8) Tennis.

(9) Bowling.

(10) Family picnics, camping trips, hiking, etc.

(11) Working with husband in planning special trips and outings.

b. In order to fit some of these suggestions into your schedule, you may want to exchange babysitting responsibilities with other mothers, friends, etc.

11. Work or Part-time Employment (with caution and counsel)

a. Not recommended for mothers with small children, except in dire emergencies.

b. Once children are older or have left home, the active, healthy mother may want to pursue some kind of limited employment (both husband and wife should agree on this).

c. Many reasons:

(1) Send children to college.

(2) Buy new furniture.

(3) Home improvements.

(4) Pay off debts.

(5) Keep mind active.

(6) Explore new horizons.

B. General Principles.

1. Learn to find fulfillment first and foremost in your God-given role as wife, mother and homemaker.

2. Don't become ensnared by the glamour, prestige and excitement of the Women's Lib Movement.

a. This caution is given so that young mothers won't confuse their sense of values and priorities.

b. Women's Lib has made a career outside the home to appear more inviting and intriguing, and has played down the role of homemaker as drab and boring.

3. Launch out and try something new. Don't let indecision and procrastination hold you back.

a. You may want to embark on many new adventures but are having trouble in deciding what to do.

- b. The key is to start with something — you may discover it's very fulfilling.
- c. Make out a list and try them all as time permits.
- 4. Keep broadening your life by adding new challenges.
  - a. This will prevent you from vegetating and growing stale.
  - b. Keep your mind active and alert.
  - c. Take up reading — it's an excellent way to sharpen your mind and fill in educational gaps.
- 5. Continue to develop social skills and graces.
  - a. Involve yourself with other people.
  - b. Share your home — learn to be a gracious hostess.
  - c. Build a balanced social life.
- 6. Sharpen your powers of imagination, creativity and drive.
  - a. Cutting kids' hair.
  - b. Wallpapering bathroom.
  - c. Inexpensive decorations for the home.
- 7. After children are self-sustaining (no need for babysitter), re-evaluate your life in terms of new directions and interests.
  - a. Part-time-Job (must not interfere with your spiritual life, your marriage or impair your health.)
  - b. Volunteer work.
  - c. Classes
  - d. Etc.
- 8. Think bigger than yesterday. Opportunities for growth are all around you.
  - a. Never allow yourself to stop growing — you'll wither and grow old before your time.
  - b. You should become more beautiful, mature and complete with each advancing year.
- 9. Maintain a balance between basic priorities and self-improvement.
  - a. Keep an eye on the day of judgment, for it's the bottom line that will tell the story of how well you've fulfilled your role.
  - b. Measure and monitor everything you do with your eternal destiny in view.
  - c. Surrender to God and seek His guidance so that the whole of your life is pleasing to Him.

-END-

## **CHAPTER 12**

### ***HOW GOD ANSWERS PRAYER***

#### **A. WAYS AND MEANS HE MAY USE**

There is no doubt that God answers prayers. However, we may not understand all the different ways that He can do this and therefore, we may not recognize the answer when it comes. Knowing how God grants our requests can help us pray with greater faith and confidence. It can also help us look for answers that may not be obvious.

Here are ten ways how God can answer our prayers:

##### **1. God works through people.**

When we pray we should be aware that many times God works through human instruments. If we are not aware of this fact, we may not see the answer God is providing when it comes.

In the early years of the Work, God used this method many times to answer Mr. Armstrong's prayers. On more than one occasion he did not have the money to pay for the broadcast, and minutes before time to leave for the studio, a member would show up at his front door with his tithes. One time he was even on his way to the studio when he met someone who gave him just the amount he needed.

On another occasion Mrs. Armstrong was nearing the time for one of her children to be born and they did not have the money for the hospital bill. Mr. Armstrong asked God to provide the money they would need and whatever else they might need. Not long after that they received a check in the exact amount they would need from Mrs. Armstrong's portion of her mother's will as well as the loan of a car until after the baby came. Mrs. Armstrong even received the loan of a robe and slippers to take to the hospital because she had none.

When we realize that God does work through other people, we should not be too proud to accept the help God may provide through them. In many cases the people themselves may not even realize that God has used them to answer our prayers.

##### **2. He also uses the Bible.**

Sometimes when we have prayed about a particular problem God shows us the solution through studying the Bible. God can lead us to see the answer through a particular scripture. He can help us to understand something we may have read many times in a new or different light. Suddenly we see how that scripture really applies to us.

If a couple is having marriage problems, they should study those portions of the Bible that talk about that subject. A man and his wife may come to realize where they need to change by studying Ephesians 5. The wife may realize that she is not the submissive wife she should be. Or, the husband may suddenly see that he has been too demanding and selfish and has not been following the command to love his wife as he should.

If a person is having financial problems and he has prayed about it but the answer doesn't seem to come, he should study the scriptures on tithing and other of God's financial laws. He may suddenly realize that even though he has been faithfully paying his tithes, he has been doing it in a wrong attitude — begrudgingly because he has been worried about his money.

##### **3. God also reveals His will when we meditate.**

After having asked God for His help, we may be meditating and thinking about the problem and the answer suddenly becomes clear in our mind, and we know just what we should do.

This kind of answer comes through real meditation. It is not just an untried thought or impulse. It comes through weighing carefully the pros and cons of a situation in the light of the instruction of the Bible.

Think through your problem, evaluate and examine yourself to see if you have done all that you can or should do. Ask yourself if you have brought the problem on yourself.

Through this kind of careful and prayerful examination God through His Holy Spirit can show you the answer to your problem or difficulty. Because you have focussed your mind on Him, God can use His Spirit to put the solution to the problem into your mind.

Cultivate this habit of meditation when you study and when you are praying about certain problems in your life. God can use it to show you His will.

#### 4. God speaks through His ministers.

At other times we may have a problem that we are praying about and the answer just doesn't seem to come. It may be that we have not done all that we should do. God has provided His ministry to help us with our problems and He expects us to take advantage of the help He provides.

God can answer our prayers through His ministers. We may not have the answer we need because we have not gone to the proper source of the vehicle God can use. God expects us to use all the avenues that He can use to communicate His will to us.

God also uses His ministry by inspiring them to preach on the things we need to hear. We should pray for the ministry that God will continue to inspire them in this way. Even when we ourselves are not having a particular problem or trial we should ask God every Sabbath to inspire His ministers to give us the kind of sermon that we as the congregation need to hear most.

#### 5. God can work through natural circumstances.

Sometimes we may pray for a solution to a particular problem and when the answer comes it comes in such a natural or normal way we may tend to forget that it came from God. When prayers are answered in this way we should always remember to give God the proper credit and thanks.

Perhaps a single person has been praying about marriage — asking God to provide just the right person and asking God to help them to be the right person for someone else. God can and has worked through normal and natural circumstances to bring people together. Numerous couples have met their future mates at the Feast — God having brought them together when they lived vast distances apart.

Another example might be having someone stop to help you when your car breaks down along the highway. It would be easy to attribute such an occurrence to time and chance. However, if we have prayed about it and someone does stop, we should take it for what it is — an answer from God to help us out of our dilemma. In our day and age it would be somewhat of a miracle for anyone to have the confidence to stop and help anyone. God can and does cause people to do things that they might not otherwise do in another circumstance.

#### 6. God still performs miracles.

The most common way that God uses today in performing miracles is in healing. Throughout history God has instantaneously healed many people of their afflictions and diseases. Most of us have either been the recipient of such a miracle or we know someone who has.

Knowing that God does miraculously heal today can give us more faith and confidence in Him when we are praying about other matters.

God also uses miracles to protect His people. Over the years the "Worldwide News" has featured many incredible accounts of protection of members and their homes in the paths of devastating tornadoes, hurricanes, floods or fires. Many have escaped death without a scratch when logic says they should have died. For instance there is the man who accidentally had a boiling cauldron of molten metal dumped on him and came out without even a burn. God does intervene on behalf of His people.

#### 7. God leads us to the answers to our prayers through His Holy Spirit.

God's Holy Spirit continually works with a Christian (Phil. 2:13). Over a period of time, much knowledge, understanding and wisdom is accumulated.

Therefore, an answer to prayer may come from the understanding and wisdom gained over several years. Because a person is using God's Spirit daily in his life, God can lead him to see what he should do in a given situation that he has been praying about. A person can apply the principles of God's law and ask himself what Christ would do and come to the right conclusion as to what his own actions should be.

For example, one man was undecided whether or not to finish a degree in education at a local university which he had started a few years earlier. He prayed and struggled with the decision for some time.

Gradually he began to recognize the answer. He realized the need to further develop his talents (Matt. 25:14-30), also knowing that he was responsible to provide for his family. He understood that the days ahead may bring more recession and unemployment and therefore saw the need to act today. (Prov. 22:3). He finally realized that he should finish what he started.

Because this man was living God's way of life, he could apply the principles he had learned in the past to the problem at hand.

#### 8. God can use trials to answer our prayers.

God can and does allow situations to occur whereby we receive His answer through the things we suffer. Many times we may pray for faith and God will allow a trying circumstance which will build patience which in turn increases our faith.

Sometimes God allows us to become sick for a period of time and chooses not to heal us immediately. He wants us to learn patience and to use the time we are sick to really think about our lives and how we have been conducting ourselves in the light of how He wants us to live. God can sometimes help us to see and understand something that we might not otherwise realize by allowing us to suffer.

For instance a young person who is extremely active socially — involved in everything, dating constantly and is a whirlwind of activity from the time he gets up until the time he falls into bed exhausted at night — has probably not taken the time to really consider if he is praying or studying enough — he's been too busy. So, God may allow him to get sick through the normal consequence of not getting the proper rest and not eating properly. When he is flat on his back in bed, God finally has his attention and the person may realize that he has been neglecting the more important things of life in order to maintain his whirlwind momentum.

#### 9. Angels are used in answering prayer.

God sends angels to help His people in times of emergency and crisis. When He sees that one of His people is in grave and immediate danger, He realizes that immediate action is necessary, and He answers instantly.

One member was traveling home late at night along a very familiar road when he topped a hill in the road to see two sets of headlights coming directly at him — a car in each lane. (It was a two lane road). Realizing there was nothing else to do, he drove off on the shoulder of the road almost without thinking. The cars passed and he drove back on the road. As he drove on, he started thinking about the spot where the incident had occurred and he couldn't remember there being a shoulder there. So he turned around and went back to the spot to take a look — sure enough there was no shoulder only a drop off. An angel had obviously held his car while the other vehicles had passed.

#### 10. Existing means can be used to show us the answer to our prayers.

God can use things that have been written by carnal men or lessons that others have learned to show us the answer to our prayers.

A person who is having difficulty in organizing their time and prioritizing things might be led to "accidentally" read the "*Autobiography of Benjamin Franklin*" who had a great deal to say about organization and using one's time wisely.

By reading what others have to say about the subject that we are having difficulty with, and by comparing the material with the principles of God's laws, we can find practical solutions to our problems. God's laws work regardless of who applies them and we can learn from the

things that unconverted people have discovered about those laws. God can use them to answer our prayers.

The key is to read in a discerning way to be sure the principles discussed stack up with the way God would have you live your life.

## B. GOD DOES NOT ALWAYS ANSWER RIGHT AWAY

At times God may temporarily decide to withhold an answer to your prayers. He may want you to develop patience or to learn certain lessons before He grants your request. Or the answer He gives may not be recognized because it is "no".

### 1. Attitude in asking.

When our prayers don't seem to be answered, and we have sought the answer through the various means already discussed, we should look at our attitude in asking.

Why do we want God to do what we have asked? Are we asking for a selfish reason — for something that will benefit us and us alone? James 4:3. God wants to give us the good things of life — He wants us to live abundant lives and He has promised to provide us our every need. However, if we get so caught up in the "give mes" and materialism, God will not answer our prayers with a positive response.

After having examined ourselves and found that our attitude has not been right, we may realize we should not be asking for the thing we've been praying about or we will see that we need to change before God will grant our request.

We need to be asking according to God's will and in order to know His will we must be close to God through habitual prayer and Bible study. (II Tim. 2:15). We need to be studying God's word and then we will begin to think more like God thinks and we will be able to see what God's will is. If we believe and know that God is love, that His will is for our good, then we will want to pray according to His will.

We need not always have a specific promise in the Bible to know that something is God's will. Because we have been studying and applying God's laws in our lives, we can learn how to apply the principles of God's revealed will to any situation which may arise.

### 2. Asking in faith.

Are you asking in faith, or does your faith waver? When we pray, we must have faith that God hears us and that eventually, He will answer. If we give up and say that God is not going to answer because we have waited longer than we thought it should have taken to receive the answer, then God will not answer.

James 1:6,7 *"But let him ask in faith, nothing wavering. For he that wavereth is like a wave of the sea driven with the wind and tossed. For let not that man think that he shall receive anything of the Lord."*

### 3. Being Persistent.

Having examined your attitude and your faith, have you applied the principle of the importuning widow? Luke 18:1-7. God expects us to ask more than once sometimes. He sometimes wants to know how important something is to us. We should keep praying to God even though He doesn't answer right away.

Persistence doesn't mean nagging but it does mean that we should show God that we really are sincerely concerned. God has supreme wisdom to know when and how would be best to answer our prayers.

Matthew 7:7-8 *"Ask, and it shall be given you; seek, and ye shall find; knock, and it shall be opened to you: For everyone that asketh receiveth, and he that seeketh findeth; and to him that knocketh it shall be opened."*

### 4. Pray Fervently.

God hears us when we are fervent and sincere not when we are half asleep.

James 5:16 *"...The effectual fervent prayer of a righteous man availeth much."*

5. Fear God and Have Humility

We need to realize that we are small and insignificant compared to God — mere dust. The very life we have is a gift from Him. Realizing this we should have the proper fear and respect for God. Any gifts or talents that we may have are ours because God gave them to us.

When we come to God with this attitude, with the proper respect for His authority in our lives, then He will hear and answer our prayers. (Prov. 22:4)

6. We must be obedient.

We must be practicing daily a way of yielded obedience to God or He will not hear our prayers. (I John 3:22).

When we pray in an unrepentant attitude our sins cut us off from God. If we come to God in a repentant, humble attitude, determined to obey Him, He will hear and answer our prayers.

**-END-**





## CHAPTER 13

### **HOW IMPORTANT IS YOUR SOCIAL LIFE TO GOD?**

#### I. CAN ONE BE TRULY HAPPY AND FULFILLED WITHOUT A BALANCED SOCIAL LIFE?

- A. Can one who pulls back into his shell and tries to avoid social contact with other human beings please God?
- B. What chances does one have of being in God's Kingdom if he or she decides to live the life of a hermit, being disregarding of the welfare of others?

#### II. MANIFOLD ARE THE SCRIPTURES SHOWING THAT GOD INTENDED WE LOVE EACH OTHER AND LEARN TO LIVE PEACEFULLY TOGETHER.

- A. Matt. 22:34-40 — "Love neighbor as thyself."
- B. Jn. 13:34 — "A new commandment I give you, that ye love one another."
- C. Jn. 15:12, 13 — "Greater love hath no man than he lay his life down."
- D. Ps. 133:1-3 — "How good it is when brethren dwell together in unity."
- E. Col. 3:12-14 — "Put on bowels of mercy ...."
- F. I Jn. 3:11, 16, 19 — "We ought to lay our lives down for our friends."
- G. Mal. 3:16 — "Then they that feared the Lord spake often one to another."
- H. Jn. 17:11-23 — "Christ prayed the disciples would be one."
- I. The keynote of God's coming kingdom is peace, unity, goodwill and brotherhood.

#### III. IT IS A KNOWN FACT THAT ONE CAN HARDLY RISE TO ANY DEGREE OF SUCCESS IN THE WORLD WITHOUT LEARNING HOW TO INTERACT WITH OTHERS.

- A. A quick analysis of the business world will bear this out.
- B. Consider the notables of the Bible — they were people-oriented.
- C. Andrew Carnegie once stated that he would pay more money to a man who knew how to motivate others than to one who possessed only technical skills.

#### IV. ACQUIRING THE ABILITY TO INTERACT WITH OTHERS OBVIOUSLY INVOLVES MEMBERS OF THE OPPOSITE SEX — FOR THE WORLD IS MADE UP OF BOTH MEN AND WOMEN.

- A. One of your main goals in life should be to understand, appreciate and respect the unique qualities God created in the opposite sex.
- B. Christ's own example demonstrates clearly His concern and respect for the women with whom He had contact.
  - 1. His one mother, Mary.
  - 2. The woman caught in adultery.
  - 3. The woman who had an issue of blood.
  - 4. The woman at the well.
- C. Christ married Israel.
  - 1. Much is recorded about His courtship with her.
  - 2. Many details given about His marriage and subsequent events which followed.
- D. Christ is going to marry the Church.
  - 1. Rev. 19:6-8 — "Christ's marriage to the Lamb"
  - 2. Eph. 5:22-27 — "That He might present it to Himself a Church."
- E. A large part of the Bible has to do with teaching the sexes how to relate and interact with each other.

V. THIS BRINGS US TO THE QUESTION FOR WHICH WE ARE HERE: "HOW DOES GOD VIEW THE PRACTICING OF DATING?"

- A. How would Christ conduct Himself on a date?
- B. What would have been His attitude toward the opposite sex?
- C. What would he have done — where would he have gone?
- D. He would have set the perfect example — for He had perfect knowledge and knew God's will perfectly.

VI. I CAN ASSURE YOU IT'S VASTLY DIFFERENT FROM THE WORLD'S VIEWPOINT.

- A. This world has not only forsaken but openly rejected God's true values.
- B. The selfish, sensual modern approach to dating is no exception.

VII. THE WORLD'S APPROACH.

- A. The American way of life is based on getting and not on giving.
- B. The hue and cry of the day is look out for yourself first, and stomp your neighbor if he gets in your way.
- C. Unless deeply converted, we are all motivated by SELFISHNESS, the all consuming passion that colors and taints every thought, motive, action, word — everything we have ever done.
- D. This attitude holds true in dating.

VIII. THE WORLD'S APPROACH IS SUMMED UP IN I JOHN 2.

- A. I Jn. 2:15-16 — "Love not the world ... for all that is in the world is the 1) lust of the flesh; 2) lust of the eyes; 3) pride of life."
- B. Let's examine each of these points for a moment.
  1. The lust of the flesh.
    - a. The most powerful motivation for dating in the world is the sex urge.
    - b. "People Magazine" in 1962 arrived at the conclusion as a result of interviewing a great number of men.
    - c. God created the human body with a built-in sex urge for a pure and holy purpose. But the world has turned it into lust.
    - d. A fellow will go as far as the girl will allow him to.
    - e. Men will be very loving and gentle — but their hidden motive is to wear down her principles in order to experience her body.
    - f. If after the first, second or third attempt a guy is unsuccessful, he writes her off his list.
    - g. Many women realize this and go along so as not to be rejected and lose their so-called popularity.
    - h. Of course there are other advantages besides being popular: dances, trips, fun, frolic, etc.
    - i. Satan uses sex and gets young people so preoccupied with it that it saps their creative ability and destroys their character.
  2. The lust of the eyes.
    - a. It's a natural tendency to want to date others who are attractive and have the most sex appeal.
    - b. Fellows are attracted to girls who are cute and pretty and the girls want to date the fellows who are the most dashing and handsome.
    - c. But beauty is more than skin deep. Beauty and a sexy body will never make for the qualities of mind and character that are lacking.
  3. The pride of life.
    - a. Oftentimes fellows and girls, men and women, want to date the most beautiful and handsome so they can "show off" their catch to others and make them envious.
    - b. Some refuse to date but the cream of the crop out of plain vanity and selfishness. They do not want to lower their dating choices because their peers may cast disapproving eyes down on them.
    - c. Some date only certain types to build up their own status and prestige in the eyes of the community or close circle of friends.
    - d. The practice of going steady figures in. Once a fellow or girl has landed a good catch, they want to hold on to it for self-gratifying reasons.

IX. WHAT ABOUT YOU — US! HAVE WE CARRIED SOME OF THE WORLD'S ATTITUDES AND APPROACHES OVER INTO GOD'S CHURCH?

- A. Eph. 2:1-3 - "Shows we were a part of this world's ways before conversion."
- B. Col. 3:1-10 - "A description of the new man in Christ."
- C. Let's face it! Most of us came into God's Church devoid of His truth and values.
  1. Our parents may not have known God or His way — how could they teach us?
  2. What little we may know of the right approach to dating we have learned since coming in contact with God's Church.
  3. Like so many other things in life, Satan has deceived us in this vital area.

X. DOES DATING MEAN THE SAME TO US THAT IT MEANS TO GOD?

- A. When you hear the word date what concept comes to mind?
  1. Is it the Hollywood approach of lust, glamorized beauty, shape, sex, handsomeness?
  2. Is it an amorous feeling — a romantic aura?
  3. Do you get dreamy-eyed, emotional, experience strong feelings of sensual excitement and fantasy?
- B. I believe the word "date" has come to have the wrong connotation.
  1. Technically, a date is nothing more than a mark on the calendar to do a specific thing, at a specific place, with a specific person or persons.
  2. But it has come to embody a multitude of feelings and sensations:
    - a. A feeling of romance.
    - b. A sense of formality.
    - c. An uptight and nervous feeling because one or both parties fears he or she may not make a good impression or will not be liked.
    - d. An attitude that one must give super effort to make the event successful.
    - e. It often boils down to an exercise in vanity and selfishness.

XI. WHAT THEN SHOULD BE THE RIGHT APPROACH TO DATING?

- A. First, for the sake of these meetings, we are going to break down dating into TWO broad categories:
  1. Fun and friendship dates that are casual and relaxed.
  2. Serious dates or courtship that leads to marriage.
- B. For our purpose today, we are going to address the first — dates that are casual, relaxed, fun-loving, and friendly.

XII. THERE ARE TWO GRAND REASONS OR PURPOSES FOR HAVING THIS TYPE OF DATES:

- A. To develop into a colorful and dynamic personality.
  1. God's great desire is for you to reach the stars, to be useful, productive and successful.
  2. He wants you to grow in all the graces, charms and abilities of a colorful and influential leader!
  3. He truly would like for you to hone every talent and capacity until it becomes razor sharp.
  4. Scriptures proving this:
    - a. Eph. 4:11-15 — "That we may grow up into Him in all things."
    - b. II Tim. 3:16-17 — "That the man of God may be perfect, thoroughly furnished unto good works."
    - c. Prov. 4:18 — "The path of the just shines more unto a perfect day."
    - d. Heb. 6:1 — "Let us go on into perfection."
    - e. Matt. 5:48 — "Become perfect."
    - f. I Cor. 15:39-42 — "Glorified bodies in the resurrection."  
(v. 58 — "Abound in God's work.")
  5. God is displeased if you withdraw into your shell and become anti-social.
    - a. Such people curl up in their rose buds.
    - b. They become desensitized to the needs and feelings of others.
    - c. They fail to develop those latent talents that would make them influential and useful to society.
    - d. Such people become preoccupied with themselves — become self-centered.

- e. They are oftentimes unaware that their personality becomes hard and repels others.
- f. Their language and tone of voice become curt and businesslike.
- 6. Matt. 25:14-30 — "Parable of the talents."
- B. To be a source of inspiration and encouragement to others.
  - 1. One of our greatest earthly responsibilities is to serve one another.
    - a. Gal. 5:13-15 — "By love serve one another."
    - b. Luke 22:32 — "When thou are converted, strengthen thy brethren."
    - c. I Cor. 8:1 — "Love edifies."
    - d. Rom. 14:19 — "Let us follow those things which edify one another."
  - 2. A list of basic human needs.
    - a. Survival
      - (1) Food, clothing, shelter.
      - (2) Self-preservation is man's greatest need.
      - (3) Recognizing this fact should enable both sexes to better understand each other.
      - (4) Knowing this fact should also provide an array of topics to talk about.
    - b. Security
      - (1) Money.
      - (2) Job.
      - (3) More than just basic necessities for comfort.
        - (a) Car
        - (b) TV
        - (c) Clothing, material things, etc.
    - c. Companionship.
      - (1) The desire to be loved is one of man's most powerful motivations.
      - (2) We need someone with whom we can communicate and share our lives, our ups and downs, successes and triumphs.
      - (3) In helping to fill this need, we are fulfilling the law of love.
    - d. The need to achieve.
      - (1) Man is a miniature creator.
      - (2) He was endowed with an active mind and creative powers.
      - (3) He cannot be happy with life unless he is achieving.
      - (4) To block his creative outlets leaves him anxious and frustrated.
      - (5) Understanding this point should aid both sexes to interact with each other in a true spirit of concern and respect.
    - e. The need for recognition.
      - (1) Quote from "Success Magazine", page 106.
      - (2) When dating keep this point in mind and be aware of ways you can encourage each other.
    - f. The need for identity.
      - (1) This point has to do with building a positive self-image.
      - (2) It has to do with finding your niche in life that makes you unique and different.
      - (3) Famous people like movie stars, artists, clothing designers, etc., have found themselves and their true identity in the world.
      - (4) Basically it all boils down to what you do well through personal development of your talents.
      - (5) Knowing this fact should help in interacting with others.
    - g. The need for self-acceptance.
      - (1) Without self-acceptance there can be no satisfaction.
      - (2) The more you like yourself (this comes through building self-esteem through maintaining high standards), the happier you will be, for success is the satisfaction of basic needs which culminate in self-acceptance.
      - (3) How much you like yourself determines how successful you are.
      - (4) Learn to fill this need in human life and you will become popular.

XIII. Where do we begin?

- A. To make your dates more casual, relaxed, friendly and enjoyable, I'd like to suggest you begin with group dates or group activities.
- B. There are a number of reasons why I think these are terrific for breaking the ice and building friendships.
  1. They give people a chance to ease out of their nests and try out their new wings socially.
  2. They give people an opportunity to mix and mingle freely within a crowd without feeling encumbered or responsible to any one individual.
  3. They give you an opportunity to sharpen your skills by drawing out strangers, visitors or those who are shy, withdrawing or ill at ease.
  4. Group dates provide an opportunity for you to meet new people and make new friendships.
  5. Such activities will make it easier for you to meet people you may want to ask on a single date later.
  6. Group dates will provide an opportunity for one to overcome his inhibitions and hangups, as well as to try out new social skills.
  7. Group dates are more economical since others can share expenses.
  8. Group dates can provide an opportunity for fellows and girls to develop expertise and skill as a host or hostess.
- C. A suggested list of activities.
  1. Go to Sabbath Services in a group and have a picnic afterwards.
  2. Potluck dinner at someone's home — good conversation.
  3. Roller skating party — include whole church congregation.
  4. Bowling.
  5. Miniature golf.
  6. Horseback riding.
  7. Campouts or rent lodge at Lake Arrowhead for weekend, etc.
  8. Small group go to Handle Bars for drink and conversation.
  9. Card parties or game parties (Charades, Pit, Bunco, etc.).
  10. Buy block of tickets for baseball game; pizza afterwards.
  11. During summer months when Sabbaths are long, go to someone's house for wine, cheese, conversation; maybe go out to dinner after sunset.
  12. Service projects:
    - (a) Need to get involved with community around us.
    - (b) Go to old peoples' home — provide entertainment.
    - (c) Activity to raise money for church — rummage sale, etc.
    - (d) Help those in need (committee to help when there is sickness, someone is moving, etc.).
  13. Involvement with other Church areas:
    - (a) Volleyball teams — compete with other churches in tournament.
    - (b) Visit other churches — have picnic and/or dance.
  14. Deep sea fishing trip.
  15. Visit Magic Mountain, Busch Gardens, Knotts Berry Farm, Movieland Wax Museum, Universal Studio Tours, Disneyland, Marineland, etc.
  16. Excursion to Catalina Island, dance at Aragon Ballroom.
  17. L.A. Civic Center Tour: Olvera Street, China Town, Union Train Station, County Court House, Police Admin. Building, etc.
  18. Concerts at Hollywood Bowl or Music Center; plays at Greek Theatre.
  19. Backpacking trip.
  20. Bicycle trip or motorcycle trip w/ picnic.
  21. Those who have a particular talent could give lessons: guitar, scuba diving, cooking, sewing, macrame, art, etc.
  22. Square dancing lessons.
  23. Hay ride, sing-along.
  24. Beach parties, cookout.
  25. Palm Springs' Aerial Tramway to Mt Jacinto.

26. Griffith Park Observatory and Planetarium.
27. McCurdy Nature Study Center and Nature Trail.
28. Huntington Gardens and Arboretum.

XIV. In venturing out from group dates into single dates, what goals should you set and what values should you be seeking?

A. To have fun and enjoyment.

1. This is time in life for greater emphasis on fun and enjoyment.
2. The right kind of dating produces the right kind of fun.
  - a. It should be something you can look back on and savour and relish with no regret later and no harmful side effects.
3. A good date is profitable.
  - a. There should be a sense of accomplishment of time.
  - b. A good date should be spiritually, culturally and mentally stimulating.

B. To develop a well-rounded personality.

1. Be responsive and expressive.
  - a. Participate in conversation with enthusiasm.
  - b. The more practice you have, the easier this becomes.
2. Show a genuine interest in your date — don't center the conversation around yourself.
3. Maintain a positive outlook on life.
  - a. A positive outlook makes a person magnetic.
  - b. You will be a lousy date if you are a griper, complainer, moaner, or if you are negative and pessimistic.
  - c. Girls tend to have a problem with moodiness.
    - (1) This happens when the mind is on self.
    - (2) Moodiness is caused by negative attitudes towards yourself — namely self-pity.
4. Be patient and gentle.
  - a. This comes through genuine love for other people.
  - b. Be tolerant of idiosyncracies of others.
    - (1) God made us all different.
    - (2) We must learn to appreciate these differences in each other — don't expect others to fit in our mold.
5. Have a good sense of humor.
  - a. God laughs, and He made us able to laugh.
  - b. Humor should be spontaneous, uncanned, spur-of-the-moment type.
  - c. Avoid off-color humor.
6. Maintain good personal grooming and hygiene.
  - a. Cleanliness and neatness.
    - (1) Dirty fingernails, dirty hair and dandruff are unsightly and repulsive.
    - (2) Unpressed clothes and unpolished shoes do not demonstrate social awareness.
    - (3) Dirty teeth and bad breath are very offensive.
7. Relax and be yourself.
  - a. Don't put on sophisticated airs.
  - b. Don't exaggerate, put on acts or be gushy.
  - c. The more you are around people, the less nervous you will become.

C. To expand socially and culturally.

1. Develop social skill and expertise.
  - a. Study proper etiquette so you won't be embarrassed.
    - (1) True etiquette is the law of love — treat others as you would like to be treated.
  - b. Practice makes perfect.
    - (1) The more you put yourself in social situations, the more comfortable you will become.
2. Learn to appreciate art and good music.
  - a. Auditorium concerts are a good opportunity.
    - (1) Prices have now been reduced so more can afford to go occasionally.

3. God is a cultured individual.
  - a. He has the highest standards of excellence.
  - b. He is surrounded by richness and beauty.
- D. To broaden your education.
  1. Dating encourages you to get out of your rut and expand your interests.
  2. You can learn by listening to experiences and sharing ideas with your dates.
  3. The more variety you have in dating, the broader the educational values.
    - a. Talk to people from different countries or those who have traveled.
      - (1) Encourage them to talk about their native land and experiences.
      - (2) We're not talking about inter-racial dating — but international dating.
    - b. Date people from different economic backgrounds, or different states within the U.S.A., urban and rural.
      - (1) Ask them to share information about their backgrounds.
- E. To develop the art of conversation.
  1. Human nature wants the "no sweat" way — no effort.
    - a. Modern dating in America inhibits social development and development of personality.
    - b. Not much talking takes place, especially when loud, throbbing music is being played.
    - c. Movies are frequent dates — no talking is done in the theatre.
    - d. Dates are watching, listening and petting — no talking.
  2. Communication takes effort
    - a. Share clean and wholesome ideas.
    - b. Ask questions about each other's backgrounds.
  3. On a date, the man should normally take the lead.
    - a. His responsibility to initiate conversation and guide it.
    - b. Don't monopolize the conversation, be a braggart or a know-it-all.
    - c. Don't preach to her or evaluate her weaknesses.
    - d. Plan ahead — have some good topics in mind.
  4. Be a good listener and don't butt in.
    - a. Give speaker your undivided attention.
    - b. Respond and add something for the other to reply to.
  5. Don't gossip, tell off-color jokes, or talk about your sex problems.
- F. To overcome self-centeredness.
  1. Have attitude of giving a date — not getting a date.
    - a. The American way of life and dating is based on getting. We all are motivated by selfishness, the all-consuming motive of human nature.
  2. Don't just date those who are the most attractive to you. This is lust of the flesh.
  3. Dating helps develop sensitivity to the needs of others.
    - a. Learn to listen and try to understand.
    - b. Be an encouragement.
    - c. If the problem is serious, suggest counseling.
  4. Some people just need a little recognition and attention.
    - a. Example of the rose bud.
  5. Opportunity to learn service.
- G. To experience a wide range of personalities.
  1. "Birds of a feather flock together."
    - a. Don't get stuck in this cliquish pattern.
  2. Becoming acquainted with a variety of personalities can expand your own qualities.
    - a. It helps you to become more balanced.
    - b. We must learn to accept the differences and idiosyncrasies in people.
      - (1) This is part of the individuality and uniqueness that God has created in each of us.
    - c. Sometimes opposites do attract — you never know unless you try it.
  3. By experiencing a variety of personalities, we can come to understand each and every individual.

#### H. To build confidence

1. Dating helps build a solid, confident self-image.
  - a. The more good dating experiences you have, the more confidence you will build.
  - b. Dating encourages you to try new things, go to different places.
    - (1) Be original — try to come up with something different, but worthwhile.
2. Self-respect is often measured by our accomplishments or failures.
  - a. Every successful date is an accomplishment.

#### I. To prepare for courtship and marriage.

1. Experience a variety of samples of the opposite sex to find out what are your likes and dislikes.
  - a. You must date widely in order to be sure that you find the right mate.
2. You must learn how different people with a variety of standards and personalities affect you.
3. In casual dating you overcome nervousness and learn to relax and respond to the opposite sex.
  - a. Then when you are ready to begin courting, you can evaluate situations realistically.
4. You become aware of the psychological differences in men and women.
  - a. If these aren't learned prior to marriage, it can produce a tragic situation.

**-END-**



# CHAPTER 14

## **HOW TO DEVELOP YOUR FULL POTENTIAL**

God has given mankind a supreme goal which will result in perfection: "Become ye therefore perfect, even as your Father which is in heaven is PERFECT" (Matt 5:48).

But to achieve this ultimate spiritual goal — and any other lesser physical goal in life — all Christians must focus their mind firmly on God and Jesus Christ. All areas of life must be viewed from this perspective: "Seek ye first the Kingdom of God, and His righteousness, and all these things shall be added unto you" (Matt. 6:33)!

There are only two dimensions our goals in life can seek: the physical or the spiritual. We must emphasize the one or the other. If we emphasize the physical over and above the spiritual, we will eventually lose everything — even the fleeting physical goals we seek.

But, if we emphasize the spiritual, we can gain EVERYTHING — both spiritual and physical!

The following principles are given as a help and aid to the Christian man, as he seeks to develop his full potential and attain the goals which life sets before him.

### 1. Make Walking With God Your Highest Ambition and Supreme Desire

From the beginning, God has shown mankind that all of his desires, goals, potential and yearnings, are to be fulfilled through Him:

*"Love the Lord your God with all your heart and with all your soul. Ye shall walk after the Lord your God, and fear Him, and keep His commandments, and obey His voice, and ye shall serve Him, and cleave unto Him" (Deut. 13:3-4).*

*"Whether therefore ye eat, or drink, or whatsoever ye do, do ALL to the glory of God." (I Cor 10:31)*

Unless this spiritual relationship is right — and acts as your FOUNDATION in life — everything else is wrong.

### 2. Keep Your Eye On The Day of Judgment

Always remember that you are headed in one of two directions:

- (a) Eternal Life — the Kingdom of God
- (b) Eternal Death — the Lake of Fire

The decisions and actions you make day by day will show which course you are on. Emphasize loving and respecting God as you live your life — and you will have REWARD in His Kingdom.

However, the choice is yours. The final day of reckoning is the bottom line that will show how you've chosen to live life.

Remember the words of Solomon:

*"Let US hear the conclusion of the whole matter. Fear God, and keep His commandments: for this is the whole duty of man. For God shall bring every work into Judgment, with every secret thing whether it be good, or whether it be evil" (Eccl. 12:13-14).*

### 3. Learn To Be Humble As God is Humble

All-powerful though He is, God is humble. The psalmist David wrote: "Who is like unto the Lord our God, Who dwelleth on high, WHO HUMBLETH HIMSELF to behold the things that are in heaven and in the earth." (Psa. 113:5-6) And when Jesus Christ came as a man, he was humble (Phil. 2:8).

Frankly, we have nothing to boast of as human beings. Compressed into solid matter (16 elements) individually we would be reduced to a small pile of dirt "Dust thou art, and unto dust shalt thou return" (Gen. 3:19).

Whatever you accomplish, you alone cannot take full credit. Others have helped you along

the way. And, in the final analysis, GOD is responsible and should be glorified. Be grateful and give credit where it is due.

Remember that the middle letter of the word "pride" is "I."

#### 4. Be Acutely Aware of What Enters Your Mind and How Character Is Formed

God has created the mind of man as a wonderful and marvelous instrument. "There is a spirit in man: and the inspiration of the Almighty giveth them Understanding" (Job 32:8).

Psychologists have said that only about 5% of your brain is the thinking part (the tiny tip of the iceberg), and that the other 95% is your subconscious mind where facts, knowledge, data, experience, habits, etc., are stored.

Before knowledge can be stored for use (instant or future) it has to be approved and allowed to filter through into the sub-conscious mind.

It is from this vast storehouse of knowledge and experience that you think and make decisions. Could it also be possible that this is where CHARACTER is built?

At any rate, it is vital that we monitor our thoughts and allow only that knowledge which is true and good to enter our minds.

#### 5. Create A Mental Image of the Person You Wish to Become

The Bible says that as a man "thinketh in his heart, so is he" (Prov. 23:7). And, that "if any man be in Christ, he is a new creature: old things are passed away; behold all things are become new!" (II Cor. 5:17).

You CAN become the person God wants you to be, patterned in the image of Christ: Jesus said to "learn of me" (Matt. 11:29). Study the Word of God, learn what Christ was like, meditate on it, focus on it, create a mental image of what He was like — and it can transform you.

Think long range; set your goals of growth toward the perfection of Christ. And, you will grow into it!

#### 6. Determine Your Overall Goal — What It Is You Want Most Out of Life

The Kingdom of God and spiritual growth, of course, are the primary goal of all of us. But, we are physical creatures — and have physical responsibilities to carry.

We will have life-time goals of careers, marriage, etc., that must be prepared for. God says: "Prepare thy work without, and make it fit it for thyself in the field; and afterward build thine house" (Prov. 24:27).

Think about your vocational goals. Do you want to be a machinist, an accountant, a truck driver, a carpenter? Decide — and PREPARE for it — keeping God at the center of your life. Remember, opportunity favors the prepared man. Invest time in preparing and qualifying and many advanced doors of opportunity will be opened to you.

#### 7. Make a List of All the Lesser Goals You Hope to Achieve in Life

Some people want to do so many things that they have difficulty deciding where to begin or what to do first. An effective way to overcome this problem is simply by making a list of things you hope to accomplish.

Then, just decide with what to begin. Don't procrastinate. Start with something. Whether your list has: self-improvement, learn more vocabulary, study economics, begin a hobby, or just take a vacation...get started! Eventually priorities and other areas will sort themselves out. The road to achievement is to JUST START!

#### 8. Whatever YOU Do, Strive for Excellence — Don't Settle for Mediocrity

God inspired this principle in Ecclesiastes 9:10 "Whatsoever thy hand findeth to do, do it with thy might ...."

This approach generates confidence, self-respect, and a determination to drive ahead. Don't allow boredom, laziness, neglect, or discouragement to cause you to give up and quit.

Infuse quality into everything you do. Remember the old cliché, "Whatever is worth doing is worth doing well." Instill discipline into your life until it becomes an automatic response. The Bible says that everything God did — "It was good!"

9. Follow Through and Finish What You Start

Jesus Christ instructs us as Christians that once we have set a goal, we should press on and attain it "And Jesus said unto him, No man, having put his hand to the plough, and looking back, is fit for the Kingdom of God."

Stick to your goals even though it hurts. You won't build character or grow unless you do. You may sometimes have to put something aside momentarily — but come back to it and complete the job. As Jesus did (John 17:4): "I have finished the Work." The key is to be sure your goals are intelligent and attainable. To try for the U.S. presidency is obviously unrealistic!

10. Become an Expert in Some Field — Really Good at Something

God wants excellence to be developed in His children — and we can express this in at least one area of our lives. Really apply yourself, learn at least one skill that you can be truly GOOD at. Whether it be a vocational skill or just a hobby such as painting, music, writing, sculpturing, camping, metalwork, carpentry...make it a specialty! Give it your own unique brand or mark. Become an authority in your own specialty — for the good of the Church and God's Work.

11. Don't Let Routine and Boredom Shriveled You Up — Keep Broadening Your Life By Adding New Challenges

Women, who are confined to housework, often need to get out for a change of pace. But, the same is also true for men. If you find yourself bogging down in a rut get out of it. Try out new things, something you haven't done before. Perhaps a new sport or hobby, trying out a new route to the Feast, etc., visiting places you haven't been before. Give yourself a change periodically. It will sharpen you for the regular routine you face day by day.

12. Sharpen Your Powers of Observation, Imagination & Creativity

God has placed you in a world of wonderment and endless variety. Become sensitive to sounds, things, people — to the whole of your environment. Wake up and start living!

This exercise will improve your skills as a conversationalist, and make you a more stimulating person all-around. YOU can learn from others also. Listen to how people talk — to the colorful expressions they use. OBSERVE, THINK and LEARN.

13. Experience Every Grand and Rare Opportunity Afforded You

Some people never really drink in of all the joys of life because they are afraid to venture out and try new things. Remember that God is not pleased with the "fearful" (Rev. 21:8).

If special opportunities come your way, accept them and enjoy them "with gusto."

Examples might be a trip to Europe, sailboating, a helicopter ride. These rare moments may pass you by and never happen again. As long as they are safe and sound and within the bounds of common sense and God's will — experience all the good joys that life has to offer.

14. Spend Some Time Each Day in the Realm of Nature and the Wonders of Creation

The Bible shows that we become what we channel into our minds. And, the Apostle Paul exhorts us to regularly fill our minds with the beautiful and positive: "Finally, brethren, whatsoever things are honest ... just ... pure ... lovely ... of good report; if there be any virtue, and if there be any praise, THINK ON THESE THINGS!" (Phil. 4:8)

Meditate and drink in of God's creation. Look about you and learn of the Creator. Just simple little things like observing a beautiful sunset, floating clouds, roses and flowers, the passing of squawking geese overhead — all these manifest the glory of God and His handiwork and can draw you closer to Him. Slow down and imbibe of life!

15. Continue to Increase Your Social Skills and Your Ability to Interface With People

Learning how to get along — how to be tactful and courteous — is a must for the Christian. The Bible says, "A word fitly spoken is like apples of gold in pictures of silver" (Prov. 25:11).

Learn how to reflect the qualities of God out to others in your social life. Make loving and serving mankind one of your great goals in life. You can never be a success nor reach your full potential until you master the art of human interchange. It's a skill you will use throughout eternity!

16. Cultivate the Friendship of People Who Are Older

The Bible shows that much can be learned from the wisdom of those who are older than we: "The hoary head is a crown of glory, if it be found in the way of righteousness" (Prov. 16:31). Older people can often share invaluable lessons from their storehouse of experience. Their wisdom can often give you strength in a time of crisis.

17. Practice at Least One Act of Love or Kindness Every Day You Live:

Kindness often repeated transforms itself into habit-molding character within you — and also results in blessings being poured back upon your own head: "Give, and it shall be given unto you; good measure, pressed down, and shaken together, and running over, shall men give into your bosom" (Luke 6:38).

Opportunities abound to help and serve your fellowman. Use them — for the glory of God!

18. Learn to Think For Yourself — Try, Test and Prove All Incoming Knowledge

The Bible says to "prove all things; hold fast that which is good" (I Thes. 5:21). Judge what is presented to you. Don't jump to conclusions. Look for logic, soundness, and truth. Always ask, "Does this magazine article, newscast, book, etc., harmonize with God's Word?" The Bible is the basis of all truth — test everything you read, hear, see against its pages.

This is the main reason Mr. Armstrong has stayed on track — he's always viewed knowledge from the backdrop of God's Word!

19. Keep a Notebook of ideas

Always keep your mind open for new ideas, concepts and inspiration. Capture in writing concepts, lessons learned, a new point of view or insight — while the iron is hot! Unless you do this, you may lose a thought or idea forever.

Keep 3 x 5 cards, or a pocket notebook always with you. Jot down thoughts, transfer them later to a permanent record (your "meditation manual") and review it frequently — until you incorporate this material onto the permanent tablets of your mind (II Cor. 3:3).

20. Maintain an On-going Positive Mental Attitude

Life is filled with blessings from God, but there will also be trials. No matter what happens, keep your eyes on the Kingdom of God. There may be times when it seems everything is being swept away from you, but sustain your faith in God, press on, and remember the words of Christ and His Apostle:

*"And everyone that hath forsaken houses, or brethren, or sisters, or father, or mother, or wife, or children, or lands, for my name's sake shall receive an hundredfold, and shall inherit everlasting life" (Matt. 19:29).*

*"All things work together for GOOD to them that love God, to them who are called according to His purpose..." (Rom. 8:28).*

Keep these thoughts and concepts continually before you and you will have the mind of Christ — a mind that is full of optimism and hope — and the character of God will be fashioned in you steadily day by day! You will then reach your FULL POTENTIAL!

*P.S. Since a few of the above ideas were sparked by an article in the "System Bible Study," page 744 entitled "If I Were Twenty-One," please consult it for further reading. Author unknown.*

**-END-**

## CHAPTER 15

### **HOW TO HAVE AN ATTRACTIVE PERSONALITY**

#### I. AN ATTRACTIVE PERSONALITY DOES WHAT THE THOUGHT IMPLIES: IT ATTRACTS.

- A. And how does this happen — what makes a personality appealing and attractive?
- B. What determines whether others will like you or be repelled by your behavior?
- C. A simple criteria to gauge the answer is: Do you have a lot of friends and close associates? Do people find you comfortable to be around — easy to warm up to? Do they quickly recognize you in a crowd and gravitate to you?

#### II. YOU CAN DEVELOP AN ATTRACTIVE PERSONALITY.

##### A. Here's how:

##### 1. Take a keen heart-interest in the other fellow's game in life.

- a. This was one of the great lessons Napoleon Hill learned when he interviewed over 25,000 successful businessmen and famous women over a span of 20 years.
- b. "Form the habit of interesting yourself in other people; and make it your business to find their good qualities and speak of them in terms of praise." (*"The Law of Success"*, p. 51)
- c. Says Mr. Hill:

*"Find at least one person each day, and more if possible, in whom you see some good quality that is worthy of praise, and praise it. Remember, however, that this praise must not be in the nature of cheap, insincere flattery; it must be genuine. Speak your words of praise with such earnestness that they will impress those to whom you speak; then watch what happens. You will have rendered those whom you praise a decided benefit of great value to them; and, you will have gone just one more step in the direction of developing the habit of looking for and finding the good qualities in others. I cannot over-emphasize the far-reaching effects of this habit of praising, openly and enthusiastically, the good qualities in others; for this habit will soon reward you with a feeling of self-respect and manifestation of gratitude from others, that will modify your entire personality. Here, again, the law of attraction enters, and those whom you praise will see, in you, the qualities that you see in them. Your success in the application of this formula will be in exact proportion to your FAITH in its soundness.*

*"I do not merely believe that it is sound — I KNOW THAT IT IS — and the reason I know is that I have used it successfully and I have also taught others how to use it successfully; therefore, I have a right to promise you that you can use it with equal success.*

*"Furthermore, you can, with the aid of this formula, develop an ATTRACTIVE PERSONALITY so speedily that you will surprise all who know you. The development of such a personality is entirely within your own control, a fact which gives you a tremendous advantage and at the same time places upon you the responsibility if you fail or neglect to exercise your privilege." (*"The Law of Success"*, pp. 49-50.)*

##### 2. Learn to speak with force and conviction.

- a. All pleasing personalities express this ability.
- b. Continuing with Mr. Hill: "Put feeling and emotion into your words as you speak, and develop a deep, rich tone of voice. If your voice is inclined to be high pitched, tone it down until it is soft and pleasing. You can never express an ATTRACTIVE PERSONALITY, to best advantage, through a harsh or shrill voice. You must cultivate your voice until it becomes rhythmical and pleasing to the ear.

*"Remember that speech is the chief method of expressing your personality, and for this reason it is to your advantage to cultivate a style that is both forceful and pleasing.*

*"I do not recall a single outstanding attractive personality that was not made up, in part,*

of ability to speak with force and conviction. Study the prominent men and women of today, wherever you find them, and observe the significant fact that the more prominent they are the more efficient are they in speaking forcefully.

"Study the outstanding figures of the past in politics and statesmanship and observe that the most successful ones were those who were noted for their ability to speak with force and conviction.

"In the field of business, industry and finance it seems significant, also, that the most prominent leaders are men and women who are able public speakers.

"In fact no one may hope to become a prominent leader in any noteworthy undertaking without developing the ability to speak with forcefulness that carries conviction. While the statesman may never deliver a public address, he will profit, nevertheless, if he develops the ability to do so, because this ability increases his power to talk convincingly in ordinary conversation." (*Law of Success*, pp. 50-51.)

"If you will cultivate these finer thoughts, and feelings, and actions, out of which a positive character is built, and then learn to express yourself with force and conviction, you will have developed an attractive personality, for it will be seen that out of this attainment will come the other qualities here outlined." (*Law of Success*, pp. 53-54.)

### 3. Dress appropriately.

- a. Your clothing reflects your thoughts and inner evaluation of your worth.
- b. Begin to build a wardrobe that becomes your stature and physical frame and the nature of your work.

### 4. Learn the simple art of shaking hands.

- a. Do this so that you express warmth of feeling and enthusiasm with this form of greeting.
- b. A genuine smile should accompany your hand shake.

### 5. Practice true humility.

- a. Cease calling attention to yourself and advertising your virtues or accomplishments.
- b. The secret to becoming successful is forgetting yourself in service to others.
- c. Help to edify, build up and encourage people in their accomplishments.
- d. Become a "go-giver" instead of a "go-getter."

### 6. Learn the art of being agreeable.

- a. This is one of the most vital ingredients to building an attractive personality.
- b. Be cooperative and responsive — a peacemaker.
- c. "You have observed that all through this lesson I have gone into lengthy detail to show the material advantages of being agreeable to other people.

"However, the biggest advantage of all lies, not in the possibility of monetary or material gain which this habit offers, but in the beautifying effect that it has upon the character of all who practice it.

"Acquire the habit of making yourself agreeable and you profit both materially and mentally; for you will never be as happy in any other way as you will be when you know that you are making others happy.

"Remove the chips from your shoulders and quit challenging men to engage you in useless arguments! Remove the smoked glasses through which you see what you believe to be the "blueness" of life and behold the shining sunlight of friendliness in its stead. Throw away your hammer and quit knocking, for surely you must know that the big prizes of life go to the BUILDERS and not the DESTROYERS.

"The man who builds a house is an artist; the man who tears it down is a junkman. If you are a person with a GRIEVANCE the world will listen to your vitriolic "ravings," providing it does not "see you comings" but, if you are a person with a MESSAGE of friendliness and optimism, it will listen because it wishes to do so.

"No person with a grievance can be also a person with an attractive personality:

"The art of being agreeable — just that one simple trait — is the very foundation of all successful salesmanship." (*Law of Success*, pp. 54-55.)

## 7. Develop Godly character.

- a. *"By far the most important part of your personality is that which is represented by your character, and is therefore the part that is not visible." (Law of Success, p. 5.)*
- b. *"...no one may have a pleasing personality without the foundation of a sound, positive character. Through the principle of telepathy you 'telegraph' the nature of your character to those with whom you come in contact, which is responsible for what you have often called an 'intuitive' feeling that the person whom you had just met, but about whom you did not know very much, was not trustworthy.*

*"You may embellish yourself with clothes of the neatest and latest design, and conduct yourself in a most pleasing manner as far as outside appearances go; but if there is greed, and envy, and hatred, and jealousy, and avarice, and selfishness in your heart, you will NEVER attract any, except those characters which harmonize with your own. Like attracts like, and you may be sure, therefore, that those who are attracted to you are those whose inward natures parallel your own.*

*"You may embellish yourself with an artificial smile that belies your feelings, and you may practice the art of hand-shaking so that you can imitate, perfectly, the hand-shake of the person who is an adept at this art, but, if these outward manifestations of an attractive personality lack that vital factor called EARNESTNESS OF PURPOSE, they will repel instead of attract." ("Law of Success", pp. 47-48.)*

*"There is a great power of ATTRACTION back of the person who has a positive character, and this power expresses itself through unseen as well as visible sources. The moment you come within speaking distance of such a person, even though not a word is spoken, the influence of the 'unseen power within' makes itself felt.*

*"Every 'shady' transaction in which you engage, every negative thought that you think, and every destructive act in which you indulge, destroys just so much of that 'subtle something' within you that is known as CHARACTER.*

*"There is full confession in the glances of our eyes; in our smiles; in salutations; in the grasp of the hands. His sin bedaubs him, mars all his good impression. Men know not why they do not trust him, but they do not trust him. His vice glasses his eye, demeans his cheek, pinches the nose, sets the mark of beast on the back of the head, and writes, 'O fool! fool!' on the forehead of a king. (Emerson.)" ("Law of Success", p. 54.)*

- c. Ultimately, to have an attractive and outstanding personality, develop holy and righteous character.

**-END-**





## CHAPTER 16

### **HOW TO INSPIRE A MAN**

#### I. DO YOU WANT TO BE MORE POPULAR WITH THE MEN IN THE RIGHT WAY AND HAVE MORE DATES?

- A) Choose the right husband when the time comes for marriage?
- B) Do you really know what turns a man on and inspires him?

#### II. THE ANSWER IS FOUND IN THE CONCEPT OR PURPOSE GOD HAD IN MIND WHEN HE CREATED EVE.

#### III. NOTICE THE STORY AGAIN

- A) Gen. 2:7-8; 18-24: "Creation of Eve..."
- B) Note this distinction:
  - 1) The man being alone was incomplete.
  - 2) God created the woman to complete him.
- C) And what was her assigned role?
  - 1) To be his helper.
  - 2) Gen. 2:18: "I will make an help meet for him."

#### IV. UNDERSTAND THIS POINT.

- A) Being a man's helper does not mean being his slave, merely doing physical labor — or SERVING.
- B) Being a help meet means rounding out the man — completing him — being his supplement.
- C) Gen. 2:23-24: One flesh
  - 1) Suit — coat and pants.
  - 2) Two balances on the scale.
  - 3) It takes a man and woman to make a UNION.
  - 4) God has all these characteristics.

#### V. HOW HUSBAND AND WIFE ARE EQUAL —

- A) He plays his role.
- B) She plays hers.

#### VI. BEING A HELP MEET INVOLVES TWO BROAD ROLES.

- A) Rendering physical service.
- B) Providing mental and emotional needs.

#### VII. WOMEN'S LIB AND THE TREND TOWARD DEGENERACY.

- A) Going contrary to God's purpose.
- B) Unisex

#### VIII. HERE'S HOW TO RECAPTURE TRUE VALUES.

- A) Start thinking in terms of becoming a mature, balanced woman within the concept God intended.
- B) Remember that the essence of true womanhood is largely a matter of attitude.
  - 1) Toward God.
  - 2) Toward others.
  - 3) Toward the man.
  - 4) Toward yourself.
- C) START NOW!

IX. SPECIFICS: THE THINGS THAT INSPIRE MEN.

- 1) A lively personality tempered with humility.
  - a) Smile.
  - b) Quick to listen.
  - c) Showing interest and a mature enthusiasm in the other fellow's game in life.
  - d) Fun and humor — but be balanced.
  - e) Don't forget the "MEEK AND QUIET SPIRIT" principle.
- 2) A spontaneous desire to serve regardless of the person's position or status.
  - a) The other person's position.
  - b) Your own.
- 3) Appreciation.
  - a) Be aware of the little sacrifices people make for you, as well as the big.
  - b) Get into the habit of saying thank you with your heart — not just with your tongue.
- 4) Honor and respect.
  - a) Show this by action and attitude.
  - b) Tone of voice.
- 5) Outwardly praising a good quality or example in others.
  - a) Mean this sincerely.
  - b) Will encourage them.
  - c) Will build favor.
- 6) Recognizing effort and achievement.
  - a) This motivates a man.
  - b) Builds confidence.
- 7) Encouragement and building a right confidence in the man.
  - a) Point out his strengths.
  - b) Past accomplishments and successes.
- 8) Fit in with his interests and stand behind his plans.
  - a) Adapt — get in line.
  - b) Show enthusiasm.
  - c) Brainstorm for ideas to augment his.
- 9) Be strong when he is weak or has failed.
  - a) Let him know your faith in him and God has not failed nor has your respect diminished.
  - b) Give him new life and hope by helping to carry the banner with him — even in the face of defeat.
- 10) Be teachable and quick to change when wrong.
  - a) Without debate or argument.
  - b) Yet feel free to talk about it looking to him for help.
- 11) Intreat him when he is wrong with positive love, encouragement and patience.
  - a) Keep your cool.
  - b) Tell him you love him, respect him, then discuss the problem.
- 12) Learn to be discreet and avoid cynical blabbering.
  - a) Sounds cute.
  - b) But it breeds hard feelings and contempt.

X. TWO FINAL POINTS.

- 1) Try at all costs never to wound a man's ego or self-respect.
  - a) This destroys his spirit and
  - b) Shows an utter lack of wisdom.
  - c) There is a time to be firm with men who themselves lack wisdom or get too serious.
- 2) Don't rush courtship in choosing your man.
  - a) You will be drawn together in time.
  - b) God will provide the circumstance in helping you make the right choice.

## **CHAPTER 17**

### **HOW TO KNOW THE TRUE FEELINGS OF SOMEONE YOU LIKE**

The proper kind of dating is an excellent way for a man and woman to get to know each other. It can be a fresh, wholesome, constructive activity that is intellectually stimulating and physically upbuilding.

Yet, dating can have its challenges, too.

Often the time comes in a dating relationship when one becomes serious about the other. There's an underlying uncertainty, however, as to whether the relationship is mutually shared. He or she is unable to "read" the mind or intent of the other.

Now, this can be a traumatic experience, causing much mental anguish, and is a subject I would like to discuss with you in this paper. There is a way you can know.

#### **THE PROBLEM DESCRIBED**

To begin, let's take an example of a young man who is dating a charming and personable young woman. Several weeks have passed, and he's starting to develop strong feelings for her. Being discreet and not wanting to appear pushy, he begins to express his interest in a proper and courteous way. He takes her out to dinner, invites her to go for walks, does little things for her such as repairing a door lock, occasionally taking her shopping, or running some errands. Being a gentleman, his whole approach is one of giving — doing things and going places which they mutually seem to enjoy.

Without having to tell her outrightly that he cares, he tries every way possible to communicate the idea that she's "special." Yet, in spite of all his efforts, she's remained "noncommittal" and quiet. He's still unable to determine her innermost feelings and to know where he stands.

#### **HOW YOU CAN KNOW THE FEELINGS OF ANOTHER**

The secret to understanding the person you like can be summed up in a simple word — RESPONSE, or FEEDBACK. If that person has similar feelings and cares for you, he or she will RESPOND IN LIKE MANNER. That is, he will return the love you give through obvious, direct and overt actions.

It is simply a law of life that true love is a "sharing" principle. When you give of yourself in love and concern, the recipient of your affection will respond in kind — if that person is "turned on" toward you. This is not meant to imply that we should give in order to get. But, if a man truly loves a woman — and she's equally attracted to him — she will experience a desire to give love in return. Through outward signs and actions, she'll let her feelings come through. You won't find it necessary to "probe" for an answer. She'll express it in clear, tangible language so you'll have no reason to doubt.

If, on the other hand, you've been dating for a reasonable period of time and there's no visible response, wise up to the fact that she's probably not interested — hold your feelings in check. By a lack of response, she's saying in effect, "I don't have the same feelings as you do. I really don't want to get involved — at least not yet. I simply want to be a friend." We call this NEGATIVE FEEDBACK.

The test of RESPONSE or FEEDBACK is one you can always go by. Feedback is not something you should have to "dig out" of the other person. True love is not a one-sided affair — it's a relationship that will be shared by both. When love is true and real, the response will always be mutual and will flow naturally and spontaneously. IF SHE'S NOT TELLING YOU SOMETHING BY NOW, THEN OBVIOUSLY SHE HAS NOTHING TO TELL.

Also, if there is a high level of inconsistency in the attitude of the other person — on one date he or she seems turned on toward you, on the next date cold as ice — this is a good indication that it's NOT in your best interest to continue the relationship. True love is consistent!

### **WHY THE PERSON MAY NOT BE INTERESTED IN MARRIAGE**

A word of explanation about NEGATIVE FEEDBACK. Just because the person you're dating does not respond to your overtures as hoped, don't allow yourself to become discouraged or think of yourself as being inferior or unworthy. There may be valid reasons why the individual does not want to get serious.

- 1) He or she may be interested in someone else.
- 2) The person may feel inadequately prepared for marriage.
- 3) He or she may have other plans such as graduating from college, or embarking on a career, etc.
- 4) There may be heavy debts to be paid off.
- 5) The person may think himself too young and inexperienced to enter into a confining relationship and needs more time to grow and mature.
- 6) There may be a lack of natural attraction or common interest between you.
- 7) The person simply wants to be a friend, and nothing more.

If these points apply, face the truth squarely and don't try to convince the person to change his or her mind. Be patient and continue to date others! Eventually the right person will enter your life.

### **SHOULD YOU EVER ASK FOR ANOTHER'S FEELINGS?**

Is there ever a time to ask the person his or her true feelings about you? In most cases this will not be necessary if you have followed the above guidelines. The feedback you receive will tell the story. Let's suppose, however, that both of you have grown in love, but have not divulged your innermost secrets. If your relationship has progressed this far, you will of necessity want to open up and be candid with each other. The key is to wait long enough to be assured your love is real and that you both can talk comfortably about it. Until you can do this, give yourself a little more time to let the relationship blossom and flourish.

### **WHEN TO COOL A RELATIONSHIP**

Let's assume you discover that the other person really isn't interested and doesn't want to get involved! Should you then break off dating altogether? Only if you are deeply entrenched, miserably frustrated, and can't get him or her out of your life. The Christian approach, however, is to discipline oneself and back off from dating too much when you find the relationship is not working out. Why allow yourself to get carried away when you can clearly see the handwriting on the wall? Whatever your decision, you should treat the person with utmost respect as you would any other Christian in God's Church. Don't hold a grudge and act spiteful. Forget the relationship, but continue to be a friend.

### **PUTTING IT ALL IN FOCUS**

To sum up the matter, if there is doubt, uncertainty or any degree of negativism about how the other person feels — especially if there has been a long dating experience — it is wise to recognize the warning signs and honestly admit the truth: it is not a satisfactory relationship and should not culminate in marriage!

In a true love relationship, you BOTH will respond to each other within the framework of God's Law. You will share, give, help and serve each other. There will be a growing together, a learning process, a blending, a mutual attraction that is MORE than just physical. There will be a spiritual harmony which is based on respect, admiration and honor — and will involve the complete and total union of your hearts and minds.

When you've enjoyed a long dating experience and it has grown strong and durable through time, then you have the knowledge that, "YES, this person is the RIGHT one for me! We are in love! Marriage is the next wonderful, beautiful, and natural step in our relationship! There is NO DOUBT about it!"

**-END-**

## CHAPTER 18

### **HOW TO KNOW WHEN GOD'S SPIRIT IS LEADING YOU**

- I. In one of his recent "Personals" (May 1982 — page 26), Mr. Armstrong made a profound and stunning statement about God's Spirit.
  - A. He said, "Just receiving God's Spirit is not enough. One must be led by God's Spirit"
  - B. The implication of these words is clear and certain:
    1. God's Spirit must be active and flow in and out of our lives if we're to overcome and grow and qualify for His Kingdom
    2. If we don't use it, we'll lose it.
  - C. This brings us to an important question.
- II. Can you point to a specific instance in your life this past week when God's Spirit was leading you?
  - A. What about yesterday or today?
  - B. Can you isolate many such examples?
  - C. Are you sure?
- III. Suppose you think 5,000 thoughts a day!
  - A. How many of these are God inspired?
  - B. 3,000; 2,000; 1,000; 50?
  - C. Ideally, God should be in every thought — in every word, decision or action!
- IV. There are several scriptures which imply that God's Spirit should be in all our thoughts and guide our lives unceasingly.
  - A. Examples:
    1. Prov. 23:17 — "... be thou in the fear of the Lord all the day long."
    2. I Thess. 5:17: — "Pray without ceasing."
    3. II Cor. 10:5 — "... and bringing into captivity every thought to the obedience of Christ."
- V. This now brings us to an important key scripture in Romans 8.
  - A. Rom. 8:14 — "For as many as are led by the Spirit of God, they are the sons of God."
  - B. Clearly, we are to be led by God's Spirit.
  - C. But how can we know and be positively sure when it is?
  - D. What are the signs, guiding our lives?
    1. Does it lead through some type of "inner" voice?
    2. Does it lead through our emotions?
    3. Just how does it guide and direct us?
- VI. This evening I plan to answer the question: "How to know when God's Spirit is leading you!"
- VII. Exactly what is God's Spirit?
  - A. Turn to Acts 1:8 for a clue: "But ye shall receive power, after that the Holy Spirit is come upon you...."
  - B. The Greek word for "power" is "dunamis" from which we get our English word "dynamo."
    1. God's Spirit, then, is His self-reproducing power — like a dynamo or generator that produces electricity.
    2. It is that invisible force which emanates from God — His inherent power or glory.
    3. It is His might, strength and awesome majesty.
    4. It is His life and energy.

- C. In a more specific sense it is:
1. The mind of God — His intellectual and mental faculties that govern His power.
  2. It is the consciousness of God; it is His emotional makeup and enthusiasm.
  3. It embodies all of His inner feelings, attitudes, attributes and qualities — it is His love, joy, holiness, virtue and nature.
  4. In a word, God's Spirit is His total character, personality and being.
- D. If it were possible to transplant your mind, life and personality into another person, he would have something of your spirit.
1. The same is true with God — His mind, nature, personality and character proceed from Him and are placed within you.
  2. Many scriptures prove that God's Spirit dwells within you as a begotten son.
  3. One good example is Romans 8:11 — "But if the Spirit of him that raised up Jesus from the dead dwell in you, he that raised up Christ from the dead shall also quicken your mortal bodies by his Spirit that dwelleth in you."

VIII. Before explaining how God's Spirit actually leads in everyday life, it is still yet necessary to note a few foundational principles about it.

- A. God's Spirit is omnipresent and permeates the entire universe.
1. Ps. 139:1-10 — These verses prove that God's Spirit is everywhere present.
  2. It radiates and flows mightily from Him filling the entirety of space.
- B. Its first action is to awaken our minds to God's existence and His majestic power.
1. Note the condition we were in before we were called:
  2. Eph. 2:1-3 — "And you hath he quickened, who were dead in trespasses and sins; Wherein in time past ye walked according to the course of this world, according to the prince of the power of the air, the spirit that now worketh in the children of disobedience: Among whom also we all had our conversation in times past in the lusts of the flesh, fulfilling the desires of the flesh and of the mind; and were by nature the children of wrath, even as others."
  3. So in his sinful and cut off state, man is dead in trespasses and sins.
  4. But Jesus Christ said that He would send the Holy Spirit into the world and that it would convict man of sin.
  5. John 16:7-8 — "Nevertheless I tell you the truth; It is expedient for you that I go away: for if I go not away, the Comforter will not come unto you; but if I depart, I will send him unto you. And when he is come, he will reprove [margin says, convince or convict] the world of sin, and of righteousness, and of judgment."
- C. It then calls us to God and opens our eyes to the truth.
1. John 6:44 — "No man can come to me, except the Father which hath sent me draw him: and I will raise him up at the last day."
  2. Without the Holy Spirit working on man's mind, he would never seek for God naturally or of his own accord.
  3. The Bible says that many are called but few are chosen.
  4. What determines who God chooses?
    - a. There may be many factors.
    - b. But one of the clearest reasons is given in the parable of the sower and the seed.
    - c. Note Luke 8:11-15
    - d. Those chosen in this parable are those an "honest and good heart."
- D. It leads us on to full repentance and conversion.
1. Rom. 2:3-4 — "*And thinkest thou this, O man, that judgest them which do such things, and doest the same, that thou shalt escape the judgment of God? Or despisest thou the riches of his goodness and tolerance and longsuffering; not knowing that the goodness of God leadeth thee to repentance?*" (NOTE: Acts 11:18 proves that God grants repentance.)
  2. For some this process may take months or years.
  3. Cite the example of my own father-in-law who knew the truth for 30 years before being baptized.
- E. It begets us with God's own life and divine nature.
1. II Pet. 1:3-4 — "*According as his divine power hath given unto us all things that pertain unto life and*

godliness, through the knowledge of him that hath called us to glory and virtue: Whereby are given unto us exceeding great and precious promises: that by these ye might be partakers of the divine nature, having escaped the corruption that is in the world through lust."

2. And again, read I John 5:11-12 — "And this is the record, that God hath given to us eternal life, and this life is in his Son. He that hath the Son hath life; and he that hath not the Son of God hath not life."
3. God's Spirit, then, impregnates us with the seed of eternal life.

#### IX. How then does God's Spirit lead us in practical, everyday experience?

A. How can we know and be positively sure?

B. Twelve methods:

1. It keeps us in tune with God's wavelength and interacts with our spirit.
  - a. Rom. 8:16 — "The Spirit itself beareth witness with our spirit, that we are the children of God."
  - b. Note further I John 3:24 — "And he that keepeth his commandments dwelleth in him, and he in him. And hereby we know that he abideth in us, by the Spirit which he hath given us."
  - c. So God's Spirit dwells within us and communicates the knowledge, truth and confidence that we are His sons.
  - d. This contact with God should grow until it becomes constant and unceasing.
2. It imparts spiritual understanding and the ability to grasp the interrelationship of scriptures.
  - a. Read and expound I Corinthians 2:9-15.
  - b. The Holy Spirit, then, helps us to understand the Bible and its application to everyday life.
  - c. John 6:63 — "... the words that I speak unto you, they are spirit, and they are life."
3. It transmits the power to overcome and to mortify the deeds of the body.
  - a. Rom. 8:13 — "For if ye live after the flesh, ye shall die: but if ye through the Spirit do mortify the deeds of the body, ye shall live."
  - b. No matter what your problem, no sin or weakness or temptation is beyond God's power to help you solve.
  - c. Cry out fervently and God will provide the immediate or necessary help you need.
4. It prompts us to do God's will in everyday experiences by impulse or desire.
  - a. Phil. 2:12-13 — "Wherefore, my beloved, as ye have always obeyed, not as in my presence only, but now much more in my absence, work out your own salvation with fear and trembling. For it is God which worketh in you both to will and to do of his good pleasure." (Read article on "Sharing")
  - b. The impulse or motivation to live a godly and righteous life should increase as you walk closer to Him each day.
  - c. The flow of God's Spirit becomes stronger and more apparent as you strive to remove the hidden specks of sin.
5. It sharpens and intensifies our sense of awareness to sin, Satan and the world.
  - a. Paul said in II Corinthians 2:11 — "Lest Satan should get an advantage of us: for we are not ignorant of his devices."
  - b. This he achieved through the power of God's Holy Spirit.
  - c. God's Spirit will help you also to be on guard, strong and ready to do battle with your foe.
6. It stimulates our memory and grants the power of instant recall.
  - a. John 14:26 — "But the Comforter, which is the Holy Spirit, whom the Father will send in my name, he shall teach you all things, and bring all things to your remembrance, whatsoever I have said unto you."
  - b. As you yield to God, His Spirit will awaken your memory to the principles, truths, scriptures or lessons that you may have momentarily forgotten or fallen into disuse.
7. It convicts our conscience when we stray or backslide into sin.
  - a. Heb. 9:14 — "How much more shall the blood of Christ, who through the eternal Spirit offered himself without spot to God, purge your conscience from dead works to serve the living God?"
  - b. If you know God's will, listen to the wee voice of your conscience — it could be God speaking to you or bringing you back into a right standing with Him. I Kings 19:12 — "...a still small voice."
  - c. David said in Psalms 119:60 — "I made haste, and delayed not to keep thy commandments."
  - d. That should be our constant attitude of life.

8. It imparts the power of instant self-control or instant self-command.
    - a. Eph 3:20 — *"Now unto him that is able to do exceeding abundantly above all that we ask or think, according to the power that worketh in us."* (See also Eph. 1:19)
    - b. If you really want God's help, it's instantly and readily available to assist you in surmounting any obstacle or overcoming any sin.
  9. It infuses God's very own love not only for the brethren but also for our enemies.
    - a. Rom. 5:5 — *"And hope maketh not ashamed; because the love of God is shed abroad in our hearts by the Holy Spirit which is given to us."*
    - b. Act on the impulse of love whether or not you emotionally feel it.
    - c. The emotions or feelings of love will always follow.
    - d. True agape love is an act of the will inspired by God.
  10. It imparts the dynamic faith and courage of Christ.
    - a. The track record should have proved by now that God will never leave you nor forsake you (Heb. 13:5).
    - b. And Jesus said, *"...Io, I am with you alway, even unto the end of the world"* (Matt. 28:20).
    - c. God will give you the very faith and confidence to face any trial or crisis if you will sincerely ask Him for it.
    - d. But for it to be effective in your life, you must step out and actively use it.
  11. It causes the qualities, character and personality of God in us to flow out to others.
    - a. John 7:38-39 — *"He that believeth on me, as the scripture hath said, out of his belly shall flow rivers of living water. (But this spake he of the Spirit, which they that believe on him should receive...)"*
    - b. The happiness, joy and the full abundant life of God in you should flow out to all of mankind within your reach and be a shining witness to them.
    - c. You must never forget that you are an ambassador for Christ and stand as one of His representatives on earth.
  12. It comforts and reassures us continually that we are God's children and destined for His Kingdom.
    - a. John 3:1 — *"Behold, what manner of love the Father hath bestowed upon us, that we should be called the sons of God..."*
    - b. The Holy Spirit is called a Comforter (John 14:26)
    - c. One of its main functions as Comforter is to remind us of what we are, God's begotten sons, and were created to become members of His divine family.
    - d. It strengthens and comforts us in our trials to be strong and endure to the end.
- X. As we continue to grow there will be deeper manifestations and advanced stages signifying that we're receiving more of God's Spirit.
- A. Examples.
    1. As we surrender, yield and obey, it will reveal greater depths of spiritual knowledge, understanding and wisdom.
      - a. Eph. 1:17-19 — *"... the Father ... may give unto you the spirit of wisdom and revelation in the knowledge of him: The eyes of your understanding being enlightened..."*
    2. It will guide us into deeper truths and enable us to see with increasing clarity God's will and ultimate purpose.
      - a. John 16:13 — *"... he [it — the Spirit] will guide you into all truth ..."*
    3. It will proceed with our growth and development by writing God's laws in our hearts and minds with each passing day.
      - a. Jer. 31:33 *"... I will put my law in their inward parts, and write it in their hearts ..."*
    4. We will come to have a greater and deeper knowledge of God day by day.
    5. We will come to have a more intense desire to please God and live for His glory. (This should become our supreme desire.)
    6. Our relationship to God will heighten so that eventually our contact will be steady and increasing.
    7. Our love for others will noticeably increase and we'll discover hundreds of heretofore unrecognized ways to serve.



8. We'll always be concerned about our lack of love for God and Jesus Christ.
9. We will have an increasing awareness of sin within and discover hidden idols we never knew existed.
10. This will lead to an increasing mourning because of sin within us.
11. We will become increasingly sensitive to every approach of sin, evil and temptation.
12. We will become aware in ourselves of breathings, hungerings and thirstings after purity, righteousness and holiness.
13. We will translate such feelings into action.
14. We will grow more and more to be like God by taking on His similarities and likenesses in every aspect of life.
  - a. We will start resembling Jesus Christ in particular.
  - b. II Cor. 3:18 — *"But we all, with open face beholding as in a glass the glory of the Lord, are changed into the same image from glory to glory, even as by the Spirit of the Lord."*

NOTE: A few of the above 14 points are taken from studies of Dr. Martin Lloyd-Jones — Bible scholar and writer.

XI. Finally, would you like to know what it would take for God's Church to experience another outpouring of God's Spirit as on the day of Pentecost?

- A. To have greater favor with God and more power to do His Work?
- B. The answer can be found in Acts 1 and 2.
  1. Acts 1:4-8, 12-14 — *"...These all continued with one accord in prayer and supplication..."*
  2. Acts 2:1-4 — *"...they were all with one accord in one place..."*
- C. The secret, then, is united prayer and supplication by the Church.
- D. We all must ask God as a body — as a team — in mutual love and harmony to send forth His Spirit in power and might.
- E. This united effort, however, presupposes wholehearted prayer and unreserved surrender to God.

XII. Conclusion.

"This then, is what it means to be led by God's Spirit."

**-END-**



## CHAPTER 19

### **HOW TO KNOW YOU'VE CHOSEN THE RIGHT MATE FOR MARRIAGE**

- I. Choosing a mate in Ancient Israel was not as difficult as today because THE PARENTS DID THE CHOOSING!
- A. However, the selection was generally agreed upon by both children and parents.
1. The father did not arbitrarily decide who his children should marry without their involvement or consent as in the movie "*Fiddler On The Roof*".
  2. Parents and children alike mutually discussed the pros and cons of a prospective mate before reaching a decision.
  3. There were a few orthodox tribes such as with some Mennonites today who selected mates for their children while the mother was still pregnant. It was a multiple family agreement.
- B. Why were the parents intrinsically involved?
1. Because the families were closely knit and the parents held a position of high esteem in the home.
  2. The children placed great value on the wisdom, insight and counsel of Mom and Dad.
  3. They had unquestioned trust in their parents judgment to lead them to the best possible choice.
- C. Another factor: The selection of a mate in Ancient Israel was less complicated than in this modern age.
1. The general lifestyle of most people was simple — mostly agrarian.
  2. Their standards and values, expectations and philosophies were similar.
  3. Their emotional, mental and physical needs were not as complex or varied.
  4. Greater emphasis was placed on preparing youngsters for marriage, starting at a young age, than we see today.
  5. Choosing a mate was simpler because parents understood the uniqueness of their children and knew what to look
- II. Today's Problem Explored
- A. Choosing the ideal mate is more sophisticated and difficult in today's world for the following reasons:
1. The market is bigger.
    - a. There is a far wider selection of personalities to choose from because social contacts are greater.
    - b. High school, college, modern transportation and communication provide young people with innumerable social outlets.
    - c. In olden times, people lived farther apart geographically, thus limiting their chances of exploring the field,
      - (1) Young eligibles may have had only 5-10 choices.
      - (2) Today the prospects may be 10-100 times higher.
    - d. Narrowing the field to the best choice obviously poses a more perplexing problem.
  2. Influences outside the home alienate kids from parental guidance.
    - a. School activities, private parties, etc., are drawing kids away from family social life at a younger age.
    - b. In many cases, both Mom and Dad are working, leaving youngsters to shift for themselves and leaving the training to others.
    - c. Because of peer pressure and changing social customs, kids are looking more to each other for solace, comfort, advice and counsel, rather than seeking help from parents.
    - d. The generation gap starts at a much younger age and carries through the critical adolescent years either because parents are detached from children, don't care, or are ignorant of changing values in society.

- e. Young men and women are leaving home at a much younger age to enter college, embark on a career, or to assume their own private lifestyle because it's the 'in' thing to do.
  - f. Any one of these points, or a combination of several, can make choosing a mate more overwhelming
3. The poor example of Mom and Dad.
    - a. If the parents' marriage has been shakey (bickering, nagging, accusing and fighting) the children will have no solid foundation on how to select a mate or on which to build a future marriage.
    - b. If, on the other hand, there has been a proper example of love, respect and a spirit of cooperation, fellows and girls will be much better equipped to assume the role of a marriage partner.
  4. Young men and women today generally have not been taught how to choose a mate.
    - a. Not only have Mom and Dad been negligent in this area, but the schools, colleges and universities haven't imparted these values either.
    - b. Left to their own devices, many people marry today with little background or understanding of what it takes to produce a happy married life.
- B. Two modern outlooks toward marriage today.
1. Except for the deeply religious people who believe marriage is for life, more and more men and women are marrying on a trial basis.
    - a. Once the excitement of sex and romance wears off, and the pleasure of living together disappears, "I can always try out somebody new" — they reason.
    - b. The idea of a contractual marriage is becoming more popular.
      - (1) A contractual marriage involves a man and woman signing a contract to live together under certain conditions for a specified period of time.
      - (2) Rules on how to spend money and other domestic regulations are carefully drawn up.
    - c. Another factor which degrades the sanctity of marriage is the laxity and freedom the courts allow in granting divorce.
  2. The other camp disallows marriage and encourages living together with no permanent commitments.
    - a. A fellow and girl may decide to move into the same apartment and equally share expenses. Both can enjoy free sex and the privileges of married life with no obligations attached.
    - b. This practice is becoming common in all age brackets and is particularly evidenced on today's college campuses.
    - c. There is an apartment complex in the Hollywood area that caters only to single people. No married couples are allowed.
  3. People today sometimes marry for entirely wrong reasons.
    - a. This includes some people even in God's Church.
    - b. They marry solely to fill a need without first determining if they truly are in love.
    - c. What are these needs or reasons?
      - (1) To escape a bad home situation.
        - (a) Overly strict father.
        - (b) Lack of affection.
        - (c) Large family — deprived of physical needs.
        - (d) Broken home
      - (2) Sexual needs.
      - (3) Loneliness.
      - (4) Man needs a housekeeper.
      - (5) For security.
      - (6) Peer pressure — friends are tying the knot.
      - (7) Fear of growing old and being overlooked.
      - (8) Wanting to identify with the adult status-quo society.
      - (9) Bored with present life.
      - (10) Fed up with roommates moving in-and-out, and the whole insecurity involved in single life.

- (11) Never planned any goals that would preempt or postpone marriage (a function more of nothing to stop me than I really want this ).
- (12) For the family status and maturity attached to it in the employment world.
- (13) Woman is tired of providing for herself.
- (14) "I may not get another chance."
- (15) I've been praying for a husband — this must be him.
- (16) Widow left without a provider.
- (17) Widower left without a companion — may have children.
- d. Marrying someone without first getting to know him or her can spell disaster downstream.
  - (1) Keep a lid on emotions (or lusts).
  - (2) Don't accept the first person who seems right and shows an interest in you.
  - (3) Spend sufficient time getting to know the individual before plunging into what's probably the most important physical decision you'll ever make.

### III. The Analogy of a Beauty Contest

- A. The process of selecting the right mate for marriage can be compared to a Miss USA pageant or Mr. America contest.
- B. There are numerous contestants to choose from — the challenge is narrowing the field to the most compatible choice.

### IV. General Principles to Keep in Mind While Dating

- A. *Date widely to experience a wide range of personalities*
  - 1. Lay a foundation — explore as much of the market as possible.
  - 2. Don't limit yourself to the first few people who come into your life.
  - 3. Study the reasons why you can interface with some people and can't with others.
  - 4. Nail down the personality and character traits that you are attracted to.
  - 5. If you rush marriage without this vital knowledge, you may regret it later in life.
- B. *Don't get involved too young.*
  - 1. Experience the rich opportunities youth has to offer
  - 2. Don't give up your freedom until you've matured and are fully prepared to settle down.
    - a. This applies to going steady.
    - b. Or, having an understanding.
  - 3. Burn out of your system the exciting adventures youth cries out for.
    - a. Parties, fun, challenges.
    - b. School, travel and exploration.
  - 4. Marriage is an adult decision. Kids haven't been on their own long enough to have the knowledge, wisdom and experience to face the demands, adjustments and sacrifices of married life.
- C. *Don't confuse love with physical attraction and sex appeal.*
  - 1. Bodily stimulation or eye appeal is not the way to measure true love.
  - 2. Feelings, heart palpitations and bodily lusts are powerful stimulants, but they can be misleading. Unless mature, they usually prevent one from being objective.
- D. *Don't let infatuation or emotions sway you into making a premature decision.*
  - 1. What is infatuation? How can you recognize it?
    - a. Infatuation is a starry-eyed experience — a romantic daydream — that stirs up the emotions and causes one to think, "This feeling has to be love". Don't try to convince me otherwise. It's heavenly, divine — it'll go on forever.
    - b. However, those who are older and wiser will tell you that this 'experience' will generally fade with time.
    - c. Emotional flutterings can be very tricky unless one is mature enough to understand the true meaning of love.
    - d. Marriage in essence is more mental than emotional.
    - e. It should be based on a foundation of facts, knowledge and a depth of experience.
    - f. It's a mental decision — well thought-out and studied over a period of time (weeks, months).

E. *Concentrate on preparing yourself*

1. Don't just "happen" into marriage without giving thought to the physical and spiritual implications involved
2. Study your role — know what's expected and required.
3. Start collecting information on the subject.
4. Spiritual preparation.
  - a. Read the Bible and let God define your role.
  - b. Seek good counsel from those you respect and place confidence in.
  - c. Carefully select the best books on the market.
  - d. Make this one of your first goals in preparing for marriage.
5. Physical preparation.

MEN:

- a. Have a career nailed down.
- b. Money in the bank (hopefully).
- c. Try to have all big debts paid off.
- d. Avoid if at all possible having to borrow money to pay for wedding expenses.
- e. It's wiser and more expedient to start out as a success in life than to marry first and hope things will pan out.

WOMEN:

- a. Start building a hope chest,
- b. Learn the art of homemaking.
- c. Try to be financially solvent and avoid bequeathing to your husband heavy financial burdens.
- d. Acquaint yourself with the rules of etiquette, entertaining and social awareness.
- e. Prepare for motherhood.

F. *From your dating experiences, start forming a concept of the person you'd like to marry.*

1. Create a flexible mental picture of the kind of personality, character, and standards you hope to find in a mate.
  - a. It's wise to seek counsel from parents, friends, ministers, etc., in your search for answers.
  - b. Remember, however, that the final decision is yours.
2. Determine what qualities you will not compromise on.
  - a. Lack of conversion.
  - b. Vulgarity — crassness.
  - c. Laziness — irresponsibility.
3. Traits you would like to see, but are not indispensable
  - a. Beauty — handsomeness.
  - b. Similar cultural interests.
  - c. Financial status.
4. Keep an open mind — relationships do grow and develop over a period of time.
5. Get to know a person well before you cross him off your list.

V. How To Narrow The Field Down to the Finalists.

A. Keep in mind there are many people you could marry and be happy with.

1. There probably isn't that one perfect human being on earth who could satisfy all the requirements.
2. The task is to begin a process of selection based on the soundest facts, advice, and experience you have available.
3. We are assuming, of course, that those you are interested in have expressed a similar interest in you.

B. The procedure.

1. Pray that God will lead you to the right person.

- a. In virtually every case of young couples from AC who are enjoying a successful marriage, they have stated that they first sought God's guidance through prayer.
- b. If one in God's Church decides he can go it alone without God's help, he stands a greater risk of crashing on the rocks when conditions get shakey

- c. God promises, *"In all thy ways acknowledge him, and he shall direct thy paths"* (Prov. 3:6), and *"Delight thyself in the Lord, and he shall give thee the desires of thine heart"* (Psalm 37:4)
- d. Clearly, your chances of finding the ideal mate are many times greater by looking to God in faith.

## 2. Look for one who is physically attractive to you.

- a. There should be a spark (a strong physical appeal) that ignites a relationship. However, it's different from the 'puppy love' or infatuation discussed earlier.
- b. We call this body chemistry, physical magnetism, or sex appeal.
  - (1) It's a mature attraction that mutually draws two people close together and causes them to want express warmth, gentleness, and tenderness to each other.
  - (2) Even if all other qualities exist, but this characteristic is missing, an attitude of familiarity and contempt can emerge later.
  - (3) This is not meant to say you can never learn to love someone who's not physically appealing to you; you can grow to love people for other qualities or reasons, as in the case of older people.
  - (4) However, if there's any physical weakness or repulsive feature that bothers you, bugs you, irritates you, or drives you to distraction, you should settle the matter honestly in your mind before saying "I do."
    - (a) Long nose
    - (b) Bald head
    - (c) Figure
    - (d) Birthmark
    - (e) Tendency to be overweight
    - (f) Bad breath
    - (g) Snapping knuckles
    - (h) Piercing, strident voice
    - (i) Etc.

## 3. Personality.

- a. After having dated widely among the "50 or so contestants" you should begin to sense which personalities harmonize with yours.
- b. Be aware of these points:
  - (1) Common interests.
    - (a) Do you have the same likes and dislikes?
    - (b) The more you have in common, the more material you'll have for conversation.
    - (c) Do you enjoy doing the same kinds of things?
      - 1. Recreation
      - 2. Exercise
      - 3. Music
  - (2) Rapport
    - (a) Do you feel relaxed and comfortable around each other her?
      - 1. Laugh and talk sincerely
      - 2. No pretense
    - (b) Do you see eye-to-eye on most things?
    - (c) What is the after-effect of seeing each other?
      - 1. Depressed
      - 2. Uplifted
      - 3. Upset
      - 4. Happy
    - (d) How well does he or she react or interface with other people?
  - (3) Dominance or leadership
    - (a) Is the man the leader he should be?
      - 1. Not domineering — gruff, demanding, austere.
      - 2. The woman wants to be put in her place when done the right way.
        - a. She is frustrated if she doesn't have a head to look up to.
        - b. She will not respect the man she can twist around her little finger.

(4) Submission

- (a) Is she humbly submissive?
- (b) Not a groveling door mat.
- (c) A gracious, kind, respectful, well lady?
- (d) One when shows submission through a genuine spirit of service and sacrifice.

(5) Peculiarities

- (a) what are they?
- (b) Are there things about his/her personality that really turn you off?
  - 1. Stares before responding to a question.
  - 2. Extremely shy and withdrawn.
  - 3. Uncouth manners while eating.
  - 4. Talks your head off.
- (c) It is not Christian to totally shun such people.
- (d) But neither is it wise to marry a person you may even like whose idiosyncrasies you hope to transform after you re married.

4. Temperament

- a. Is the person high strung, irritable, negative, pessimistic, critical?
- b. Does he/she overly react to minor irritations and blow a fuse when things go wrong?
- c. Does the person pout, sulk, or fly off the handle when provoked or insulted?
- d. Is he/she even-tempered, emotionally well-balanced?
  - (1) Does the person quickly regain self-composure and bounce back?
  - (2) Look for trends and consistent patterns.
- e. There'll be fireworks in your marriage if temperaments don't mix.

5. Values and Likemindedness

- a. These are the principles and standards that have been instilled in you through upbringing.
- b. Do you share similar convictions? Do you really see things alike?
- c. Examples:
  - (1) She may be a sloppy housekeeper — he's picky and fastidious.
  - (2) He may have liberal views on sex — she's more reserved.
  - (3) One believes in parental discipline — the other is mild, easy-going and believes in using the paddle as a last resort.
  - (4) One is a spendthrift — the other a tight-wad
  - (5) One is industrious — the other indifferent or lazy
- d. If your spirits don't blend or if there are wide gaps and contrasts in your values, making a go of marriage will be a strain.

6. Intellectual compatibility

- a. Are you mentally stimulating to each other,
- b. Is she smarter than you (higher IQ) — the intellectual type who likes to study, gather information and attend lectures?
  - (1) The man will generally feel inferior and may resort to putting her down in order to override his inadequacy,
  - (2) He will probably start to domineer, thus causing friction.
- c. Is he the intellectual type, while you're more practical minded? Or is he idealistic and philosophical, while your interests are more domestics
- d. Explore each other's minds to be sure you are mentally suited.
  - (1) This is one reason why dates should be more than fun and frolic, giggles and laughter.
  - (2) A good date will encourage mental stimulation.

7. Maturity

- a. This is that quality of intellect that differentiates between what's important and unimportant — essential and non-essential. It's the mark of a sound, stable mind whose outlook is realistic, practical and objective.
- b. A mature mind sees the big picture — the overview. An immature mind sees only the small points — is prejudiced biased, and intolerant,
- c. A mature mind sees long-range — has set clear goals. An immature mind is shortsighted and lives for the present.



- d. It has to do with emotional maturity
- e. Maturity=unselfishness; immaturity=selfishness.
- f. A mature person has grown wise through the school of hard knocks — he also has learned from the experiences of others.
- g. Look for the person who's maturity level matches yours.

#### 8. Communication

- a. Can you freely talk about any subject without fear of rejection?
- b. Are you both an open book?
- c. Do you find each other stimulating and exciting?
- d. Do you listen attentively to each other and draw the best out?
- e. Can you disagree without insulting the other?
- f. Can you talk for hours and hours without running out of something to say?
- g. Do you really try to see and understand the other's point of view?
- h. Little talk before marriage = no talk after marriage.

#### 9. Heredity physical and mental health

- a. Are there any serious deficiencies in these areas?
  - (1) Epilepsy
  - (2) Emotional disturbances
  - (3) Physical deformities
  - (4) Frailties
  - (5) Inherent diseases
    - (a) Diabetes
    - (b) Etc.
- b. Does the person have a history of drug abuse or alcoholism?
- c. All these points should be carefully weighed in the balance before getting too emotionally carried away.

#### 10. Conversion

- a. Even though one may meet all the foregoing requirements, if he or she is not converted your marriage could be hindered.
  - (1) Walking with God will enable one who's deeply converted to surmount almost any problem that may arise in marriage.
  - (2) If either partner is a spiritual drag, the chances of a smooth-sailing relationship will be greatly diminished.

### VI. How to know if you've made the right choice

- A. Assume that you've narrowed the field to one person.
- B. Both of you seem to be ideally suited — having met all the foregoing qualifications.
- C. How can you be sure if you're making the right decision?
- D. The final checklist
  - 1. Get to know the person as your closest friend.
    - a. This can be accomplished only through spending time together and becoming part of each other's life.
    - b. Don't put on a facade — no fronts, no airs, no false impressions — be yourself.
    - c. You will come to understand the emotional, mental and spiritual makeup of your prospective mate only by seeing him/her in all manner of situations.
      - (1) How does he react in a traffic jam?
      - (2) How does he handle failure and disappointment?
      - (3) How does she respond to situations when called on to sacrifice?
      - (4) Does she honor your decisions?
      - (5) Do you mutually work together to understand each other's needs and viewpoints?
      - (6) Is he or she selfish? Headstrong? Intolerant of your views? Inconsiderate?
    - d. Talk, talk, talk until you completely know each other inside and out.
      - (1) The two main sources of knowing what another is like is through observing his example and listening to him talk.
      - (2) The Bible says, "Out of the abundance of the heart the mouth speaks."

- (3) Listen and learn. When one feels confident in your presence, he will empty his soul.
  - (4) You can tell how deep he runs, the quality of character, and whether or not he fears God.
  - (5) Is he or she full of empty mouthings and "blather"?
  - (6) Is there substance in his heart or only shadow?
  - (7) Time will tell.
- e. Many married couples have said that in the end, came to marry their closest friend.
2. Meet the family.
- a. Do they like you?
  - b. Do you like them?
  - c. Do your standards, principles, philosophies, outlooks harmonize?
  - d. Is the family stable?
  - e. What attitude does your prospective mate express toward his parents?
  - f. Remember that the general disposition and temperament of the parents will generally be passed on to the children.
  - g. Discreetly do your homework and get all the background that you can.
    - (1) Much of this can be acquired through observation.
3. In your heart, do you believe the person is prepared for marriage?
- a. Does this individual truly desire to play the part of husband or wife?
  - b. Is he or she ready to assume the responsibilities of parenthood?
  - c. Are both of you willing to forego your independence and personal rights and submit to each other?
  - d. When getting down to the wire you may discover in some cases it's still too soon — you both may need a little more time to mature.
  - e. Chances of this type problem surfacing is very unlikely at this stage of the game.
4. Does the prospective mate truly accept you for what you are, the way you are?
- a. It is disastrous, if not fraudulent, to marry another human being with the intent of remaking, remodeling, or overhauling his personality and character.
  - b. If after you have progressed this far there are things that still bug you, embarrass you or upset you about each other, you'd be wise to reconsider.
  - c. If the many good qualities that have attracted you to each other do not overshadow the minor differences, the relationship is not based on love.
  - d. True love is total acceptance — regardless of the other's faults.
  - e. This is not to say that two married people should not help each other to grow and to smooth out the rough edges.
5. Can you communicate beyond mere talk?
- a. There will always be people you can converse with on any subject. Your views, opinions and ideas click.
  - b. The communication we're talking about here goes far deeper.
  - c. This type of communication has to do with sharing, caring, feeling, being deeply concerned about the other's welfare.
  - d. It has to do with finding out the needs of the other and making compromises and adjustments in your own life in order to make him or her happy.
  - e. It involves reaching mutual decisions — working your heart out to please the other.
6. Know beyond question the person truly loves you.
- a. He/she will be highly sensitized to your needs — will sense when things aren't going right, when you're disappointed or frustrated.
  - b. He will work toward helping you reach your dreams; will encourage you, stand behind you, defend you; will think nothing of putting your interests first.
  - c. A demonstration of this love will not be erratic with wide breaks and gaps; but will be consistent over the long haul.
7. How to know your love is real.
- a. Respect is the key
    - (1) There are many kinds, or definitions of love
      - (a) Kindness

- (b) Compassion
  - (c) Empathy
  - (d) Romantic
  - (2) All are necessary for a stable, lasting marriage — but none sufficient by themselves.
    - (a) These types of love (especially the "romantic") may wane with familiarity, weight change, baldness, wrinkles, etc.
    - (b) The necessary ingredient that will really secure your marriage is respect.
    - (c) Do you AWE him?
      - 1. (Eph. 5:33) 'and the wife see that she reverence her husband.'
      - 2. (1 Pet. 3:6) "... Sarah obeyed Abraham, calling him lord "....
      - 3. Do you love and respect him so much that there is nothing (except sin) you wouldn't do for him?
    - (d) Do you HONOR her with the respect you would show a queen?
      - 1. (Eph. 5:25) 'Husbands, love your wives, even as Christ also loved the church, and gave himself for it.'
      - 2. Is she super special — not just because of sex or beauty, but because of character?
    - (e) Consider these questions:
      - 1. Do you really think highly of his her innate qualities?
      - 2. Their ability to make good decisions?
      - 3. Their common sense? — Do you have a certain confidence they won't do something foolish?
      - 4. Do they disrespect or compromise with Church government?
      - 5. Do they uphold God's standards of conduct?
      - 6. What about self-control? Does he she lose his temper easily?
      - 7. Is there stability and strength — or are they flighty or over-emotional?
      - 8. How do they react under stress or in an emergency?
      - 9. Do you approve of the way they handle financial matters?
      - 10. How do they react to frustration and disappointment?
      - 11. Do you feel really secure with this person?
  - b. If you have a positive reaction to all these questions, then you possess the necessary respect to surmount any obstacles that may arise in marriage.
8. TOTAL COMMITMENT — the supreme test of true love.
- a. At conversion we submitted our wills, surrendered our lives, gave our all to God.
    - (1) There were no reservations — no qualifying conditions — no strings attached.
    - (2) We counted the cost and completely thought the decision through.
  - b. On the human plane, marriage should be viewed in the same light.
    - (1) It's a total commitment for life.
    - (2) Both parties have weighed the facts and have agreed to accept each other, work together, grow together, share together until death.
  - c. This is what God means when He says, "Therefore shall a man leave his father and his mother, and shall cleave unto his wife: and they shall be one flesh" (Gen. 2:24) (Also Matt. 19:5 and Mark 10:7.)
  - d. Marriage is a uniting of minds, hearts, emotions, thoughts, hopes, plans, dreams, and spirits.
  - e. It can be compared to working with two soft clumps of clay — until they blend into one.
  - f. Have you submitted your wills to each other?
    - (1) Are you truly willing to share everything together?
      - (a) Your innermost thoughts.      (c) Your body.
      - (b) Your time.                              (d) Your income.
    - (2) Can you be servants to each other?
      - (a) In principle this means do more giving than receiving.
      - (b) It means sharing responsibilities
        - 1. Are you willing to do his dirty laundry?

2. Are you willing to help with housework if your wife works or gets sick?
  - (c) Do you prefer the other over yourself?
- g. Are you willing to lay your life down?
  - (1) Jacob worked 14 years in order to marry the wife of his dreams.
  - (2) Christ is going to marry His bride — the Church.
    - (a) While on earth, He gave His life as a prospective bridegroom.
    - (b) But in a sense, He is now laying His life down for her every day — by protecting her, defending her, providing her every need.
    - (c) Read Eph. 5:22-33.
    - (d) Are you willing to go this far?
- h. Marriage is a permanent decision.
  - (1) It's for life.
  - (2) And what God joins together, let no man put asunder — including you who take each other as husband and wife.

#### ONE FINAL NOTE:

Finding a mate should not be a scientific, legalistic exercise where you go down a list of minute points, checking off every tiny detail.

The important thing is to grow in the knowledge of what marriage entails. Prepare yourself. When you've had sufficient exposure to a variety of personalities, form in your mind an overall, general picture to marry. Keep an open mind. Pray for guidance.

Relax and don't try too hard. If you embark on a program of trying to find Mr. or Miss Perfect you can become more confused than ever. No such creature exists.

This lecture is designed to give you a concept of what steps to take in preparing for marriage. Put them to use and then ask God to help you make the right choice.

**-END-**

## CHAPTER 20

### **HOW TO MAKE PEOPLE LIKE YOU INSTANTLY**

- I. Have you ever wondered why you are attracted to some people, but repelled by others?
  - A. What is this enigma that makes human beings so unique and distinctively different?
  - B. Why are some types friendly, approachable and easy to get to know, while others are distant, shy and defensive?
  
- II. Take any kind of situation where you come in contact with people:
  - A. At a party, dance, church service or school.
  - B. At a bus depot, supermarket or bank.
  - C. Regardless of where you go, you'll meet people whose personalities differ — some you'll like, others you'll dislike.
  - D. How do you explain this phenomena?
  
- III. How do you suppose you as an individual come across?
  - A. Are you liked, popular, respected?
  - B. Do you measure up to the norm of social acceptance?
  - C. Do you have a lot of friends?
  - D. Make no mistake about it, you and I do leave our marks.
  - E. We are sized up, compared, evaluated and categorized — put in a niche — by the type of person we are and the kind of impression we make.
  
- IV. The purpose of this lecture is to help you become socially well-adjusted and to attain ease, naturalness and confidence in dealing with people.
  - A. We will explore and isolate the barriers causing us trouble.
  - B. We will enumerate and discuss the do's and don'ts of social awareness.
  - C. In short, we will reveal the secret of how to cause people to like us instantly.
  
- V. To begin, let's talk about a vital fact concerning human behavior you may never have known before.
  - A. It's a concept that when fully understood should change your attitude toward others and your total approach to life.
  - B. That fact is: "Every human being radiates and surrounds himself with a distinct magnetic field."
  - C. We may describe this field as:
    1. An aura, personality, or self-image.
    2. A flow or outpouring of one's inner self, or mental attitude.
    3. In some, we may call it: charisma, charm, magnetism, vitality, intensity, enthusiasm, etc.
    4. In others, we call it: self-consciousness, inferiority, fear, sarcasm, cynicism, selfishness, immaturity, etc.
  - D. Whatever its correct name, it's real, and living — we've all experienced it, felt it, sensed it and seen it.
  
- VI. This brings us to a second significant fact about understanding people — there are two broad and general types.
  - A. These types are:
    1. Positive
    2. Negative

- B. Herein lies the secret of why we are attracted to some people — and repelled by others.
- C. Just as with a physical magnet having opposite poles, so it is with people.
  - 1. One category attracts — draws you to them.
  - 2. The other repels — drives you away.
- D. There are occasions when we all play both roles — but generally we are bent toward one or the other.
- E. Which end of the magnetic pole do you represent?
  - 1. Negative? or positive?
  - 2. Make no mistake, it's one or the other.
  - 3. Whichever it is determines largely your social standing in life.
    - a. Whether you are liked or disliked.
    - b. Whether you attract or repel.
    - c. Whether you have few or many friends.
  - 4. Generally you can determine whether your nature is negative or positive by the reactions of those with whom you come into contact.

VII. This lecture is divided into two parts:

- A. The negative personality, and how to overcome it.
- B. The positive personality, and how to attain it.

### THE NEGATIVE PERSONALITY

I. How it manifests itself.

A. Physical manifestations.

1. Facial expressions

- a. An unhappy face.
  - (1) The absence of joy.
  - (2) Little smile, if any.
  - (3) Worry wrinkles.
  - (4) Eyes that reflect depression, frustration, inferiority.
  - (5) Lack of direct eye contact which signifies insecurity and self-consciousness.
- b. A proud and arrogant countenance.
  - (1) A cocky expression that indicates a high degree of haughtiness, pride, vain self-importance, contempt for others.
  - (2) An overbearing, critical look.
  - (3) A sensual, self-indulgent look.
  - (4) Turned-up nose — snobbish.

2. Body language.

- a. The slovenly type.
  - (1) Lazy — an "I don't care" attitude.
    - (a) Slow movements.
    - (b) Droopy shoulders.
    - (c) Weak posture and muscle tone.
- b. The brazen type.
  - (1) Audacious, bold, flamboyant.
    - (a) Gesticulates wildly.
    - (b) Swaggers — calculates movements to look impressive.
    - (c) Sensual, over-sexy.
    - (d) The arrogant, blustery, take-over type.

3. Tone of voice.

- a. many varieties.
  - (1) Mousey, quiet, soft-spoken type.
  - (2) Boisterous, loud, laughs uproariously.
  - (3) Sensual, seductive, temptuous.

4. Grooming and appearance.
  - a. Different manifestations.
    - (1) Flashy and gaudy clothes — improper blends.
    - (2) Scrubby shoes.
    - (3) Wrinkled and unpressed clothing.
    - (4) Dirty and untrimmed nails.
    - (5) unwashed ears.
    - (6) Unsightly dandruff.
    - (7) Scented and unaired clothing.
    - (8) Bad breath.
    - (9) Body odor.
5. Temperament.
  - a. General varieties.
    - (1) Moody, selfish, immature.
    - (2) Reactionary, critical, defensive, picky.
    - (3) High-strung, proud, vain, impatient.
    - (4) Doormat types
6. Other general manifestations.
  - a. Self-consciousness.
    - (1) Shy and reticent in a crowd.
    - (2) Tends to keep to himself.
    - (3) Is prone to magnify his mistakes, thinks the worst about himself and feels that others do too.
    - (4) Stays in the background and lets others take the lead.
    - (5) Awkward and unsure of himself in unfamiliar situations.
  - b. Self-centeredness.
    - (1) Impetuous and self-indulgent.
    - (2) Is generally first in the food line; goes back for seconds before all have been served.
    - (3) Tends to make excuses when called upon to serve.
    - (4) Tries to make friends, but for selfish reasons.
      - (a) To fill a longing need.
      - (b) To be liked, respected and loved by others — but people can soon read this and will resent it.
    - (5) Seems to be generally insensitive to the comfort, welfare and feelings of others.
  - c. Self-righteousness.
    - (1) Such a person reflects a "holier than thou" attitude and is pleased within himself that he is not like other men.
    - (2) Thinks he is worshipping God, when in reality he is worshipping himself.
    - (3) Is quick to criticize, condemn and look down on others for not measuring up to his spiritual standards.
    - (4) Volunteers advice and correction, whether asked for or not.
    - (5) Readily discovers faults and sins, but is unwilling to forgive and encourage.
  - d. Self-pity.
    - (1) Exaggerates his aches, pains, and is preoccupied with his health in general.
    - (2) Whines and feels sorry for self.
    - (3) Is prone to accuse or place the blame on others when things go wrong.
    - (4) Tends to be emotional and cries easily.
    - (5) Is moody, temperamental and unstable — is generally weak in mind, heart and spirit.
  - e. Immaturity.
    - (1) Is short-tempered, petulant, tactless and quick to tell people off.
    - (2) Is known for angry outbursts and crying jags.
    - (3) Oversensitive to criticism.
    - (4) Pouts and is easily bent out of shape.
    - (5) Has been known to slam doors or roar down the highway at excessive speeds.

f. Fear of failure.

- (1) Doubts his abilities.
- (2) Reluctant to step out and take chances for fear of making a mistake.
- (3) Makes excuses and justifies his lack of achievements.
- (4) Hasn't fully discovered his talents because he's afraid to try something new.
- (5) His biggest fear is opinions of people, not so much with failing itself.

g. Arrogance and superiority.

- (1) This type of person delights in arguing, debating and challenging your views.
- (2) Has strong opinions of his own but is intolerant of the viewpoints of others.
- (3) Plays the role of Mr. Jr. Executive when it comes to giving orders — is hard-driving, impatient and overbearing.
- (4) Is known to pressure people into making decisions or doing favors for them, even though friends are reluctant.
- (5) Tends to be self-willed and stubborn — and determined to have his way.

h. Critical and condemning of others.

- (1) Is always questioning decisions and imputing motives.
- (2) Is an eagle-eyed ogre — thinking the worst, speaking the worst, seeing the worst in every situation.
- (3) Is cranky, suspicious and hard-to-get-along-with.
- (4) Considers himself an authority in all matters.
- (5) A critical negative philosophy toward life and people underlies his basic behavior.

i. Boastful and proud.

- (1) Oftentimes is the intellectual type who is well-read and flaunts his knowledge.
- (2) Brags, boasts and is forever calling attention to himself and his successes.
- (3) Advertises his abilities, skills and talents at every opportune moment.
- (4) Take out the "I's, me's, and mines" from this person's conversation and there would be little left.
- (5) Is unaware he's obnoxious and unpopular.

j. Disregard for the rights and feelings of others.

- (1) Monopolizes the conversation.
- (2) Tries to be the life of the party, "King of the Mountain," the court jester.
- (3) Is more concerned with selling himself than with drawing out others.
- (4) Is the first to make suggestions instead of allowing others to express their wishes.
- (5) Tries to be cute and clever by using sarcasm in putting people down.

## II. Why do people have a negative attitude?

A. The basic cause.

1. The underlying cause of a negative mental attitude (or personality) is a deep-seated feeling of inferiority or low self-image.
2. It is this deep lack of self-esteem and confidence that causes people to transmit a negative magnetic field.

B. Many of these inhibitions originate in childhood and carry over into adult life.

1. Parents neglected to instill a positive outlook on life and a right kind of self-confidence.
2. Lack of love and outward affection in the home.
3. Lack of encouragement and proper motivation.
4. Lack of recognition for a job well done.
5. Lack of sufficient well-rounded experiences to broaden one's background.
6. Lack of training in learning how to love and get along with others.
7. Ridicule, rejection and discrimination at school, on the playground, at church, etc.
8. More pangs of failure than joys of success.

C. Whatever the causes — a negative mental attitude essentially boils down to disrespect for self or self-hatred.



## THE POSITIVE ATTITUDE

- I. We come now to the question of how to face up to our problem and acquire the kind of attitude that will give us a positive outlook on life.
  - A. The place to start is with conversion and a right relationship with God.
    1. You are to crucify and bury the OLD SELF.
      - a. Romans 6:1-6 = "Crucify the self."
      - b. Col. 3:1-10 = "Mortify members."
    2. The old self is to die — that self which we inwardly detest and makes us self-conscious and miserable.
  - B. After baptism you become a new creature in Christ.
    1. II Cor. 5:17 = "We are a new creature in Christ."
    2. Gal. 2:20 = "Christ lives in me ...."
  - C. With Christ now living His life in you, you've been given a new mind, a new life, a new outlook.
    1. Philip. 2:5 = "Let this mind be in you ...."
  - D. It's this new mind that imparts to you a positive mental attitude.
    1. John 7:37-39 = "Out of his belly shall flow rivers of living waters."
    2. Gal. 5:22-23 = "Fruits of spirit."
  - E. In reality, you should never feel inferior again.
    1. The life you're now living is not your life, but is a new life in Christ.
    2. You've been delivered from the chains of the past — made free to live a bright and superior future.
    3. Come to see yourself in this new light and you'll begin to reflect a positive mental attitude.
  - F. Develop a right confidence in yourself.
    1. If you continue to feel you are inadequate — you will be inadequate.
    2. Make a firm commitment you are going to do something about your negative self and start living the kind of existence that will attract people to the qualities of God in you.
- II. Where do we begin?
  - A. Points to put into practice.
    1. Gear your mind to think of others first.
      - a. Become people oriented — conscious, aware of their presence.
      - b. We rub shoulders with people almost every day of our lives.
      - c. Train your mind to think of others first.
      - d. We should be the friendliest, easiest to get-to-know people on earth.
      - e. The Bible tells us to honor all men — which is another way of loving your neighbor as yourself
    2. Express genuine interest in other people.
      - a. People are not interested in you and me.
      - b. Let's face it — they are interested in themselves morning, noon and night.
      - c. Listen for clues that will give you an idea of what's on people's minds.
      - d. Let your concern come through by giving attention to those with whom you have to do.
      - e. Be helpful, thoughtful — do what you can to encourage and make people happy.
    3. Smile.
      - a. Actions speak louder than words.
      - b. A smile tells people we respect them, we are glad to see them, we are happy to be with them.
      - c. A smile must be genuine and sincere — a false, shallow grin won't do.
      - d. The kind of person you are will generally shine through your face and especially through your smile.
      - e. A warm, radiant, sincere smile is the first thing people will notice, make a good first impression and attract you to them.
    4. Be the first to speak.
      - a. Take the initiative — be the first to say "hello" or to shake hands.
      - b. This especially applies to meeting strangers and making new acquaintances — on a plane, bus, taxi — at a dance, party, church, etc.
      - c. Just because others appear cool, unfriendly or disinterested, doesn't mean they want to be.

- d. They may be suffering from some of the syndromes mentioned earlier — afraid to step out, self-conscious, inhibited, etc.
5. Radiate warmth and positive friendship.
- Be cheerful — always look on the bright side of life.
  - A whinnying, negative person is a drag and a bore.
  - Remember the example of the rose bud and how that the warm sunshine opens its petals?
  - Try to reflect that kind of attitude to others — and they will truly love you for it.
  - Assume people will like you and you'll find they will.
6. Be responsive and approachable.
- Respond to their humor — if it's clean and decent.
  - If they commit a faux pas — help them to save face.
  - Show an interest in their conversation — ask questions about details, ideas, etc., they're communicating.
  - Be approachable — make it easy for people to talk to you by showing them attention.
  - Your goal is to help people relax and feel comfortable around you.
7. Get others talking about subjects they're familiar with or are interested in.
- To do this you may have to gently probe and ask intelligent questions.
  - Look for common ground.
  - An accent, type of clothing (cowboy hat and boots, a striking piece of jewelry), etc., are clues of where to start to break the ice.
  - Experiences in the ministry — the way we size up people and develop insight.
  - Inquire about their home state, home town — a description of the land (mountains, streams, unusual characteristics, etc.).
8. Sincerely compliment people and notice little things.
- This point covers a wide range of observations.
  - Taste in clothing, hairstyle, well organized apartment, good food, quality wine, clean and neat appearance.
  - By being observant, others will consider you an alert and discerning person.
  - Caution: Don't overdo this, but when you do be sure it's genuine.
  - Notice little things.
9. Make other people feel important and do it sincerely.
- This is a great law regulating human conduct.
  - If obeyed, this principle will bring us many, many friends.
  - If disregarded, our social troubles will be many.
  - Recognize the abilities, skills and talents of others.
  - Demonstrate high regard for their expertise and accomplishments.
  - Example of how to treat a waitress who's brought you mashed potatoes instead of fries.  
"I'm very sorry to trouble you, but I prefer fries."
  - Such expressions as: "Thank you," "Would you please..." are expressions that let others know you like them and recognize them as being special and unique.
  - Dale Carnegie's book on "*How To win Friends and Influence People*" contains outstanding suggestions as in the above point.
10. Be a good listener: Encourage others to talk about themselves.
- Quote following from Dale Carnegie's article:  
"If you want to know how to make people shun you and laugh at you behind your back and even despise you, here is the recipe: Never listen to anyone for long. Talk incessantly about yourself. If you have an idea while the other fellow is talking, don't wait for him to finish. Bust right in and interrupt him in the middle of a sentence. If you aspire to be a good conversationalist, be an attentive listener. Ask questions that the other man will enjoy answering. Encourage him to talk about himself and his accomplishments.  
"Remember that the man you are talking to is a hundred times more interested in himself and his wants and his problems than he is in you and your problems. His toothache means more to him than a famine in China that kills a million people. A boil on his neck interests him more than 40 earthquakes in Africa.  
"Think of that the next time you start a conversation."

- b. Avoid gestures that make you appear nervous and fidgety and anxious to get on to other things.
  - c. Take the time to listen — don't hurry the person who's talking.
  - d. Treat him as you would want to be treated.
  - e. Indifference to his feelings causes him to think he's unimportant in your eyes and sets up barriers of communication.
11. See the good qualities in people.
- a. If you want to be liked, recognize the good side of others.
  - b. People with big minds do this — people with little minds tend only to see the bad.
  - c. Personality differences can blind you to what people are really like.
  - d. You can learn vital lessons from fellow humans by studying their behavior and listening to them talk.
12. Consider the fragile feelings of others before you disagree.
- a. Nothing will sour people against you as quickly as showing up their ignorance by displaying your own superior knowledge.
  - b. Healthy give-and-take may be fine among friends — but beware when you challenge, attack or put down others whose ideas differ from your own. They'll deeply resent it.
  - c. It's best to ignore little mistakes others make.
  - d. If you must disagree, do it agreeably — with utmost tact and kindness, considering how tender the human ego is.
13. Get to know people and accept them for what they are.
- a. It's grossly unfair, if indeed not cruel, to draw conclusions from the first impression they make.
  - b. They may have been ill, nervous, self-conscious or a dozen different things under the circumstances in which you met them.
  - c. People are generally not that open with you at first.
  - d. It takes time to build friendships — time for trusts and confidences to grow.
  - e. Who's to say your analysis is right? Do you want to be labeled and categorized as substandard?
  - f. God may see things differently from you because He looks on the heart and knows us all intimately.
  - g. God may love deeply the person you dislike. We need to beware.
  - h. Instead of condemning others — we need to uphold them and protect their reputation.
14. Be an interesting conversationalist without calling attention to yourself.
- a. Talk about ideas, concepts, philosophies, experiences — but keep yourself in the background.
  - b. The Bible says, "Let others praise you and not you with your own mouth."
  - c. A person who's sold on himself, thinks well of himself — is often seen telling others about it. He puts in a good word on his behalf at every opportunity.
  - d. Concentrate on the other guy and his best interest and you'll make a much better conversationalist.
15. Be open, honest and genuinely humble.
- a. Be yourself — let your own unique personality hang out.
  - b. Don't be afraid to let others see you for what you are.
  - c. There's no other person on earth like you — why try to hide it?
  - d. Express your views — but be open minded to what others have to say.
  - e. Give credit where due — you and I haven't gotten where we are today alone.
  - f. A genuinely well-disciplined, mature person is a disarming person generally loved by all.
16. Think of each person you meet as a potential son of God.
- a. This is how Christ views people.
  - b. He placed such great value on human life and man's potential that He came to die for him.
  - c. His love for people was continually manifested.
  - d. This attitude should permeate our thinking.
  - e. We need to keep this concept always before us as we interface with people.
  - f. Some day, we will share eternity together.

## III. Two final wrap-up points:

A. Not every person we meet will become a close personal friend.

1. We must recognize human differences and realize that we will not always see things eye-to-eye, share the same tastes, philosophies, etc.
2. We must try, however, to respect the rights of all, value the things they consider dear and important, and as much as lies within us, to love and express friendship toward all men.

B. Realize that to implement these suggestions will take time.

1. Many of these points we can apply immediately.
2. But to become a master in the art of human relations may require days, weeks and months of diligent effort and discipline.
3. Isn't the reward worth it?

IV. In summary, what must you do to get people to like you?

- A. Solomon summarized it beautifully and succinctly when he said: "He who has friends must show himself friendly" (Prov. 18:24).
- B. Christ said: "Love your neighbor as yourself" (Matt. 22:39).
- C. The key is to turn the question around: "The way to get people to like you is to genuinely develop an interest in them."
- D. If you do this, you will never lack for friends.

**-END-**

## **CHAPTER 21**

# **COMMUNICATION BARRIERS BETWEEN THE SEXES: HOW TO SOLVE THEM**

### **I. WHY IS IT THAT MEN AND WOMEN AT TIMES HAVE SUCH A PROBLEM COMMUNICATING WITH EACH OTHER?**

- A. When a fellow and girl engage in conversation, chances are there will be uncomfortable silences, strain, and nervous tension.
- B. Motives are often suspicioned and language and actions are misunderstood.
- C. Why are men and women afraid to relax and be themselves around one another?
- D. Why can't they relate to each other without all the hassle, anxiety and self-conscious fear?

### **II. WHAT ARE THE CAUSES OF COMMUNICATION BARRIERS AND WHAT CAN BE DONE TO OVERCOME THEM?**

- A. Today, we're going to explore this subject and offer a number of practical helps.
- B. To do this, we will discuss three major areas:
  - 1. External causes.
  - 2. Personal hang-ups and acquired fears.
  - 3. Recommendations and solutions.

### **III. LET'S BEGIN BY EXAMINING THE EXTERNAL CAUSES.**

#### **A. Eight points:**

1. Indwelling sin or an inherent bent toward self-centeredness.
  - a. When Adam and Eve sinned, they cut themselves off from God's Spirit that would have filled them with outgoing concern and love toward others.
  - b. But they forfeited His gracious gift, and instead took on the greedy, grasping and self-seeking nature of Satan.
  - c. A number of scriptures indicate that this evil and selfish bent was passed on to their children. (Ps. 51:5; Ps. 58:3; Eph. 2:3)
  - d. Thus, you and I became the children of Satan, filled with lust, pride and vanity.
  - e. It is this evil pull within that causes the conflict and grief we often experience in human relationships.
2. A negative self-image, infused by Satan.
  - a. One of Satan's most damaging tactics is to destroy our sense of self-worth.
  - b. He does this by assaulting our conscience and reminding us of how guilty and sinful we are.
  - c. He causes us to think we're hopeless failures and unworthy of God's forgiveness or the acceptance of fellow man.
  - d. This self-condemned, rejected attitude carries over into our social life producing anxiety and inhibitions.
3. Poor family upbringing or a negative home environment.
  - a. Chances are that our parents and family members were more prone to criticize for our mistakes than they were to praise and encourage when we succeeded.
  - b. Possibly discipline was administered for the slightest mistake and often in anger.
  - c. Brothers and sisters may have harassed and ridiculed when we failed in our struggling efforts.
  - d. As time went by, we acquired a negative self-image.
  - e. Eventually we were molded into an insecure person with grave misgivings about our value and usefulness as an individual.

4. The intimidating and destructive influence of playmates, peers and associates.
  - a. The anxieties and self-doubts that we frequently suffer often can be traced to negative bombardments we receive from others, starting in childhood up to the present.
  - b. We may have been picked on, put down and made fun of.
  - c. Perhaps we were chosen last to play on the team, overlooked for opportunities, shunned at dances, laughed at in class, etc.
  - d. We came to think of ourselves as second-rate citizens.
  - e. Many of our hang-ups and fears no doubt were infused into our psychic by these traumatic experiences.
  
5. An inbred feeling of inferiority.
  - a. Mr. Armstrong recently said that there isn't a human being alive who doesn't suffer to some degree from inferiority.
  - b. It's part of the curse handed down to all generations as a result of the first sin.
  - c. Inferiority is painful self-doubt and a low estimation of one's true value.
  - d. It stifles initiative, drains enthusiasm and can turn one into a recluse.
  - e. One who suffers from inferiority experiences difficulty and distress in communicating with others.
  
6. The perverse effect of the media and the world at large.
  - a. Hollywood has created a make-believe fantasy of the "gloriously" successful man and woman.
  - b. It stresses such things as beauty, fame and fortune as the ideals to strive for.
  - c. It perpetuates the belief that we're unfulfilled and inferior if we don't adopt its glamour and adventurous lifestyles.
  - d. Yet we know inwardly that we could never attain such a grandiose plane.
  - e. Consequently, Satan has used this damnable propaganda to drag us down into a state of hopelessness and despair.
  - f. This negative self-appraisal affects our ability to communicate comfortably with others.
  
7. Differences in geographical and cultural backgrounds.
  - a. Social tensions are likely to arise when individuals from radically different walks of life attempt to interface.
  - b. The underprivileged feel uneasy and inferior to their more sophisticated counterparts.
  - c. The well-to-do and better educated tend to look down on and shun the less fortunate.
  - d. Differences in customs, dialects, accents, vocabulary, tastes and lifestyles can also cause people to be at odds!
  - e. Such cultural and geographical backgrounds often create a kind of class system that puts a strain on open and friendly communication.
  
8. A warped sense of values instilled by the world's educational and religious systems.
  - a. We were taught in public schools and universities that we must be competitive if we're to achieve success in this dog-eat-dog society.
  - b. We were instructed to lie, cheat, and fight for our rights in order to win in the game of life.
  - c. Destroying the name and reputation of neighbor was considered legitimate if it meant getting the better end of the deal.
  - d. Conversely, the churches of this world instilled into our minds the diabolical attitudes of pride, prejudice and self-righteous vanity.
  - e. We came to think we were "holier than thou" and that our brand of religion was best.
  - f. No doubt many of us brought these carnal attitudes into God's Church which make us judgmental and condemning of others.

## IV. LET'S NOW EXAMINE THE SPECIFIC CAUSES THAT CREATE COMMUNICATION BARRIERS.

- A. Here's a list of the most common problems that affect each of us to some degree.
1. Fear of rejection.
    - a. A fear that I will not be liked and be accepted as a person if I open up and reveal my true self.
    - b. Afraid of appearing ignorant, uninformed or mentally inferior if I express my opinion.
    - c. A fear of criticism and ridicule if I should attempt to break the ice and fail.
    - d. Afraid to express a point of view that's different from others.
    - e. A fear that my thoughts won't come out right and I'll be misunderstood.
    - f. A fear of being manipulated and taken advantage of if I appear vulnerable and naive.
    - g. Afraid that I won't measure up to the expected standards of a perfect gentleman or a virtuous woman.
    - h. Afraid I won't fit in with the cliques or the "in" crowd
    - i. Fear of appearing too pushy or aggressive as a woman if I try to make friends with a man.
    - j. Afraid of appearing unmanly and weak if I divulge my innermost fears and anxieties, even to my closest female friends.
    - k. A fear of being crushed or cast aside as in the past if a relationship doesn't work out.
  2. Insecurity and self-doubt.
    - a. Having a sense of low self-esteem and a deep-seated feeling of inadequacy.
    - b. Being so aware of my imperfections that I feel extremely self-conscious.
    - c. Having an overall lack of confidence in myself.
    - d. Doubting my ability to "make the grade" as a successful A.C. student.
    - e. Feeling deficient and inept when compared to the charisma, charm and attractiveness of fellow classmates.
    - f. Believing that certain instructors or administrators doubt my competence and may jeopardize my future.
    - g. Being resentful toward and avoiding those who seem to get the breaks.
  3. A morbid self-concern or preoccupation with one's own problems and interests.
    - a. When one is absorbed in himself he usually finds little time to care about others.
    - b. He's oblivious to the needs and desires of those in his environment and runs roughshod over their feelings.
  4. Lack of skill and experience in communicating with people.
    - a. This is usually the result of a sheltered background, overprotective parents and insufficient opportunity.
    - b. It causes one to be shy and introverted.
    - c. Often such individuals lack tact and diplomacy in dealing with others and give the impression of being aloof and insensitive.
  5. Preoccupation with romance or mate-shopping.
    - a. This is one of the greatest barriers of communication between the sexes.
    - b. Fellows and girls tend to prematurely evaluate each other as a potential mate.
    - c. They seem to think only in terms of physical appearance and sexual appeal.
    - d. This can cause one of two things to happen.
      - (1) Immediate rejection if the person fails to meet the ideal standards.
      - (2) Coming on too strong if the person appears to have all the desired qualities.
    - e. Either of these attitudes can act as a "turn-off" and limit the chances of establishing a friendship.
  6. Not knowing how or when to express an interest in someone you like.
    - a. There's someone in your life you're especially fond of, and a relationship seems to be developing.

- b. Yet, you're fearful of "blowing it" if you bring up marriage too soon.
  - c. Tension and anxiety arise when you're not sure how to determine if the feeling is mutual.
7. Not knowing how to interpret the signals and body language of the opposite sex.
    - a. Uncertainty emerges when you're unsure if a person is sending a message or simply expressing his or her personality.
    - b. You're left wondering whether he or she has an interest in you.
    - c. You're afraid to respond for fear you've drawn the wrong conclusion.
  8. Putting the wrong meaning into what people say.
    - a. This unfortunate situation can be caused by the person who's talking as well as by the listener.
    - b. Possibly the person speaking assumed his message was clear but left out important details.
    - c. The listener may have been preoccupied or distracted and didn't hear the whole story.
    - d. Perhaps a remark is made in jest, but is interpreted as an insult.
    - e. The super self-conscious person is prone to read negative things about himself into a conversation that were never intended.
  9. Playing games and projecting a false image of yourself.
    - a. This simply means wearing a mask or putting on a facade.
    - b. It is trying to hide your insecurities by pretending to be someone you're not.
    - c. It can take on the form of being macho, overly confident or putting on airs.
    - d. This is hypocrisy to the core, and eventually your charade will be discovered.
  10. Withdrawing and pouting when the ego is wounded and feelings are hurt.
    - a. This childish conduct reflects emotional immaturity and a lack of deep conversion.
    - b. It creates tension and causes others to react in kind.
    - c. Such behavior stifles communication and restricts the building of relationships.
  11. Being uptight and suspicious when others are overly familiar and flirtatious.
    - a. We tend to recoil and put up defenses toward people who take such liberties.
    - b. A man resents being aggressively chased or having a woman throw herself at him.
    - c. A lady is repulsed when a man behaves like a playboy or overtly flatters her.
    - d. These motives raise suspicions and drive a wedge between the sexes.
  12. Being too dominant and overpowering.
    - a. When a man has a strong and domineering personality, he usually intimidates the weaker sex — especially if she feels insecure.
    - b. If a woman is loud, boisterous and boldly assertive she will cause men to avoid her.
    - c. A barrier is also erected when either sex holds strong opinions and verbally attacks anyone who opposes them.
    - d. Many friendships are shattered when this ill-mannered behavior is displayed.
  13. Trying too hard on a date to please and impress.
    - a. If a fellow or girl works too hard at making a date successful, the event will seem forced, strained and unnaturally structured.
    - b. Instead of the date being lively, relaxed and spontaneous, it will be overly formal.
    - c. This will cause each to be stiff and uncomfortable.
    - d. Obviously, this type of situation will impede warm and friendly conversation.
  14. Forming a pre-conceived opinion of an individual before you get to know him or her.
    - a. First appearances can be misleading.
    - b. People may be reserved and self-conscious before you've won their confidence.
    - c. It's unfair to draw a conclusion about someone before you get to know him.
    - d. Much damage can be inflicted by prematurely judging and condemning the character of another.



15. Asking questions that are private and personal.
  - a. Whenever we pry into other people's lives we cause them to become defensive and withdrawn.
  - b. They also may become angry and resentful.
  - c. Prying, probing and poking around into the innermost secrets of fellow students is a sure-fire method of blocking communication.
  
16. Lecturing or giving unwanted advice.
  - a. Adults do not want to be treated like children.
  - b. Nor do they want others to lead their lives.
  - c. Butting in and offering unsolicited counsel will put a strain on any relationship.
  - d. It's one thing to listen and be a sounding board, but to exert pressure to adopt your recommendation is morally wrong.
  - e. This is being presumptuous and may destroy your friendship.
  
17. Being too picky about little mistakes and dwelling on the negatives.
  - a. Nobody is perfect — we all have faults to overcome.
  - b. Focusing on others' shortcomings is like a fly lighting on the rot of an apple.
  - c. Picky people are narrow minded, impatient and unforgiving.
  - d. By dwelling on every tiny flaw, such individuals become a source of irritation and discouragement to all their associates.
  
18. Being obnoxious, uncouth and overbearing.
  - a. In the area of human relationships, this is probably the lowest and most dishonorable state a person can fall into.
  - b. One who's degenerated to this level of conduct exhibits no semblance of Christian character.
  - c. He's uncultured, rude, thoughtless and displays the manners of a pig.
  - d. He's insensitive to others and tramples on their feelings like a bull in a china closet.
  - e. This type of individual does great harm to the cause of unity and peace in God's Church.
  - f. If you have any of these characteristics, you can never build lasting friendships until you repent and come to fully see yourself.

#### V. WE NOW COME TO A NUMBER OF SUGGESTIONS AND RECOMMENDATIONS ON HOW TO CONQUER YOUR HANG-UPS AND FEARS.

A. The important thing to remember is not to despair, but to rest assured that victory over your problems is absolutely possible.

B. Solutions:

1. Admit to yourself that you put up barriers and build protective walls.
  - a. The sooner you face this fact, the quicker will be your rate of progress.
  - b. Hiding in the background is a coward's way of escaping reality.
  - c. To gain self-respect, you must face your problems head-on and determine to turn over a new leaf in your life — starting today.
  
2. Realize that it will take courage, discipline and persevering prayer to conquer your fears.
  - a. To the degree that you set your mind to overcome is the degree you'll grow and progress.
  - b. You must set your hand to the plow and determine never to look back.
  - c. This will necessitate prevailing daily prayer and an all-out effort to win the battle.
  
3. Practice. Think of each person you meet as a unique challenge.
  - a. As is true with any skill or sport, you must practice until you are relaxed, comfortable and confident — an expert in every sense of the word.
  - b. Therefore, with each person you encounter, take advantage of the opportunity to improve your communication skills.

- c. Don't become paralyzed with fear, but force yourself to step out and take initiative.
  - d. You'll be utterly amazed at the changes you'll make in a few weeks' time.
4. If you should fail, bounce back and try again.
    - a. Realize you'll make *faux pas* and falter from time to time.
    - b. But don't let your mistakes discourage you, or drive you back into your shell.
    - c. Brush off the dust, and keep trying.
    - d. No matter how many times you stumble, let each mistake be a catalyst to propel you forward.
  5. Quit pretending and just be yourself.
    - a. Trying to be someone you're not is like having two personalities.
    - b. One is an image of how you want people to picture you, the other is what you really are.
    - c. But why should you want to be someone else when you are one of a kind?
    - d. Stop play-acting and develop your own personality.
    - e. Endeavor to be what God intended — an original copy.
  6. Learn how to break the ice and start a conversation.
    - a. This can be achieved by asking the right questions and skillfully drawing people out.
    - b. Ten possible openers:
      - 1) Ask a background question.
      - 2) Comment on a local event.
      - 3) Pay a compliment.
      - 4) Ask for advice.
      - 5) Find something to praise.
      - 6) Ask for help.
      - 7) Ask for an opinion.
      - 8) Ask for an evaluation.
      - 9) Ask about local customs.
      - 10) Ask about local restaurants.
    - c. The above points are taken from: "*Conversational Magic: Key to Poise, Popularity and Success*" by Les Donaldson, Parker Publishing Company, Inc., W. Nyack, N.Y., 1981.
    - d. Remember that others probably feel just as tense as you are. Therefore, be courageous and take the lead.
  7. Look for common ground and similarities to talk about.
    - a. So often we tend to focus on our differences as men and women that we fail to see the ways we may be alike.
    - b. A new world of fellowship will open up to you when you discover mutual interests and similarities.
    - c. You'll find that conversation will flow much easier and be more spontaneous.
    - d. For example, you may ascertain you're both from large families, from the same state, like to travel, etc.
    - e. Look for areas where you can relate and most of your tensions will disappear.
  8. Try to put others at ease by creating a warm, relaxed and friendly atmosphere.
    - a. This means, first of all, forgetting yourself and concentrating on those you meet.
    - b. Make a habit of greeting people with a smile.
    - c. Show sincere interest in them through direct eye contact.
    - d. Be responsive to what others say with appropriate feedback and humor.
    - e. The all-important key is to make each person feel special and important.
  9. Be approachable and project an attitude of genuine sincerity.
    - a. Be down-to-earth and show an empathy toward other people and their problems.
    - b. Avoid being cynical, frivolous and sarcastic.
    - c. Be careful about turning people's remarks into a joke.
    - d. Make it easy for them to communicate by being warmhearted and humble.
  10. Learn how to be tactfully open and honest.
    - a. Sincerely try to reveal your true self and inner feelings by being above board and candid.

- b. Being open doesn't mean "telling it like it is" with no regard for other people's feelings.
  - c. It simply means being unpretentious and not trying to hide the true intent of what you're saying.
  - d. Be diplomatic and remember that harsh, austere words can inflict deep wounds and leave scars that can linger for years.
11. Develop a keen awareness of the feelings and deep sensitivities of the opposite sex.
- a. Failure to understand that people have tender emotions can spell disaster in human relationships.
  - b. For example, being too direct or kidding too much can bruise one's ego.
  - c. We should drill into our consciousness the biblical command to be kind, courteous and tenderly affectioned (Rom. 12:10).
  - d. Being aware of how we come across to others is another way of expressing agape love (Matt. 7:12).
12. Accept each person as being a unique creation of God.
- a. As there are no two snowflakes alike, neither are there two perfectly identical people.
  - b. Each has his or her own special characteristics and plays a significant role in God's great plan.
  - c. The Creator doesn't want us all to become yellow pencils.
  - d. Remember that if God loves everyone, so should we, even though they are different.
  - e. View each individual you date as an exciting challenge and learn to adapt to his or her personality.
13. Be patient and understanding toward those with idiosyncrasies or glaring faults.
- a. No one has yet attained perfection.
  - b. We all have symbolic warts or blemishes.
  - c. Growth is a process and it may take years for fellow Christians to see their flaws.
  - d. Instead of criticizing or rejecting imperfect friends, why not try to love and encourage them?
14. Learn to be tolerant of people with differing opinions, tastes and lifestyles.
- a. Who's to say that we're always right?
  - b. Since God created each of us differently, it stands to reason that our viewpoints will vary.
  - c. We've all been given the right from God to be an individual.
  - d. Therefore, let's not judge others by our own private standards.
15. Learn how to listen the way Christ did.
- a. Jesus Christ didn't monopolize the conversation.
  - b. He was deeply interested in what people had to say and avoided distractions and lapses in concentration.
  - c. He listened attentively and respectfully.
  - d. As a matter of fact, listening is still one of His great joys today in acting as our High Priest.
  - e. Learning to listen is a cardinal rule in becoming an expert conversationalist.
  - f. Few things will turn people off faster than having a partner in conversation show boredom or disinterest.
16. Prepare a reserve list of conversational topics to fall back on.
- a. A date worth having is a date worth preparing for.
  - b. Spend a few minutes thinking about topics you can discuss if your well runs dry.
  - c. Have four or five ideas readily in mind.
  - d. This might involve relating an experience, sharing a lesson you've learned, describing an exciting place you've visited, discussing something in the news, etc.
  - e. Try to make each date a memorable and profitable experience.
17. Develop tough skin and don't be so sensitive when put down or rebuffed.
- a. To hold resentment or nurse a grudge because someone has offended you indicates that you're not really in control of your life.

- b. Your old carnal self is still in command, and you're taking yourself too seriously.
  - c. Forgive quickly and crush the desire to retaliate.
  - d. God commands us to love our enemies — how much more so should we love our brothers and sisters in Christ?
  - e. The mature way to deal with a person who's hurt you is to return good for evil.
18. Until it's time to get serious, treat each other as good friends.
- a. First of all, think of A.C. as one big family.
  - b. There are hundreds of people for you to get to know.
  - c. Make the rounds so that you'll have a broad base of experience when contemplating marriage later in life.
  - d. Don't allow your emotions to get carried away — put on the brakes.
  - e. Date widely and absorb every personality you can.
19. Build a comfortable, trusting friendship first, then if a romantic interest develops, it will be easy to express your feelings.
- a. You'll do yourself a great disservice and that of the person you like, if you press for a commitment too soon.
  - b. Before a woman agrees to marry a man she wants to know that she can safely trust him.
  - c. Before a man chooses a wife, he should want to know her inner makeup and character.
  - d. It's exceedingly important, then, to keep the relationship platonic, so you can think with a clear mind.
  - e. Build trust and respect before you even think about discussing marriage.
20. Realize the immense importance God places on the second great command.
- a. In summarizing man's second most important duty, Jesus Christ said to love your neighbor as yourself.
  - b. Please notice that He called it the second great commandment — not the 10th, 30th or the 92nd.
  - c. Next to loving God, loving neighbor is the most important thing you can do on earth.
  - d. Yet, so often, it's the one command that we treat with least regard.
  - e. Obey it with your whole heart and you will find that most of your communication problems will vanish.

#### VI. CONCLUSION:

- A. Why tolerate defeat in your life any longer?
- B. Unless you take yourself in hand, conditions will probably never improve.
- C. Turn over a new leaf and start today.
- D. Set your hand to the plow and don't look back.
- E. Think eternity!

-END-

## **CHAPTER 22**

### **HOW TO BUILD TRUE SELF-ESTEEM**

- I. ONE OF OUR MOST DISCOURAGING AND DEPRESSING PROBLEMS IS LEARNING HOW TO COPE WITH LOW SELF-ESTEEM OR A NEGATIVE SELF-IMAGE.
- A. This problem isn't limited to a select few.
  - B. It's a universal curse that seems to plague every human being on earth to one degree or another.
  - C. However, some are more adversely affected and deeply shattered by it than others.
  - D. Virtually all of our social conflicts and mis-understandings center around this dreaded problem.
  - E. Since the majority of us here today are probably struggling with low self-esteem, I feel that it's one of the most needed subjects I could cover.
- II. AT THE OUTSET OF THIS STUDY, IT IS VITAL FOR US TO REALIZE THAT GOD NOT ONLY DESIRES WE BUILD THE RIGHT KIND OF SELF-ESTEEM, BUT DOES IN FACT COMMAND US TO.
- A. We are destined to become a ruling king and a glorified son in His family.
  - B. It's inconceivable to think that we could enter His Kingdom strapped and inhibited by feelings of inferiority.
  - C. But the kind of self-esteem He wants us to develop is altogether different from what the world is pursuing.
  - D. As we progress with our discussion, we will clearly see the difference between the world's viewpoint of self-esteem and God's high ideal.
- III. EXACTLY WHAT IS LOW SELF-ESTEEM?
- A. Let's begin by discussing some general overall characteristics.
  - B. Later we'll discuss the causes and cures.
  - C. Here is a list of the most common symptoms:
    - 1. A feeling of inferiority.
      - a. Fearing that one is not measuring up to expected standards of society.
      - b. Perceiving oneself as being a second-rate or second-class citizen.
      - c. Viewing oneself as physically unappealing or unattractive.
    - 2. A feeling of inadequacy.
      - a. An unduly low opinion and faulty evaluation of one's personality, qualities and strengths.
      - b. Viewing oneself as lacking intelligence, innate abilities and skills.
    - 3. Fear of rejection.
      - a. Seeing oneself as beneath others and unworthy of their love, respect and admiration.
      - b. Usually based on a lifetime of sour and bitter experiences such as: being turned down for a date, overlooked for a party, excluded from peer groups.
    - 4. Lack of courage and confidence.
      - a. Afraid to step out and face new challenges.
      - b. The deep insecurity that one may fail and encounter the criticism and disapproval of others.
      - c. Unsure of one's overall ability to win in the game of life.
      - d. Lack of drive and initiative.
    - 5. Social inhibitions and ineptness.
      - a. Weak in communication skills — not sure of what to say and how to conduct oneself in unfamiliar circumstances.
      - b. Not knowing how to meet people, make new friends and build relationships.
      - c. Usually stems from lack of experience.

6. Self-consciousness.
  - a. Painfully aware of one's weaknesses, faults and shortcomings.
  - b. Magnifies his mistakes in his own mind and tends to think that others notice.
  - c. Feels that he is being constantly evaluated and criticized by others.
7. Self-pity.
  - a. Tends to whine and complain about bad breaks and mistreatment from others.
  - b. Generally feels miserable and frustrated with his station in life.
  - c. Tends to display a forlorn, dejected and unhappy expression on the face.
8. Shyness.
  - a. Being so concerned about what others think that one is afraid to converse with them or participate in activities.
  - b. Keeping to oneself and avoiding crowds.
  - c. Being controlled and paralyzed by fear.
9. Guilt and self-hatred.
  - a. Subconsciously admitting to oneself that he's a hypocrite and living a double standard.
  - b. Play acting — pretending to be something that one isn't.
  - c. Allowing one's conscience to be seared, thus squelching his desire to overcome, walk with God and build character.
  - d. A general dislike or contempt for oneself.
10. Abuse of alcohol or the use of other drugs.
  - a. An escape from facing the reality of one's life.
  - b. An artificial means of attaining the ideal state one desires in place of working to attain it.
  - c. An old-fashioned cop-out.
11. Low personal standards.
  - a. Poor grooming and hygiene.
  - b. Unkempt living environment.
  - c. Offensive manners and lack of culture.
  - d. Satisfied with status quo, such as beat-up and dirty old car, soiled furniture, etc.
12. Suicidal tendencies.
  - a. Succumbing to prolonged depression.
  - b. Taking the view that one's life has lost meaning and value.
  - c. Suicide is now the third most common cause of death among American teenagers.
13. A general negative attitude.
  - a. Being consistently down on oneself and life in general.
  - b. Cynical, abusive, sarcastic.
  - c. Pessimistic response to any offered suggestions for self-improvement or solutions to problems.
  - d. An appalling lack of true faith in God.
14. Pride, arrogance and conceit.
  - a. This is a reverse condition of all the above in an attempt to cover up one's feelings of inadequacy or inferiority.
  - b. Usually this individual is quick to judge and criticize others for their mistakes, weaknesses and sins.
  - c. By putting others down, one lifts himself above them.

IV. AS MENTIONED EARLIER, GOD DESIRES THAT WE GROW IN THE PROPER KIND OF SELF-ESTEEM, AND BECOME CONFIDENT, FRUITFUL SERVANTS.

A. Our basic needs and drives.

1. We were created to become like God.

- a. We were fashioned as a clay model or physical prototype, ultimately to be transformed into His spiritual likeness (Gen. 1:26-27).
- b. This process may take an entire lifetime to achieve.
- c. We begin as nothing and proceed through various stages of growth and development until our change is complete.

- d. The Kingdom of God should be our motivation.
  - e. To fall short of this grand purpose leaves us empty and depressed.
  - 2. We were created with an inherent desire to create, build and accomplish.
    - a. Whenever this desire is stifled, we feel frustrated and discouraged.
    - b. This is a major cause of inadequacy and self-condemnation.
  - 3. We were created with a need to experience success and fulfillment or a need to excel.
    - a. Here is another prime factor that contributes to a negative self-image or low self-respect.
    - b. When we have failed to put forth our best efforts, we have not fully experienced the true meaning of success.
    - c. Ex: When God finished each day of creation, He looked at His work and said, "It is good."
  - 4. We were created with a need to grow and develop our full potential.
    - a. When this desire has been neglected or squelched, we are left distressed and discouraged.
    - b. Again, our self-respect plummets.
    - c. The urge to reach out and produce has not been nurtured.
  - 5. We were created with a need for love, approval and acceptance.
    - a. This single point accounts for the most causes involving low self-esteem.
    - b. We need encouragement and positive reinforcement.
    - c. It is a deeply intense need that God engineered into our psyche.
  - 6. We were created with a need to express love and serve others.
    - a. When we fail in this duty, we overlook a vital key that produces genuine happiness and satisfaction.
    - b. Expressing love toward others raises our sense of value and enhances our feelings of self-worth.
  - 7. We were each created uniquely different for a special role in God's plan.
    - a. With this in mind, why should, we want to abandon our identity and try to be like someone else?
    - b. When we compare ourselves to others, we question God's wisdom in creating us as we are.
    - c. Thus, we arouse feelings of inferiority and self-doubt.
  - 8. We were created to need God.
    - a. We need His Holy Spirit to give us inner peace and comfort, of knowing that He cares and are accepted of Him.
    - b. We need His guidance, protection and abiding love.
    - c. Without God, we are incomplete and left to our own devices.
    - d. It is only through God that we can attain true self-esteem.
- B. Obviously, we can readily see that to have proper self-regard we must fulfill these basic urges and drives that God placed within us.

#### V. THE ORIGINAL CAUSE OF LOW SELF-ESTEEM CAN BE TRACED TO THE GARDEN OF EDEN.

- A. When Adam and Eve sinned by partaking of the forbidden fruit, two frightful and disastrous things happened to them.
  - 1. They cut themselves off from God's presence which resulted in shame, guilt and rejection.
    - a. Their first reaction was to run from God and hide among the trees (Gen. 3:8-10).
    - b. They were mortally afraid.
    - c. They felt dirty, sinful and ashamed, thus forfeiting their self-esteem.
    - d. Had they not sinned, Adam and Eve would have undoubtedly enjoyed a rich, abundant life, having wholesome, healthy feelings about themselves.
    - e. They would have had God's constant love, encouragement and positive reinforcement.
  - 2. Satan entered their lives and they became self-centered, corrupt and rebellious.
    - a. Their inner heart was darkened and defiled.
    - b. Instead of receiving God's Holy Spirit which would have imparted outgoing love and concern, they received Satan's nature which made them carnal and self-seeking.
    - c. This nature was then passed on to their children and all future generations.  
(See Ps. 58:3; Ps. 51:5; Eph. 2:1-3; Rom. 5:12,15-19.)
    - d. Consequently, the whole human race has lost its ability to show true love and concern for others.

VI. WITH THIS BACKGROUND IN VIEW, LET'S NOW EXAMINE THE SPECIFIC CAUSES OF LOW SELF-ESTEEM.

A. A lack of parental love or negative home environment.

1. IT CAN START AT CONCEPTION.

a. The baby is unplanned or unwanted.

(1) The mother is depressed and unhappy about the pregnancy.

(2) Because of her negative attitude, she upsets the chemical balance of the fetus and hinders its development.

b. Possibly the mother smokes, drinks, uses drugs or has a poor diet.

(1) The fetus may develop physical deformities or mental retardation.

(2) Its mental or emotional outlook could be impaired for life.

(3) Recent studies show that a mother's own mental attitude can be transferred to the fetus, causing it to be nervous and temperamental.

2. IT CAN ORIGINATE DURING INFANCY.

a. The parents were hoping for a boy, but got a girl, or vice-versa.

b. The baby is left to itself for long periods of time.

c. Neglected when it's hungry, wet, frightened or ill.

d. Thus, the attitude of not being wanted is instilled from the outset.

3. IT IS ROOTED IN CHILDHOOD.

a. Too much correction and discipline cause the child to believe he can do nothing right.

b. Lack of involvement, motivation and encouragement — no positive reinforcement.

c. Lack of recognition for a job well done — initiative is killed.

d. Ridiculed and put down for making mistakes, particularly in the presence of others.

e. This child is told that he's a jerk, idiot, creep or klutz.

f. Is often reminded that he's dumb, stupid and a clumsy oaf.

g. Parents set unrealistic goals for the child and push it to exasperation.

h. Failure to identify and develop talents and abilities at a young age.

i. Overprotective parents rob children of opportunities for growth and development.

j. Parents who don't know how to make a child feel loved.

k. When a child is continually called names, put down and made to feel unworthy.

(1) This negative reinforcement gets into his psyche.

(2) He comes to think and believe these things said about him are true.

(3) The pattern is set for life.

B. Childhood experiences outside the home.

1. Ridicule and rejection from peers and classmates.

2. Harassed because of thick glasses, freckles, accent, overweight or unusual name.

3. Intimidated by teachers for being a slow learner.

4. Last to be chosen on a team.

5. Daily bombardment of negative vibes that the child is inferior and unworthy.

C. The pressures of teenage and adolescence.

1. Fear of discovery.

a. Poor — lives on other side of the tracks.

b. Intolerable home conditions.

c. Lack of talents, athletic ability or experience.

2. Feels self-conscious because of physical appearance — acne, undeveloped body: skinny, fat, short, tall, etc.

3. Strange religious beliefs and practices — Sabbath, Holy Days, can't wear makeup, can't keep Christmas, etc.

4. Rejected for not giving in to immoral social pressures — drugs, alcohol, sex, vulgar language, etc.

5. Constant lecturing and nagging from parents.

D. Entering young adulthood.

1. Cutting the apron strings and starting out on one's own.

2. Insecurities arise because Mom and Dad are no longer there to lean on.

3. Early job experiences — being turned down, getting laid off or fired, starting out from bottom of ladder.



4. Many sour dating experiences.
5. Romantic involvement — being crushed and heartbroken.
6. Economic pressures — unable to afford a car, buy nice clothes, or enjoy the finer things of life.

#### VII. THIS BRINGS US TO THE IMMEDIATE PRESENT.

- A. Let's now examine how this insidious tool of Satan — a negative self-image — intrudes into your life.
- B. Other subtle causes:
  1. The direct assault of Satan — he tries to shatter us at every turn.
  2. The glamour of Hollywood and the media.
    - a. Beautiful women, handsome men.
    - b. Expensive clothes, cars, homes.
    - c. Affluence and elegant lifestyle.
    - d. The world projects an image of superiority to which we subconsciously compare ourselves.
  3. Comparing oneself to others.
  4. Playing negative mental tape recordings about your failures, thus reinforcing inferiority.
  5. Failure to grow and produce.
  6. Having an "I can't" attitude when confronted with new challenges.
  7. Fear of people's opinions or what they may say.
  8. Racial discrimination.
  9. Associating with people who are critical and negative.
  10. A series of demoralizing bad breaks.

#### VIII. HOW A NEGATIVE ATTITUDE REPELS OTHERS AND CREATES SOCIAL BARRIERS.

- A. A negative attitude causes one:
  1. To be timid and shy.
  2. Cold and distant.
  3. Unapproachable — hard to get to know.
  4. To be whiney, irritable and critical.
- B. He transmits these negative signals to others.
  1. They misread his behavior and draw wrong conclusions.
  2. They feel that he is snobbish, vain, proud, unfriendly.
  3. Other people are repelled and avoid social contact with him.
- C. Thus the person with low self-esteem senses the rejection of other people and withdraws deeper into his shell, creating a vicious cycle of defeat and failure.

#### IX. SUGGESTIONS ON HOW TO ACHIEVE TRUE SELF-ESTEEM.

- A. Fourteen steps.
  1. Realize that a negative self-image can keep you out of God's Kingdom.
    - a. Rev. 21:8 — *"But the fearful, and unbelieving, and the abominable, and murderers, and whoremongers, and sorcerers, and idolaters, and all liars, shall have their part in the lake which burneth with fire and brimstone: which is the second death."*
    - b. Matt. 25:24-26, 28, 30 — *"Then he which had received the one talent came and said, Lord, I knew thee that thou art an hard man, reaping where thou hast not sown, and gathering where thou hast not strawed: (25) And I was afraid, and went and hid thy talent in the earth: lo, there thou hast that is thine. (26) His lord answered and said unto him, Thou wicked and slothful servant, thou knewest that I reap where I sowed not, and gather where I have not strawed: (28) Take therefore the talent from him, and give it unto him which hath ten talents. (30) And cast ye the unprofitable servant into outer darkness: there shall be weeping and gnashing of teeth."*
    - c. Heb. 10:38-39 — *"Now the just shall live by faith: but if any man draw back, my soul shall have no pleasure in him. (39) But we are not of them who draw back unto perdition; but of them that believe to the saving of the soul."*
  2. To turn your life around you must radically change your negative way of thinking.
    - a. Come to grips with yourself and realize the urgency of your situation.
    - b. Get fed up and fired up about your present miserable state.
    - c. Luke 13:3,5 — *"I tell you, Nay: but, except ye repent, ye shall all likewise perish. (5) I tell you, Nay: but, except ye repent, ye shall all likewise perish."*

- d. To be controlled by fear and negativism means you're on Satan's wavelength and are serving him.
  - e. Start acting like one who's been freed from the shackles of Satan and living for the glory of God.
3. Realize you're worth more to God than the whole.
- a. God sent His Son to die for you.
    - (1) John 3:16 — *"For God so loved the world, that he gave his only begotten Son, that whosoever believeth in him should not perish, but have everlasting life."*
    - (2) I Cor. 6:20 — *"For ye are bought with a price: therefore glorify God in your body, and in your spirit, which are God's."*
  - b. Nothing can separate you from God's love.
    - (1) Rom. 8:38, 39 — *"For I am persuaded, that neither death, nor life, nor angels, nor principalities, nor powers, nor things present, nor things to come, (39) Nor height, nor depth, nor any other creature, shall be able to separate us from the love of God, which is in Christ Jesus our Lord."*
    - (2) John 10:28, 29 — *"And I give unto them eternal life; and they shall never perish, neither shall any man pluck them out of my hand. (29) My Father, which gave them me, is greater than all; and no man is able to pluck them out of my Father's hand."*
  - c. How awesome and profound that God loves you so much.
  - d. Think of it! He's also going to crown you as a king.
4. Realize that you are an original copy and should never compare yourselves to others.
- a. God explicitly commands that you not do this.
    - (1) II Cor. 10:12 — *"For we dare not make ourselves of the number, or compare ourselves with some that commend themselves: but they measuring themselves by themselves, and comparing themselves among themselves, are not wise."*
  - b. You are one of a kind and have a special place of importance in God's plan.
    - (1) I Cor. 12:14-18 — *"For the body is not one member, but many. (15) If the foot shall say, Because I am not the hand, I am not of the body; is it therefore not of the body? (16) And if the ear shall say, Because I am not the eye, I am not of the body; is it therefore not of the body? (17) If the whole body were an eye, where were the hearing? If the whole were hearing, where were the smelling? (18) But now hath God set the members every one of them in the body, as it hath pleased him."*
  - c. God is even going to give you a unique name of identity in His coming Kingdom.
    - (1) Rev. 3:12 — *"Him that overcometh will I make a pillar in the temple of my God, and he shall go no more out: and I will write upon him the name of my God, and the name of the city of my God, which is new Jerusalem, which cometh down out of heaven from my God: and I will write upon him my new name."* (See also Rev. 2:17.)
  - d. How foolish to abandon your own identity and attempt to be like someone else.
5. Realize that true self-esteem comes from obedience and a right relationship with God.
- a. Here's the vital difference between the vanity of this world and godly self-esteem.
    - (1) The world tries to achieve it without God's help.
    - (2) We achieve it through God's Spirit in us.
  - b. Our power and strength truly come from God.
    - (1) II Cor. 13:5 — *"Examine yourselves, whether ye be in the faith; prove your own selves. Know ye not your own selves, how that Jesus Christ is in you, except ye be reprobates?"*
    - (2) Gal. 2:20 — *"I am crucified with Christ: nevertheless I live; yet not I, but Christ liveth in me: and the life which I now live in the flesh I live by the faith of the Son of God, who loved me, and gave himself for me."*
    - (3) Phil. 4:13 — *"I can do all things through Christ which strengtheneth me."*
    - (4) Eph. 3:20 — *"Now unto him that is able to do exceeding abundantly above all that we ask or think, according to the power that worketh in us."*
    - (5) Isa. 40:29-31 — *"He giveth power to the faint; and to them that have no might he increaseth strength. (30) Even the youths shall faint and be weary, and the young men shall utterly fall: (31) But they that wait upon the Lord shall renew their strength; they shall mount up with wings as eagles; they shall run, and not be weary; and they shall walk, and not faint."*
  - c. Being obedient and doing God's will keeps us in a positive frame of mind and enhances our self-image.

6. To grow in confidence and self-esteem, you must experience success.
  - a. Each achievement produces confidence.
  - b. It spurs you on to greater heights.
  - c. As you experience the triumph and victory of success, you are motivated to try harder.
  - d. Thus, success generates confidence and confidence generates success.
  - e. Have the courage to accept new challenges and opportunities for growth.
  - f. This will require drive and discipline — but the rewards are well worth it.
  - g. Some examples:
    - (1) Join the Spokesman Club.
    - (2) Learn to dance, ski, skate, etc.
    - (3) Try new recipes.
    - (4) Learn to play a musical instrument.
  - h. Search for hidden talents and be willing to try your hand at new things.
  - i. NOTE: Do the thing you fear and your fear will disappear.
7. Set attainable and realistic goals to achieve a positive self-image.
  - a. Remember that Rome wasn't built in a day.
  - b. Nor can you hope to make a total change in your life in a few short weeks.
  - c. You must grow in step-by-step stages — and set small goals you can handle.
  - d. The place to begin is to isolate your major hang-ups and problems.
    - (1) Attack these first.
    - (2) Be honest with yourself — have the courage to seek out the truth.
    - (3) Examples: Fear of meeting people, asking a certain girl for a date, overcoming self-consciousness, depression, etc.
  - e. Work on self-improvement.
    - (1) Appearance: hairstyle, wardrobe, weight, etc.
    - (2) Being a good conversationalist.
    - (3) Physical living environment.
    - (4) Education and improving career.
    - (5) Cultivate a cheerful disposition.
  - f. As you experience success in these areas, your confidence will grow and your self-esteem will heighten.
8. Be patient and endure — some problems take longer to conquer.
  - a. Some habits, fears and phobias are deeply ingrained and will require extreme patience and perseverance to master.
  - b. Resolve never to quit and beseech God for strength.
  - c. Don't be discouraged if you hit snags and roadblocks along the way.
  - d. Keep your goal in mind and determine to stick it out to the bitter end.
9. Make it a practice to seek wise counsel.
  - a. When you encounter seemingly impossible situations, be willing to ask for help.
  - b. Go to God's ministers with your spiritual or emotional problems.
  - c. Go to a close and God-fearing friend who understands you and can put you back on track.
  - d. Don't continue to make excuses for your failures when help is available.
10. Make the pursuit of excellence your motto.
  - a. Remember, you're destined to become a king.
  - b. God doesn't want you to live a mediocre life — but to go for top honors.
  - c. When you give 100 percent effort to all your endeavors and strive to please God, your self-image will markedly improve.
11. Work at building relationships and associate with who will motivate and encourage you.
  - a. Take the initiative and make new friends — don't hold back and wait for them to take the lead.
  - b. Realize the importance of being loyal and true.
  - c. Stand by them when they really need you.
  - d. When down in the dumps and needing encouragement, you need true friends to lean on.

*"You can make more friends in two months by becoming interested in other people than you can in two years by trying to get people interested in you." — Dale Carnegie*

12. Devote your life to serving mankind and your self-esteem will soar.
  - a. Get your mind off yourself and onto the needs of others.
  - b. The cause of low self-esteem all along has been the result of having your mind on yourself.
  - c. Develop a loving, sharing and giving life-style.
  - d. Practice this principle until it becomes an automatic response in the way you deal with others.
  - e. Make people feel important and help them to grow in self-esteem.
13. Maintain high standards of character and self-respect.
  - a. Don't give in to the pulls of the flesh and compromise your principles.
  - b. Preserve your integrity at all costs.
  - c. In the whole of your life be true and honest to the core.
  - d. Allow no sin or guilt to defile your conscience or taint your feelings of self-worth.
  - e. Always strive to be at peace with yourself, with God and with your fellowman.
14. Be constantly aware of Christ's eminent return and the urgency of redeeming the time.
  - a. The judgment will soon be upon us and we'll have to give account of our lives.
  - b. If we've failed to develop our talents and grow, Christ will take them from us and give our reward to someone else more deserving. (Matt. 25:38)
  - c. He exhorted those in the Philadelphia Church, "...that no man take thy crown" (Rev. 3:11).
  - d. Walk worthy of your high calling and make every moment count.

X. As a final remark, let's notice an inspiring description of those who've overcome themselves and attained true self-esteem.

*"I sought the Lord, and He heard me, and delivered me from all my fears [low self-esteem]. They looked to Him and were radiant [happy, positive and confident], and their faces were not ashamed [because they had attained high self-esteem]" (Ps. 34:4-5; NKJV).*

**-END-**

## CHAPTER 23

### **HOW TO GROW IN FAVOR WITH FELLOWMAN**

- I. ONE OF THE HIGHEST TRIBUTES PAID TO JESUS CHRIST IS FOUND IN LUKE 2:52.
- A. Luke 2:52 — *"And Jesus increased in wisdom and stature, and in favor with God and man."*
  - B. Although this verse primarily referred to Christ as a young boy, it is a statement that was true of Him throughout His lifetime.
  - C. Description of the qualities that attracted Him to others.
    1. He was charming and magnetic, mannerly and well-bred.
    2. He exhibited a quality of politeness, courtesy and graciousness in the way He dealt with people.
      - a. Luke 4:22 points out, *"And all bare Him witness, and wondered at the gracious words which proceeded out of His mouth."*
    3. He was thoughtful and considerate and always had the welfare of others in mind.
    4. Jesus was humble and willing to step to the lowest level of service as demonstrated by His washing the disciples' feet and taking little children into His arms.
    5. He didn't snap back at His detractors or react in anger when insulted — He was calm, collected and always in control.
    6. He was never rude or sarcastic toward the common people of His day — but kind, merciful and gentle.
    7. He acted like a gentleman and carried Himself in a dignified manner. At the same time He was mighty in stature and spoke with the voice of authority.
    8. Jesus was poised, articulate and self-assured — yet others felt completely at ease in His presence.
    9. What He said always rang true and people knew they could totally trust Him.
    10. His countenance emanated a glow of joy and warmth and His personality reflected an aura of godliness.
  - D. In every detail, Jesus Christ expressed the nature and character of His Father in heaven.
    1. John 14:8-10 — *"Philip saith unto him, Lord, shew us the Father, and it sufficeth us. (9) Jesus saith unto him, Have I been so long time with you, and yet hast thou not known me, Philip? he that hath seen me hath seen the Father; and how sayest thou then, Shew us the Father? (10) Believest thou not that I am in the Father, and the Father in me? the words that I speak unto you I speak not of myself: but the Father that dwelleth in me, he doeth the works."*
- II. THIS BRINGS US TO THE TOPIC I'D LIKE TO ADDRESS TODAY:
- A. Would you like to become the kind of person Jesus Christ was?
  - B. Would you like to know the secret of His charisma — of how He grew in favor with God and man?
  - C. You can — if you're willing to pay the price and make it one of your highest priorities.
  - D. As a matter of fact, not only should you deeply desire to become like Christ — God even commands you to.
  - E. Note these scriptures:
    1. Eph. 4:15 — *"But speaking the truth in love, may grow up into him in all things, which is the head, even Christ."*
    2. II Cor. 3:18 — *"But we all, with open face beholding as in a glass the glory of the Lord, are changed into the same image from glory to glory, even as by the Spirit of the Lord."*
- III. TODAY, I'M GOING TO SHARE WITH YOU TWO SIMPLE KEYS OF CHRIST'S SUCCESS.
- A. In interest of time, I'm going to focus only on the aspect that deals with your relationship to fellow man.

B. Hopefully out of this lecture will emerge some insights and information that will help to improve your social and dating life.

IV. THE FIRST KEY IS: "REALIZE THAT YOU ARE GOD'S TEMPLE — HIS DWELLING PLACE ON EARTH."

A. In the Old Testament God took up residence in a physical temple built with human hands.

B. In the New Testament, He takes up residence within our earthly bodies which He calls His spiritual temple.

C. Note these scriptures:

1. II Cor. 6:16 — *"for ye are the temple of the living God; as God hath said, I will dwell in them, and walk in them; and I will be their God, and they shall be my people."*

2. I John 4:13 — *"Hereby know we that we dwell in him, and he in us, because he hath given us of his Spirit."*

3. Eph. 3:14, 17 — *"For this cause I bow my knees unto the Father of our Lord Jesus Christ. (17) That Christ may dwell in your hearts by faith; that ye, being rooted and grounded in love."*

4. Rom. 8:9, 11 — *"But ye are not in the flesh, but in the Spirit, if so be that the Spirit of God dwell in you. Now if any man have not the Spirit of Christ, he is none of his."*

D. Thus, you are a vessel used by God to show the world what He is like. And what does God wish to manifest about Himself through you?

V. AND WHAT DOES GOD WISH TO MANIFEST ABOUT HIMSELF THROUGH YOU?

A. His character, nature and disposition.

B. His charm, beauty and divine glory.

C. His attributes and qualities all perfectly meshed together.

D. Note these scriptures:

1. Matt. 5:16 — *"Let your light so shine before men, that they may see your good works, and glorify your Father which is in heaven."*

2. I Cor. 10:31 — *"Whether therefore ye eat, or drink, or whatsoever ye do, do all to the glory of God."*

3. Isa. 43:7 — *"Even every one that is called by my name: ...I have created for my glory, I have formed him; yea, I have made him."*

VI. AND FROM WHAT SOURCE DO THESE QUALITIES COME THAT WILL HELP US TO GROW IN FAVOR WITH OTHERS?

A. First and foremost, from God's Holy Spirit.

B. Secondly, from God's Word, the Holy Bible.

1. Col. 3:16 — *"Let the word of Christ dwell in you richly in all wisdom; teaching and admonishing one another in psalms and hymns and spiritual songs, singing with grace in your hearts to the Lord."*

C. Think of the good favor we could win if we literally obeyed every word of God — to let it richly dwell in us.

1. I Peter 3:8 — *"Finally, be ye all of one mind, having compassion one of another, love as brethren, be pitiful, be courteous."*

D. Clearly, one of our greatest privileges in life is to reflect the glory — character of God — and allow it to flow out to fellowman.

1. John 7:38-39 — *"He that believeth on me, as the scripture hath said, out of his belly shall flow rivers of living water. (39) (But this spake he of the Spirit, which they that believe on him should receive: for the Holy Spirit was not yet given; because that Jesus was not yet glorified.)"*

2. Prov. 18:4 — *"The words of a man's mouth are as deep waters, and the wellspring of wisdom as a flowing brook."*

VII. THE SECOND KEY TO GROWING IN FAVOR WITH MAN IS: "HONOR EACH OTHER AS CREATED SONS OF GOD."

A. Gen. 1:26-27 — *"And God said, Let us make man in our image, after our likeness: and let them have dominion over the fish of the sea, and over the fowl of the air, and over the cattle, and over all the earth, and over every creeping thing that creepeth upon the earth. (27) So god created man in his own image, in the image of God created he him; male and female created he them."*

B. Consider the profound meaning and magnitude of these verses.

1. The Creator God views man as His supreme masterpiece of creation.

2. As proof of this, He crowned man with glory and honor by making him in His image and after His likeness.
  3. Even more profoundly, God made humans to eventually become sons in His family.
  4. Such an awesome claim cannot be made by any other creature.
  5. God's love for man is so vast that He sent Jesus Christ to this earth to die for him and make sonship possible.
  6. Jesus Christ Himself said that man was of greater value than anything else He had made, including the vast universe (Matt. 6:25-26).
  7. In spite of man's deplorable state, God still loves him and wishes to see him saved.
  8. Shouldn't we regard fellow human beings with the same honor and noble attitude?
    - a. 1 Pet. 2:17 — "*Honour all men. Love the brotherhood. Fear God. Honour the king.*"
- C. Isn't it especially incumbent on us to respect the dignity of each other since we're all members of the household of God?
1. According to 1 Corinthians 12:12-25, each member in the body of Christ has great value to Him and plays an indispensable role in His Church.
  2. Every person counts, even the "uncomely parts" (1 Cor. 12:23).
  3. Therefore, we should value every single member with the same degree of importance that God does.
  4. Additional scriptures:
    - a. Rom. 12:10, 16 — "*Be kindly affectioned one to another with brotherly love; in honour preferring one another. (16) Be of the same mind one toward another. Mind not high things, but condescend to men of low estate. Be not wise in your own conceits.*"
    - b. Matt. 22:37-39 — "*Jesus said unto him, Thou shalt love the Lord thy God with all thy heart, and with all thy soul, and with all thy mind. (38) This is the first and great commandment. (39) And the second is like unto it, Thou shalt love thy neighbour as thyself.*"
  5. Granted, some in God's Church may come from sub-culture conditions and backgrounds.
    - a. Even God says so.
    - b. 1 Cor. 1:26-29 — "*For ye see your calling, brethren, how that not many wise men after the flesh, not many mighty, not many noble, are called: (27) But God hath chosen the foolish things of the world to confound the wise; and God hath chosen the weak things of the world to confound the things which are mighty; (28) And base things of the world, and things which are despised, hath God chosen, yea, and things which are not, to bring to nought things that are: (29) That no flesh should glory in his presence.*"
  6. But this should never give us reason to look down on them or call them disrespectful names.
    - a. Nerd, jerk, clod, klutz, buffoon, oaf, etc.
    - b. Matt. 5:22 — "*But I say unto you, That whosoever is angry with his brother without a cause shall be in danger of the judgment: and whosoever shall say to his brother, Raca, shall be in danger of the council: but whosoever shall say, Thou fool, shall be in danger of hell fire.*"
  7. Defiling the name and reputation of a fellow Christian is tantamount to throwing rotten eggs at the Ambassador Auditorium.
    - a. Such demeaning behavior not only besmirches a temple of God, but is much the same as taking another's life.
    - b. It is cruel and cold-hearted.
    - c. Notice why character assassination is such a damnable and deplorable act in God's eyes.
      - (1) Gen. 9:6 — "*Whoso sheddeth man's blood, by man shall his blood be shed: for in the image of God made he man.*"
  8. We should strive, therefore, to upgrade the lives of less fortunate members — never look down on or treat them with contempt.
- D. Varieties of people you may come in contact with:
1. Those who are uncultured and make careless mistakes.
  2. Those with glaring faults and weaknesses — the inept, awkward and clumsy.
  3. Those who are insulting and unkind, curt and abrasive.
  4. Those whose standards and values don't measure up to ours.
  5. Those who express "holier than thou" attitudes.
  6. The insecure and self-conscious.

7. Those who shun us but never explain why.
  8. The immature crybabies or those who pout.
  9. Those from other nations and backgrounds whose culture is different from ours.
  10. Those who are emotional and unpredictable, whose actions you can never understand.
- E. Clearly, to be true Christians, we must be sensitive to and esteem God's people the way He does.
1. We must show tolerance, mercy and understanding — give them time to grow!
  2. Recognize the intrinsic worth of God's potential sons and treat them with utmost respect.
  3. Benjamin Franklin said: *"To be humble to superiors is a duty, to equals courtesy, to inferiors nobleness."*

VIII. THIS NOW BRINGS US TO A POINT WHICH IF CONSCIENTIOUSLY APPLIED SHOULD IMMEASURABLY IMPROVE YOUR SOCIAL LIFE AND DATING RELATIONSHIPS.

- A. It is a principle found in II Corinthians 6:18.
- B. II Cor. 6:18 — *"And [I] will be a Father unto you, and ye shall be my sons and daughters, saith the Lord Almighty."*
- C. Note that each of us is described as being a son or daughter of our Father in heaven.
- D. Think for a moment.
1. If you had the opportunity to meet and converse with the son or daughter of an important dignitary, would the experience affect your behavior?
  2. Of course it would.
  3. You would be circumspect, courteous and polite.
  4. You would carefully guard your words so as not to offend but set the best example possible.
- E. Shouldn't we, then, give even greater honor and respect to each other as God's sons and daughters in the Church?
1. Shouldn't we express courtesy, dignity and a special kind of Christian love?
  2. Consider the difference it would make in our relationships if each of us would look on each other as princes and princesses — members of God's royal family.
    - a. I Pet. 2:9 — *"But ye are a chosen generation, a royal priesthood, an holy nation, a peculiar people; that ye should shew forth the praises of him who hath called you out of darkness into his marvellous light."*

IX. EVERYDAY EXAMPLES OF HOW TO SHOW PROPER HONOR TO PEERS, ASSOCIATES AND FRIENDS AT AMBASSADOR COLLEGE.

- A. How a man can show honor to a woman.
1. Practice old-fashioned chivalry and treat her like a lady.
    - a. Holding a chair or a door.
    - b. Opening a car door.
      - (1) Also helping her out of the car — offer your hand and give support. (Cars are very awkward to get into and out of.)
      - (2) Be careful that her dress or coat doesn't get caught when you close the door.
    - c. Walking on outside of sidewalk.
    - d. Offering your arm.
    - e. Taking her arm when walking downstairs.
    - f. Holding an umbrella so she doesn't get wet or poked in the eye.
    - g. Helping her with her coat or sweater.
    - h. Offering your coat if she's cold.
    - i. Carrying her books.
    - j. Helping her with a heavy load.
    - k. Honoring the campus escort policy.
  2. Respect her opinions, intelligence and abilities.
    - a. Remember that God gave her a brain, too — she's quite capable of serious thinking.
    - b. Most women are perceptive and intuitive.
      - (1) They are quick to see through a facade.
      - (2) They can usually pierce through to the core of a problem and see situations for what they really are.



- (3) They are particularly adept at sizing up people.
  - c. Consider her mind as a resource of common sense and practical wisdom.
3. Note her personal achievements and pay her sincere compliments.
  - a. This could cover an array of observations.
    - (1) A speech in class that was especially well-prepared and delivered.
    - (2) A new dress she's made.
    - (3) An athletic accomplishment.
    - (4) A special act of kindness.
  - b. Be sincere and don't flatter — girls can readily tell the difference.
4. Uphold her standards, morality and virtue.
  - a. Think of her as God's daughter — sweet, pure and innocent.
    - (1) For His sake and honor, as well as hers, protect her reputation, her convictions and parental upbringing.
    - (2) Avoid embarrassing her with off-color jokes, lewd innuendos, etc.
  - b. Don't get physical or carried away with sexual fantasies.
  - c. Watch that you don't violate her conscience with compromising suggestions.
    - (1) Rushing the Sabbath.
    - (2) Breaking college rules.
5. Play the role of a caring brother and give her reassurance.
  - a. Prove that you really care without ulterior motives.
  - b. Lend an ear if she needs to talk to someone to unload her anxieties and fears.
  - c. But don't preach to her and offer unwanted advice.
  - d. Give reinforcement and support when she's discouraged or going through an emotional trauma.
  - e. Don't confuse being a friend and brother with romantic intentions.
6. Make her feel special and important by being sensitive to her needs and feelings.
  - a. Recognize she's a delicate human being who is very tender and fragile.
  - b. Remember that careless remarks or strong correction can easily crush her.
  - c. She needs for you to be thoughtful, kind and gentle.
  - d. Remind her of her strengths and successes as well as the qualities that make her unique.
7. Give her your undivided attention when on a date.
  - a. Devote your time to making her happy and give her the consideration a woman deserves.
  - b. See that the date is planned around her interests.
    - (1) Discreetly get her input about places she'd like to go, or things she'd like to do.
    - (2) For example: horseback riding, hiking, going to the beach, bowling, eating at a special kind of restaurant, etc.
    - (3) Don't abandon her on the dance floor or leave her to fend for herself at a college activity.
    - (4) Introduce her to others in a group and avoid making her feel excluded when talking to friends.
8. Guide the conversation and make it stimulating and educational.
  - a. Prepare in advance — don't wing it or try to bluff your way through.
  - b. Have four or five topics to fall back on if the date starts to fall flat.
  - c. Try to relax and enjoy the occasion — but also make it a time well spent.
  - d. After all, a date represents a sizable hunk of your and her time.
  - e. Don't monopolize or overly dominate.
  - f. Insure that she shares equally in the conversation.
9. Accept her for what she is.
  - a. Remember that she is one of a kind — an original copy.
  - b. Don't try to remake her into a mold you like.
  - c. If God loves her even in an unperfected state, shouldn't you?
  - d. Appreciate her differences and don't get into a fault-finding mode.
  - e. Rejection is one of the most painful emotional experiences you could put her through.
10. Do whatever you can to help her succeed at A.C.
  - a. This might involve studying together for a test, giving suggestions for table topics, discussing a speech, or fine-tuning class notes.

- b. Be particularly supportive of the freshmen.
    - (1) Don't take advantage of their vulnerability.
    - (2) As an older student, discourage involvement if you see the girls are getting carried away.
    - (3) Play the role of big brother when they get homesick or overwhelmed.
  - c. In general, be thoughtful, considerate and service-oriented.
11. Be an inspiring spiritual example.
- a. This is not meant to advocate being sanctimonious, pseudo-religious or holier than thou.
  - b. Rather, it means being clean-cut, wholesome and well-balanced.
  - c. Think of yourself as a replica of Jesus Christ in all your relationships with the opposite sex.
  - d. Strive to be meek and humble, but strong and stable.
  - e. Be particularly concerned about personal hygiene and appearance so that you properly present yourself as a cultured ambassador.
  - f. Let the fear of God shine through your life by example and edifying speech.
12. Give her the respect and courtesy she deserves as a princess.
- a. Don't take her for granted and treat her as just another fish in the pond.
  - b. Regard her as a co-heir of the Kingdom of God.
  - c. Recognize and appreciate her awesome potential.
  - d. Treat her like a royal member of God's family and you will win her admiration and favor.
- B. How a woman can show honor to a man.
1. Allow him to fulfill his role as a leader.
- a. Learn the art of deferring to men as God has ordained.
  - b. Don't be Miss Independent, arrogant or self-assertive.
  - c. This attitude intimidates the man, turns him off and discourages him from trying.
  - d. Allow him the opportunity to protect you and look out for your welfare.
    - (1) Opening doors.
    - (2) Choosing seats.
    - (3) Ordering at a restaurant.
  - e. Submissiveness can be described as deference to his leadership.
2. Uphold his dignity and self-respect.
- a. Realize that the most fragile thing about a man is his ego, his sense of self-worth.
  - b. To trample his feelings under foot is akin to emotional homicide.
  - c. You've destroyed the most sensitive and delicate aspect of his manhood.
  - d. Don't compare him to other guys and make him feel second rate.
  - e. Rather, speak and act in a manner that will build his confidence, elevate his value and self-esteem.
3. Be responsive and help carry your part in the conversation.
- a. Pick up on cues, weave in your ideas and ask questions that will stimulate his mind.
  - b. Watch the one- or two-word answers to questions he may pose.
  - c. Try to be lively and enthusiastic — smile, laugh and participate.
  - d. Ask for his advice or seek his opinions on current issues and topics.
  - e. Try to make dates fun and enjoyable by your own personal involvement.
4. Give encouragement and support as a sister in Christ.
- a. It has been said that the way to a man's heart is through his stomach.
  - b. A more effective way to his heart is through encouragement.
  - c. Learn to read the signs of despondency — body language, facial expression, preoccupation with self.
  - d. Sometimes the best way to help is simply to listen or be a sounding-board as he airs his frustrations.
  - e. Show the concern for him that you would for a brother in your family.
5. Show class and graciousness in awkward situations.
- a. If a man commits an embarrassing social *faux pas*, help him to save face.
  - b. Politely point out his good traits if he should become the object of censure or gossip among your peers.
  - c. Think of Queen Elizabeth or Queen Sirikit as a model of self-control, culture and refinement — an example you should strive to emulate.
  - d. Live the role you should be playing — a royal daughter of your Father in heaven.

6. Express appreciation in special ways.
  - a. Do more than just say "thanks" at the door for an extraordinary evening.
  - b. Consider the time, money and effort the man has invested to give you pleasure and happiness.
  - c. You could design a unique card or write a poem of gratitude.
  - d. A follow-up phone call might be in order.
  - e. The main point is to acknowledge his sacrifice and thoughtfulness.
  - f. A word of caution: don't over-do this and convey the idea you're chasing him.
7. Think of him as a unique personality and express a genuine interest in his life.
  - a. Remember that just as you are an original copy, so is he.
  - b. No doubt there are many things about his family and background you would find interesting and fascinating.
  - c. Get him talking about himself or topics he feels comfortable with.
  - d. Maintain eye contact and be attentive.
8. Be aware of how your demeanor and conduct can affect him.
  - a. This covers a broad spectrum of behavior.
    - (1) Seductive clothing.
    - (2) Poor hygiene and unkempt appearance.
    - (3) Being boisterous, loud-mouthed and outspoken.
  - b. Be feminine, modest and well-bred — avoid conduct and mannerisms that might embarrass him.
  - c. Learn how to behave as a lady in all situations so that he would be proud to be with you.
9. Be spiritually minded and willing to talk about God's way of life.
  - a. Believe it or not, your interest in spiritual topics is of genuine concern to a man who's deeply converted.
  - b. He enjoys hearing you talk about lessons you've learned from a Bible class, helpful points from a sermon or insights gained from counseling with a minister.
  - c. Don't feel that you're to act the part of a skilled professor in Greek or biblical scholarship.
  - d. If your heart is really set on doing God's will, serving others and qualifying for the Kingdom, these things will be reflected in your conversation.
10. Demonstrate that your values are more than skin deep.
  - a. This has to do with goals and purposes beyond the realm of just dates, fashions and the fleeting interests of this world.
  - b. Prove to him that there's more to life than the fulfillment of carnal ambitions and pleasures.
  - c. Your stock in value will be highly increased when you speak of matters that really count.
  - d. Examples:
    - (1) Understanding people and building relationships.
    - (2) Valuable lessons learned from parents that will help steer you in right paths.
    - (3) Improving yourself, upgrading your life, developing your talents.
    - (4) Counting your blessings.
11. Strive for maturity and selflessness.
  - a. To practice the golden rule is one of the most effective ways to grow in true womanhood.
  - b. By contrast, one of the most degrading and shameful sins is to be wrapped up in self.
  - c. In all your dating relationships, strive to think outside yourself, being concerned first and foremost with the welfare of the man.
  - d. This is a quality of supreme importance in attaining true social success.
12. Treat him as a prince.
  - a. Try to view him through God's eyes — a son being groomed for His Kingdom.
  - b. Imagine how you'd act if you were given an opportunity to speak with Prince Charles of England.
  - c. Yet, the men at A.C. with whom you are privileged to associate and fellowship every day are also of royalty — but on a spiritual plane.
  - d. Even though they may fall short of the ideal expectations, resolve to show them honor and inspire them to achieve their highest potential.

- X. IN SUMMARY, TO GROW IN HONOR WITH GOD AND MAN, REMEMBER THE TWO KEYS OF JESUS CHRIST'S LIFE.
- A. They are:
    - 1. You are God's temple, His dwelling place on earth.
    - 2. Honor each other as created sons of God.
  - B. Think honor, practice honor, give honor.
  - C. If you succeed in this noble undertaking, you'll become a person worthy of receiving honor.

**-END-**

## CHAPTER 24

### **Women's Club: 1980** **HOW TO OVERCOME FEAR** **AND SELF-CONSCIOUSNESS**

Most incoming freshmen (and even sophomores, juniors and some seniors) are concerned with how they 'come across' and whether they will be 'accepted' by their peers. Many people are afraid of rejection by others! With some, the fear of people and their opinions is morbid and unhealthy.

Fear must be dealt with. Uncontrolled, it can frustrate you and paralyze your achievements. It can literally wreck your life. You will not be able to do what's necessary to gain the respect of others. It will stifle your service to those around you.

Tonight we will discuss how to overcome fear. Of course, we cannot cover the whole gamut, because the subject is far too large. But, I do want to offer SEVEN practical points which will help you — and which will enable you to achieve the goals you desire.

#### THE KEY

The Bible shows that the KEY to overcoming fear is love!

*"There is no fear in love; but perfect love casteth out fear: because fear hath torment. He that feareth is not made perfect in love..."* (1 John 4:18).

This love is not just a sentiment — it is ACTION! It is realizing that if you stay in your little hemmed-in corner, never reaching out to others, you will not rise to higher plateaus.

Your life is like a small rosebud growing in the garden where God has set it. But, as long as it's closed tightly upon itself, no one will ever see the radiant, beautiful flower that's hidden. Only when the rose unfurls itself — reaches out — can others enjoy its beauty, fragrance and richness.

As you allow God to work in your life — to give you love for others — only then will you lose your fear of others.

#### SEVEN WAYS TO ACQUIRE LOVE AND OVERCOME YOUR FEARS

##### 1. SET A GOAL TO OVERCOME FEAR AND SELF-CONSCIOUSNESS

At the outset of this new Club year, make it your goal to overcome self-consciousness, fear, and shyness. Make it one of your priorities. Determine to put forth the effort. Take initiative. Push yourselves. This will result in productive growth.

Resolve to participate in Club. Most fears involve a feeling of a lack of 'self-worth' or 'self-achievement.' Taking an active part in Club can help you with fears that may not even be directly related to Club. Even if you stand up to answer a question with only 'Yes' or 'No' — that's an accomplishment, and a beginning step.

Let love and service be the motivation. And, the very things you desire most you will begin to attain — confidence, acceptance, usefulness and the ability to edify.

##### 2. PRAY TO GOD FOR HELP AND GUIDANCE

Consider exactly what you are afraid of. Analyze yourself. Get down to the 'nitty gritty.' Ask God to show you what you may have overlooked. Pray for the courage and strength to overcome your fears. Remember that the proper fear of God in our lives will dispel the fear of men.

##### 3. FACE YOUR FEARS

Your fears can grip and hold you down — they will enslave you. Until you face your fears, you will

remain their prisoner. Confront your fears, whether they are fear of people, fear of rejection, fear that people won't like you, fear that you will expose your ignorance or fear of inadequacy.

Some of you may know Mel Tillis, who is a well-loved country western singer here in America. Yet, did you know that he stutters? Mel comes on stage and begins talking with the audience before his songs. 'I-I-I...k-know you know I-I-I stutter--b-but I'm still g-going to sing for you t-tonight.' Mel doesn't let his handicap paralyze his performances. His audiences love his singing. He openly faces his difficulty.

In the same way, face whatever fears or shortcomings you may have. Don't let them hold you back from participating in Club. It will enrich your life.

#### 4. REMEMBER THAT YOU DETERMINE YOUR GROWTH

Did you realize that each of us determines the degree of success we achieve? However, to reach higher levels of accomplishment requires effort. The Bible sums it up this way: 'He who sows sparingly will also reap sparingly and he who sows bountifully will also reap bountifully.' (II Cor. 9:6)

Similarly, the greater the effort on your part, the more will be accomplished.

#### 5. TAKE THE INITIATIVE

Learn to be outgoing. Smile and greet people. This helps you break down fear barriers in yourself — and it encourages other people to be outgoing themselves! It generates feelings of self-worth and acceptance, both in you and others.

Take advantage of smaller group discussions outside the Club, such as in your dorms or at the Student Center when eating. This will give you confidence for larger groups. Progress step-by-step.

#### 6. DON'T BE CONCERNED ABOUT 'FAILURE'

Any so-called 'failure' is really a stepping stone to ultimate success. We learn by our mistakes. The very fact that you may have 'failed' in some small way shows that you have TRIED — you put forth effort toward reaching your goal! So what if you don't measure up with your first attempts? You are learning lessons. Remember that you can fail many times, but you are not a failure until you give up.

So, keep trying and putting forth effort — and you will literally 'fail' your way to success! Again, think long range. Envision the poised and confident person you want to be and you will eventually become that person. Ask God to give you courage and motivation to that end. You'll need His strength and help.

#### 7. FORGET YOURSELF!

Many fears come from being self-centered, being worried of how you come across, and whether others will like you. Begin thinking in terms of others, helping them, serving them, encouraging them to achieve their best — and you'll find that this effort will help erase self-consciousness from your life. Forget self, and give to others.

The key to overcoming fears, then, is to think in terms of truly helping others. Ask yourself: How can I help and edify them? That is what LOVE is — active, genuine service.

Using these principles will change your outlook, your thought processes — your very life!

They will help you 'perfect' your love and erase fear. You will learn to admire others for their qualities and accomplishments. Your mind will not be constantly on your-self.

As you participate in Club and put these principles to work in your life, you can actually infuse confidence and courage in others.

Your efforts — and even your 'failures' — can help 'turn on' others, and make your Club better!

So, don't let fears hold you back. They only stifle your growth and accomplishment. You can overcome them. The way is before you. This Club will help. Use it to the utmost as an opportunity to do your 'exercises in confidence.' Use it to perfect the LOVE which casts out fear!

-END-

## **CHAPTER 25**

### **HOW TO TAKE THE CONFUSION AND FRUSTRATION OUT OF LIFE**

- I. HAVE YOU EVER BEEN TO A MOVIE WHEN SUDDENLY THE PROJECTOR BECAME ERRATIC AND THE FILM RACED FORWARD AT HIGH SPEED?
- A. Remember how the actors on the screen darted to and fro, and the picture became jumbled, chaotic and confused?
  - B. The whole affair reminded you of a busy anthill with people bumping into each other in a mad rush to get nowhere.
  - C. To just think about the clatter and rapid movement leaves one reeling, exhausted and tired.
- II. HOW TYPICAL THIS ILLUSTRATION TO OUR EVERYDAY LIVES.
- A. Without goals or a purpose for living, our actions tend to be hurried, fast-paced and hectic.
  - B. We tend to do things by fits and starts — stopping and going, backing up and launching forward in different directions.
  - C. We begin a task, but rarely see it to completion — and if we finish the job, it's usually mediocre and second-rate.
  - D. Except for a few habits that regulate our lives, each day is spent in bewilderment and confusion — reaching out for something to bring joy, happiness and success.
  - E. Or we can do just the opposite — plod along at a snail's pace, accomplishing little and getting nowhere.
- III. WHAT ABOUT YOUR LIFE?
- A. Is there a lack of clear purpose?
  - B. Do you have a plan?
  - C. When starting your day, do you have trouble deciding what to do first, and how to use your time?
  - D. Do you feel a deep inner frustration and disgust for failing to accomplish what you want to do, and know that you should?
  - E. Is your low self-esteem reflected in your living environment with things helter-skelter and lying in disarray?
  - F. Do you lack the drive and forcefulness to venture out and reach for new horizons (or "accept new challenges")?
- IV. THE PURPOSE OF THIS LECTURE IS TO EXPLAIN HOW TO ORGANIZE YOUR LIFE, ELIMINATE CONFUSION, AND BE A PRODUCTIVE, FRUIT-BEARING MEMBER OF GOD'S CHURCH.
- A. But first, let's examine some of the hidden causes of failure and frustration:
    - 1. Patterns of laziness, carelessness and apathy carried over from our childhood environment.
    - 2. Self-pity and the tendency to shift the blame to others for our failure in life.
    - 3. Failure to set goals, raise our standards, and improve our chances for advanced opportunity.
    - 4. Comparing our lives to others and feeling we've been shortchanged and cheated.
    - 5. A general lack of self-discipline and drive, being conquered and controlled by circumstances, our own weaknesses, and the fear of what others may think of us.
    - 6. Failure to walk with God and keep Him at the center.
    - 7. Guilt and related emotions which are the result of giving into our flesh, the world and Satan.
    - 8. An overall sense of frustration because we're not married, don't have a good job, or a promising career.
    - 9. Failure to develop our God-given talents and abilities that cry out for fulfillment.
    - 10. A total preoccupation with self and neglecting to love our fellowman.

## V. WHERE TO BEGIN:

A. In order to understand how to cope with frustration, we need to consider three vital principles.

B. We must realize that:

1. MAN INNATELY NEEDS GOD.

a. He was created incomplete, needing the life and added power of God's Holy Spirit.

(1) Romans 8:9,16 = "...Now if any man have not the Spirit of Christ, he is none of his.... The Spirit itself beareth witness with our spirit, that we are the children of God."

(2) I John 3:24 = "...and hereby we know that he abideth in us, by the Spirit which he hath given us."

b. Because man has sinned and cut himself off from God, he must be reconciled and forgiven, if he's to experience peace of mind and a happy life.

(1) Isaiah 59:1-2 = "Behold, the Lord's hand is not shortened, that it cannot save; neither his ear heavy, that it cannot hear: But your iniquities have separated between you and your God, and your sins have hid his face from you, that he will not hear."

(2) Isaiah 55:6-7 = "Seek ye the Lord while he may be found, call ye upon him while he is near: Let the wicked forsake his way, and the unrighteous man his thoughts: and let him return unto the Lord, and he will have mercy upon him; and to our God, for he will abundantly pardon."

(3) II Chron. 7:14 = "If my people, which are called by my name, shall humble themselves, and pray, and seek my face, and turn from their wicked ways; then will I hear from heaven, and will forgive their sin, and will heal their land."

(4) See also Ephesians 2:1-6,16.

c. Only God, then, can satisfy the universal hunger and thirst in man.

(1) John 4:10-15 = (A description of the living water that quenches.)

(2) John 6:28-35; 47-58 = (A description of the bread that satisfies.)

d. Even though man may enjoy a measure of success in his cut-off state, the need for God haunts him continually.

e. True happiness and lasting success can never come until man repents and turns to God with his whole heart.

2. TO ENJOY AN ABUNDANT LIFE, YOU MUST GROW AND ADVANCE TO HIGHER LEVELS.

a. This principle applies to both the spiritual and physical realms.

b. God never intended that we remain static, but rather has placed within man an inherent desire to grow — to progress onward and upward to higher plateaus.

c. This growth principle is revealed in the whole of creation as seen in the sprouting of the seed or the birth of a child — life starts small and grows to maturity.

d. God revealed this success formula to Adam in the Garden of Eden.

(1) Genesis 2:8,15 = "God told Adam to dress it and keep it."

(2) This law involved two key points necessary for his happiness and success:

(a) "To dress it" involves growth progress — moving onward, outward and upward.

(b) "To keep it" involves preserving and maintaining what he had achieved (see Rev. 3:11).

e. Frustration results when we do not grow.

3. THAT THE SPIRITUAL MUST SUPERSEDE, OVERRIDE AND REGULATE THE PHYSICAL.

a. To reverse this order is to put the cart before the horse.

b. As begotten sons, we should superimpose God's Word and His will over everything we do.

c. Earthly happiness and success are only temporary — unless we're walking with God and tuned in to His wavelength as an ongoing way of life.

d. When the physical is in control, we lose contact with the only true source that can produce peace and happiness — God Himself.

## VI. STEPS TO TAKE IN ORGANIZING YOUR LIFE.

A. Fourteen steps:

1. Make the Kingdom of God your master motive.

a. This is our purpose, our calling, our hope.

b. God has set this goal for us.

(1) Matthew 6:33 = "Seek ye first the kingdom of God.... "



- (2) Col. 3:1-2 = "If ye then be risen with Christ, seek those things which are above, where Christ sitteth on the right hand of God. Set your affection on things above, not on things on the earth."
- c. The desire for the kingdom must come first, and should be the catalyst that propels you forward.
- d. If you forfeit eternal life for the fleeting pleasures of this world, what have you gained in the end? (Matt. 16:25-26.)
- e. In seeking the kingdom, four things are essential:
- (1) Fervent prayer.
  - (2) Diligent Bible study.
  - (3) Deep thought and meditation.
  - (4) Wholehearted obedience.
2. Conform to the image and teachings of Christ.
- a. This point is vital because God the Father has commanded us to become like His Son.
- b. Christ is the model, the pattern and the standard of how God wants us to live.
- c. He is the door to the Father's throne (John 10:7-9).
- d. Note these scriptures:
- (1) Romans 8:29 = "For whom he did foreknow, he also did predestinate to be conformed to the image of his Son, that he might be the firstborn among many brethren."
  - (2) II Cor. 3:18 = "But we all, with open face beholding as in a glass the glory of the Lord, are changed into the same image from glory to glory, even as by the Spirit of the Lord."
  - (3) Ephesians 4:11-13 = "And he gave some, apostles; and some, prophets; and some, evangelists; and some, pastors and teachers; for the perfecting of the saints, for the work of the ministry, for the edifying of the body of Christ: Till we all come in the unity of the faith, and of the knowledge of the Son of God, unto a perfect man, unto the measure of the stature of the fulness of Christ."
  - (4) Col. 3:9-10 = "Lie not one to another, seeing that ye have put off the old man with his deeds; and have put on the new man, which is renewed in knowledge after the image of him that created him."
- e. As we follow Christ and obey His Word, we will grow in the likeness and perfection of the Father (Matthew 5:48).
- f. It's very important to study Christ's life and conform to His image if we are to fulfill the Father's great purpose.
- g. True, lasting success cannot be achieved if we overlook this vital element.
3. Guard against the forces of evil.
- a. There are three common enemies we must fight:
- (1) Human nature and its downward pulls.
  - (2) The world and its powerful influences.
  - (3) The devil and his wiles.
- b. If we succumb to these forces, we will become guilt-ridden and lose contact with God.
- c. We can never be happy and find success in trying to serve two masters.
- d. God demands our total love, loyalty and dedication.
- e. Misery and frustration will be our lot if we don't give God first place in our lives.
- f. Resist these enemies with all your might and don't give in to the forces of evil.
4. Start ruling your life.
- a. After putting God and spiritual things first, your next step is to take charge of your life — immediately!
- b. In other words, start experiencing success — NOW.
- c. With grit and determination, face up to your responsibilities.
- d. Fall in line and get tough on yourself.
- e. The place to begin is where you are now!
- (1) Start with your surroundings and living environment.
    - (a) Organize your closets, kitchen cabinets, bookshelves, desk.
    - (b) Vacuum the apartment, wash the car.
    - (c) Scrub the shower, repair torn furniture, iron clothes that have been stashed away.

- (2) Make a list of the jobs you've been putting off.
    - (a) writing your parents.
    - (b) Catching up on the *PLAIN TRUTH*, *GOOD NEWS*, booklets, etc.
    - (c) Fixing the leaky faucet.
  - (3) Identify the hangups that are holding you back.
    - (a) Procrastination — allowing little, nagging jobs to accumulate.
    - (b) Sleeping in late.
    - (c) Gluttony, laziness, creature comforts, etc.
  - f. Get with it, don't delay — come to grips with your problems.
  - g. Remember that success in everyday, small things is very important to give you courage and confidence in tackling the bigger jobs.
5. Begin to set goals.
- a. Having put your priorities in order — the spiritual first and the physical second — you must set goals.
  - b. Why are goals necessary?
    - (1) You cannot grow or succeed without goals — you will inevitably waste time, go in circles, and accomplish little.
    - (2) Having no goals will reinforce your sense of failure — resulting in discouragement, frustration, and contempt for self.
    - (3) Goals provide purpose, direction and motivation in life.
  - c. What should be your goals?
    - (1) Only you personally can decide this question.
    - (2) Set aside time to think it through.
    - (3) Ask yourself candidly:
      - (a) What do I really want to do with my life?
      - (b) What are my talents, skills and strengths?
      - (c) What do I enjoy as a challenge?
      - (d) What do I enjoy doing in my spare time?
      - (e) If I had my choice of any job in the world, what would it be?
    - (4) Ask God's help and guidance in crystallizing your goals — to truly seek His Will in doing what's best.
      - (a) *Prov. 3:6 = "In all thy ways acknowledge him, and he shall direct thy paths."*
      - (b) *Prov. 16:3 = "Commit thy works unto the Lord, and thy thoughts shall be established."*
  - d. There are five basic types of goals — all of which are requisite to leading a successful life.
    - (1) Long-term goals. (To be fulfilled in five years or more.) Here are some examples:
      - (a) To have established a meaningful career.
      - (b) To have paid off all debts, with money in the bank.
      - (c) To have gotten married and established a home and family.
      - (d) To have mastered the basic doctrines of the Church.
      - (e) To have traveled around the world.
    - (2) Intermediate goals. (To be fulfilled in six months to five years.) For instance:
      - (a) To successfully complete my job training.
      - (b) To learn to sew, to do needlepoint, to cook.
      - (c) To become an expert in some subject.
      - (d) To learn to play and become proficient in a musical instrument.
      - (e) To read the Bible through.
    - (3) Short-term goals. (To be fulfilled from the present to the next six months.) Such as:
      - (a) To improve in vocabulary and writing ability.
      - (b) To take a short night course on some subject that will upgrade my life or skills.
      - (c) To lose weight, go on an exercise program, and get myself in top physical shape.
      - (d) To read a book I've been putting off.
    - (4) Daily goals.
      - (a) This involves a list of seven to ten main tasks to be accomplished for each day.
      - (b) It's extremely important to write these down each night before retiring so that you will have a clear picture of what to do the next day.

- (c) Tie each day's goals into your other goals and ultimate purpose.
- (d) These daily goals will give you immediate direction and incentive.
- (5) Micro goals.
  - (a) These are specific goals to be accomplished from minute-to-minute or from hour-to-hour.
  - (b) Setting these little hourly goals will infuse into your life drive and motivation.
  - (c) They will give you a sense of having reached new milestones.
  - (d) Attaining micro goals will help to instill two vital by-products:
    - 1. A sense of confidence and self-respect.
    - 2. A sense of achievement, satisfaction and success.
  - (e) Through the daily attainment of goals, you will eventually establish powerful success patterns or habits that will carry over into every area of your life.
- 6. Write down your goals.
  - a. This is a prime necessity to becoming a success.
  - b. Writing down your goals will serve several purposes:
    - (1) Provide a blueprint to see where you're going.
    - (2) Provide a means of daily review and reinforcement.
    - (3) Provide a reminder to keep you on track.
    - (4) Provide an incentive to seek counsel, knowledge and ideas that will help you attain your goals.
  - c. Without a clear statement of goals you will flounder and fail in a vortex of confusion.
  - d. Rehearse and review — go over and over your blueprint of life until it becomes deeply ingrained in your mind.
- 7. Make a list of all required duties.
  - a. The purpose for this exercise is to acquaint you with the demands placed on your time.
  - b. This list should include only the bare-bone requirements.
    - (1) Prayer, study, grooming.
    - (2) Cooking, cleaning, shopping.
    - (3) Working, eating, sleeping.
    - (4) Exercise, recreation, etc.
  - c. Such a list will enable you to determine how much time remains from each day to pursue your major goals.
  - d. Wisely invest this leftover time.
- 8. Eliminate the non-essentials.
  - a. Take note of your life and pinpoint all time-wasting practices.
  - b. The Bible commands, "*Lay aside every weight that so easily besets us...*" (Heb. 12:1).
  - c. You can easily bog down in useless trivia.
  - d. Control or cast aside the following time wasters:
    - (1) TV — watch it sparingly.
    - (2) Daydreaming and idle thoughts.
    - (3) Worrying.
    - (4) Senseless arguing.
    - (5) Nursing resentment and a bad attitude.
    - (6) Long and needless telephone conversations.
    - (7) Doing things by fits and starts.
    - (8) Procrastination.
    - (9) Mental laziness and forgetfulness.
    - (10) General confusion and chaos in living life.
    - (11) Indecision.
    - (12) Disorganized living conditions.
    - (13) Inconsistency.
    - (14) Idle conversation.
    - (15) Worthless reading.
    - (16) Doing things the hard way — not the sensible way.

- e. As a reminder, keep God in your thoughts and review your goals daily.
  - (1) This practice will encourage you to eliminate waste.
  - (2) It will indelibly write your goals in your mind.
  - (3) It will help to create the desire to achieve them.
- 9. Don't try to accomplish everything in one day.
  - a. Remember the old cliché, "Rome wasn't built in a day."
  - b. Nor can you possibly achieve your dreams overnight.
  - c. Pace yourself — strive for balance and moderation.
  - d. Take time to infuse quality into every project and endeavor.
  - e. 1 Cor. 10:31 = "*Whether therefore ye eat, or drink, or whatsoever ye do, do all to the glory of God.*"
  - f. Attack big jobs in easy, bite-sized pieces.
  - g. Don't let the bigness of any goal overwhelm or discourage you — realize that success is reached one step at a time.
  - h. Simplify, simplify, simplify.
- 10. Be flexible.
  - a. Be prepared for the unexpected.
  - b. Don't feel guilty if your plans are thrown off track, or your schedule momentarily interrupted.
  - c. Take advantage of "bonus opportunities" that God may send your way.
    - (1) A weekend trip to an outlying church.
    - (2) An unexpected date that you were hoping for.
    - (3) A promotion that may take time to break into.
    - (4) A new movie someone has recommended.
  - d. Don't be tied down to a rigid schedule, or become a slave to a plan.
  - e. On the other hand, don't drift too far from your overall purposes and lose interest and momentum.
  - f. Learn to be flexible — but keep on track.
- 11. Bounce back from defeat.
  - a. Don't expect life to always go smoothly, it will have its ups and downs.
  - b. Brace yourself if disaster strikes — don't be discouraged by momentary failure.
  - c. It's at this point your mettle is tried; will you "hang in" and endure?
  - d. If you give up in despair, your goals were not meaningful at the start.
  - e. You may need to make adjustments from time to time, but persevere and hold out to the end.
  - f. Proverbs 24:16 = "*For a just man falleth seven times, and riseth up again ....*"
- 12. Take frequent and regular inventory of your progress.
  - a. Ensure that you are holding fast to your goals.
  - b. Make certain you're keeping on course.
  - c. Ensure that you are growing steadily and picking up momentum along the way.
  - d. Check up to see if your goals are becoming a reality, and that you are nudging closer to their attainment each day.
  - e. Make sure you are building quality into each step — and effectively bringing the pieces together.
  - f. Taking inventory is another way of saying "keep the garden" that God commanded Adam.
- 13. Beware of the pitfalls of success.
  - a. There is a real danger when blessings increase and you become successful.
  - b. Attaining success and material wealth have destroyed a number of people in God's Church.
  - c. They became self-sufficient and took their eyes off God.
  - d. They no longer saw a need for faith, and, in many instances, left the Church.
  - e. They became absorbed by the adventures and allurements of this materialistic society.
  - f. God warns us against these dangers and tells us repeatedly not to forget him.
 

Deut. 8:11-14; 17-19 = "*Beware that thou forget not the Lord thy God, in not keeping his commandments, and his judgments, and his statutes, which I command thee this day: Lest when thou hast eaten and art full, and hast built goodly houses, and dwelt therein; and when thy herds and thy flocks multiply, and thy silver and thy gold is multiplied, and all that thou hast is multiplied; Then thine heart be lifted up, and thou forget the Lord thy God, which brought thee forth out of the land of Egypt, from the house of bondage...*"

*"And thou say in thine heart, My power and the might of mine hand hath gotten me this*

*wealth. But thou shalt remember the Lord thy God: for it is he that giveth thee power to get wealth, that he may establish his covenant which he sware unto thy fathers, as it is this day. And it shall be, if thou do at all forget the Lord thy God, and walk after other gods, and serve them, and worship them, I testify against you this day that ye shall surely perish."*

14. Make up your mind to change now.

- a. To embark on this new way of life demands a high degree of determination, hard work and resolve.
- b. Success will only come to those who are willing to commit themselves and take their lives in hand.
- c. Success can be yours, if you are willing to pay the price of blood, sweat and tears.
- d. How can you motivate yourself to change? Answer these questions:
  - (1) Are you satisfied with your state of being right now?
  - (2) Are you willing to tolerate the frustrations and misery of your present circumstances?
  - (3) Are you contented to remain mediocre and average, when you could attain a better life?
  - (4) Since others have done it, why can't you?
- e. God wants you to prosper and be successful — but He will not force your will.
- f. The key is to put Him first, and then exert a powerful discipline over every facet of your life.
- g. Think it through — the choice is yours.
- h. The pay-off is greater than you can imagine.

**-END-**



## **CHAPTER 26**

### **HOW YOU CAN RECOGNIZE TRUE LOVE**

- I. THE TITLE OF TODAY'S LECTURE IS "HOW YOU CAN RECOGNIZE TRUE LOVE."
- II. IN ORDER FOR YOU TO UNDERSTAND WHAT DIRECTION WE'RE TAKING, THIS DISCUSSION WILL BE DIVIDED INTO FOUR MAJOR PARTS.
- A. They are:
1. How a woman can know when a man loves her.
  2. How a man can know when a woman loves him.
  3. How to know when you're in love.
  4. How to become a lovable person.
- III. THIS TOPIC WILL GO PAST THE PRELIMINARIES OF DATING AND INTO THAT PHASE OF YOUR RELATIONSHIP WHERE YOU ARE CONSIDERING A PERMANENT COMMITMENT.
- A. You've reached the crossroads — that point of making a decision.
- B. You're on the verge of either proposing to the girl of your dreams or, if you're a woman, accepting his proposal for marriage.
- C. There yet remains a final question: How can I know with total certainty that I'm truly in love and that this person is the right one for me?
- IV. IT IS ASSUMED THAT THE PERSON YOU'RE INTERESTED IN HAS MET THE NECESSARY SPIRITUAL QUALIFICATIONS:
- A. Baptism.
- B. Being a member in good standing.
- C. Having the fear of God.
- D. True conversion.
- E. Etc.
- V. SINCE THE BASIC GROUNDWORK FOR MARRIAGE SHOULD HAVE BEEN LAID BY THIS TIME, WE'LL FOREGO THE INTRODUCTORY REQUIREMENTS AND GET RIGHT INTO THE PURPOSE OF THIS LECTURE: HOW YOU CAN RECOGNIZE TRUE LOVE.

#### **QUESTION 1: How can a woman know when a man loves her?**

1. Realize that true love will always make itself known.
  - a. First, he will verbalize it.
    - (1) He will tell you in clear, certain terms that he loves you, and will say it often.
    - (2) He will explain why by pointing out the qualities that he admires in your life.
    - (3) He will never leave you in doubt about his feelings and intentions.
  - b. He will also demonstrate his love and affection in myriads of physical ways.
    - (1) In addition to everyday courtesies, this will involve other thoughtful considerations: flowers, candy, cards, etc.
    - (2) He will be attuned to your interests and goals and seek out ways to help you fulfill them.
  - c. If you have doubts about the depth of his love, you need to reconsider whether he's the right man for you.
2. His love will be consistent and enduring.
  - a. He will be the first to patch things up if there are misunderstandings.

- b. He will forgive and forget past offenses.
  - c. He will be patient, tender and caring in working out differences.
  - d. He won't expect perfection or be picking at every little flaw.
  - e. Regardless of your fluctuating moods, he will be strong in his resolve to encourage and support you.
3. He'll make you feel exclusively special and the most important person in his life.
- a. He will be deeply endeared to you and honor you as a gift from God.
  - b. He will treat you differently from anyone else in any situation, public or private.
  - c. Overall, his spontaneous reactions toward you will be gentle, respectful and sensitive.
  - d. Instead of humiliating you and making you feel inferior, he will uphold your sense of dignity and self worth.
  - e. His love and appreciation for you will be obvious in just about everything he says and does.
4. He will make every effort to disclose his innermost thoughts and feelings.
- a. Generally, a man will not share his hangups and frustrations with you until he is confident that you'll not hold them against him or betray his trust.
  - b. Sharing his feelings, then, is another indication that his love for you is true.
  - c. He will not hide any secrets from you so that you will feel secure in his loyalty and devotion.
  - d. He will want to make you a part of every facet of his life so that you'll know you are needed and important.
  - e. If he's not comfortable in communicating with you at this level, there's a serious defect in your relationship.
5. He will have become your closest and most trusted friend.
- a. He will always be there when you need him.
  - b. He will never violate a confidence or trust.
  - c. He will work at understanding your total makeup and personality: weaknesses, fears, self-doubts, anxieties, frustrations, mood swings, etc.
  - d. He will strive to please you and make you happy.
  - e. Instead of giving premature advice, he will patiently hear you out until you've aired your frustrations and problems.
  - f. He will use wisdom and diplomacy in helping you work through the crises in your life.
  - g. He'll protect your name and defend you from criticism or harm.
6. He will prove his love through self-denial and personal sacrifice.
- a. He will put your needs above his selfish interests and desires.
  - b. He'll not demand his rights or insist on having his way.
  - c. Instead, he will be considerate of your welfare and cheerfully take the time to help and serve.
  - d. His total orientation will be that of outgoing concern.
  - e. Helping you find joy and fulfillment will be one of his highest priorities.
7. He will be loyal, trustworthy and totally committed to you.
- a. This is where unconditional love fits in.
  - b. Once he's made a commitment to you, it will become a sacred trust.
  - c. To enter marriage without this resolve could lead to heartache and disaster.
  - d. No matter what arises, whether it's a simple misunderstanding or an emotional blowup, he will take the lead and reconcile your differences.
8. He will shoulder his duties as a responsible leader.
- a. He will always be up front as an example, leading the way to God's Kingdom.
  - b. He will prepare himself, work hard and be a good provider.
  - c. He will accept the full weight of the role God has assigned to him.
  - d. He will take charge, courageously face the future, and deal with problems as they arise.
  - e. In everyday situations, he'll help you with decisions and take the pressure off you where he is able.
  - f. He will take a firm stand if, within his heart, he feels you are deviating from God's path.
9. He'll give attention to the little things that are important to you.
- a. This shows that he is attuned to your every comfort, safety and well-being.
  - b. He'll give heed when you express your honest needs and desires.



- c. He will be sincerely interested in your hobbies and projects.
  - d. He will notice the new picture on the wall, a new floral arrangement on the table, or a new doily you've crocheted.
  - e. He will compliment you regularly and encourage you to develop your full potential.
  - f. Giving attention to the finer details conveys a message that he's genuinely devoted to your success and happiness.
10. He will demonstrate an ever-deepening and growing love.
- a. If his love is true, it will stand the test of time.
  - b. He will strive to understand the complexities of your background and personality.
  - c. He will be forever asking questions to this end and picking up cues from your reactions and everyday behavior.
  - d. His love will mature as his understanding of you deepens.
  - e. He will reflect depth of character and integrity and reassure you of his continuing love.

**QUESTION 2: How can a man know when a woman loves him?**

1. She will give herself to you in wholehearted commitment.
  - a. She will make you the number one focus — the most important person — in her physical life.
  - b. No other man will stand as tall in her eyes.
  - c. Her loyalty and devotion will clearly shine through.
  - d. Her actions and words will have increasingly proved this over a period of time.
  - e. She will adore and admire your manhood and allow you to be the only true love in her life.
  - f. Her attitude will show in her eyes — she will look at you with respect and deference.
  - g. She will make every effort to prove that her commitment is steadfast and unquestionable.
2. She will demonstrate joyful submissiveness and the desire to let you lead.
  - a. This attitude comes from walking with God and allowing His Spirit to fill her mind.
  - b. She'll be conscious of her role for which she was created and dutifully submit as a helpmeet and companion.
  - c. She will fight the tendency to go around you, usurp your authority and have her way.
  - d. Her body stance will not be hostile or defensive.
  - e. She'll look to you for guidance and help when confronted with a problem or important decision.
  - f. You'll be her sounding board, her crying post, her strong shoulder and protector.
  - g. Being submissive and wishing to please you with all her heart basically mean the same thing.
3. She will want to respond and support you as her number one earthly ambition.
  - a. It's her attitude of responsiveness and eager cooperation that tells you her love is true.
  - b. The depth of her devotion will be indicated by the enthusiasm of her response.
  - c. She will willingly heed your desires and wishes because of an instinctive yearning to please you so much.
  - d. She'll take a personal interest in your goals and seek for ways to help you reach them — even if it means a sacrifice.
  - e. She'll express excitement about the activities you plan and be grateful for your effort and attention.
  - f. She'll support you in all your endeavors, encouraging you in failure and praising you in success.
  - g. She'll respond to you in ways she would not to any other man.
4. She'll make it easy to iron out differences and seek suggestions for ways to improve.
  - a. Since she's motivated by a burning desire to please you, she'll desire your input and gentle correction.
  - b. She will reflect the best of intentions and make an all-out effort to change.
  - c. This does not mean that she wants you to remake her, but rather is an expression of her willingness to fit in with your life.
  - d. In other words, she'll strive to remove the scratchy elements in her personality that create tension and conflict.
5. She'll be completely open, straightforward and honest, and communicate freely with you.
  - a. A woman will normally not do this unless she feels protected by your love.
  - b. She will be confident that you'll neither berate nor betray her.

- c. She'll withhold no secrets and will lean on you for physical, emotional and spiritual strength.
  - d. She'll feel no inhibition in sharing her joys and disappointments — her total 100 percent self.
  - e. She will reciprocate in kind when you are warm, expressive and compassionate.
6. She will reflect a caring and nurturing affection.
- a. She will exemplify this by wanting to be with you and doing as many things together as possible.
  - b. She will express a deep joy in helping you to achieve the things you consider important.
  - c. She will want to know more and more about your life and how she can blend into it.
  - d. She'll understand how fragile and sensitive your ego can be and will endeavor to be a source of encouragement and motivation.
  - e. Because of her nurturing instinct, she is dutifully compelled and motivated to take care of you.
7. She will place trust and confidence in your leadership and ability to succeed.
- a. She could never love and respect you unless she believes in your competence as a leader.
  - b. She trusts in your wisdom and good judgment in making decisions.
  - c. She feels safe and secure with you because of your track record of diligence, experience and maturity.
  - d. She'll be careful not to criticize, ridicule or chide you for mistakes you might make.
  - e. Instead, she will provide the support and backing you need.
  - f. Because she looks to you as her head and provider, she will inspire you with the drive and confidence you need to achieve great heights.
8. She will make you feel totally comfortable and relaxed with her.
- a. You'll sense no pressure to put on airs or try to impress her with a macho image.
  - b. She'll laugh at your humor and enjoy playful teasing.
  - c. There will be a bonding of minds, attitudes and spirits between you.
  - d. Even differences of opinion will be viewed as a growing experience.
  - e. You'll find that you can sit and talk with her for hours and never get bored.
9. She'll give attention to the little things that please you.
- a. This will include a host of little extras which she'll go above and beyond in performing.
  - b. She'll study your habits, disposition and lifestyle for clues to what you consider important and valuable.
  - c. She'll come to know your tastes in food, clothing and hairstyles.
  - d. She'll ask to find out your preferences.
  - e. Since love is a creative energy, she'll seek to add that special touch of originality in the way she serves you.
  - f. She will display those special courtesies afforded only to royalty.
10. Her love will be steadfast and enduring.
- a. She'll be willing to follow you to the ends of the earth if necessary.
  - b. If circumstances warrant, she would even live in poverty to be with you.
  - c. Even though you might become handicapped, maimed or defaced, her devotion is so strong that she would still love you for life.
  - d. She'll help you to weather every storm and win every battle, even if it means a painful sacrifice.
  - e. She'll rebound from her hurts and tears, even when rebuffed, in order to be worthy of your love.
  - f. She will live what the apostle Paul said: "Love endures all things" (I Cor. 13:7).

### **QUESTION 3: How do you know when you're in love?**

1. Realize that true love is based on a foundation of mutual respect and friendship.
  - a. It may begin with physical attraction.
  - b. Or, it may simply start when two people are casually brought together.
  - c. Whatever the circumstance, the relationship will have unfolded gradually into its present state.
  - d. You will truly have come to know and appreciate each other as two endearing friends.
  - e. Once a solid friendship has been built, you are better equipped to recognize true love when it emerges.
2. There will be a spark of attraction — a certain amount of romantic chemistry.
  - a. Even though this spark is usually present, it's not an emotion that blinds you to reality.
  - b. To base a commitment purely on physical appeal leaves you without a sure foundation of enduring love.

- c. Lust is like an intense fire that quickly burns out.
  - d. By comparison, true love is like sunshine that warmly glows and endures.
  - e. Infatuation is usually self-centered, but true romantic love will mature into genuine outgoing concern for the other.
  - f. Be sure there is a proper balance between what your heart feels and what your head knows.
3. The test of time will prove your love is true.
- a. You cannot possibly learn all there is to know about each other on one or two dates.
  - b. Getting to know the other requires time and togetherness.
  - c. Therefore, being certain your love is real will take a great deal of interaction, communication and seeing each other in many situations.
  - d. If you continue to gravitate to each other in spite of occasional conflicts and differences, you can be reasonably sure there is something special in your relationship.
4. You will have developed a kindred spirit and like-minded outlook.
- a. Two people deeply in love will share the same values, goals and basic interests.
  - b. You will have grown to appreciate one another's unique qualities, strengths and talents.
  - c. You'll be compatible in the essential areas of life and experience a meeting of minds on all important issues.
  - d. You'll work at understanding what makes the other tick and desire to help him or her find fulfillment.
  - e. There'll be no sense of intimidation or jealousy when one has achieved recognition or triumphs.
  - f. To the contrary, you will support and mutually encourage each other to excel.
  - g. You will have established common goals and will be working together to attain them.
5. You will yearn to be with that person and miss him or her when you are apart.
- a. He or she will begin to fill your thoughts.
  - b. You'll find yourself looking for ways to serve each other and watching for needs you can meet.
  - c. This inner longing will be based on the joy of companionship and the desire to share each other's thoughts and experiences.
  - d. If you're separated for days and you're not lonely or bothered by the absence, then it's doubtful that you're truly in love.
6. There will be a willingness to make a lifetime commitment without hesitation or doubt.
- a. At this point in your relationship all anxieties and reservations should have been resolved.
  - b. You will have learned the art of solving your differences in a mature and self-restrained fashion.
  - c. You will have learned how to forgive and forget hurts and offenses.
  - d. Time and again you will have proved that your love is stable and unwavering.
7. You'll find that serving the other has become a source of great joy instead of an irksome duty.
- a. You'll be eager to sacrifice time and pleasure in order to benefit the other.
  - b. You'll care so deeply that you would give your life for him or her.
  - c. You'll try to avoid any action that will tear down, discourage or displease the other.
  - d. If your love is true and lasting, you'll make whatever sacrifice is necessary to keep your commitment intact.
8. This person will bring out the best in you and keep you focused on God's Kingdom.
- a. He or she will never attempt to undermine your principles or defile your conscience.
  - b. Rather, each will be a source of strength and vitality to the other.
  - c. God's Holy Spirit will bind you into oneness of mind that nothing can separate.
  - d. You will feel proud to be seen together in public.
  - e. You'll also be pleased to have this person to be the father or mother of your children.
  - f. Each will provide a fertile environment of support and encouragement for the other to grow and flourish.
9. You can be yourself and feel perfectly comfortable in your relationship.
- a. Neither will try to remake or fashion the other into a new mold.
  - b. Each can speak his or her mind knowing the other will be patient and understanding.
  - c. You will give each other space to work through problems and attitudes.
  - d. Both will remember that growth is a process and overcoming self requires a lifetime.

10. God will reveal that you've made the right choice.
  - a. If you have trusted God in child-like faith and prayed about your relationship throughout its duration, He will make known to you the answer.
  - b. This may require much counsel and some fasting.
  - c. If you use wisdom and caution, God will not allow you to be deceived, since you're looking to Him for guidance and protection.
  - d. Always remember that your marriage will endure and weather any storms if you keep God at the center.

*NOTE: If you have not yet found that special person with whom you'd like to share your life, the following points will help you prepare toward that end.*

#### **QUESTION 4: How can you become a lovable person?**

1. Pray for an attractive personality and a likable disposition.
  - a. Realize that the desire and ability to transform your life must come from God.
  - b. He will grant the motivation and power if you wholeheartedly seek His help.
  - c. Earnestly strive to develop a positive, joyful and peace-loving outlook.
  - d. Request that the fruits of His Holy Spirit will truly become apparent in your life.
  - e. Remember that it is God's mind and nature in you that will make you lovable.
2. Ask your closest friends to help you see your shortcomings.
  - a. Really mean it when you ask for their input and counsel.
  - b. Don't justify or make excuses when they tell you the truth or share their honest feelings.
  - c. Be open-minded and thankful — take their suggestions to heart.
  - d. Seek to know if you are any of the following:
    - (1) Negative.
    - (2) Critical and complaining.
    - (3) Whiny.
    - (4) Coarse, crude and unrefined.
    - (5) Immature and demanding.
  - e. Come to see yourself as others see you and desire to make genuine changes in your life.
3. Embark on a crash program of overcoming.
  - a. Set your mind to change and to really achieve breakthroughs with long-standing problems.
  - b. Visualize the transformed person you want to be and the benefits that you will gain as a result.
  - c. Work on the repulsive and scratchy elements first — the things that turn people off.
  - d. Make yourself vividly aware of how ugly selfishness is.
  - e. Set deadlines to conquer your most obnoxious habits.
  - f. Get tough on yourself and start today.
4. Practice humility and grow in Christ's likeness.
  - a. First of all, realize that every blessing you possess has come from God — your brain, talents, abilities, resources, etc.
  - b. Secondly, recognize that others have contributed greatly to your present success.
  - c. Remember that you're only dust — made from 16 elements — like everyone else.
  - d. Therefore, don't think too highly of yourself or take sole credit for your accomplishments.
  - e. Condescend to others in love and service.
  - f. Determine to remove every trace of pride, arrogance and vanity from your life.
  - g. Keep Christ's example of humility in the forefront of your mind.
5. Be friendly and make people feel comfortable in your presence.
  - a. Be cheerful, enthusiastic and expressive when you interact with others.
  - b. Help people to relax and save face if they make an embarrassing mistake.
  - c. Don't show favoritism, or be a respecter of persons.
  - d. Treat everyone with care and respect: the shy, the handicapped, the young, the elderly, the quiet, the backward, etc.
  - e. Develop a good sense of humor and learn to laugh at yourself.
  - f. Smile and radiate warmth as an on-going way of life.
  - g. Be responsive and approachable.

6. Develop an interest in people and the qualities that make them unique.
  - a. This takes courage and effort, but the friendships you gain will be well worth it.
  - b. Getting to know people and what makes them tick is an adventure in learning.
  - c. A vast education awaits you if you'll step out and make new acquaintances.
  - d. You'll also win the admiration of people you befriend because you will have brightened their lives.
7. Pray for love and the knowledge of how to creatively apply it.
  - a. The love that God imparts is creative.
  - b. It enlightens the mind to thousands of ways in which to help others succeed and be happy.
  - c. Think about the needs and well-being of everyone with whom you come in contact.
  - d. Look for opportunities to help carry the burdens of others and to lighten their load.
  - e. Be thoughtful in word and in deed: encourage, edify, commend, give, aid, share.
  - f. Recognize the desire for attention that people crave.
  - g. Every human has a need of love — seek for ways to give it.
8. Always be honest, truthful and sincere.
  - a. Be upright and true at all costs and in every circumstance.
  - b. Reflect integrity.
  - c. Be completely reliable and strive to be the kind of person others can always trust.
  - d. Keep your promises and make your word good.
  - e. Manifest a child-like innocence in mind, attitude and character.
  - f. Keep private information confidential — make this an absolute must.
  - g. Be conscientious like Christ, inside and out.
9. Be polite and courteous to everyone you meet.
  - a. Practice being kind and gracious.
  - b. Realize that these qualities represent refined godly love.
  - c. They say to others, "You count — you're important and worth something as an individual."
  - d. This kind of love is an outward manifestation of God's Spirit at work.
10. Learn the art of being tactful and sensitive to others' feelings.
  - a. "But your mind in gear before you open your mouth" is an old adage that still holds true today.
  - b. Choose your words carefully so as not to intimidate, humiliate or irritate people.
  - c. Avoid put-downs and sarcasm, and watch the tone of your voice.
  - d. Words and actions can have just as painful an effect on people's self-esteem as a whip across their backs.
11. Be an attentive and interested listener.
  - a. Look at people when they're speaking to you.
  - b. Train yourself to pay attention and show respect.
  - c. Be responsive with a nod, smile and verbal feedback.
  - d. People appreciate these gestures and will be endeared to you.
  - e. Being a good listener is a small price to pay in your quest to become lovable.
12. Be aware of the lasting impact your example can have on others.
  - a. It's a well-established fact that you have either a positive or negative influence on every life you touch.
  - b. If you manifest the qualities of good breeding, culture, kindness and love, people will long remember you.
  - c. However, if you're pessimistic, negative, selfish and carnal, you'll leave a legacy of distaste in their memories.
  - d. Becoming a lovable person is tantamount to being a true Christian.
  - e. Therefore, commit yourself to this lofty challenge and you'll grow in favor with God and man.

#### VI. A FINAL WORD OF CLARIFICATION.

- A. Please don't use these qualities as the perfect and all conclusive checklist in choosing a mate.
- B. No one has attained them in their entirety.
- C. Each of us has achieved different levels of growth and spiritual maturity and should not be compared to others.
- D. These points are given merely as guidelines to show the meaning of true love and how to recognize it.

- E. What is important is to grasp their essence and to use them as the ideal to strive for.
- F. Hopefully you and your future mate will reflect all of them to some degree. However, don't expect total perfection.
- G. To be fairminded, realistic and patient, allow time for growth and development.
- H. Best wishes and success!

-END-

### ADDENDUM

#### HOW A WOMAN CAN KNOW WHEN A MAN LOVES HER

1. How he treats other people.
2. Does he make you feel comfortable?
3. Can you trust him?
4. Is he thoughtful and considerate?
5. He will work at removing the irritants from his life that bug you.
6. He will note the special things you do to serve him.
7. He will praise you for your efforts, personal growth and self-improvement.
8. He will make it a point to provide you with a forum to express your feelings, ideas, hopes, dreams, etc.
9. He will study and investigate your unique interests and needs.
10. As a rule of thumb he will think of you first, himself second.
11. He will try to make you feel feminine and proud to be a woman.
12. He will reassure you over and over that you're beautiful, important and valuable.
13. He will be tolerant and give you space to grow.
14. He will demonstrate his firmness of character and leadership day in and day out.
15. He will lavish praise and compliments.
16. He will be responsive to your suggestions and careful not to intimidate or put you down.
17. He will avoid any mode of behavior that would make you question his love, loyalty and devotion.
18. He will wait on you instead of waiting on you to serve him.
19. He will be light-hearted and humorous.
20. He will dignify your work and responsibilities.
21. Overall, you will know he loves you by:
  - a. What he says.
  - b. What he does.
  - c. How he acts.
  - d. How he thinks.

## **CHAPTER 27**

### **"IF I WERE 21 AGAIN ..."**

#### I. SOME VALUES AND VIRTUES YOUNG ADULTS SHOULD KEEP IN MIND AS THEY BREAK HOME TIES, GO OUT INTO THE WORLD AND EMBARK ON THEIR LIFE'S CALLING.

##### 1. Keep in good health.

- A. Success in life and the acquisition of material possessions are of little value if you don't have good health to enjoy them.
- B. God wishes above all things that you may prosper and be in health (III John 2).
- C. Principles of health.
  - (1) Get plenty of sleep.
  - (2) Take some form of vigorous exercise every day.
  - (3) Watch your diet and choose the best foods whenever possible.

##### 2. Make walking with God your highest ambition.

- A. Deut. 13:2-4 = "Cleave unto God and love Him with all your heart."
- B. I Peter 1:14-16 = "Be ye holy for I am holy."
- C. I Cor. 10:31 = "Do all things to God's glory."

##### 3. Set realistic and attainable goals.

- A. Three types:
  - (1) Short range
  - (2) Intermediate
  - (3) Long Range
- B. Create a game plan of objectives in order to reach your goals.
  - (1) Start with what resources you already have available.
  - (2) As you set your mind to analyzing, thinking and searching, you'll attract to yourself the answers you need.
- C. How do you generate enthusiasm and drive?
  - (1) Through thought — strong mental discipline.
  - (2) There can be no lasting drive without thought. Thought is the basis of every noteworthy achievement.
- D. What does thought engender?
  - (1) Desire.
  - (2) Desire is produced through thinking.
  - (3) Think about your goals in terms of having reached them — see them in their finality.
  - (4) Do this until you have painted a clear mental picture of what you're searching for in life.
  - (5) Desire will automatically follow.
  - (6) Desire is the fire that ignites enthusiasm.
- E. The formula:
  - (1) Thought begets desire.
  - (2) Desire breeds enthusiasm.
  - (3) Enthusiasm leads to action.
  - (4) Action when persistently applied leads to success.
  - (5) Success produces confidence which leads to greater SUCCESS.

4. Keep the overall purpose of life in view.
  - A. Consider the end (Deut. 32:29).
  - B. Make certain God is at the center of things.
  - C. Remember that each must stand in the judgment and give an account of his life.
    - (1) Eccl. 12:13-14 = "God shall bring every work into judgment."
    - (2) II Cor. 5:10 = "... all stand before the judgment seat of Christ."
  - D. Allow no ambition or goal to crowd out God's Kingdom.
  
5. Develop the habit of making quick and sound decisions.
  - A. This takes courage — we're afraid of the consequences or too lazy to think.
  - B. Get wide counsel and think things through.
  - C. You'll succeed in life only as far as your decisions reach.
  - D. You either decide to fail or to succeed.
  - E. Master the art of decision making and you will have acquired an indispensable tool of success.
  
6. Discipline yourself.
  - A. Flex your muscles, tighten your belt, call up the forces of your mind and say "NO."
  - B. Keep on the course you have charted.
  - C. You may have to forego some fleeting pleasure and experience some pain — but this discipline will suddenly turn into pure joy.
  - D. Think of your goal — the end result. Reflect on this until you get your bearings again.
  - E. On the human side, you're responsible for your actions and are the master of your fate.
  - F. Luke 9:23 = "He who will be my disciple, let him deny himself."
  
7. Don't let discouragement get you down — face it head-on.
  - A. Get to the bottom of what's causing it.
  - B. Quit feeling sorry for yourself — start looking for solutions and answers.
  - C. Let discouragement itself be a catalyst to propel you out of the pit of depression and despair, to greater heights.
  - D. Decide to become stronger than it is.
  - E. Joshua 1:5-9; 18 = "Be strong and of good courage."
  - F. I Cor. 16:13 = "Be strong like men."
  
8. Steer your life by certain bedrock principles and unwavering absolutes.
  - A. King David said that regardless of his trials, he would never say anything negative against God so as to shatter the faith of Israel.
  - B. A few may be:
    - (1) Keeping morally pure.
    - (2) Defending the reputation of others who are falsely accused.
    - (3) Being honest and upright in all your business transactions.
    - (4) Giving others credit where due, instead of taking it unto yourself.
  - C. Are you rock-solid in your convictions, or are you like a piece of dough easily changed or squeezed out of shape because of political expediency or out of plain fear of others?
  
9. Try to achieve one splendid success in some worthy realm of human endeavor.
  - A. Become really good at something — a true, recognized expert.
  - B. Strive toward professionalism — perfection in one single thing.
  - C. It may be:
    - (1) Mastering a musical instrument.
    - (2) Painting.
    - (3) Writing, poetry.
    - (4) Sculpturing, macrame.
    - (5) Wood working.
    - (6) Speaking.
    - (7) An authority on some subject.



- D. Make this your trademark.
  - E. Put your finest creative effort into achieving it, albeit it may take weeks, months and years to reach your goal.
10. Study and try to be an original thinker.
- A. Do not take "things for granted" — take them for what they are worth.
  - B. Think your way through prejudice, precedent, custom, convention, style, fashion and all the forms of modern day folly and get at the heart of things.
  - C. Some customs you'll want to keep because they're based on Bible principles — other things you'll want to discard.
  - D. Square all incoming knowledge with the truths of God's Word.
  - E. Study until you grasp concepts — internalize them. Don't rest with weak, superficial answers until your mind is put at ease.
11. Put quality into every thought, word and deed.
- A. Conscientiously practice Eccl. 9:10 = "*Whatever your hand finds to do, do it with your might.*"
  - B. Do it better — go the extra mile.
  - C. Don't settle with mediocrity — go all out and give it your best effort.
  - D. Don't be discouraged if you fail to achieve perfection overnight.
  - E. Achieving quality takes time — like a good vintage wine.
12. Live in the light of every grand experience and opportunity.
- A. Some brilliant experiences only happen once in a lifetime.
  - B. Don't pass them by even if it means rearranging your game plan of life temporarily.
  - C. It may be:
    - (1) An unexpected free trip to Europe.
    - (2) A dinner out with Mr. Armstrong.
    - (3) A flight on the G-II.
    - (4) A date with someone you'd like to get to know.
  - D. Don't mistake grand opportunities with insignificant frequent distractions.
  - E. The key is to experience the bigness of life with all its richness and rare opportunities.
13. Spend a little time each day in the realm of the beautiful.
- A. Drink in of your environment and all of creation.
  - B. Enjoy the beauty of flowers, the flight of birds, a golden sunset, the passing of clouds in the sky.
  - C. Reflect on life and all that you see — take a few seconds or moments to look, hear, taste, smell and feel the beauty and richness of God's creation.
  - D. If you're too busy to do this, you're too busy.
  - E. You should develop your senses until they become highly sensitive and discriminating.
  - F. Heb. 5:12-14 = "*...exercise your senses to discern between good and evil.*"
14. Cultivate two or three close friendships among people who are older.
- A. People who are forty or fifty or even among those who are elderly.
  - B. These individuals can be of great help to you in a time of great duress or crises.
  - C. Job 32:7 = "*Days should speak and multitude of years should teach wisdom.*"
  - D. Prov. 16:31 = "*The hoary head is a crown of glory....*"
15. Keep a notebook of ideas.
- A. Capture and record concepts, ideas, insights and sudden thoughts of inspiration while the iron is hot.
  - B. Unless you record them while they're fresh in your mind, you may lose them forever.
  - C. Review this notebook on a regular basis until these ideas have been incorporated into your everyday mentality.

16. Develop a "David-like attitude of respect and humility" and give yourself to the service of mankind.
  - A. Become people-oriented — aware of their presence.
  - B. Learn the kindly arts of tact and diplomacy and develop a keen sensitivity to their needs and feelings.
  - C. Gal. 6:10 = "As we have opportunity, let us do good unto all men."
  - D. I Pet. 2:17 = "Honor all men."
  
17. Crowd at least one act of kindness into every twenty-four hours.
  - A. It's not difficult to find an opportunity — everybody you meet has problems. Some more urgent than others.
  - B. Kindness when habitually practiced transforms itself into dignity and greatness.
  
18. Look to Christ as your supreme example and model of life.
  - A. Read the four gospels at least once a year.
  - B. Broaden, expand and stretch your mind to comprehend the meaning of everything He did and said.
  - C. Spend plenty of time in reflecting and thinking on the way He lived, His general approach to life.
  - D. Dedicate yourself to emulating His lifestyle.
  - E. Yield unreservedly to His will and be the kind of instrument in which He can live His life anew.

NOTE: Some of the above material taken from "The System Bible Study" section on Character Building, pages 744-747.

**-END-**

## **CHAPTER 28**

### ***THE INNERMOST SECRETS THAT A.C. MEN AND WOMEN WISH EACH OTHER KNEW***

- I. THE FOLLOWING INFORMATION IS BASED ON MANY YEARS OF EXPERIENCE IN COUNSELLING YOUNG SINGLES AND AMBASSADOR COLLEGE STUDENTS.
- A. These are feelings and thoughts about dating and personal relationships that multiple scores have privately expressed.
  - B. It is my earnest desire that these secrets will strengthen and enhance your social life.
- II. THE INNERMOST SECRETS OF AMBASSADOR CO-EDS.
1. Please learn how to properly ask for a date and I'll be more eager to accept.
    - a. First of all, some common mistakes that are frequently made:
      - 1) "What are you doing tonight?"
      - 2) "I didn't have anything else to do, so I thought I'd ask you out."
      - 3) "I can't find anyone to go to the beach with me, so I'm asking you."
      - 4) "So-and-so backed out on me and I need a date."
      - 5) "You're the tenth girl I've asked to go to the dance — I hope you can make it."
    - b. Other wrong approaches.
      - 1) Asking a girl for a date in the presence of others, such as at meal time in the Student Center.
      - 2) Singling one girl out in a group, thus catching her off-guard.
      - 3) Hurriedly asking while rushing to class.
    - c. The proper way to ask for a date is approach her privately and then give her a way out.
      - 1) For example: "My parents have just arrived in town and would like to go to the Velvet Turtle for dinner. If you're free, we would very much enjoy having you to go with us." If she accepts, explain that Sabbath dress will be fine and you'll pick her up at 6 o'clock.
      - 2) "May I have the honor of escorting you to the Sophomore Ball?"
      - 3) "A week from Sunday a group of us is going to Disneyland. If you're available, I'd be delighted to have you go with me."
    - d. The key to remember is never put the girl in an awkward or compromising position. Always leave her the option of declining gracefully. She may have other plans or reasons that she may not want to reveal.
  2. I know that leading the conversation may be difficult, but I really admire you when you try.
    - a. Don't force her into an uncomfortable role where she must take the initiative.
      - 1) Some girls are more verbal and will naturally fill in if there's a gap.
      - 2) Later, they feel guilty and are afraid they've made a bad impression of being too talkative.
    - b. It's your God-given responsibility to take the lead.
    - c. The main thing to avoid is long periods of silence.
    - d. Try always to have in mind four or five subjects to fall back on in case this happens. In other words, always be prepared.
    - e. Use questions to help draw her out, but don't get too personal.
      - 1) Avoid close-ended questions that require only one-word answers.
      - 2) Try to establish topics of common interest.
    - f. Endeavor to insure that the conversation is equally balanced, with give-and-take between you.

3. I would rather you encourage, console and comfort me than lecture or preach.
  - a. When a fellow quotes a lot of scriptures and corrects a girl, she becomes upset and defensive.
  - b. She doesn't resent helpful counsel, but recoils when treated like a child or put down and made to feel inferior.
  - c. She basically already knows the cause of her problems and doesn't need to be dissected and analyzed.
  - d. Sometimes the best thing a man can do for a woman is to make her feel safe, sheltered and secure.
  - e. She doesn't need an intellectual tongue-lashing, but rather tenderness and understanding.
  
4. I wish that you'd be more observant and aware of my physical comfort and well-being.
  - a. This kind of polite and courteous treatment lets her know that the man feels responsible for her welfare.
    - 1) Here is a major reason why the ERA was started — women have been neglected, treated with indifference and left to fend for themselves.
  - b. Typical examples in everyday life.
    - 1) Loaning her your coat when she's shivering and cold.
    - 2) Closing the door if the wind is blowing and chilly.
    - 3) Rolling up the car window so her hair won't become disheveled or windblown.
    - 4) Making sure that your date keeps up with you in a crowd, even if she has to take your arm.
    - 5) Opening and closing doors for her.
    - 6) Realize that it's difficult for her to walk long distances in high heels.
  
5. I'm very impressed when you're original or creative when planning a date.
  - a. Girls don't enjoy duty dates where the men feel obligated to take them out.
  - b. What pleases them is when special thought and planning have gone into the occasion.
  - c. They're impressed when he has given attention to all the necessary details.
    - 1) Location and type of date.
    - 2) Transportation arranged.
    - 3) Proper dress to wear.
    - 4) Etc.
  - d. If the date was made days or weeks in advance, follow through with a reminder so she will know you haven't forgotten.
  - e. This kind of leadership indicates you're fully in charge and will dispel all her worries.
  
6. I truly enjoy going for walks.
  - a. Almost without exception, every girl shares this desire.
  - b. She'd like to take a break, get out of the dorm and go for a stroll under the stars.
  - c. Such walks don't have to be romantic, just a time to enjoy wholesome fellowship and good conversation.
  - d. Some have remarked that simple, spontaneous walks mean more to them than elaborate, formal occasions.
  - e. These walks can be brief — around the block, or a stroll through the campus.
  - f. The conversation need not be heavy or overly serious, but fun-loving, enjoyable, and refreshing.
  - g. Picking a little flower along the path is a symbol of your thoughtfulness — she often packs it away. (One girl confessed that she has a two-year-old dead rose in her office!)
  - h. A word of caution — don't overdo this or make a nuisance of yourself.
  
7. Please realize how important a sincere compliment is to me.
  - a. A woman wants to be beautiful to a man. A compliment from him means twice as much as from another female.
  - b. When she's taken extra pains to look nice, she'd like to know that he notices.
  - c. The man, therefore, should thoughtfully take note of the time and effort she spends to look attractive and beautiful.
  - d. Don't flatter her — she can readily see through this.

- e. A sincere compliment is spontaneous, but if your remarks are belabored, drawn out and icky sweet, then it's flattery.
8. Please don't force me to be curt and defensive by coming on too strong.
- This tendency can show itself in a number of ways.
    - Getting physical.
    - Dogging her around campus.
    - Making a general nuisance of himself.
    - Getting serious on the first date or two.
    - Becoming possessive and jealous.
    - Asking for too many dates.
    - Wanting to sit with her at every meal.
  - Make it a goal to develop solid friendships and don't get carried away.
9. Being a leader doesn't mean macho or domineering, but rather being responsible, mature and caring.
- For a man to throw his weight around, give orders and act self-righteous, is a giant turn-off to the woman.
  - Such arrogance and egotism destroy her respect for him.
  - This is especially important to remember if you are a student leader.
  - Use your office or authority to protect her — not to crush her.
  - Give her credit for having a brain to think with and God's Holy Spirit to guide her.
10. Please don't misinterpret my emotional highs and lows, or changing moods — they are not intentionally directed at you.
- Men often wonder why a date can go so well, only to find the next day, she's cold, unfriendly and distant.
  - There may be several reasons for this.
    - She's afraid that if she acts too friendly, he'll mistake her motives as a "come-on" and start pursuing a relationship.
    - If she truly likes the man, she wouldn't want him to know in million years.
    - In the meantime, there may be any number of experiences that could have upset her attitude or outlook.
      - Insufficient sleep.
      - A run-in with a roommate.
      - Bombed a test.
      - Mounting pressures.
    - Hormonal changes.
11. Please try to understand that I'm terribly sensitive and can be easily crushed.
- A woman is particularly vulnerable to sarcasm and cynicism or by the negative things he says.
  - Her nature is so constructed that she innately wants to please the man.
  - Any rejection, ridicule or displeasure on his part can be devastating.
  - She is especially sensitive to remarks against her personal efforts such as her cooking, appearance, athletic ability, etc.
  - Cite the example of the men who snickered and made fun of a girl's overcooked brownies.
12. If it appears that a serious relationship is developing, please be open and honest with me.
- This would apply mainly to upperclassmen or older students.
  - The man should never leave a woman dangling on a limb.
  - If for no other reason, he should take the initiative to clear the air and relieve her anxieties.
  - He should approach her in such a way that they can continue to be friends even if she isn't serious about him.

13. Please be sensible and realistic before you entertain thought of marriage.
  - a. The man should never get carried away when there, are obvious or irreconcilable differences.
  - b. Some examples.
    - 1) She is several inches taller than he.
    - 2) Age difference.
    - 3) Cultural or racial differences.
    - 4) Maturity and experience levels.
    - 5) Educational backgrounds.
    - 6) Goals and purposes.
    - 7) Personal tastes and preferences.
    - 8) Physical attraction (chemistry).
  - c. Other considerations are:
    - 1) His career — does he have a job nailed down?
    - 2) Financial ability to support a wife and family.
    - 3) Health.
  
14. I stand in awe of you when you make me feel special and treat me with respect.
  - a. You are a superstar in her eyes when you tailor-make your attention to her personal needs.
  - b. This requires forethought, consideration and a sense of genuine deference.
  - c. It involves expressing true honor rather than trying to impress her with your importance.
  - d. It's letting her know that you care, that you notice and that you're concerned about her feelings and welfare.
  - e. Show that you consider her to be important and she will melt with admiration.
  - f. Examples:
    - 1) Standing when she enters a room.
    - 2) Standing when she has to pass in front of you to find her seat in the Auditorium, in a theatre, bus or plane.
    - 3) Stepping aside so that she can easily pass on a sidewalk, in an aisle, etc.
    - 4) Giving out escort cards.
  - g. All in all, recognize her presence, uphold her dignity and treat her as a co-heir with Christ.

### III. THE INNERMOST SECRETS OF AMBASSADOR MEN.

1. Try to understand how difficult it is for me to ask for a date.
  - a. A man's biggest problem in asking a girl out is the fear of being turned down or rejected.
  - b. She can make it doubly hard on him when she expresses cold indifference or a lack of enthusiasm.
  - c. A harsh and cruel rejection mortifies his ego, crushes his self-respect and discourages him from trying again.
  - d. If you must refuse a date, remember to let the man down gently.
  - e. Try to give a good reason when appropriate.
    - 1) "I really would have liked to go, but I already have plans for tonight. Please call again."
    - 2) "How thoughtful of you to ask me, but I've already been invited to the dance next week."
    - 3) "Thanks for asking, but could we make it some other time?" Or, "Could we make it in the future?"
  - f. There may come a time when the woman will need to get firm and direct if being harassed or imposed upon.
  
2. Make it easier for us to communicate by showing an interest and being responsive.
  - a. Conversation and fellowship should be a two-way street.
  - b. The man shouldn't be expected to talk nonstop.
  - c. Get involved and show enthusiasm.
  - d. Concentrate on giving him a good time.
  - e. Pick up on his thoughts and ideas and contribute to the conversation.
  - f. If you disagree with a topic or point, don't debate or challenge, but submissively present your views.

3. Try to appreciate how difficult it is to measure up to the ideal standard and be a perfect leader.
  - a. Remember that most AC men come here to learn how to be mature leaders — they may lack experience or confidence.
  - b. In the process of learning, they will probably make mistakes and commit blunders.
  - c. Try to be understanding and give him room to grow.
  - d. Don't be comparing him to older men with years of experience and expect too much.
  - e. Compliment him on his successes and help him to save face should he fail.
  
4. Realize how easy it is to wound a man's ego.
  - a. You can do this by being snitty, catty and making him feel like a lowly worm.
  - b. Some examples:
    - 1) Comparing him to other men.
    - 2) Coldly ignoring him.
    - 3) Cutting him down in front of others.
    - 4) Refusing to dance with him, then immediately accepting an invitation from someone else.
    - 5) Making him feel bad about circumstances beyond his control.
      - a. Being caught in the rain.
      - b. Car breaking down.
      - c. Protect the man's self-esteem to the same degree that you want him to treat you as a lady.
      - d. Try to honor and respect his role in every circumstance where possible.
  
5. Please learn to be more grateful for the money I spend and the effort I invest in a special date.
  - a. Often girls feel uncomfortable and guilty about A.C. men spending money on them.
  - b. They are also afraid that an expensive dinner out means being obligated to accept future dates.
  - c. However, the men generally do not think of it this way.
  - d. It's an instinct inbred in the man to want to provide and protect the fairer sex.
  - e. Therefore, they would like for you to acknowledge that they have made a special sacrifice and effort to give you a good time and make you happy.
  - f. A follow-up thank-you note, telephone call, or some other form of feedback is not only appropriate, but your Christian duty.
  
6. Try to be more consistent and predictable in your reactions and day-to-day disposition.
  - a. Realize the frustration, tension and dismay you can bring upon a man by your erratic behavior and changing moods.
  - b. Try to control emotional feelings and make a concerted effort to develop a cheerful, sunny outlook.
  - c. Work at levelling out the peaks and valleys in your day-to-day reactions and establish the kind of inner poise that men can feel comfortable with.
  
7. Please be flexible and self-controlled when plans fall apart or you encounter a crisis.
  - a. Not every date will turn out perfectly.
  - b. You will encounter some unexpected surprises or circumstances beyond anyone's control.
  - c. Your level of maturity will determine how you handle these trying situations.
  - d. Some examples:
    - 1) Your date's car breaks down on the freeway and you miss the play.
    - 2) You discover a run in your nylons as you enter the Auditorium for Church.
    - 3) The cleaners didn't get your dress back in time and you had to choose another one.
  - e. Don't lose your balance or perspective. Always keep the big picture in mind.
  
8. Girls don't seem to realize how they physically affect man.
  - a. A woman is the most beautiful creature on earth to a man.
  - b. But, unless she is circumspect in her dress and conduct she can be a distraction and stumbling block to him.
  - c. Things to watch for and avoid:
    - 1) Plunging necklines.
    - 2) Unbuttoned blouse near the top (this is especially distracting when leaning over).

- 3) Tight skirts and sweaters.
  - 4) Contoured, snug-fitting jeans.
  - 5) Shorts worn in open and public places.
  - 6) Bikini bathing suits.
  - 7) Slit in skirt — knees exposed when sitting.
  - 8) Putting her head on the man's shoulder or nudging up too close.
  - d. The key to remember is to be modest and discreet in all circumstances of your life.
9. My attraction for you heightens when you dress like a lady and take pride in your appearance.
- a. What you wear and the way you wear it does count with a man.
    - 1) Don't be exotic, but keep up with the fashions of the day.
    - 2) In this regard, quality of clothing is of greater importance quantity.
    - 3) Your apparel is a reflection of your self-image.
  - b. Watch your weight.
  - c. Adopt a becoming hairstyle.
  - d. Simple jewelry and subtle perfumes are appealing.
  - e. In a man's opinion you are far more feminine and attractive when you wear a dress or skirt.
10. Realize that you are truly beautiful and feminine when you show inner charm, refinement, and culture.
- a. This has to do with having a high sense of values, inner confidence and being able to conduct yourself in a graceful charming manner.
  - b. It's another way of describing the Proverbs 31 woman.
  - c. It involves having a keen sense of awareness of others and being tuned into their needs.
  - d. This quality gives evidence of the woman's conversion, her fear of God and the way she views her role in society.
  - e. Such a lady will not be boisterous and clamorous, but rather gentle, kind-spoken and courteous.
11. Please realize that I'm deeply flattered and honored when you call on me for help.
- a. It's instinctive for a man to rescue a maiden in distress.
  - b. He secretly desires to be her hero — her knight in shining armor.
  - c. So please feel free to call on him — but don't abuse the privilege.
  - d. Some examples:
    - 1) Studying for tests.
    - 2) Qualified help with homework.
    - 3) Escort service.
    - 4) A friend to talk to when discouraged.
    - 5) Ideas for table topics or a speech.
    - 6) Move heavy objects.
  - e. Remember to be fair-minded, balanced, and considerate.
12. I highly respect you when you're up-front, genuinely, honest and don't play games.
- a. First of all, be yourself.
  - b. Don't try to impress the man or be hypocritical.
  - c. Let your true feelings and personality sincerely come through.
  - d. Don't lead a guy on if you're not really interested in him.
  - e. Give him feedback — what you like, or didn't like about a date.
  - f. Don't keep him guessing or left in the dark if you're upset about something.
  - g. If he's offended you, he would much prefer that you tactfully tell him the truth, rather than give him the cold shoulder.
  - h. Play the role of a true Christian sister and he will deeply appreciate it.
13. You have found the way to my heart when you understand true submissiveness.
- a. This is not meant to suggest or imply that you're to let him run your life or be his slave.
  - b. It has to do with an eager willingness of wanting to help him and to see him succeed in his efforts.



- c. It means standing beside him and being enthusiastically supportive — taking an interest in his goals and purposes.
- d. True submissiveness is expressed in your attitude toward the man and his God-given role.
- e. Learn how to show it in your day-to-day relationships and note how his attitude of respect toward you increases.

14. When contemplating marriage, physical beauty is not as important to me as conversion and radiant Christian character.

- a. To a deeply converted, sound-thinking man, your relationship to God is of supreme importance.
- b. He knows that if this is right you will be loyal and true to him throughout life.
- c. He will also know that you'll make a loving and responsible mother.
- d. Strive to let your light shine and become the right kind of example.
- e. Realize how important it is to a man when you show an interest in spiritual subjects.

IV. DEVELOP FRIEND-TO-FRIEND, BROTHER-SISTER RELATIONSHIPS.

- A. The best method of overcoming your tensions, conflicts and fears is to quit worrying so much about yourself and concentrate on helping the other to grow.
- B. Lose yourself in concern for the other.
- C. Put aside self-consciousness and resentments — be patient, tolerant and forgiving.
- D. Strive to be a sister or brother to each other in caring, serving and being helpful.
- E. Make it a goal to be a top flight Christian in your constant, daily life.
- F. First learn to express true agape love and you will be loved.

**-END-**



## **CHAPTER 29**

### **IS THE BIBLE LIVING IN YOU?**

*Would you like your Bible study to be even more meaningful? To be one of the most exciting, thrilling aspects of your life? It can be! The principles outlined in this article will show you how.*

When you hear the terms "Bible study" or "studying the Bible," what comes to your mind? Is it a picture of an energetic scholar, with spectacles and copious notes, pouring over commentaries, lexicons and other biblical materials, searching out the pearls of truth in God's Word?

To perhaps most people, this is what the term "Bible study" means.

But, this definition is not truly complete!

Make no mistake, detailed research and study of God's Word IS important! God has blessed us with many marvelous and wonderful tools for helping to understand His written Word: Bible dictionaries, lexicons, concordances, commentaries, etc. All are very important and useful to the Christian.

But, there is a deeper, richer — more advanced — form of "studying" the Bible every Christian needs to apply!

#### **THE PRACTICAL APPROACH**

Before getting down to specifics, let's first notice an important admonition in 1 Thess. 5:21. "*Prove all things, hold fast that which is good.*" The word "prove" actually means to "test by doing." It means to try out, put, to use, or experience first hand, such as test-driving a new car.

Remember the example of the man in the Bible who bought five oxen and wanted to prove them first before following Christ? (See Luke 14:19.) What he meant was that he wanted to test them to see if they were strong and healthy and capable of doing hard work.

This is the approach we should take toward the Bible. We are told to prove or test its worth and value by putting it to use in our lives. When Jesus Christ said man must live by every word of God, He had this concept in mind. God intends that we do more than just "read" the pages of His Word. He wants us to live it in order to prove that His instruction is for our good.

Another verse that teaches us how to study the Bible is 1 Thess. 2:13. "*For this cause also thank we God without ceasing, because when ye received the word of God which ye heard of us, ye received it not as the word of men, but as it is in truth, the word of God, which effectually worketh also in you that believe!*"

The Word of God, then, is to effectually work in us! That is, it is to lodge deeply within our minds, stir us to action, move us to do good works and inspire us to grow in the nature of God.

#### **THE BASIC KEY**

The REAL KEY to understanding the Bible is simply this: Once you have read and studied God's Word, you must act on it, to test it by doing, to put it into actual practice in your life. You are to live it with all your being. Then watch it produce the glorious fruits of God's Holy character in you.

This is the ultimate in "Bible study!" As you apply and inculcate its teachings, you will actually experience its miraculous power and inspiration. The written Word of God will begin to live in you and through you — changing and transforming your life into the likeness of God Himself.

It will have deeper meaning than it ever had before! You'll gain new knowledge, insight and understanding into the mind of God you never knew existed. This kind of knowledge can never be acquired through reading scholarly works men have written about God and the Bible.

Jesus said the application of His Words would have this impact in our lives: "...the words that I speak unto you, they are spirit, and they are LIFE" (John 6:63). His Word Is like food, to be eaten and converted into spiritual character (John 6:48-51.)

### **LIVING THE WORD "REMAKES" YOU**

When we study the Bible in this fashion, meditating on its principles and living it daily, we become more like God by allowing His Spirit — His life — to work in us. Notice: "*Jesus answered and said unto him, if a man love me, he will keep my words: and my Father will love him, and we will come unto him, and make our abode with him*" (John 14:23).

The apostle Paul spoke of putting on "*the new man, which is renewed in knowledge* (concerning God, the Bible, and Christian way of life) *after the image of him that created him*" (Col. 3:10).

When we actively incorporate the Bible into our lives, we are incorporating the mind and nature of God! Jesus Christ is the Living Word personified (John 1:1). He lived God's commandments, inspired them to be written for our good and has told us as Christians to abide in them.

By living God's Word, allowing it to transform our lives, we actually live as Jesus would live. We "put on Christ" and become like Him — in thought and action! This process in reality remakes us! As the apostle Paul wrote, we are "changed into the same image from glory to glory, even as by the Spirit of the Lord" (II Cor. 3:18).

### **REAL LIFE EXAMPLES**

The point to be driven home is simply this: We can read the Bible, Bible study helps, and "understand" the Bible in an academic and theoretical fashion.

But, not until we actually begin applying it — testing and proving it through obedience — do we really grasp and internalize what God is like. There is simply no substitute for the experience of Christian living. Hebrews 5:14 says, "*But strong meat belongeth to them that are of full age, even those who by reason of use (a living application of God's word) have their senses exercised to discern both good and evil!*"

David, a man after God's own heart, knew the secret of understanding God's Word. He wrote: "*A good understanding have all they that DO HIS COMMANDMENTS...*" (Ps. 111:10). Notice — understanding follows the doing. When you practice the Word of God, you will begin to understand it. The Bible will come alive and make sense because you will have proved to yourself that it works.

It's similar to the training you might receive if you were trying out for a basketball team. The coach can tell you how to shoot the ball, how to dribble and pass it. He can show you films on technique. But, until you get on the court and try out the skills yourself, you won't really understand all that's involved. You might comprehend with your mind — but you won't get the "feel" of it until you bring your body into action.

The same principle is found in vocations such as auto mechanics. I know a man who likes to tinker around and do minor repair work on his car. He's got a manual that explains the basics. It's a good book and shows just how to make certain repairs. He's learned a lot from it, but until he put it to use, he only had a superficial understanding of its theory and instructions.

God's "instruction book to man," the Bible, is much the same way. We can read it, research it, analyze it and even memorize key verses — but until, we truly begin to apply it, we will never completely grasp or understand its real value and meaning.

Mr. Herbert Armstrong has said many times, "Unless knowledge is used and acted upon, it is of no practical value."

### **HOW TO LIVE THE WORD OF GOD**

Living the Word of God — and seeing its wonderful truths unfold — is one of the most exciting experiences available to us as human beings. Through it, God has revealed His powerful, invisible, spiritual laws. He has set in motion to govern our lives: love, interpersonal relations, health, finance, success, etc. Living the Word brings deep, rich rewards — both physically and spiritually.

Take the law of tithing as an example. A person would be hard put to understand how tithing works until he put it to the test in his life. But you and I know that it works from experience. We tithe — God blesses. As we obey God and trust Him in faith, He opens up doors of opportunity and pours out His blessings. The Bible works, because God stands behind it and makes it work.

Take another example in Prov. 3:6. "In all thy ways acknowledge Him, and he shall direct thy paths"! How could one ever know the truth of this promise until he took God at His Word and tried it out? The proof of understanding comes from doing! We do — we understand. God always follows through with His promises when we respond to His instructions.

### **LIVE BY EVERY WORD**

Jesus' instruction in Matthew 4:4 bears repeating: "...Man shall not live by bread alone, but by every word that proceedeth out of the mouth of God." Note how all-encompassing this verse is. We are to live by every word of God — not just by a few favorite passages that give us pleasure or inspiration. If we are to grow into the fullness of Christ, we must never pick and choose. We're to heed and obey every word that God has spoken.

By using this approach to daily Bible study, think of how well-rounded, balanced and mature you will become. By absorbing its message into the whole of your being, you will start to become perfect as God is perfect. (Matthew 5:48.) The apostle Paul said in II Tim. 3:16-17: "All scripture is given by inspiration of God, and is profitable for doctrine, for reproof, for correction, for instruction in righteousness: That the man of God may be perfect (complete), thoroughly furnished unto all good works!" It is by living the whole of scripture that we come to know God and grow in His fullness.

The Bible isn't a book to be left on a shelf — it's to be internalized and made a part of your life. Your outward conduct should be a constant reflection of God's Word working in you.

### **BRING THE BIBLE ALIVE**

We come now to a question which is probably the most essential: HOW DO YOU APPLY IT?

The following is a brief, simple little outline which can help you achieve the living reality of Bible study. It's a step-by-step plan that's easy to follow — and it works! I call it the "Three-A-Three-R-Formula" because the first three steps begin with the letter "A" and the last three steps begin with the letter "R." In sequence here they are:

1. **ATTENTION**: Give conscientious thought and attention to what you're reading as you dig into God's Word. Think and concentrate. Go beyond the surface — go beyond mere words. Realize that God is speaking to you personally, and that He expects you to give your utmost respect and honor to what He is saying.
2. **ASSOCIATION**: Associate every word and every thought to your personal life. Think of all the ways you can apply God's instructions to every facet of your existence — to your personal, family and social life. To your business, as well as to the entirety of your environment.
3. **APPLICATION**: It is not enough just to associate the teachings of God's Word. You've got to live them, to apply them, and to experience the abundant success they were designed to produce. God's Word is a living word which will bring great spiritual and physical rewards to you, as you apply it.
4. **REPETITION**: A one-time effort is not enough. You must keep applying God's Word over and over until it becomes your "second nature." Whatever precept or principle you're trying to inculcate — live it again and again until it becomes an unconscious habit.
5. **REFLECTION**: Being human, we need constantly to consider the progress we're making. We need to go over the scriptures we have studied and ask, "Are we measuring up? Are we forgetting anything? Did we overlook something? Are we really applying the Words of God everywhere in our life as we should?" This exercise should take place at least once a day (preferably before retiring) — if not several times — to ensure that we do not forget the things that we learned.
6. **REVIEW**: Whereas "reflection" has to do with specific daily applications of God's Word, "review" deals with our general, overall progress. Often we need to take a bigger view of what we are hoping to accomplish and whether we are growing. Looking back over the material we have covered as a weekly review can be extremely valuable to our growth. In other words, are we staying on track? Is everything coming together in clear focus? Are the pieces falling in place? Are we starting to assemble the superstructure of character?

### **BE A "DOER"**

Yes, this practical approach to Bible study can be one of the most exciting and thrilling aspects of

your life! And, the time to start is now! The apostle James exhorted us to be *"DOERS of the Word, and not hearers only..."* (James 1:22). David said he made haste and delayed not to keep God's commandments. (Ps. 119:60).

Searching out truths in commentaries and Bible helps can be helpful. Using the tools which God has made available can help round out your knowledge. But, most importantly, LIVE what you learn — and your true depth of understanding will increase. As the apostle Paul wrote: *"STUDY* (be diligent, actively live God's Word) *to shew thyself approved unto God, a workman that needeth not to be ashamed, rightly dividing the word of truth"* (II Tim 2:15).

This is the essence of true Bible study that can CHANGE YOUR LIFE for ETERNITY!

**-END-**

## CHAPTER 30

### **"JUST WHAT IS LIVING FAITH?"**

John Lewis was deeply worried, stunned and shaken. A drunken driver had run a red light and hit his 8-year-old son. The little boy now lay in the intensive care unit of a local hospital — in a coma. The doctors had done the best they could, but with so much internal bleeding and injury, they were doubtful whether the little boy would survive.

"Only God can help him now," one of the doctors said.

John Lewis was in the depths of despair. He felt distant from God — that God was "a long way off." How could he pray to Him for help when he had no faith that God would hear? He believed that God existed, but doubts and anxieties kept flooding his mind.

#### **YOU CAN HAVE FAITH**

In the above illustration, we see a man who, faced with a crisis, felt that his faith in God was lacking — that he just didn't have the confidence to pray and expect an answer. His inadequacy held him back from seeking the help that only God could give.

Have you ever felt a lack of faith when faced with a severe trial? If so, there is an ANSWER to this situation. You and I can have LIVING FAITH — every day — to face any problem or difficulty that arises.

How? By learning how to use the faith God gives!

#### **WHAT IT MEANS TO LIVE BY FAITH**

When many people think of the word "faith," they often think simply of a belief that God exists, that the Bible is His Word, that Jesus is the Savior of the world, etc.

Of course, these concepts are right. But, they do not capture the true, complete reality of what faith is. There is MORE to faith than just a dry, arid mental concept! True faith COMES FROM GOD as a gift (Eph. 2:8), which must be internalized and acted on if it's to bear fruit. In other words, faith without works is dead (James 2:17-26).

True living faith, then, can be summed up this way:

*Living faith which God imparts is based on a continuous, ongoing relationship between you and God — a constant intimate contact with God. It's a "track record" of TRUST — of experiencing God living His life in you.*

The Bible admonishes: "Trust in Him at all times" (Ps. 62:8). "Be thou in the fear of the Lord all the day long" (Prov. 23:17). Living faith involves being God-centered — "Walking with Him" — day by day throughout your life! The Bible speaks of "building up yourselves on your most holy faith" (Jude 20).

Those in God's Church who receive powerful answers to prayer are those who walk with God by faith (Heb. 10:38). They are in constant contact with Him. When a problem or trial arises, they don't have to "work up" faith — God has already given it to them. They have been walking by God's faith on a continual daily basis — experiencing in their lives a living, dynamic, ever-present relationship with God. They stand strong, resolute and immovable. They know that God will never leave them, nor forsake them (Heb. 13:5).

This, then, is the essence of living faith. You, too, can have it. The following twelve principles will show you how:

#### **1. START YOUR DAY WITH PRAYER.**

Put God first, from your waking moments. Place Him at the center of your thinking before personal desires and activities start crowding in. Remind yourself of who God is — your Lord and

Master — the One who created you, and the One to whom you must give an account at the Day of Judgment. Meditate on His power and greatness, on His glory and might. Spend the first few minutes in worship, praise and adoration. Give Him thanks. Ask Him to guide your life throughout the day and keep you from falling into sin. By starting each day with God in your thoughts, He will empower you with faith to face every problem.

## 2. **RENEW YOUR COVENANT WITH GOD EACH DAY.**

The day you were baptized and received God's Spirit marked the beginning of your covenant with God. You counted the cost and presented yourself a LIVING sacrifice (Luke 14:26-33; Romans 12:1). You promised to be faithful to the end of your life. Therefore, with each new day, renew your commitment to God. Renew your pledge of surrender and obedience — your unreserved loyalty and dedication. Always remember that you're bought with a price and belong to God (I Cor. 6:19-20). Keep this fact in the forefront of your mind and it will sustain the faith He has given you!

## 3. **BE CONSTANTLY AWARE OF GOD'S PRESENCE.**

God is almighty, all-powerful — omnipotent. He is glorious in strength and might. His Spirit emanates from Him and fills the entire universe! (Ps. 139:1-10). His invisible presence is everywhere. He is literally, at this very moment, upholding all things by the Word of His power. God sees and knows your every SECRET — your life is open to His view (Heb. 4:13). Not only are the very hairs of your head numbered; He even knows your thoughts and motives. Are you constantly aware of His glory and presence — tuned in to His wavelength? Do you fear and reverence Him — stand in awe of His sovereign power? You can never know the true meaning of faith until you experience the presence of God.

## 4. **BE INSTANT IN PRAYER.**

The Bible commands us to pray without ceasing. (I Thess. 5:17.) This means to stay in an attitude of prayer — to sustain an ongoing relationship with God. It means being able to COMMUNICATE with Him anywhere at anytime. When faced with a problem or tempted to sin, and you're unable to cry aloud — pray in your mind. This was the practice of Jesus Christ: "*Father, I thank thee that thou hast heard me. And I knew that thou hearest me always...*" (John 11:41-42). Pray for instant strength and self-control when encountering attitudes that are destructive and harmful. Allow nothing to break your contact with God. Set your will to walk with Him, no matter what the cost. Become so close and united to God that He's just a prayer away!

## 5. **START EXPECTING MIRACLES.**

Answered prayer is a miracle. God's protection is a miracle. His direct intervention in your life, however small or insignificant, is a miracle. As you grow in God's likeness and closer to Him each day, your awareness of these miracles will increase. To the degree you submit to and rely upon God, is the degree you can expect greater miracles. Don't think of God's miracles solely in terms of super-natural phenomena — that is, in great healings, in deliverance from horrendous trials, in unusual and extraordinary answers to prayer. Don't limit miracles to just the physical needs of life — food, shelter and clothing. Think of miracles as the power God provides in overcoming Satan, temptation and discouragement — as the strength He gives to live a clean and holy life. If you are truly walking in faith, you should begin to experience more and more miracles day after day.

## 6. **RESPOND TO THE INFLUENCE OF GOD'S HOLY SPIRIT.**

God's Spirit is an active power that flows from Himself continually. It's the totality of His mind and strength, His power and glory. It's the summation of all the qualities and attributes that comprise His life and being. God's Spirit is His holy presence diffused throughout the universe. With it He created all things, and with it He sustains what He made. It is also the power He uses in building character in those whom He has called and chosen to be His sons (Phil. 2:12-13; Eph. 3:16-20). How does it function? It speaks to us through promptings and urges,



impulses and desires. From His own mind, God projects or transmits thoughts to our minds, thus moving us, stirring us and leading us to do His will. God's Spirit works in conjunction with His own Word, opening up new riches and depths of understanding. The Bible tells us not to grieve or quench God's Spirit — for it is through this power that He imparts His life, faith and righteousness to us. Are you responding, changing and repenting when God's Spirit moves you? Are you drinking in of His fullness, becoming more and more like Him each day?

#### 7. **STIR UP YOURSELF WHEN YOU START TO SLIP OR SIN.**

As you walk with God, He will convict your conscience when you start to slip or edge toward sin. This is a facet of His saving grace, a process by which He removes the blemishes and wrinkles from your life. When moved by God's Spirit to recognize error or sin — respond immediately! Don't delay! Crush out the temptation before it takes root and starts to grow. Don't allow sin to get a stranglehold. Do as David did, "*I made haste, and delayed not to keep thy commandments*" (Ps. 119:60). Some days are especially evil and fraught with troubles. The Devil becomes unusually active, works overtime and tries every trick to make you fall. Be prepared to resist his attacks — be vigilant and watchful (1 Pet. 5:8-9). Never drop your guard for a moment. Keep yourself in the fear of God, so that He may grant you the faith to live triumphantly.

#### 8. **USE YOUR BIBLE AS A QUICK AND READY GUIDE.**

Jesus Christ was filled with the Word of God. It was a source of continual guidance and inspiration to Him. We, too, should have God's Word living in us (Matt. 4:4). When making decisions or facing problems, try to think of a scripture that would apply. Moreover, actually live what you study each day. Test it, prove it, do it — experience it's effectual power and inspiration (1 Thes. 5:21; 1 Thes. 2:13). Remember, it's not the hearers (or readers) of the Word that will be justified, but the doers (Rom. 2:13). When you read a command in the Bible, stop and think of ways to apply it. Expand and magnify the meaning to everyday life. Get into the habit of using the Bible as a quick and instant reference. Allow it to so fill your mind that it becomes a basis of your constant behavior. Faith comes by hearing and obeying God's Word (Rom. 10:17). The more you study and experience it's depths — the greater your faith will become.

#### 9. **LAY DOWN YOUR LIFE IN CHRISTIAN SERVICE.**

Jesus Christ said, "*Greater love hath no man than this, that a man lay down his life for his friends,*" (John 15:13). Here is one of the most powerful and succinct definitions of love in the Bible. This is love in action — love elevated to its high spiritual state. Love is giving your life in service to others; selfishness is serving primarily yourself. With each person you meet is a new opportunity to express love in some form — kindness, courtesy, encouragement, recognition, appreciation, etc. There are literally dozens and hundreds of opportunities around you to show love each day. The more of God's Spirit you drink in — the more you will be made aware of the needs and sufferings of others. Overcoming is largely a matter of putting down self and allowing God to fill you with His love, compassion, and faith.

#### 10. **REDEEM THE TIME — MAKE EACH DAY COUNT.**

With each passing day you're a step closer to the Kingdom of God. Therefore, strive to improve over yesterday's performance. Work hard at setting the right example. Try to upgrade your conduct and actions in every aspect of life — work at being a better husband and father, wife and mother, employee and neighbor. Realize who you are — a begotten son of God, called and chosen to glorify God in this darkened world. Don't dwell on evil thoughts or entertain wrong attitudes. Spend your time pursuing positive ventures, instead of finding fault with others or engaging in destructive talk. Redeem the time by striving to be a better servant of God as you prepare yourself for Christ's return.

#### 11. **HOLD ON TO GOD IN YOUR DARKEST HOUR.**

Trials will come in every Christian's life. "*Many are the afflictions of the righteous...*" (Ps. 34:19). "*Yea, and all that will live godly in Christ Jesus shall suffer persecution*" (11 Tim. 3:12). "...we must

through much tribulation enter into the Kingdom of God" (Acts 14:22). Trials, then, are the common experience of every Christian. But some trials are greater than others and more difficult to bear. Some trials are so severe you'll be tempted to give up and quit — a grave illness, death in the family, loss of a job, a possible lawsuit where you stand to lose all your earthly possessions, etc. There are times that the Devil will unleash his full wrath and fury in an effort to overthrow you. During these moments, hold on to God and trust Him to the bitter end. No matter what the circumstances, don't doubt or waver, faint or falter — anchor your trust solidly in Him! "Submit yourselves therefore to God. Resist the Devil and he will flee from you" (James 4:7). When facing your "Red Sea," stand still as Moses did and wait confidently for God's help and salvation.

## 12. **KEEP YOUR EYE ON THE DAY OF JUDGMENT.**

The Bible says, "For we must all appear before the judgment seat of Christ; that everyone may receive the things done in his body, according to that he hath done, whether it be good or bad" (II Cor. 5:10). The judgment of God is real and certain. No human mortal can possibly escape. God has decreed in His infinite wisdom that each must stand and give an account before Christ of the way he has chosen to live his life. We, then, should live each day with this in mind. It should be one of the greatest incentives to living a righteous and holy life. For the Christian, the judgment has a double meaning. Not only does it portend a final accounting; it also means that his life is under judgment now. "For the time is come that judgment must begin at the household of God..." (I Pet. 4:17). As Christians, our lives at this very moment are under the scrutiny of God. He is monitoring our thoughts, actions and attitudes to see what is in our hearts and whether we love Him! Ultimately every secret thing will be brought to light. Some will be raised to eternal life and great rewards; others will be raised to everlasting shame (Dan. 12:1-2). For those of us who are being judged now, let us awake to God's great calling and make our election sure.

## **CONCLUSION**

Here, then, are twelve simple steps on how to live by faith. Read them again and review them frequently. Make them a part of your everyday life. They will do little more than give you a temporary lift, unless you resolve to APPLY them DILIGENTLY.

Living faith is an ongoing relationship with God — a constant daily trust. As you exercise God's faith, it will grow stronger like a muscle that is developed. You'll discover that looking to God in any circumstance will eventually become your instant first thought — an instinctive, habitual response! This is the meaning of "living by faith."

-END-

## CHAPTER 31

### **PERSONAL QUESTION AND ANSWER SESSION FOR GIRLS**

#### **1. HOW DO I HANDLE A FELLOW WHO STARTS TO GET "PHYSICAL"?**

First, you'd be wise to consider your own actions. Are you encouraging his advances by your own suggestive behavior? Do you giggle or laugh at his off-colored jokes? Do you nudge too closely and invite his caresses and affection?

If your motives are right and your conduct is unquestionable, your next action might be to do the following: Remind him of the "rules," then gently but firmly remove his hand or arm that has wandered onto your shoulder or elsewhere. If he persists, tell him frankly that you don't appreciate his forwardness and that you respect him a great deal more when he treats you as a lady. Tell him you don't like for him to be that familiar, and you want him to discontinue his action. If this doesn't work, stop dating him. (If all else fails, you might tell him you have a black belt in Karate. )

#### **2. WHAT DO I SAY TO A FELLOW WHO GETS ROMANTICALLY INVOLVED ON THE FIRST DATE OR TWO?**

If you sense he's developing feelings for you, or if he should openly express his sentiments, there are a couple of approaches you could take:

- a. Discourage his overtures by not dating him as often.
- b. Candidly and tactfully discuss the matter with him. You could say something like this:  
*"There are a lot of fine things about you I respect, and I want to be your friend — but I don't want to see you hurt by allowing you to get that involved with me. Nothing personal — but I simply don't want a serious relationship with anyone right now. I have plans for the future. I'm just not ready yet, etc.*

#### **3. I SEEM TO "TURN GUYS ON" TOO FAST. WHAT AM I DOING WRONG?**

Perhaps nothing. Some women are naturally attractive and beautiful. You can't alter your body — but there are things you can double check.

- a. **Clothing:** Do you wear tight fitting garments that overly accentuate your figure and physical form? This would include such styles as jeans that fit too snugly, sweaters that stretch too tightly, mini-skirts that come up too high, plunging necklines, bare midriffs, etc. Check with your friends and get their honest opinions! Examine your secret motives! Remember you can be appealing, lovely and beautiful — but modest in your dress at the same time. The key is to accentuate your total femininity — not your sexuality!
- b. **Demeanor:** Your overall conduct — how you walk, sit and carry yourself in general — is very important. If you appear overly active and aggressive, if you "flutter your eyes" with a "come-on" type of look, your actions can be misinterpreted by the fellows you meet. Being active in sports is one thing — but to carry this rugged tomboyish enthusiasm over into your daily relationships will scare most men away. Be friendly and vivacious, yes — but maintain a certain modesty and reserve. Your manner of life should always reflect a high degree of self-respect and propriety.

#### **4. MY BOSS, WHO IS NOT IN THE CHURCH, KEEPS MAKING ADVANCES AT ME. HOW DO I HANDLE THE SITUATION WITHOUT GETTING FIRED?**

First, be sure that you keep your relationship in the office as "strictly business. " Some girls get into trouble by being too friendly and unduly eager to serve, which some men misread as "invita-

tions" for advances. It pays to strike a careful balance between being responsive and cooperative and giving the impression that you are an easy mark with a low resistance level.

If the boss or supervisor makes an advance, however, plainly tell him how you feel: *"I think you are a fine boss, and I respect you a great deal. But, I can't allow myself to get involved. I respect you and your organization too much for that. Nor do I want to come between you and your family. I must be able to live with my conscience — and I always want to be an employee you can trust and have confidence in. If I degrade my standards, I won't respect myself as much — nor will I be as trustworthy an employee in my own mind. Since you've been fair with me in every other way, I know you'll honor my values."*

If this approach doesn't discourage him, you could possibly appeal to his boss for help, or ask for a transfer to another department. If all else fails, you may have to leave the company.

## **5. WITHOUT APPEARING FORWARD, HOW CAN I GET A CERTAIN GUY TO ASK ME FOR A DATE?**

This can take a little "homework," but the KEY is to find out some of his interests which you can use to make yourself attractive to him. Learn something about his background by talking to his friends, or to other girls whom he has dated.

Then, work it out so you can meet him and be able to talk with him about some of these interests: You perhaps could introduce yourself to him while you "just happen" to be both walking to class, or sit down beside him at the dining hall, or invite him to a group party or a campus function. By talking to him about what HE likes, he will automatically think that you are an "unusually nice person" by showing an interest in what he enjoys. It can probably result in a prompt date for you — and a lasting friendship.

Don't be "gushy" or overdo it in trying to win his approval. Remember, most men don't like to be chased. It may drive him away if you come on too strong. Let him think he's chasing you. Doesn't the Bible say to the women: "Let her be chased (chaste)"?

## **6. WHAT'S THE DIFFERENCE BETWEEN BEING FRIENDLY AND BEING FLIRTY?**

Being flirty is a "cheap" way of attracting attention to oneself and the "wares" a girl has to offer. It's using subtle body movements and charm and flattering words to get a fellow to notice her — to like her — to date her. It's an expression of self-centeredness and immaturity. Most men don't "like" a flirty girl in the truest sense of the word. They may find it momentarily cute — but degrading in time.

A mature, feminine friendliness, on the other hand, is a gracious art that men find very appealing. We're talking about expressing a genuine outgoing concern for all people in general. She's able to make them feel respected and important, relaxed and comfortable. Kindness and compassion are trademarks of her life. Her profile is milder and sweeter — more becoming than the woman who tries to flirt her way to popularity and success.

## **7. HOW DO I TURN OFF A GUY I AM NOT REALLY INTERESTED IN, BUT WHO KEEPS BUGGING ME FOR DATES?**

In some cases a girl has little recourse but to be boldly forthright and blunt. Perhaps you should have a private talk with him and tell him you like him as a friend — that he has nice qualities which you recognize and appreciate — but that right now you are not interested in a steady relationship. Be tactful and courteous. Don't leave him wounded and hurt — try to stress his good, positive points and build him up. But, also, make it clear where you stand. Let him know that you are not rejecting him as a person, but that you just don't want to get involved.

## **8. HOW CAN I BE PHYSICALLY ATTRACTIVE WITHOUT APPEARING SEXY?**

This has to do with an inner attitude and one's selection of clothing. A girl can be well groomed and beautiful — without being "sexy." Clothes which accent the sexual aspect can get her a lot of cat calls and ogling looks, but is that really what she wants? A thinking girl will realize that sensible men will be looking for charm, poise, personality and character — as well as outward attractiveness.

By correctly emphasizing her total femininity, a girl can avoid the impression of emphasizing

sex. She should think in terms of graciousness and charm. A proper selection of hair style, clothing colors and patterns, and types of garments which don't emphasize solely the female shape and form can give her a lovely wardrobe and appearance which will BUILD HER RESPECT in the eyes of all who see her. I'm certainly not saying that you ought to wear shapeless clothing which looks like a flour sack. A woman's body has a definite shape and contours which proper fitting clothing cannot help but bring out. Just don't overdo it.

**9. HOW CAN I TELL A GUY I'M NOT INTERESTED IN MARRIAGE WHEN I SENSE HE'S GETTING TOO SERIOUS?**

This is another case where a candid discussion is necessary. If you're definitely not interested in this particular guy and the relationship could never work, kindly tell him so he'll know how you feel. To delay will only prolong the agony and the hurt. If you are simply not interested in marriage — period — for personal reasons such as wanting to complete college, pay off debts, enter a career first, etc., say so respectfully.

Let him know that you like him as a friend, but that you won't allow yourself to become serious with anyone right now! Let him down gently.

**10. HOW CAN I OVERCOME SHYNESS, INFERIORITY, AND SELF-CONSCIOUS FEAR?**

The best way to work on this type of problem is to participate in group activities which are easy for you — and where you don't stand out. Mingle in the group where you can loosen up and blend in socially. Don't start with the highest caliber of the "social elite." Start with those you feel comfortable with — perhaps whose background is similar to your own — and go up from there. There will always be some nervousness involved with new exposures. Don't worry about it. Just work on developing experience in small steps and confidence will come in time.

**11. WHAT IF MY STEADY BOYFRIEND, WHO IS GENERALLY A TERRIFIC GUY, REQUESTS THAT I WEAR TIGHT FITTING CLOTHING OR MINI-SKIRTS WHICH I PERSONALLY FEEL IS INAPPROPRIATE FOR EVERYDAY USE?**

First, be objective about his suggestion. Do your clothes fit well, or are they rather loose and old-fashioned? If so, perhaps you could use a change.

On the other hand, if you perceive that his suggestion comes from wrong reasons, you might want to be frank with him and say, *"If you really care for me, you won't ask me to do something that is contrary to my better judgment. I want to be someone you can respect, and I must follow my conscience."* Be honest with him, but with feminine gentleness.

**12. WHAT CAN BE DONE TO PREVENT A RUMOR FROM STARTING THAT I'M SERIOUSLY INTERESTED IN SOME GUY I HAVE ONLY DATED ONCE OR TWICE?**

Very simple. Anyone can start such a rumor (perhaps the guy himself), but the best way to stop it is to date others. Don't date the same person all the time — make yourself available and give other guys a chance to take you out. And, if someone does come up and ask about a certain fellow, just smile and say, *"No, we're just friends. There's nothing serious between us."* Don't make a big scene. A simple answer is the best — in conjunction with a cheerful example.

-END-



## **CHAPTER 32**

### **THE POWER TO CHOOSE**

**I. DID YOU REALIZE THAT YOU POSSESS AN INCREDIBLE POWER THAT CAN REVOLUTIONIZE YOUR LIFE AND TRANSFORM YOU INTO A MORE PRODUCTIVE AND SUCCESSFUL PERSON?**

- A. That it can make you more self-assured and confident.
- B. That it can enable you to raise your grade point average and gain a great deal more knowledge from your college classes.
- C. That it can open up your personality and help you to be more radiant, outgoing and effervescent.
- D. That it can help you achieve just about any goal you desire as long as it is realistic and within the realm of God's law!
- E. Please allow me to explain: I am not advocating that you pull yourself up by your own bootstraps.
- F. Nor am I remotely inferring you can achieve true lasting success without God's help.
- G. To the contrary. I'm referring to an actual power God has given you to use for his honor and glory — a power that He stimulates through His Holy Spirit.

**II. STOP AND THINK FOR A MOMENT ABOUT THE PEOPLE YOU SECRETLY ADMIRE!**

- A. Did you ever wonder what makes them tick and why they seem so “lucky” and get all the breaks?
- B. Why they are so well-adjusted and have many friends?
- C. Why they seem to have such untiring drive and energy to get things done?

**III. IT'S SIMPLY BECAUSE THEY'VE LEARNED HOW TO TAP THIS INNER RESOURCE WITH WHICH EVERY HUMAN BEING IS BORN.**

- A. They've discovered the simple, little secret that all achievers have found.
- B. An inner power so real and dynamic that if earnestly applied can turn your life around!

**IV. WHAT IS THIS POWER?**

- A. It's a gift that God has given and it's a power you've had from birth.
- B. It's a power you use every day — but probably were unaware of it.
- C. As a matter of fact, you've already used this power a number of times since you awoke this morning.
- D. God gave you this power in order to be useful, productive and a fulfilled human being.
- E. It is not God's Spirit, but a tool which God's Spirit uses to help you grow, overcome and build righteous character.
- F. You can never make God's Kingdom without His Holy Spirit — but in order to receive and act on God's Spirit, you must use this power.

**V. WHAT, THEN, IS IT?**

- A. Put in its simplest form — it's the power to choose.
- B. That's right — it's the power to make decisions affecting the way you live your life.
- C. It's the power to decide whether you'll walk with God and be a true overcomer or follow Satan and go the way of this world.
- D. In essence, it's the power to decide whether you'll succeed or fail.

**VI. BEFORE EXPLAINING HOW TO USE THIS POWER, IT'S VERY IMPORTANT TO UNDERSTAND GOD'S TEACHING ON THE SUBJECT.**

- A. Not only has God given you the power to choose, He's also commanded you to use it.
- B. Note these scriptures:
  - 1. Deut. 30:19 — “I call heaven and earth to record this day against you, that I have set before you life and death, blessing and cursing: therefore choose life, that both thou and thy seed may live.”

2. Josh. 24:14-15 — *"Now therefore fear the Lord, and serve him in sincerity and in truth: and put away the gods which your fathers served on the other side of the flood, and in Egypt; and serve ye the Lord. (15) And if it seem evil unto you to serve the Lord, choose you this day whom ye will serve; whether the gods which your fathers served that were on the other side of the flood, or the gods of the Amorites, in whose land ye dwell: but as for me and my house, we will serve the Lord."*
3. Prov. 1:29, 31 — *"For that they hated knowledge, and did not choose the fear of the Lord: (31) Therefore shall they eat of the fruit of their own way, and be filled with their own devices."*
4. Prov. 3:31 — *"Envy thou not the oppressor, and choose none of his ways."*
5. Rev. 3:20 — *"Behold, I stand at the door, and knock: if any man hear my voice, and open the door, I will come in to him, and will sup with him, and he with me."*
6. Rev. 22:17 — *"And the Spirit and the bride say, Come. And let him that heareth say, Come. And let him that is athirst come. And whosoever will, let him take the water of life freely."*

## **VII. HOW CAN WE, THEN, WITH GOD'S HELP, HARNESS THIS POWER AND APPLY IT TO EVERYDAY EXPERIENCE?**

- A. Before giving the answer, let me first tell you about a unique law that most people have little knowledge of.
- B. Yet, it has a profound effect on the way you think, live and act.
- C. Yes, on the way you choose.
- D. It's called the 'pleasure-pain principle.'

## **VIII. JUST WHAT IS THIS STRANGE-SOUNDING LAW AND HOW DOES IT WORK?**

- A. We human beings are always seeking things that will bring us pleasure.
  1. We might say that life is a constant 'want.'
  2. We are constantly wanting things that will give us comfort, satisfy our needs and please our senses.
  3. This might include such matters as:
    - a. Eating when we're hungry.
    - b. Drinking when we're thirsty.
    - c. Sleeping when we're tired.
    - d. Buying things we want.
    - e. Listening to music.
    - f. Watching TV.
- B. At the same time we're seeking ways to bring pleasure, we're also avoiding circumstances that produce pain.
  1. We attempt to shield ourselves from situations that hurt us or cause discomfort.
  2. This might involve such examples as:
    - a. Coming in out of the rain.
    - b. Avoiding embarrassing situations.
    - c. Putting off chores and assignments that require mental effort or hard work.
    - d. Getting up early.
- C. Whichever of these two drives — pleasure or pain — dominates is the one you're most likely to choose.

## **IX. THIS NOW BRINGS US TO A MOST SURPRISING TRUTH.**

- A. True success cannot be attained simply by seeking pleasure.
- B. To attain success, you must also experience pain.
- C. It takes both pleasure and pain to achieve the goals you want in life.
- D. But the amazing truth is that to attain success you must reverse the process — you must put pain before pleasure!
- E. This is a great law of life the average person does not realize — that to enjoy the true pleasure of success he must first work, toil and experience pain.

## **X. LET'S NOTICE HOW THIS IMPORTANT TRUTH IS REVEALED IN GOD'S WORD.**

- A. Scriptures:
  1. Acts 14:22 — *"We must through much tribulation enter into the kingdom of God."*
  2. II Tim. 2:12 — *"If we suffer, we shall also reign with him: if we deny him, he also will deny US."*



3. Gal. 6:7-9 — “Be not deceived; God is not mocked: for whatsoever a man soweth, that shall he also reap. (8) For he that soweth to his flesh shall of the flesh reap corruption; but he that soweth to the Spirit shall of the Spirit reap life everlasting. (9) And let us not be weary, in well doing: for in due season we shall reap, if we faint not.”
  4. James 5:7 — “Be patient therefore, brethren, unto the coming of the Lord. Behold, the husbandman waiteth for the precious fruit of the earth, and hath long patience for it, until he receive the early and latter rain.”
  5. Acts 20:35 — “I have shewed you all things, how that so labouring ye ought to support the weak, and to remember the words of the Lord Jesus, how he said, It is more blessed to give than to receive.”
  6. Luke 6:38 — “Give, and it shall be given unto you; good measure, pressed down, and shaken together, and running over, shall men give into your bosom. For with the same measure that ye mete withal it shall be measured to you again.”
- B. The significant principle to focus on is that according to God's Word, work precedes reward; seed planting precedes harvest; practice precedes perfection — or pain before pleasure.
1. This has always been the law of life.
  2. And it always will be.

**XI. BUT WHAT WILL ALSO COME AS A SURPRISE IS THAT EVEN THOUGH YOU EXPERIENCE PAIN IN THE PURSUIT OF SUCCESS, IT WILL EVENTUALLY BECOME A SOURCE OF PLEASURE.**

- A. You'll know your efforts will pay off.
- B. You'll receive a reward down range.
- C. You'll eventually reach your goal — if you're patient and endure.

**XII. WHAT THIS ALL BOILS DOWN TO IS THAT THE POWER OF CHOICE FINDS ITS MOTIVATION IN THE PLEASURE-PAIN PRINCIPLE.**

- A. You are consciously or subconsciously making choices each day based on this law.
- B. Virtually every action in your life originates here.
- C. Either you're caught up in the pursuit of pleasure or deterred by the fear of pain.

**XIII. I'D NOW LIKE TO DISCUSS WITH YOU SOME OF THE MAJOR CHOICES YOU FACE AS AN A.C. STUDENT.**

- A. Most of these decisions will seem painful at first.
- B. But the pleasurable result will be well worth it.
- C. You can choose to:
  1. COMMIT YOURSELF WHOLELY TO GOD or put personal interests and desires above God and relegate Him to second place.
  2. SERVE GOD WITH AS MUCH FERVOR AND ZEAL AS YOU FORMERLY SERVED SATAN or lazily flow with the current of apathy.
  3. STRIKE A DEATH BLOW TO SELP-CENTEREDNESS or pamper and satiate your carnal desires.
  4. TAKE CONTROL OF YOUR LIFE AND YOUR TIME or be pushed around and ruled by day-to-day circumstances.
  5. IMMERSE YOURSELF WHOLLY IN THE AMBASSADOR EXPERIENCE or hide in the background and stay on the fringes.
  6. DILIGENTLY APPLY YOURSELF TO EVERY TASK AT HAND or cut corners and get by with just the minimum.
  7. TREAT EACH CLASS AND ASSIGNMENT AS A VITAL GROWTH EXPERIENCE or fail to see the intrinsic value each opportunity affords.
  8. RESPOND TO CORRECTION AND MAKE AN ALL-OUT EFFORT TO CHANGE or resent correction, justify your mistakes and go merrily down the road to mediocrity and failure.
  9. ADD A TOUCH OF QUALITY AND EXCELLENCE TO EVERY UNDERTAKING or rush through your duties and produce a substandard product.
  10. COME TO GRIPS WITH YOUR FEARS, HANGUPS AND FEELINGS OF INADEQUACY or remain paralyzed with shyness, timidity and negative self-doubt.
  11. BE ENTHUSIASTIC TOWARD YOUR JOB AND BUILD A REPUTATION AS A TOP-FLIGHT EMPLOYEE or look on your job as a necessary burden just to pay the bills.

12. PLAN AHEAD AND STEADFASTLY PURSUE YOUR GOALS or be buffeted about like a ship at sea with no port in sight.
13. BOUNCE BACK FROM DEFEAT AND KEEP MARCHING FORWARD or throw in the towel when the going gets tough.
14. GET TO KNOW YOUR FACULTY AND ADMINISTRATORS or hide in your cocoon for fear of self-disclosure.
15. SAVE MONEY AS A MATTER OF HABIT AND WISELY USE YOUR RESOURCES or spend every cent you earn.
16. ESTABLISH A WIDE BASE OF FRIENDS or associate mainly with your own comfortable group.
17. PRACTICE GOD'S FORM OF DATING or get romantically carried away with a premature relationship.
18. GENUINELY LOVE OTHERS AS YOUR SECOND HIGHEST SPIRITUAL PRIORITY or be so wrapped up in your own world and forget that others also inhabit this globe.
19. BE FAITHFUL, GENUINE AND TRUE or live a life of hypocrisy and deceit and practice a double standard.
20. PREPARE AND QUALIFY TO BE USED IN GOD'S WORK or think that the extra effort isn't worth it and that your chances of future employment are nil.

#### **XIV. NOW FOR SOME CHOICES YOU SHOULD MAKE EACH DAY!**

- A. Again, they will require thought and painful self-discipline.
- B. But, remember, here is a key area where character is built.
- C. It is in making right decisions and using God's power to follow through.
- D. List of points:
  1. Bounce out of bed when the alarm goes off.
  2. Get in prayer before you start the day.
  3. Keep your room and study area neat, clean and well-organized.
  4. Faithfully perform your dorm duties without having to be reminded.
  5. Greet each person with a friendly smile instead of a scowl or grumpy face.
  6. Force yourself to be cheerful, outgoing and pleasant to be around.
  7. Try to encourage others who are having a rough time and brighten their day.
  8. Consciously strive to please God and earnestly seek His will.
  9. Open your mind to His Holy Spirit and allow it to guide and teach you.
  10. Be calm and gracious when others rub you the wrong way.
  11. Be a good Samaritan and recognize the opportunities to serve others all around you.
  12. Learn and practice proper etiquette and social graces.
  13. Guard your health, watch your weight, and limit junk foods.
  14. Obey dorm rules and be considerate of the right of others.
  15. Build your vocabulary and integrate new words into your conversation.
  16. Get to bed at a decent hour and restrict the long bull sessions or late-night TV.
  17. Monitor your words and learn to be diplomatic.
  18. Resist the temptation to gossip and tear others down.
  19. Learn to say 'no' to the things you shouldn't do and 'yes' to the things you should.
  20. Help protect and maintain the high standards of God's College.

#### **XV. IN SUMMARY, GOD HAS GIVEN YOU A MARVELOUS GIFT: THE POWER TO CHOOSE.**

- A. Will you use it to work hard and make something of, your life?
- B. Or will you choose the easy, painless route and amount to nothing?
- C. It isn't enough to make decisions — you must also follow through!
- D. Remember, what you'll be tomorrow is determined by your choices today!

-END-

## **CHAPTER 33**

### **PRACTICAL EVERYDAY WISDOM FOR GIRLS**

#### **I. LET THE DESIRE FOR GOD'S KINGDOM BE YOUR CONSTANT MOTIVATION.**

- A. Matt. 6:33 = "Seek ye first the kingdom of God and His righteousness."
- B. How do you develop this desire?
  - 1. By thinking it through — Reward vs. Judgment.
  - 2. By the power of strong mental commands.

#### **II. CENTER YOUR LIFE AND AMBITIONS AROUND YOUR GOD-ORDAINED ROLE.**

- A. Keep in your consciousness the purpose for which you were created.
- B. Study this in your Bible.
- C. Be alert — on the lookout — for ideas that will enrich your understanding.
- D. Go through list — Profile of Mature Woman.
- E. "The deepest tenderness a woman can show to a man is to help him do his duty."

#### **III. LEARN TO BE SUBMISSIVE.**

- A. This is the one most powerful attribute of womanhood — one that will enhance your prestige as a woman more than any other.
- B. A submissive spirit is reflected in ATTITUDE — a state of mind.
- C. How to practice submission.
  - 1. To your boss.
  - 2. To professors.
  - 3. To dates.
  - 4. Men in general.
- D. Opposite of submission.
  - 1. Acting independent and superior.
  - 2. Belligerent and bossy — haughty.
  - 3. Picky and critical.
  - 4. Wanting to run the show and have the last word.
- E. One of the reasons marriages are going sour.
  - 1. New husband doesn't know how to cope with this kind of problem.
  - 2. Not the kind of girl he married.
- F. Read pamphlet — "Charm Is An Inner Thing." (7)

#### **IV. IN ORDER TO GROW, YOU MUST HAVE GOALS.**

- A. You need three types:
  - 1. Long range.
  - 2. Intermediate.
  - 3. Short term.
- B. Read from "Condensations"
  - 1. Technique of Getting Things Done (43-85)
  - 2. How to Get Control of Your Time (2)
- C. Some practical goals you might set.
  - 1. Lose weight.
  - 2. Clear up complexion.
  - 3. Improve your posture.

4. Improve your personality.
  5. Bring up your grades.
  6. Overcome undesirable habits.
  7. Embark on new ventures.
    - a. Make a new dress.
    - b. Learn to crochet or decoupage.
    - c. Read a book.
  8. A date with a special guy.
    - a. Find out his interests and become knowledgeable in those areas.
      - (1) History buff.
      - (2) Education major.
      - (3) Football — sports.
    - b. Make yourself appealing.
      - (1) Dress smartly.
      - (2) Hair tidy.
      - (3) Perfume — sweet and subtle.
      - (4) Smile — positive mental attitude.
- D. Take advantage of super opportunities.

#### **V. DISCIPLINE YOUR IMPULSES (URGES) AND GET TOUGH ON (WITH) YOURSELF.**

- A. Failure to set goals causes you to waste time.
- B. But once you set them — carry through to the end.
- C. Read from book — "TECH" (p. 113-126)

#### **VI. GET UNPLEASANT JOBS OUT OF THE WAY FIRST.**

- A. Read from "TECH" (p. 128-155)

#### **VII. LEARN HOW TO MAKE DECISIONS QUICKLY.**

- A. Read from "TECH" (p. 158-171)

#### **VIII. HAVE EXTRA WORK PLANNED FOR ODD MOMENTS.**

- A. Read from "TECH" (p. 232-300)

#### **IX. ASSOCIATE WITH SUCCESSFUL PEOPLE.**

- A. Proverb — *"Walk with wise men and you will be wise."*
- B. Read from "TECH" (p. 87-93)
- C. Observe successful people.
  1. Motivation comes from observation.
  2. Seeing how others work.

#### **X. HOW TO COPE WITH FRUSTRATION.**

##### **A. Causes**

1. Feelings of inferiority and inadequacy.
2. Failure to reach one's full ability or capacity.
3. Comparing one's self to others.
4. Pressures of homework and tests.
5. Escapism and resultant feeling of guilt and failure due to unwise use of time.
6. Lack of mental growth and development.
7. Seeming inability to control emotions.
8. Lack of dates.
9. Discouraged because of lack of experience, wisdom, and ability in coping with unfamiliar or unpleasant situations.

##### **B. Solutions**

1. Nail down specific causes.
2. Take action to improve.

**XI. A GRAND LESSON TO BE LEARNED — "LEARN HOW TO INTERACT WITH PEOPLE"**

- A. One of your biggest fears is people.
  - 1. Want to like you for what you are.
  - 2. Feel insecure with your personality.
- B. Yet God commands you to learn to love.
- C. People have egos — feelings — tender and sensitive spirits.
- D. Be careful not to bruise them.
- E. Prayer will help.
- F. God's Spirit acts like a smooth oil — takes the friction out.
- G. Act as though you are not afraid and you won't be afraid.

**XII. HOW TO GET MORE OUT OF YOUR CLASSES.**

- A. Be on the "look out" for thoughts, ideas, concepts that will help you reach your goals.
- B. Have a greater purpose than just acquiring dead knowledge and making good grades.
- C. Acquire knowledge to use.
- D. Review your notes just before and after each class.

**XIII. START ACQUIRING A "HOPE CHEST" OF IDEAS!**

- A. Girls used to build a hope chest of "things" — in preparation for marriage.
- B. I recommend you acquire a hope chest of ideas.
- C. Buy a permanent-bound notebook — call it "Hope Chest Scrapbook" or "Ideas for Marriage" or "Treasure Chest of Ideas."
- D. Be alert for ideas that will enable you to be an effective wife and mother.
- E. If your goals are clearly fixed, your mind will attract to itself all manner of ideas.
- F. Record these for permanent reference.
- G. As you review your notebook once a week, you will write the contents in your heart and mind.
- H. What a treasure to present your daughters when they grow up.

**XIV. COMMENTS FROM MOTHERS.**

- A. *Accept responsibility.*
  - 1. Making beds.
  - 2. Being neat and organized.
  - 3. Follow through — when someone is depending on you.
- B. *Don't depend on others to do things you should do for yourself.*
  - 1. Builds esteem and confidence.
  - 2. May have leaned on Mom too much.
  - 3. Go to others if you really need help.
- C. *Seek and ask for counsel from older woman.*
  - 1. Bible injunction.
  - 2. Don't be ashamed or feel inferior.
  - 3. They have good wisdom to share.
  - 4. Develop better rapport.
- D. *If you are old enough to think about marriage, start preparing now.*
  - 1. Don't just prepare for a career, if you have marriage in mind as a long range goal.
  - 2. Get all the counsel you can — quietly. Don't announce it to the man.
  - 3. Food, diet, child rearing, learn math, accounting, how to read a contract, etc.
- E. *If a girl is going to look for a certain job, she should educate herself for it.*
  - 1. Take classes.
  - 2. Give away free time for practice.
- F. *Don't rush into anything.*
  - 1. Watch your emotions.
  - 2. Get counsel.
  - 3. Pray for wisdom.
- G. *Learn how to work and do things right.*
  - 1. The best you can — put quality into work.
  - 2. Develop the habit of working with a pleasant attitude.

H. *Be feminine.*

1. Watch your mannerisms — sitting, standing, posture.
2. Don't be tomboyish or overly athletic.

I. *Watch how you use your idle time.*

1. Will blow it on useless chaff.
2. This will engender wishful thinking and lofty daydreams.

J. *Remember your morals and keep your name good.*

1. Family name.
2. Church.

**XV. THE ULTIMATE WAY TO BECOME HAPPY IS TO GROW OUTWARDLY AND START PRODUCING.**

- A. Dress and keep the garden principle.
- B. Psalms 1:1-2 = "*Happy is the man...*"

**XVI. WHY DELAY — START NOW!**

- A. Instill in your life the motto — DO IT NOW.
- B. Matt. 5:48

**-END-**

## **CHAPTER 34**

### **THE PURPOSE OF DATING**

#### **I. WHY ARE WE HERE?**

- A. Answer: To help the single people of God's Church to understand their role in this modern 20th century
- B. We are not here to harangue you about dating or to force you into marriage.
- C. Our main motive is to help you to understand how you can develop into a more complete and useful human being and to show you how meaningful relationships with the opposite sex play a vital role in attaining this goal.
- D. We will go into such questions as:
  - (1) What are the barriers or frictional points between the sexes.
  - (2) Why aren't the fellows dating more?
  - (3) What is this mystery that surrounds women that men don't understand?
  - (4) That constitutes a good date?
  - (5) How to approach the opposite sex if you become serious about that person.
  - (6) Many, many more.

#### **II. INTRODUCE THE ROSE BUD!**

- A. As you can see, the rose bud is curled up in itself.
- B. Its true beauty and potential is hidden from view.
- C. It takes the warmth of the sun's rays to unlock its petals and cause it to burst open in full splendor.

#### **III. THE ANALOGY HOLDS TRUE IN DATING.**

- A. Of and by ourselves, we are like a rose bud.
- B. We tend to be wrapped in ourselves — our world, our problems, our interests.
- C. Until we reflect concern for others, or allow the warmth of their personality to enter our lives, our inner worth, beauty and potential remain concealed.

#### **IV. DESCRIBE A MODEL YOUNG LEADER AMONG MEN AND WOMEN.**

- A. *A striking young man.*
  - (1) Confident
  - (2) Friend
  - (3) Popular
  - (4) Can meet and relate to people at all walks of life.
  - (5) Refined manners.
  - (6) Is approachable and has unique ability to disarm others and win their respect.
- B. *A charming and gracious young woman.*
  - (1) Reflects a submissive and respectful attitude.
  - (2) Kind and sympathetic.
  - (3) Self-assured and confident.
  - (4) Is held in high esteem for her cultural and moral values.
  - (5) Easily adjusts to any social situations.
  - (6) Shows class, good breeding and humility.
- C. *These two young people realize the intrinsic value in dating.*
  - (1) They realize that a part of their personality would deteriorate if they did not date and lead a balanced social life.
  - (2) They comprehend that there are greater benefits in dating than in just having fun.
  - (3) They see dating as a means to develop qualities in themselves and in others — the whole personality.

**V. THIS FACT IS SUBSTANTIATED BY THE BIBLE.**

- A. Genesis 2:18 — "...it is not good that the man should be alone."
  - (1) This concept embodies more than just marriage.
  - (2) It emphasizes the need for companionship between the sexes.
- B. Jeremiah 3:14 — "...for I am married unto you." Christ married Israel.
  - (1) The association of Christ with Israel was a form of dating, as it were, before He married her.
  - (2) Again this fact of Christ's dealing with Israel points out the need for a mature social relationship between the sexes.
- C. Rev. 19:5-9 — "*Marriage of the Lamb.*"
  - (1) Christ doesn't suddenly marry the Church without getting to know her first.
  - (2) Eph. 5:22-27 (A description of the kind of bride Christ is going to marry.)
- D. These points are made to prove that even Christ, Himself, stresses the value of total self-development which cannot be achieved without association of the sexes.

**VI. WHAT HAPPENS WHEN MEN AND WOMEN CEASE TO SOCIALIZE WITH MEMBERS OF THE OPPOSITE SEX?**

- A. They stow away in their apartments and curl up in their own beds.
- B. They become self-centered and selfish.
- C. They become hardened and desensitized to the needs and feelings of others.
- D. Sometimes grooming and personal appearance suffers.
- E. There is a growing tendency toward self-willed independence.
- F. Gradually their personality begins to erode and the quality of their lives begins to degenerate.
- G. Their ability to encourage and motivate others becomes a lost art.
- H. Bitterness toward the opposite sex sets in.

**VII. CAN WE NOW BEGIN TO SEE AND APPRECIATE THE REAL PURPOSE IN DATING.**

- A. It basically is two fold:
  - (1) To be a source of inspiration and encouragement to each other.
  - (2) To develop your total personality and character.
- B. A person who isolates himself for whatever selfish reasons from social concourse with others is dealing himself untold harm.
- C. We all need each other.
  - (1) Love
  - (2) Respect
  - (3) Building of mutual trust and loyalty.

**VIII. HOW GOD FIGURES IN.**

- A. Rev. 4:11 — "*God created all things for His pleasure.*"
  - (1) We as a Church are God's garden.
  - (2) He wants us all to blossom forth in full beauty and splendor.
  - (3) It is His supreme desire that we develop and grow into our highest potential.
- B. John 17:17-23 — "*Christ proved that we should be made perfect in one....*"
  - (1) This requires effort and self-sacrifice.
  - (2) We must realize this is Christ's great desire.
- C. John 1:3 — "*Our fellowship is with the Father and Christ.*"
  - (1) By having a right relationship with God, He will beget in us a mature love and respect for each other.
  - (2) If we truly love God, we will respond willingly and gratefully to His command.

**IX. RECENT SURVEYS INDICATE THAT ONLY 20% OF SINGLES ARE DATING ON A REGULAR BASIS.**

- A. Why? What's the problem?
- B. What hangups are standing in the way?

**X. WHY FELLOWS DON'T DATE:**

- A. Reasons:
  - (1) Fear of rejection.



- a. Causes.
  - (1) Bruised egos from past experiences.
  - (2) Fellow is afraid he will not measure up.
  - (3) Afraid the girl will discover his weak side and will not like his personality.
  - (4) The idea of being turned down can crush a man's feeling of self-worth and drive him into isolation.
- b. What the girl can do.
  - (1) Try to be understanding when a guy finds himself in an awkward situation.
  - (2) Smooth things over if he commits a *faux pas*.
  - (3) Help him to relax and loosen up by diverting your attention to matters he knows something about or has an interest in.
- (2) Lack of confidence.
  - a. Reasons.
    - (1) He may have come from a broken home where mother dominated or where there was a divorce and the children were given over to mother's care.
    - (2) He may have had little experience in dating, particularly if he came from a Church family of longstanding membership.
    - (3) He finds the dating experience to be painful because he doesn't know how to interpret the girl's feelings, attitudes, moods, etc,
    - (4) His nerves are raw from overwork because he doesn't know how to please a girl or conduct himself on a date.
  - b. How to overcome this problem?
    - (1) Courage.
    - (2) Realize you are failing to develop another side of your life essential to your overall total well-being and development.
- (3) Self-consciousness
  - a. Causes.
    - (1) Due to a lack of experience and confidence, a fellow, thinks himself unable to carry on an intelligent conversation or to impress the girl the right way.
    - (2) His mind is negative because he has magnified his mistakes more than his successes.
    - (3) Girls in general scare him, because to be with them in an unfamiliar situation compounds his feeling of inferiority and insecurity.
    - (4) The root of self-consciousness predates to childhood or a lack of experience in dealing with people up to the present.
  - b. Solution.
    - (1) Come to grips with yourself and realize you'll make little if any progress until you step out and try.
    - (2) Understand ahead of time you'll flounder and fail.
    - (3) Don't allow a few embarrassing situations weaken your determination.
  - c. Again, the girls can help a lot by understanding the fellows' plight.
    - (1) Do your part to make the date go as well as possible.
    - (2) It is an opportunity for you to exude warmth in trying to open up his rose bud.
    - (3) Look on this as a challenge to help build up someone and to render a service in Christian love.
- (4) Hurt feelings and sour experiences.
  - a. Causes.
    - (1) Many fellows have been hurt — sometimes literally crushed — by the thoughtless actions of the girls.
    - (2) Depending on background and personality, some guys can't easily throw this off.
    - (3) Engaged to be married — she cancelled at the last minute.
    - (4) Developed a romantic feeling for a girl, she had to cool it after discovering his intentions.
    - (5) Some dates went sour because of a conflict in views and the experience turned out to be a verbal wrangle.
  - b. Solutions.
    - (1) The fellow may have brought some of these pains on himself through lack of wisdom.

- (2) Scrap past hurts and feelings, and turn over a new leaf.
- (3) You're punishing yourself through self-pity and being resentful and unforgiving.
- (5) Initial contact and the fear of being turned down.
  - a. Causes.
    - (1) For a girl to refuse a date can be traumatic and ego — crushing to a man.
    - (2) Yet she may have good reasons — not because she doesn't like you.
    - (3) In college it's easier because there's more opportunity.
  - b. Solutions.
    - (1) To get started, don't try to date the knock-out sex bomb.
    - (2) Ask the girls who have more things in common with you.
    - (3) Break into dating with someone you can feel compatible with and who will not give you a feeling of condemnation if you fail to meet her standards.
    - (4) With some experience behind you, you can with reasonable confidence venture out.
- (6) Dating is too expensive.
  - a. Causes.
    - (1) To take a girl out to a fancy restaurant can wipe out a week's budget.
    - (2) He feels cheap to take her to a second-rate hamburger joint.
    - (3) High level dating as seen on TV and in the movies is more than his salary can stand.
    - (4) The easy way out — DON'T DATE.
  - b. Solutions.
    - (1) Do more group dating so expenses can be equally shared.
    - (2) Have girls over for Sabbath brunch.
    - (3) Go for drives, to parks, beaches, casual walks, etc.
    - (4) There are dozens of things to do that will cost little if anything — if you will do them.
- (7) Dating is just "so much trouble and a bother."
  - a. Causes.
    - (1) I'll have to go out of my way to pick up a date and bring her to Church and back home.
    - (2) It's much easier to just look after my personal needs — to break my pattern is irksome and unpleasant.
    - (3) Besides, I won't enjoy services because I'll feel uptight and nervous in trying to make a good impression.
  - b. Solutions.
    - (1) Think of the girl's feelings and her need for companionship.
    - (2) She may not have transportation and would appreciate a ride.
    - (3) She may be handicapped in ways that limit her lifestyle.
      - (a) No transportation.
      - (b) Less money.
      - (c) Locked into an apartment.
- (8) Turned off with marriage.
  - a. Causes.
    - (1) The fellow may have become disenchanted with marriage during childhood due to the rotten, hate-filled example of parents,
    - (2) The resent collapse of young marriages in the Church and resultant "I don't want this to happen to me" attitude.
    - (3) The experience of being hurt by someone he loved.
  - b. Solutions.
    - (1) Think beyond marriage.
    - (2) Think of your reason for being — think eternity.
    - (3) Think from a framework of love for all mankind — including the opposite sex.
    - (4) Consider your role in helping others to be happy and their eventual entrance into God's Kingdom.
- (9) Why should I waste my time dating a girl I could never marry?
  - a. Causes.
    - (1) There are a number of girls who may not romantically appeal to you and you could not marry because there's no attraction.

- (2) Why bother dating her, because it, would never work out
- (3) She's a little overweight, self-conscious, has no sex appeal.
- (4) There's no basis for a relationship.
- b. Solutions.
  - (1) Think of her as a human being made in God's image.
  - (2) Out of love and concern, develop a sense of care for her feelings and well-being.
- (10) Lack of real masculinity and aggressive leadership.
  - a. Causes.
    - (1) Men are not what they used to be.
    - (2) Are not the real, rugged personalities they were in past years.
    - (3) In the days of the frontier, men were faced with more challenges and decisions — tended to make them aggressive and decisive.
    - (4) Poor diet figures in:
      - (a) Foods not what they used to be either.
      - (b) Meats lack the natural hormones men need.
      - (c) Fruits and vegetables are harvested too soon and they lack natural minerals and vitamins.
    - (5) Insufficient exercise.
      - (a) Causes listlessness and loss of energy.
      - (b) No real drive and initiative.
  - b. Solutions.
    - (1) Nobody can really help you until you motivate yourself.
    - (2) Suggestion: Isolate yourself from all obstructions and think it through.
    - (3) You can correct this problem — if you really want to.
- (11) If a girl is not physically attractive, some guys won't date her.
  - a. Causes.
    - (1) Some girls are overweight and don't have the best figure.
    - (2) Others have a shy personality.
    - (3) Some fellows have commented they have no interest in dating — unless she is physically appealing.
  - b. Solutions.
    - (1) They can't help how they look.
    - (2) Your inviting them out such as on a group outing may encourage them to work on their problems.
- (12) Selfishness.
  - a. Causes.
    - (1) Not close enough to God in prayer.
    - (2) Failure to practice God's Word in everyday life and inculcating His laws of love.
    - (3) Thinking only of one's comforts, interests, pleasures.
  - b. Solutions.
    - (1) Take another look into the mirror.
    - (2) As a Christian striving to follow Christ, am I blocking the flow of His Spirit in my mind?
    - (3) Am I failing to warm up others so as to release their rose petals?

## **XI. WHY GIRLS DON'T DATE OR REFUSE SOME DATES WHEN ASKED.**

### **A. Reasons.**

- (1) Many girls aren't asked in the first place.
  - a. Causes.
    - (1) She may reflect a negative or unfriendly attitude.
    - (2) She may turn a guy off because of being bland, uninteresting, or discourteous.
    - (3) She may be careless in appearance & grooming.
  - b. Solutions.
    - (1) Show an interest in the things guys like to do.
    - (2) If there's a particular fellow you'd like to date, find out what his goals and ambitions are.
    - (3) Evaluate yourself in these areas, at least enough to be able to converse on the subject.

- (4) if you are continually missing out on dates, ask a minister or friend.
- (2) Health reasons or other natural circumstances.
- a. Causes.
- (1) Ill health.
  - (2) Tired, overworked, exhausted, under a lot of pressure.
  - (3) Behind on sleep — not physically up to going out.
- b. Solutions.
- (1) Be kind and tactful, realizing it's a natural tendency for guys to misread your intentions because of their sensitive egos.
  - (2) If expedient, explain your reasons.
  - (3) Thank him for asking and hope that he will call you again in the near future.
- (3) Have other plans.
- a. Causes.
- (1) The girl may already have another date planned for the time the fellow asks her out.
  - (2) Don't assume she's putting you off or making excuses, nor is it protocol for you to ask her who she's dating or where she's going.
- b. Solutions.
- (1) Don't respond to the fellow with a flat "NO."
  - (2) Kindly explain you had previously made other plans for the evening.
  - (3) Again thank him for calling and express a desire to go with him in the future — if they have that desire!
- (4) Most girls are reluctant to accept phone dates from fellows they have never met, let alone seen in person.
- a. Causes.
- (1) It's unfair to put a girl on the spot in this kind of situation.
  - (2) It's especially cruel to say you've been "watching" her and would like to take her out.
- b. Solution.
- (1) Stay around after Church to meet her and chat for a while.
  - (2) Try to make her acquaintance at Church socials or parties.
  - (3) Become at least partially acquainted or exposed, so she will know who the voice is on the other end of the line.
- (5) After 2 or 3 dates a girl may break off future relations with fellow when he discovers he is not her type and doesn't want to lead him on.
- a. Causes.
- (1) She senses his beginning to get involved.
  - (2) She feels to continue the relationship would be unfair and hurt him deeply.
  - (3) She has nothing against his character, but the relationship would never work out because of personality differences and values.
- b. Solutions.
- (1) Level with the guy,
  - (2) Be honest about your feelings.
  - (3) Point out the good things you appreciate in him, but that it's unfair and cruel to lead him to think you are interested.
  - (4) Be firm, yet sincerely respectful.
- (6) Some fellows may be physically, repulsive to her.
- a. Causes.
- (1) He doesn't have neat, clean appearance.
  - (2) Bad breath, uncouth habits, unmannerly.
  - (3) He doesn't know how to coordinate colors or match his clothing.
  - (4) Neatness and appearance mean a lot to a girl.
  - (5) He's terribly shy and she has to carry the conversation.
- b. Solutions.
- (1) If a guy is continually turned down, he should seek counsel to see if he has a problem he's not aware of.
  - (2) Have the courage to ask a friend for help.

- (7) A fellow may come on too strong.
- a. Causes.
    - (1) His manner is overbearing, vulgar and lecherous.
    - (2) He over compliments, gets too physical, and makes her feel uncomfortable.
    - (3) He's anxious to hear your views on sex and morality.
  - b. Solutions.
    - (1) Check up to see if your motives are right.
    - (2) For a girl to have to refuse a guy on these grounds is a disgrace.
- (8) She feel she's getting too serious.
- a. Causes.
    - (1) He tells her she's the kind of girl he's been looking for and would like to marry.
    - (2) He suggests future plans — without really knowing her feelings.
    - (3) He begins to get too possessive and starts to dominate her life.
  - b. Solutions.
    - (1) Confront the issue head-on.
    - (2) Explain your feelings and state that you are not ready for this kind of involvement.
    - (3) To one who takes this possessive viewpoint, you may have to be firmer than with one who is suddenly caught up in an aura of romance.
- (9) Some fellows turn girls off because they whine and talk mostly of their aches, pains, problems and bad breaks in life.
- a. Causes.
    - (1) Their whole bent toward life is negative and critical.
    - (2) Their are primarily wrapped up in their own bud and are oblivious to other human creatures around them.
  - b. Solutions.
    - (1) Ask a trusted friend who knows you intimately to give you a heart-to-heart evaluation.
    - (2) Are you obeying the Golden Rule?
- (10) Some girls are egotistical and vain and refuse to date fellows who do not measure up to their social standards.
- a. Causes.
    - (1) They have their own circle of friends.
    - (2) They are selfish and have little concern for others of lower rank or substance.
    - (3) It is beneath their dignity to date anyone who may cast a dark shadow on their standing in the higher social order.
  - b. Solutions.
    - (1) At least be friendly and courteous.
    - (2) Make it a point to serve or encourage anyone regardless of his station in life.
    - (3) The Bible says, "Honor all men."
- (11) Some girls date only for looks and appearance.
- a. Causes.
    - (1) This is a selfish attitude and shows a lack of true Christian love, if not conversion.
    - (2) It's all an exercise in vanity — wanting to be seen with the most dashing, debonair and handsome men the Church has to offer.
  - b. Solutions.
    - (1) Think how you would feel if the situation were reversed.
    - (2) If you really want to be popular and loved God's way, let your admiration and respect filter down.
- (12) Some men boast and brag about their exploits and manifest an attitude of superiority.
- a. Causes.
    - (1) Such men at heart are starving for recognition because they feel a deep sense of inferiority.
    - (2) These attitudes are repugnant to a girl and she finds herself wanting to avoid this type of personality.
  - b. Solutions.
    - (1) Check up to see how often you are the subject of the conversation.

- (2) How often does the word, "I," "Me," "Mine," etc. appear in your daily vocabulary.
- (3) Direct your attention more to the interests of the girls and you will probably have more dates.

## **XII. BASIC HUMAN NEEDS.**

### A. What motivates men and women?

- (1) Quote article from *Success Magazine* entitled: "Understanding Your Fears," page 95.

### B. Seven Basic Needs.

#### (1) Survival.

- a. Food, clothing, shelter.
- b. Self-preservation is man's greatest need.
- c. Recognizing this fact should enable both sexes to better understand each other.
- d. Knowing this fact should also provide an array of topics to talk about.

#### (2) Security.

- a. Money.
- b. Job.
- c. More than just basic necessities for comfort.

- (1) Car

- (2) TV

- (3) Clothing, material things, etc.

#### (3) Companionship.

- a. The desire to be loved is one of man's most powerful motivations.
- b. We need someone with whom we can communicate and share our lives, our ups and downs, successes and triumphs.
- c. In helping to fill this need, we are fulfilling the law of love.

#### (4) The need to achieve.

- a. Man is a miniaturized creator.
- b. He was endowed with an active mind and creative powers.
- c. He cannot be happy with life unless he is achieving.
- d. To block his creative outlets leaves him anxious and frustrated.
- e. Understanding this point should aid both sexes to interact with each other in a true spirit of concern and respect.

#### (5) The need for recognition.

- a. Quote from *Success Magazine*, page 106.
- b. When dating keep this point in mind and be aware of ways you can encourage each other.

#### (6) The need for identity.

- a. This point has to do with building a positive self-image.
- b. It has to do with finding your niche in life that makes you unique and different.
- c. Famous people like movie stars, artists, clothing designers, etc., have found themselves and their true identity in the world.
- d. Basically it all boils down to what you do well through personal development of your talents.
- e. Knowing this fact should help in interacting with others.

#### (7) The need for self-acceptance.

- a. Without self-acceptance there can be no satisfaction.
- b. The more you like yourself (this comes through building self-esteem through maintaining high standards), the happier you will be, for success is the satisfaction of basic needs which culminate in self-acceptance.
- c. How much you like yourself determines how successful you are.
- d. Learn to fill this need in human life and you will become popular.

-END-

## CHAPTER 35

### **SUCCEED IN LIFE WITH GOALS!**

How can you succeed not only in college, but in life? What will you have achieved five or ten years from now? Will you be able to look back over a life of growth and accomplishment? Or, will your life be empty and frustrated? The choice is YOURS! This short lecture unlocks a vital key to success: GOAL SETTING. Here are seven practical ways that will guarantee greater success.

#### **1. UNDERSTAND WHY GOALS ARE VITAL!**

You cannot grow or succeed without goals. You will inevitably begin to waste time. What is important and unimportant will be blurred. Eventually the lack of goals will cause you to shrivel mentally, and wreck you emotionally and spiritually — not unlike a rat in a maze. Without goals, you will be like a ship without a rudder, tossed to and fro at sea.

Goals, on the other hand, will immediately help you shape a successful destiny. They provide direction and motivation in life. Through goals you will live with dynamic purpose.

Remember that one of the seven laws of success involves fixing the right goals in life.

#### **2. KNOW HOW TO DETERMINE GOALS**

No two people will have exactly the same list of personal goals. God has gifted each of us with different abilities and talents. Therefore, each person's goals will also be different. You must decide what your personal goals will be.

Begin to examine your life. Ask yourself questions such as: With what talents has God endowed me? What are my greatest needs? What handicaps or inadequacies do I need to overcome? What are my strongest, burning desires? What do I really want to get out of life?

As you engage in this exercise, ask God to guide you and grant you the wisdom to crystallize your goals — to truly seek His will in doing what's best for you.

Cease wasting time in trying to determine where to start. Force yourself to settle down and face life realistically. Decide NOW — time is too precious to fritter away with indecision.

#### **3. REALIZE THERE ARE THREE BASIC TYPES OF GOALS**

The greatest goal that we are privileged to understand is attaining eternal life — to literally become a member of the God Family! To become as God is!

However, our secondary goals in life fall into three distinct categories. These are as follows:

- (1) LONG-TERM GOALS: The plans and desires you hope to have fulfilled in 5 years or more.

*Here are some examples:*

- (a) To be a top flight Christian woman.
- (b) To become a successful homemaker.
- (c) To get a degree in interior decorating.
- (d) To learn to play the piano.
- (e) To become an expert in some skill or subject.

- (2) INTERMEDIATE GOALS: In this category are your goals for between the next 6 months to 5 years.

*Examples would include:*

- (a) To adequately prepare for marriage.
- (b) To work in an international office of the Work.
- (c) To improve in writing ability and vocabulary.
- (d) To learn to sew, to do needlepoint, to cook, etc.

(3) **SHORT-TERM GOALS:** These are your plans from the present to the next six months.

*Examples could be:*

- (a) To maintain a B average in each class.
- (b) To overcome unnecessary fears of others.
- (c) To improve in speaking
- (d) To get organized and start living by daily schedule.

### **ALWAYS MAKE YOUR GOALS REALISTIC AND ATTAINABLE!**

#### **4. WRITE DOWN YOUR GOALS AND SET PRIORITIES**

As you work out your goals, write them down. This will reinforce them in your mind.

Write down everything that comes to mind which you would like to accomplish — no matter how small or menial. Don't worry about organization at first. Capture your thoughts while they're hot. You can always go back later and prioritize and rearrange your list according to the three types of goals mentioned in point three.

One word of caution — avoid setting big goals that conflict. For example, you can't become a concert pianist and a professional tennis star at the same time. Your time, interests and loyalties would be divided. Hopefully, your goals will tie together and interrelate.

#### **5. CREATE THE DESIRE TO ACHIEVE YOUR GOALS**

Many people still fail in life because they never go beyond a one-time effort of writing down their goals! They do not know how to motivate or drive themselves. Yet, the basic ingredient of success is DESIRE or motivation. But how does desire come about? The basis of desire is THOUGHT!

Learn to think about each of your goals. This will stir your imagination. See the reality of fulfilling your goals. Picture yourself having already achieved what you desire.

Some people make a list of all the benefits derived from reaching their goals — both to themselves and others. As they see the value of their goals, the desire to achieve them increases.

#### **6. COMMIT YOURSELF TO YOUR GOALS**

Set an iron-willed determination to begin achieving your goals in each area. Such commitment will evoke drive, perseverance and resourcefulness.

An essential part of commitment is to PLAN how to accomplish your goals. Without plans, your goals will remain daydreams! Take time for planning. Why not make an outline with intermediate steps for each goal! Checking off steps will act as a blueprint along the way.

#### **7. REVIEW YOUR GOALS DAILY**

Build the habit of reviewing your goals every single day. To achieve the goals you have set, they must be etched indelibly upon your mind.

As you do this, you will find yourself acquiring the ability and the knowledge you need to reach your goals. Like a magnet, you will attract to yourself information, facts, data, concepts and ideas from your daily experiences and encounters with others. You'll start absorbing answers, tips and helps from lectures, conversations, and general reading that would otherwise go unnoticed.

Begin to apply these seven points even today! You will find that life will take on an exciting new meaning and purpose. Remember that how far we succeed in life is determined essentially by the goals we set!

**-END-**



## **CHAPTER 36**

### **TWELVE PITFALLS IN MARRIAGE**

#### **Sermon Summary**

**March 25, 1978**

Many marriages in America today are deeply in trouble! Statistics show close to one third are breaking up.

I recently received a letter which I think illustrates the sorrow and grief of this worldwide problem. It reads:

*"Dear Mr. Rice,*

*I am writing to you as a last resort to save my marriage. I don't know what has happened to the beautiful romance that Jim and I once shared. We laughed a lot, did things together, and spent many evenings after dinner just sitting and talking at the table. We were so much in love for the first few years of our marriage, but something has happened to us.*

*"We were married in the church about nine years ago, and have three beautiful young children. I desperately want them to grow up in a happy home — and ours sure isn't.*

*"As I now think about it, this frightful change in our relationship began happening about five years ago and our marriage has steadily gone from bad to worse. Our attitudes toward each other today, compared to what they were then are as different as light is from darkness. By the time Jim gets home from work every night, I am completely worn out from cleaning, working, cooking, changing diapers, settling squabbles, and all the dozens of chores that mothers must tend to. Jim is tired, too, when he gets home, and he just wants to relax, have a beer and read the paper. I'd like for him to entertain the children for a while so I can prepare dinner, but they get on his nerves and he yells at them. Then I get mad and yell at Jim.*

*"The only time Jim ever kisses me or shows any affection is when he wants to go to bed, and that really turns me off. I can't remember the last time he told me he loved me.*

*"We hardly ever go out anymore, and just don't seem to have any common interests — except the children, and even here we can't agree on how they should be trained.*

*"Every time we try to discuss the problem, we just end up blaming each other. Jim gets mad, and I start to cry. This makes Jim even madder. Yesterday, he finally asked for a divorce.*

*"Is there any hope for our marriage? I really don't want a divorce, but I can't go on living like this. Can you help us?"*

*Sincerely, A Troubled Wife"*

In this sermon summary, I want to point out twelve very specific reasons why marriages crumble — and what can be done to avoid or overcome these causes of discord and misery.

#### **NO. 1: THE SUBTLE AND ERODING INFLUENCE OF THE WORLD**

It used to be in our society that marriage was tremendously respected — something very special. Divorce was virtually unheard of — premarital immorality was taboo. Now, that's all changed. Today immorality, sexual exploitation, and pornography are rampant.

There really is a raging Devil who is pumping out his perverse concepts and influence into our nation's homes and marriages through the media of radio, television, movies, and a wide assortment of printed materials. The Devil is on a rampage! He's out to destroy and erode away the great holiness and sanctity which God bestowed on marriage. You and I are exposed to these subtle influences continually — at every turn!

*"Evil men and seducers shall wax worse and worse, deceiving and being deceived" (II Tim. 3:13 KJV)".*

It's so easy to be affected by our environment — to absorb the around, to drink in of the evil influence of the world. In most American homes hostilities, jealousies, hatred and anger between marriage partners are constantly being depicted on television — making marital breakdown a commonplace spectacle right in the living room! Everything that marriage shouldn't be — promiscuity, unmarried people living together, divorce, extra-marital affairs — is paraded before us (and our young, impressionable children) day after day.

So, gradually but relentlessly the Devil seeks to undermine the holy and wonderful values of marriage. Instead of growing together, husbands and wives start growing apart and shrinking up within themselves.

What about your marriage? Is it as beautiful and lovely as it was the day you became engaged, walked down the aisle together, and experienced the joys and delights of a happy honeymoon with your mate? Is your marriage stronger today than it was then? Or, have you become a little used to the idea, allowed the newness and novelty to wear thin, and the excitement to evaporate? Have you permitted your relationship to become emotionless, dull and boring?

The Bible gives a picture of the kind of marriage that all families ought to have: *"Blessed is every one that feareth the Lord; that walketh in His ways. For thou shalt eat of the labour of thine hands; happy shalt thou be, and it shall be well with thee. Thy wife shall be as a fruitful vine by the sides of thine house: thy children like olive plants round thy table. Behold, that thus shall the man be blessed that feareth the Lord"* (Psa. 128:1-4 KJV).

God describes in this Psalm the kind of environment that you and I should create for our families. It speaks of good health and success and a scintillating life. It depicts children who can come to Mom and Dad with any problem that's troubling them and not be uptight or afraid they will be cut down or rejected. It talks about a wife who is deeply happy, fulfilled and feels appreciated. Yes, it describes the wonderful life of holy matrimony God intended that both partners experience — laying a foundation Satan cannot destroy.

### **NO. 2: FAILURE TO KEEP GOD AT THE CENTER OF YOUR MARRIAGE**

The power to really love another human being with an enduring love comes from God's Spirit. When we are walking in fellowship with our Father, God gives us a love with which we can love even our enemies! How much more, then, our friends, and most importantly our own wife, or husband, and our children.

One reason couples fight and bicker is that they haven't been praying enough! Frequent prayer is a vital link between God and man — and makes possible that great reservoir of love and concern which can smooth out the "rough spots" in relationships with others. (Rom. 5:15)

You'll find that people who walk with God, who are really close to Him in prayer and Bible study, and living the right way, radiate out to others a genuine concern and purity of character. This closeness to God can make a tremendous difference in the effect our lives have on others.

Whenever a husband will get on his knees and ask God's help to love his family, to rout out selfishness from his life, to think of his wife and family first — this inspires his wife and children to shower love and affection on him in return. The good fruit of love, concern and respect coming from his life can stimulate the same in the lives of those dear to him.

When a wife will do her part — praying to God, drinking in of His nature and mind, His Word, and acting on what He leads her to do — she communicates this to her husband and it will inspire him.

The interaction of God's Spirit in a family builds a unity which is marvelously beautiful!

It can be a wonderful exercise for you and your mate to pray together. And if you have young children, have them spend some time in prayer with you. Teach them how to pray and ask God to keep you all happy together, to guide your actions and conduct, to give you a right heart and attitude, so your marriage and family will be strong forever.

Are you taking God into your marriage with all your heart? Is He a part of you? Is your fellowship with God first, and is that fellowship communicated to those around you? God must be a part of your marriage for it to be successful and permeated with love and unity.

### **NO. 3: TROUBLE BEGINS WHEN THE HONEYMOON ENDS**

I'm not talking about the five or six day trip that is taken after the wedding ceremony. I'm referring to that time into marriage — say nine months, or a year or two later — when the romance and those

excited feelings of newness and love begin to fade. It's a sign of trouble when "dull routine" sets in.

For example, a wife can be doing the chores of housework day after day, and starts to find it's getting old. She wakes up and realizes that married life has hard work to it — cleaning, dusting, sweeping, doing dishes, taking care of babies, etc. She begins to reminisce on her past life, her freedom and independence. She may watch soap operas and see things that stimulate her. She begins to think about the good times she used to have in those relatively "carefree" days before marriage. The marriage becomes a drab, colorless "prison" in her mind. Her love can slowly begin to erode away.

What once was an exciting adventure for the beautiful young bride has now become dull and boring.

The husband also can lose the radiance of that early "first love." He can begin to take his wife for granted — and not see her as the lovely, romantic, desirable girl he courted. Perhaps his compliments are further apart, he doesn't notice and appreciate the effort she puts into the housework — and just generally seems oblivious to the nice little things she does.

In a situation like this, it's easy for an atmosphere of hostility to build. Bickerings and fights can break out quickly. Both marriage partners start shrinking into their own private little worlds and become terribly selfish — thinking the other doesn't care anymore.

To safeguard your marriage and keep it young and exciting, recapture the values that brought you together. Go back to the foundation and start anew. Put new life and vigor into your relationship. Try to be more affectionate, appreciative and understanding. Start practicing love and you'll find that your former feelings will return. Look for the positive things you used to admire in each other and try to be less critical when faults appear. Keep your honeymoon vibrant and alive.

#### **NO. 4: LETTING PHYSICAL AND PERSONAL STANDARDS GO TO POT**

When young people are dating, they are very careful to "put the best foot forward." They will dress nicely, make sure they are clean, smell fresh, are neat — and always courteous.

But, once into marriage, people will tend to degenerate — allow these important qualities to slip away, and their standards to fall. They become slovenly and neglectful in body hygiene. Their appearance suffers.

It's important to constantly express respect in marriage. God is the author of marriage, and keeping standards on a high level of dignity actually shows respect for Him.

This doesn't mean that a man always has to wear his best clothes, but even with work clothes on he can look nice — and always be courteous, thoughtful and well-mannered.

The same holds true for wives. I recommend that when a wife feels haggard after a hard day, she take a few minutes to freshen up (perhaps shower, brush her hair, put on a little perfume) so she looks more attractive for her husband when he comes in the door. "Primping" a little can brighten her disposition, too!

When a couple lets down their standards, the whole marriage begins to slip. Keep your standards high. It's vitally important to express active love and honor toward your mate. She has feelings. He has feelings. Respect the other as a dear, wonderful partner whom God has given to you for life. She's yours, you are hers. You are "one flesh" and belong to each other. Honor the greatness and beauty of your marriage relationship — and build it stronger by keeping your standards high.

#### **NO. 5: A BREAKDOWN IN CHARACTER AND RESPECT**

Unless there is respect in marriage, there is no marriage. Respect is based on character, discipline and love. When you lose inner respect for yourself, other people around you lose respect for you, too. Whenever a person becomes selfish, childish, critical or judgmental of others, he or she is destroying character. Unless that respect is rebuilt, problems loom on the horizon.

Discipline must be an important facet of your life if you are to experience real success in marriage. You must keep an awareness and respect for God at the forefront of everything you say, do and think. Ask God to help you always be strong, courageous, honest and true.

Keep your self-respect high. Maintain quality standards of discipline in consideration, thoughtfulness, and helpfulness. Keep your life free from guilt and sin! These principles are essential to building a happy home and stable marriage.

#### **NO. 6: FAILURE TO HONOR THE ROLE EACH PLAYS**

The Bible teaches that the wife should respect her husband because he's the head of the family. But, wifehood and motherhood is also a role to be highly esteemed. It's a God-ordained office just as

much as a man's headship is an office! Both mates have vital roles to play! God, Himself, established these responsibilities to upbuild and strengthen the marriage relationship itself.

The fact that GOD has assigned each a distinct function in marriage should be honored and respected by both. These offices are not humanly ordained. The Creator of the universe has established them. The wife is not obligated to honor her husband just because he says she should. She should do it because God says so.

The giving and receiving of honor actually is a privilege to be experienced by both mates. For, as the Bible tells wives to submit to and honor their husbands, it also tells husbands to deeply love, cherish, protect and honor their wives (Eph. 5:21-28 and 1 Pet. 3:1-7).

### **NO. 7: FAILURE TO COMMUNICATE WHEN IRRITATIONS START TO BUILD**

Waiting until emotions have built up steam usually leads to an explosion! It is better to catch irritations in the early stages. If something is really bugging you, or your mate, it's important to get it out in the open and talk about it.

Here are seven brief "rules" for building communication into your marriage and handling problems that come up:

#### **1. Never get angry at the same time.**

When disagreements do arise, keep your temper under control. Curb your own anger until the other has had a chance to express his or her feelings — to "blow off steam" if need be. One of you should always strive to remain calm when the other is upset. Self-control helps greatly in leading to a peaceful solution.

#### **2. Choose the right moment to discuss your feelings.**

If your husband comes home tired, exhausted, worried or under pressure, don't bring up irritations then. He probably won't be able to listen with attention and patience. Wait until you find the right time, when he's more relaxed and in the right mood, to bring up problems or differences.

#### **3. Really listen to what your mate is saying.**

If an irritation is starting to build and your mate is being upset and offended by it, wouldn't you want to know what it is? The only way to learn is to listen patiently. Listen to what your mate is saying. Be attentive! Be respectful! You may have to ask some questions to get clarification. But listen sympathetically and with understanding! Listen with your heart and mind, as well as with your ears.

#### **4. Don't retaliate or point the finger.**

Justifying oneself does not solve the problem, neither does accusing the other. Don't retort by saying, "Who are you to chew on me...why, you've got problems, too." You don't really solve a problem when you retaliate like that and "put your mate in his or her place." Desire to correct your mistakes and make peace at all costs.

#### **5. Honestly admit where you are wrong.**

It takes an enormous courage and maturity to do this. It takes tremendous humility to say, "Dear, I'm sorry. You're right and I'm going to work on that." Or, to say, "I really didn't understand it that way. I see and understand it now. I appreciate your telling me."

#### **6. Determine to change and follow through.**

It isn't enough to listen and agree. You also have to determine to change. In some cases you may want to pray and confess your faults together. The important thing is to show a willingness to go all out and remove any stumbling block you may be putting in the other's way.

#### **7. Set aside time for heart-to-heart talks.**

Husbands and wives need time alone, even if only 10 to 15 minutes. During this time both should give their honest opinions about the way things are going — in the family or in their own relationship. This is not a time to criticize or evaluate each other in a harsh man-

ner. Rather, these should be "building talks." Times to discuss problems — and progress which is being made. Also areas that need additional work and improvement. Try to be honest, candid and frank — but also considerate and sympathetic. If there are improvements in certain areas, it is good to compliment and praise each other for these accomplishments. These talks should be positive and uplifting. Both mates should sit down together, with open minds and attitudes, with the desire to upgrade their marriage and grow in love.

### **NO. 8: LACK OF MENTAL AND SOCIAL STIMULATION**

Mental stimulation is a powerful tool that helps keep a marriage exciting and healthy. Husbands and wives will find some of their happiest moments when they "rap" about ideas and concepts they've been thinking on and want to share with someone else. This point is altogether different from solving conflicts or resolving differences. It has to do with hearty interchange on a wide range of subjects that are educational and uplifting. Each will discover that the other has some unrealized wisdom, excellent ideas and intelligent answers to many of life's nagging questions.

To incorporate this point, it's good to read a lot and keep your mind attuned to what's happening in the world. Keep abreast of news and social trends. Become knowledgeable on a variety of topics. And above all things — dare to think, to question, to reach out and search for answers!

Share your thoughts with each other and ask for feedback. It's this hearty interplay that will truly endear you to your mate, and expand your own mind to a higher realm you did not dream possible. Such a practice will do much to keep your marriage bright, vibrant and healthy.

It's also good to have people over for visits as you can afford it — or perhaps just for a cup of coffee. These get-togethers will build and sharpen your powers of observation and mental alertness. Hospitality is a command of God. "*Use hospitality one to another without grudging*" (I Pet. 4:9). By socializing with friends and new acquaintances, not only are you rendering them a Christian service, but also you will be upgrading your own life. By broadening your circle of friends and associating with people from diversified backgrounds, you will gain many new insights and increase your fund of knowledge.

Make these talks pleasant and wholesome and avoid passing on gossip or unfounded rumors that may prove hurtful to the reputation of others.

### **NO. 9: GETTING WRAPPED UP IN MATERIAL THINGS AND GOING INTO DEBT**

Being in debt puts undue pressure on both mates. The man can become uptight, edgy, and upset — especially when the bills come due and he doesn't have enough money to go around to pay them all. The wife usually has to suffer the brunt of the telephone calls and the bill collectors coming to the door.

Often, these strains lead to fights and quarrels. The wife thinks the husband is not providing enough — and perhaps he can't. The kids are unhappy because they have to wear hand-me-downs, and don't have nice toys, better clothing, and recreational opportunities.

A recent survey by Brigham Young University concluded: "The couple that stays out of debt is more likely to stay together."

Most people are in debt, and have no savings. If an emergency should strike, they are in trouble. This can create extreme pressure and difficulty for a married couple. Most marriages would be happier if debts were kept to a minimum.

### **NO. 10: FAILURE TO UNDERSTAND MOODS AND ERRATIC BEHAVIOR**

God does not change, but we human beings can swing emotionally like a pendulum. We often get discouraged and upset over the slightest little thing. Unless we understand the nature and characteristics of moods and temperaments, we can misread our mates emotionally.

Everybody has moods and it is vital that we understand them. If we are close to God, we shouldn't have a lot of moodiness. But, we're not perfect yet, so we're going to have those moments when we're unhappy with life. If you find your mate in a period of the "blues," don't pry or ask too many personal questions, but do be sympathetic and willing to listen if he or she wants to talk. Show concern, but don't press for answers.

### **NO. 11: FAILURE TO UNDERSTAND AND APPLY GOD'S TWO-FOLD PLAN FOR MARRIAGE**

Ephesians 5:25 states, "*Husbands, love your wives.*" This is a very basic precept of Christian family structure. It further states, "*...even as Christ also loved the Church, and gave Himself for it.*"

How did Christ love the Church? John 4:19 gives an interesting answer: "*We love Him (Jesus Christ) because He first loved US.*"

The point is: Since the husband is the head of the wife, as Christ is the head of the Church, he's to love her first, as Christ did the Church. The responsibility to love rests first with the man. He's to follow the example that Jesus Christ set.

I know it's natural for husbands to think, "*Well, she's to love me, and serve me because God has set me over her as the head of the family, etc.*" No, the Bible actually shows just the opposite. God places the greater responsibility of love on him first, because he is the head — the leader in charge. Therefore, he should be up front showing the way, setting the example, serving his family and looking out for their interests and welfare. When he has done these things first, their love for him will naturally follow.

Isn't this the precedence that Jesus Christ set — and is still practicing today? He not only gave His life for us, but also he's looking out for our needs, guiding us, helping us and blessing us in manifold ways.

If you as a husband will follow this rule and view your headship as an opportunity to love, you'll find that your wife will reciprocate in kind and wear her knuckles to the bone to serve you. She will do this willingly because you have inspired her to.

Now, the second part of this two-fold answer is found in Ephesians 5, verse 22: "*Wives, submit yourselves unto your own husbands, as unto the Lord.*" The word "submit" means to respond to him, to uphold him, to honor him. It's another way of saying love him, and to be grateful for his generosity, his affections, and his many little kindnesses. You should now want to do this because he loves you, strengthens you, compliments you, and gives you all that he has to offer — his time, energy, thoughts, his spiritual help and encouragement. Submit means to give him equal love in return and to respond to his needs and give him every encouragement to face life's challenges and to be a success.

The two-fold answer is simple: "Husbands, love your wives. " And, "Wives, submit yourselves to your own husbands. "

### **NO. 12: LACK OF TOTAL COMMITMENT AND CONSISTENT HARD WORK**

The word "work" is the one ingredient that is oftentimes missing when marriages collapse and disintegrate. It takes work to eradicate selfishness — to keep your emotions under control. It takes work to build positive relationships and to keep your commitment strong. In order, then, to have a stable and happy marriage, you should strive to be the best wife on earth, to be the most outstanding husband — to work diligently to keep respect and honor for each other in clear, sharp focus.

Are you going to continue in a marriage that's unhappy and about to go under, when you can correct it? I think it is most encouraging to remember what King David prayed about in Psalm 51 when he was finally caught in sin. He became very sorry for his mistake and repented of it bitterly: "*Create in me a clean heart, O God; and renew a right spirit within me*" (Psa. 51:10).

Take your problems continually to God. Ask Him to create in you a clean heart! To renew a right spirit within you and give you the courage to step out and turn things around! Husbands, take the lead and be the first to initiate a reconciliation. Resolve to sit down together in private — just the two of you — to iron out your differences and start a new life.

Kneel down together before God in prayer and say: "*We're tired of all this fighting and arguing, and all these conflicts that make us unhappy and miserable. We're tired of doing it our way and ending up being total failures. God, restore our love again. Give us love for each other.*"

Then, if you'll get up and put into effect the love God will provide, you'll start improving your relationship tremendously!

### **ACT NOW!**

Now is the time to renew your marriage commitment and go on a permanent honeymoon! A honeymoon that will last and last and weather all storms because it's founded on God and His great love.

If you will apply the principles of this summary — with God's help and guidance — your marriage can be filled to overflowing with happiness, love, accomplishment and success!

**-END-**

## CHAPTER 37

### **"WHAT IS TRUE FEMININITY?"**

#### **I. A WOMAN WHO IS FULFILLING HER GOD-GIVEN ROLE IN LIFE IS SOURCE OF GREAT SPIRITUAL STRENGTH TO A MAN.**

- A. She is the most beautiful creature on earth to him.
- B. Not only is she a crown of joy to her husband, but also to others with whom she comes in contact.
- C. Scriptures:
  1. Prov. 12:4 — *"A virtuous woman is a crown to her husband..."*
  2. Prov. 18:22 — *"Whoso findeth a wife findeth a good thing, and obtaineth favor of the Lord."*
  3. Prov. 19:14 — *"House and riches are the inheritance of fathers: and a prudent wife is from the Lord."*
  4. Prov. 11:16 — *"A gracious woman retaineth honor..."*

#### **II. CONVERSELY, A WOMAN WHO REJECTS GOD AND DENIES HER ROLE CAN ALSO BE A PAINFUL THORN IN THE MAN'S FLESH — A HINDRANCE, A DISCOURAGEMENT AND A CONTINUAL GRIEF TO HIM.**

- A. A woman who is hard and manish is not an asset to herself or to her husband.
- B. Scriptures:
  1. Prov. 12:4 — *"...she that maketh ashamed is as rottenness in his bones."*
  2. Prov. 11:22 — *"As a jewel of gold in a swine's snout, so is a fair woman which is without discretion."*
  3. Prov. 19:13 — *"...the contentions of a wife are a continual dropping."*
  4. Prov. 21:9 — *"It is better to dwell in a corner of the housetop, than with a brawling woman in a wide house."*
- C. Few things can bring greater heartache to a man than a brawling, nagging, bickering wife — who is ungrateful and forever criticizing him.

#### **III. WHY ARE SO MANY WOMEN NOT FEMININE?**

- A. This is Satan's world, and he does not want women to be feminine. He does not want them to know their role or to fulfill it.
  1. Poor training at home because of lack of right knowledge of what is feminine.
  2. Influence of society.
  3. Women's lib (Mr. Armstrong says that this started back in the Garden of Eden with Eve!).
  4. So-called "equal rights."
  5. Peer pressure and associates at school, work, neighbors, family; influence of those around her.
  6. The media: TV, movies, magazines newspapers billboard ads, books, etc.
- B. If a woman is a victim of the above circumstances (and all are), she has to recognize the source and realize that she has the power, with the help of God, to change her life. She must not use other people or circumstances as an excuse.

#### **IV. TRUE FEMININITY IS A FINE ART.**

- A. True femininity is first and foremost an attitude of mind.
- B. It is how a woman thinks about herself and even more importantly, how she relates to men. It is a uniqueness that makes her lovely and beautiful to her male counterpart.
- C. A truly feminine woman wants to be a woman — she does not desire to compete with a man in his role.
- D. She tries to underline those qualities that make her distinctly different rather than trying to be like him.
- E. She understands that God knows what is best for women because He created them.
  1. God made her physically weaker than the man with softer skin, delicate muscle tone and a higher voice.

2. God made her different emotionally from men. She cries more easily and is generally more spontaneous in expressing joy and love.
- F. Because the feminine woman knows that she was created to be man's support and helpmeet, she is happy with this knowledge. The qualities that make her feminine are reflected in her whole personality.
  1. She thinks femininely, seeing everything from a womanly point of view.
  2. The feminine woman capitalizes on and underlines the physical things that make her unique and attractive.
  3. Because she enjoys being a woman and fulfilling that role, her physical softness and beauty come through in everything she does.
  4. Because she is physically weaker (and is not ashamed of it), her movements and mannerisms are more delicate and gentle.
  5. Because her voice was not designed to shout down a whole room full of people, it is higher, softer, and has a soothing quality.

#### **V. THERE ARE THREE BASIC AREAS THAT COMPRISE FEMININITY.**

- A. A woman's relationship with God.
  1. A feminine woman will recognize God's sovereignty — being obedient to & responsive to His will.
  2. She will study the Bible for examples of true femininity — the lives of Sarah, Ruth, Hannah, Mary (Christ's mother) and others.
- B. How a woman feels about herself.
  1. If a woman has a right attitude, confidence and self-respect about herself and her role, she will be feminine.
  2. If she has guilt feelings or deep-seated hang-ups about herself, she will have inner conflicts and frustrations.
  3. She will know that she's falling short of God's standards — thus making herself miserable.
- C. A woman's relationship with others.
  1. If a woman has a close relationship with God and accepts her role as He ordained it, then she will have right relationships with those around her.
  2. God's Spirit will radiate from her with sincerity and genuine love.

#### **VI. WHAT THEN, ARE THE SPECIFICS OF FEMININITY?**

- A. Characteristics:
  1. True Conversion and the Fear of God
    - a. Prov. 31:30 — A virtuous woman fears God.
    - b. She is obedient and submissive to God.
    - c. Even in the face of trials, disappointment and persecution, she has uncompromising character and upholds God's principles.
  2. Strong Faith and Courage
    - a. Pressures and crises don't cause her to crumble. Circumstances such as a sick child, the loss of a job, a death in the family or a crisis in the Church do not shake her faith.
    - b. Knowing that all things work together for good to them that love God (Rom. 8:28), she has unshakeable trust in God.
    - c. She has cultivated and built inner strength into her life. She knows that God will give her the power to face all trials and obstacles if she remains true to Him.
  3. Meekness and Humility
    - a. 1 Peter 3:1-6 — Meek and quiet spirit.
    - b. Because she is teachable and willing to change, she seeks out counsel and advice.
    - c. She doesn't mind being in the background as a helper and servant of others.
      1. If she is single, she realizes that she must support herself financially, but she chooses her "career" wisely.
      2. In choosing a job, she looks for one that is a support function, not one commanding 100 men at the head of the company. She doesn't strive for supervision over others because she knows that this will not help her to achieve the attitude of true feminine humility and meekness that God wants her to have.



- d. The feminine woman does not debate, argue or insist on her way. (Contentiousness is condemned five times in the book of Proverbs: Prov. 19:13; 21:9,19; 25:24; & 27:15.)

#### 4. Submission and Service

- a. The feminine wife recognizes her role as being submissive to her husband and responsive to his needs and wishes.
- b. The single woman, if she desires to be feminine, also will reflect this same basic awareness.
  1. She will practice a submissive attitude toward her boss and the men she interfaces with daily on her job.
  2. Even though these men do not have the same kind of authority as a husband, she realizes that she must respect them as leaders in society. She knows that God has given men in general the leadership role.
- c. A woman can learn submission and service (qualities that God wants all of mankind to learn) perhaps even more fully than a man because of the very nature of her support role that God has assigned.
- d. A truly feminine woman will have an attitude of helping, serving and encouraging others in general.
- e. By viewing her role as man's helper and companion, a woman is freed from the stresses and strains required of a man. This allows her to be even more full of zeal and energy and love for others.
- f. There are so many opportunities for a woman to be of service and give to others. They can give her life purpose whether she be single or married.
  1. Visiting the sick.
  2. Volunteering to help the needy.
  3. Keeping children for a friend who is sick.
  4. Being involved with singles activities if she is single.
- g. Preoccupation with self makes a woman dry, bland, uninteresting and dull.
- h. The feminine woman will demonstrate maturity because she has grown out of self-centeredness, giddiness and selfishness.

#### 5. Feminine Values and Goals

- a. High on the list of priorities for the feminine woman is the goal of being the best wife, mother and homemaker possible.
- b. The single girl should be interested in and eager to learn these womanly duties.
- c. Developing her talents and skills are important to her:
  1. Academically, she keeps up with world events, and can understand the concepts in the light of prophecy and the Bible.
  2. She is interested in cooking, nutrition, health, sewing, needlecrafts, decorating, reading, the arts, etc.

#### 6. Self-control and Emotional Stability

- a. The feminine woman doesn't overreact to failure, disappointment, frustration, irritation or any number of unpleasant situations that may arise. Other negative attitudes she will guard against are: depression, moodiness, poutiness, hurt feelings and inferiority.
- b. She overcomes child-like outbursts of temper and sets the proper example for her children — especially her daughters.
  1. Her children admire her and depend on her.
  2. Prov. 31:28 — *"Her children arise up, and call her blessed..."*
- c. Because she has her emotions under control, the feminine woman is able to handle unpleasant circumstances calmly and intelligently.

#### 7. Trust and Responsibility

- a. Prov. 31:11-12 — Her husband safely trusts her.
- b. Reliability and dependability are strong points of a feminine woman's character.
- c. Whether she is married or single, punctuality is a part of her life because she schedules her time wisely.
- d. She is true to her word and keeps her promises and commitments.
- e. Loyalty is one of her strengths and her husband or employer can count on her to be productive and trustworthy.

- f. Confidences are treated as such and her friends know that they can trust her.
8. Wisdom and Understanding
- Prov. 31:26 — *"She openeth her mouth with wisdom."*
  - Even though she may have a strong opinion, the feminine woman knows when to express it and when to pass over a matter.
  - Impulsiveness is not part of her character — she thinks before she acts.
  - She doesn't monopolize conversation or interrupt when others are speaking.
  - She doesn't blatantly tell everyone she meets about her personal problems.
  - Exercising caution, she thinks a matter through until she can see the end result.
  - She isn't naive — she doesn't leave the gate and doors unlocked, shades up at night, or let salesmen in, etc.
  - When there is conflict or misunderstanding, she is tactful and acts quickly to make peace.
9. Intelligent and Discriminating
- Having a clear set of priorities helps her to discriminate between essentials and non-essentials.
  - Her mind is alert and discerning because her ideals and values are based on the Bible.
  - She learns from experience and association with other people.
  - She chooses friends who are balanced and level-headed, rather than those who will commiserate and be overly sympathetic.
  - Keeping abreast of news and current events helps her to be informed.
  - She knows how to converse intelligently on many different subjects because she keeps her mind alert and stimulated by reading widely.
10. Diligent and Resourceful
- Prov. 31:13-22 — She is able to negotiate business and earn extra money.
  - Femininity is not being utterly helpless. The feminine woman is prepared. She can change a flat tire, light the pilot light on the stove, and make minor repairs in case of an emergency.
  - Finances are not a mystery to her. She knows how to pay the bills and balance the checkbook.
  - She is a wise shopper — compares prices, doesn't buy on impulse, and stays within her budget.
  - Imagination and inventiveness are part of her creative abilities.
  - If she is an employee, she is diligent even when the boss is not present. She does not do only that which is required — she goes above and beyond. She strives to please her employer and tries to make his business successful.
11. Initiative, Leadership and Drive
- She recognizes opportunities to serve and make herself useful.
  - Motivating and encouraging others are some of her strongest qualities.
  - Spontaneity and love for people are expressed in her desire to see them happy and successful.
  - Having a genuine interest in the welfare of others, she doesn't serve to impress.
  - She is aware of her example at all times.
  - New challenges are stimulating and exciting.
  - She can lead, but not in a manish way. Her style of leadership is not one of competitiveness or abrasiveness, but one of inspiration and encouragement.
  - She is responsible and capable without being hard and demanding.
12. Modesty and Virtue
- She not only practices modesty in her personal life, she also actively teaches her daughters the value of this beautiful feminine trait.
  - She is careful of her posture and bodily movements: sitting, standing, walking, stooping, as well as the look in her eyes and tone in her voice. She steers clear of any action that is sexually arousing or would lead others to think she is morally impure.  
(I Thes. 5:22 — *"Abstain from all-appearance of evil."*)
  - Avoiding emphasis on self and vanity, she dresses out of concern for her husband, daughters and others.

- d. She avoids seductive attire — plunging necklines, short skirts, bare midriff, bikinis, heavy make-up, etc.
  - e. Her conversation is always proper and appropriate without vulgarity or lewd insinuations.
13. Balance and Moderation
- a. Excess is a sin. This applies to eating, sleeping, recreation, music, etc. The feminine woman is balanced in every aspect of life and avoids going to extremes.
  - b. She doesn't neglect her responsibilities or engage in activities that serve no useful end.
  - c. Self-discipline is an integral part of her basic character.
14. Kindness and Patience
- a. Prov. 31:26 — "...in her tongue is the law of kindness."
  - b. Understanding of and tolerance toward others are expressed in how she handles their short-comings.
  - c. She is quick to overlook mistakes and forgive, and think the best about them.
  - d. The feminine woman expresses empathy and concern toward those with problems in an encouraging way.
  - e. She's especially gentle, kind and sympathetic toward the sick and infirmed.
15. Poise and Self-Confidence
- a. This self-assuredness comes from good breeding, proper teaching, observation and experience.
  - b. It comes from living a clean and wholesome life — and walking with God.
  - c. Inner poise is the absence of self-consciousness and shyness.
  - d. It's a characteristic any woman can develop if she sets her mind to it.
16. Culture and Refinement
- a. Prov. 11:16,22 — "A gracious woman retaineth honor."
  - b. Proper etiquette and social graces are important values in her make up. She knows how to meet and converse with people at all strata of society.
  - c. She keeps her living environment clean, organized and tidy.
  - d. The feminine woman is up-to-date. She keeps abreast of current fashions, trends, decorating techniques, etc.
  - e. She has a good vocabulary she knows how to communicate and intelligently express her ideas.
  - f. She appreciates quality both in terms of material things and the arts.
17. Attractive Personality
- a. Her pleasing smile and soft-spoken manner display an inner charm and grace. She is known and admired for her gentle ways — not for boisterousness, coarseness and competition.
  - b. Innocence, naturalness and friendship are reflected in her face.
  - c. She is cheerful and positive in her basic disposition toward life.
  - d. She displays a good sense of humor in the way she laughs with people and not at them.
18. Grooming and Appearance
- a. High standards of personal cleanliness and grooming are important to her and are reflected in her clothing and appearance.
  - b. Avoiding extremes, her hairstyle is becoming, but not exotic.
  - c. She wears clothes that are in good taste, becoming to her personality and dresses appropriately for whatever activity she is engaged in.
  - d. She doesn't dress to call attention to herself or out of vanity.
  - e. Realizing that outward beauty isn't everything, she knows she can enhance her inner beauty and attractiveness by developing her character and femininity.
19. Calmness and Inner Peace
- a. This attitude is the result of growing and overcoming — following a lifestyle that she believes is pleasing to God.
  - b. She sparkles with warmth and spontaneity.
  - c. Her mind is full of God's Word, good thoughts and positive attitudes.
  - d. She doesn't engage in any form of activity that is filthy, debasing or worldly.
  - e. She radiates a magnetism and charisma that is distinctly Godly and glorious — but not gushy, sentimental or overly religious.

## B. SUMMARY

The truly feminine woman will have her mind on others rather than on herself. She will be aware of their needs and be concerned for their well-being. She is outgoing, warm, and considerate. She'll radiate joy because she is content with the role that God has given her and because she knows that giving and serving are what bring lasting joy and happiness. She will have a quiet confidence and serenity because she is fulfilling the role that God intended her to perform. In short, she thoroughly enjoys being a woman!

## VII. THE QUALITIES OF FEMININITY FROM A MAN'S POINT OF VIEW.

### A. The qualities that inspire him personally:

1. A lifestyle that reflects the fear of God and a deeply converted attitude.
  - a. Keep God first in your life and be aglow with the Holy Spirit.
  - b. Set a right example in all that you do.
  - c. Realize that being a Christian is something that you practice every minute of every day — not just when you feel like it or on the Sabbath.
  - d. Strive to overcome and grow daily.
  - e. When you fear God, the whole of your life will radiate an innocence, naturalness, and simplicity — qualities that men highly admire.
2. An attitude of respect, appreciation and submission toward the man's God-given role.
  - a. Always remember that God made man the head and placed him in the leadership position.
  - b. Respect his office. Don't antagonize him by being belligerent, defiant or competitive.
  - c. God better equipped man to handle the leadership role. Willingly submit and reverence his calling.
  - d. Being submissive doesn't make you an inferior person. You enhance your own status when you submit to and uphold him.
3. A gracious, warm and humble demeanor.
  - a. The ability to entertain and put others at ease.
  - b. Be friendly and charitable.
  - c. Esteem others better than yourself.
  - d. Don't be haughty and cynical.
  - e. Show sincere concern for others.
4. A supportive and responsive spirit.
  - a. Be encouraging.
  - b. Support from behind the scenes. Don't try to steal the spotlight by calling attention to yourself. Rejoice in his successes and don't take credit for yourself.
  - c. Respond to his wishes with cooperation and eagerness.
  - d. Show excitement toward his interests and plans.
5. The ability to encourage and uplift him when he's down and defeated.
  - a. Express faith in God and keep a positive attitude that all things will work out.
  - b. Help him to see the brighter side.
  - c. Be sympathetic and concerned, but don't get down yourself.
  - d. Let him know that you're on his side and that you have faith in his abilities and that he can always depend on you.
6. A caring and serving attitude toward others regardless of their status in life.
  - a. If you don't have this attitude — work to attain it. Remember that every person is a potential member of God's family and should be treated with equal love.
  - b. Look beyond status or position and serve anyone in need.
  - c. God put everyone in His Church as it has pleased Him. Therefore, don't be a respecter of persons.
  - d. A man is impressed with the woman who demonstrates a heartfelt love for others.
7. The ability to inspire him with confidence and ambition by reinforcing his potential strengths and achievements.
  - a. Let him know that you admire him and that with persistent effort he will succeed.

- b. Recognize that you have the ability to make or break his spirit. Don't nag, criticize or complain.
  - c. Be encouraging — try to keep him in a positive frame of mind. Remind him that God has never let him down, nor will He in the future.
  - d. Talk often about the Bible and engage him in spiritual conversation — yet recognize that he's your spiritual leader.
8. The ability to listen, communicate and adapt to needs.
- a. Be an interested listener. Show a willingness to cooperate and make his decisions work.
  - b. Communicate your feelings and ideas to him.
  - c. Be a good sounding board and offer a variety of solutions.
  - d. Actively participate in all his plans, hopes and dreams.
9. A genuine interest in his goals and career.
- a. Show an interest in his job. Even if it's in a very technical field, you can at least learn a few basics.
  - b. Be hospitable to those he works with.
  - c. Let him know that you're behind him in whatever Godly and acceptable career he chooses.
  - d. Be patient and sympathetic toward his trials and frustrations on the job.
  - e. Give him the incentive to want to improve.
10. The ability to entreat him with positive love and honor when he's wrong.
- a. Pray for humility and a right attitude before approaching him about a problem.
  - b. Wait for the right moment when he's in a pleasant mood.
  - c. Describe the problem in a quiet, respectful tone of voice.
  - d. Remember that God put him as the head, and holds him responsible. If he does not agree with you, leave it in God's hands.
11. An attitude of teachableness and repentance when corrected without self-justification.
- a. Apologize and don't be defensive or make excuses.
  - b. Be willing to learn and change.
12. A fervent desire to please God and help her family make the Kingdom.
- a. To be the kind of example that will evoke in your husband and children an awareness of God and His holy righteous standards.
  - b. Your whole life and being should be a constant representation of the characteristics of Prov. 31.
  - c. You should strive to be a source of inspiration and hope to your entire household.
  - d. Your life and conduct should depict the glory and honor as reflected in the bride of Christ.
- B. Make attaining true femininity a constant, daily goal.

-END-



## CHAPTER 38

### **"WHAT IS TRUE MASCULINITY?"**

#### **I. THE STRENGTH, LIFE AND HEALTH OF THE CHURCH DEPENDS LARGELY ON HOW WE AS MEN FULFILL OUR ROLES AS SPIRITUAL LEADERS.**

- A. The success of our homes and marriages depends greatly on the quality of our spiritual lives.
- B. God has assigned and delegated to us a profound and sobering responsibility.
- C. If we fail in our roles as spiritual leaders, our families will suffer and so will the character of the Church.

#### **II. AS WE SHALL PROVE, GOD CREATED MAN FIRST AND MADE HIM TO BE THE HEAD — TO BE THE AGGRESSOR.**

- A. Under God's rule, he has been made responsible.
- B. Whether or not he succeeds, depends on how well he discharges his calling and duty.
- C. NOTE: When a marriage crumbles, first and foremost God holds the man accountable.

#### **III. THE PURPOSE OF THIS LECTURE IS TO DEFINE THE MEANING OF TRUE MASCULINITY.**

- A. To describe the role that God intended for man to play.
- B. To outline the job, calling and duties of a "real masculine leader."
- C. To disclose the awesome responsibility God envisioned for man when He created Adam.

#### **IV. LET US FIRST LOOK AT OUR TRAGIC, MIXED-UP WORLD TODAY.**

- A. Newspapers, magazines, TV & the movies picture men as henpecked dolts, dominated and ruled over by women.
- B. They are weak in moral, mental and physical character.
- C. By abdicating their roles, they have forced women into unnatural leadership positions, producing frustration, resentment and shame.

#### **V. THIS SAD STATE OF AFFAIRS WAS PROPHESED CENTURIES AGO.**

- A. Isa. 3:1-3 — *"For behold, the Lord...doth take away...the mighty man, and the man of war, the judge ...the captain of fifty, and the honorable man...."*
  - 1. The marginal reference for 'the honorable man' renders this phrase as a man eminent in countenance.
  - 2. This phrase indicates that there would be a lack of men commanding respect (Soncino).
  - 3. This has occurred today.
- B. Isa. 3:4-5,12 — *"As for my people, children are their oppressors, and women rule over them."*
  - 1. These verses again show men to be unqualified for true leadership or rule.
  - 2. They are as unqualified as children to rule, and are effeminate like women. (JFB.)
  - 3. The fact that children can exalt themselves illustrates the appalling lack of true masculine leadership.
- C. Isa. 3:16-17 — *"Moreover the Lord saith, Because the daughters of Zion are haughty, and walk with stretched forth necks and wanton eyes...Therefore the Lord will smite with a scab the crown of the head of the daughters of Zion."*
  - 1. These verses depict the state of mind of modern-day women.
  - 2. Have they not become this way because men have relinquished their roles as leaders — a point so clearly emphasized throughout this chapter?

## **VI. CLEARLY, IN TODAY'S WORLD THE MAJORITY OF MEN HAVE LOST THEIR SPIRITUAL FIBER AND COURAGE AND HAVE TAKEN ON THE SOFT, WEAK AND EFFEMINATE CHARACTERISTICS OF WOMEN.**

- A. I Cor. 6:9-10 — *"Know ye not that the unrighteous...nor EFFEMINATE...shall inherit the Kingdom of God."*  
 B. How vital it is that men in God's Church recapture the value and meaning of true masculinity.

## **VII. MODERN-DAY MISCONCEPTIONS OF MASCULINITY.**

- A. Before discussing the characteristics of a true masculine leader, let's examine some false ideas and notions commonly held today.
- B. What real masculinity is not:
1. A swaggering, super-confident macho type, like "The Fonz" on Happy Days.
  2. A Schwarzenegger physique.
  3. A strong and tough hero like Tarzan, Baretta, James Bond or Superman.
  4. A suave, sophisticated playboy and modern-day swinger.
  5. A crude and coarse pot-bellied drinker who swears and uses vulgar language.
  6. The loud, boisterous, braggart who's forever extolling his virtues and advertising himself.
  7. One who is arrogant and fiercely competitive and feels that he must win at all costs.
  8. The know-it-all who enjoys intimidating others.
  9. The man who's power hungry and who likes to control and order people around.
  10. One who lays down the law and domineers, and rules his wife and children with an iron hand.
- C. In general, the type who's selfish, arrogant and vain and who likes to impress others with his knowledge, exploits and skills.

## **VIII. A PROFILE OF TRUE MASCULINITY.**

- A. True masculinity is playing the role that God intended.
1. Man was physically designed and created to be the head and leader.
    - a. He has broad shoulders, strong muscles, a sturdy build and is heavier.
    - b. He is generally taller than the woman so that she has to look up to him.
    - c. He is virile, rugged and robust, and was designed for action and hard work — to be the protector and provider.
    - d. He has a deeper voice.
    - e. He has coarse and hairy skin.
  2. God gave him a masculine mentality to match his physical frame.
    - a. He likes a challenge.
    - b. He's a planner with daring, aggressive and bold ambitions.
    - c. He's a deep thinker who likes to tackle and conquer problems.
    - d. He enjoys rough and rugged activities that test his agility and strength.
    - e. In short, he is equipped both mentally and physically to be the dominate figure and to lead the woman.
  3. Contrast, the woman was designed both physically and mentally to assist the man.
    - a. She has a softer, more fragile and delicate body.
    - b. She is smaller in stature and is aptly described as the weaker vessel (I Peter 3:7).
    - c. Her natural interests (unless perverted) center around her home, family and general domestic duties.
    - d. She was created to be the man's helpmeet and companion.
    - e. Since she was made from man, God instilled in her heart a desire to assist and please him.
  4. Thus, the male was created, both physically and mentally, to lead the woman and be her head.
    - a. Gen. 2:18,21-24 — *"The woman was made for man."*
    - b. I Cor. 11:3,8-9 — *"Husband is head of the wife."*
- B. The general characteristics of a masculine leader.
1. Is God-fearing and deeply converted.
    - a. His supreme desire is to walk with God and keep Him at the center of his life.
    - b. As he grows in God's likeness, the natural qualities of true masculinity will emerge.
    - c. As he prays and studies, he will become more cognizant of his role and God-given responsibilities.



- d. The negative traits of fear, shyness and inferiority will disappear.
  - e. Daily he should take on the masculine attributes of his elder Brother, Jesus Christ.
  - f. II Cor. 3:18 — *"But we all, with open face beholding as in a glass the glory of the Lord, are changed into the same image from glory to glory, even as by the Spirit of the Lord."*
2. Has inner strength, character and stability.
    - a. He is unshakeable, unmoveable and deeply grounded in the truth.
    - b. He will not compromise his principles, yield to temptation, or break under pressure.
    - c. When trials beset him, he trusts God to the end.
    - d. This type of leader is respected by all and is known far and wide.
  3. Is self-assured and confident.
    - a. This kind of confidence comes from faith in God and from a track record of experience and success.
    - b. It's a distinct manly trait that carries with it an air of authority.
    - c. Such a man knows where he's going and what he wants out of life.
    - d. The opposite sex feels secure in the presence of a man with this brand of confidence.
  4. Has purpose, drive and initiative.
    - a. He has mapped out his life and has established clear-cut goals — he knows where he's headed.
    - b. With tenacity and vigor, he pushes himself to overcome all obstacles.
    - c. He does not allow himself to become discouraged, distracted or defeated — "can't" and "impossible" are not a part of his normal vocabulary.
    - d. His total outlook is positive and upbeat and you sense that you're in the presence of a "winner" — a man with a destiny.
  5. Is intelligent and decisive.
    - a. He has learned how to concentrate and use his mind to its fullest capacity.
    - b. He cuts through trivia and gets down to essentials — he doesn't procrastinate.
    - c. This kind of leader tackles a problem head-on and doesn't succumb to frustration and despair.
    - d. He is alert to opportunity and new doors God may open.
    - e. He's not afraid to step out in faith and take a calculated risk.
    - f. The ability to stand up under pressure and make life and death decisions is a distinct masculine trait.
  6. Practices self-control.
    - a. He disciplines his body, controls his time and dictates to circumstances.
    - b. He is tough on himself and has his life totally in hand.
    - c. Self-discipline is a hallmark.
    - d. "No" is one of his most powerful command words.
    - e. He has a clear set of priorities and puts first things first.
  7. Is emotionally mature.
    - a. He controls his temper, disciplines his moods and monitors his overall attitude.
    - b. He can roll with the punches and bounce back from defeat.
    - c. This type of leader doesn't need the constant reassurance, acceptance or recognition of people.
    - d. He can receive criticism without it destroying him.
    - e. He doesn't whine, feel sorry for himself or seek the sympathy of others when his purposes have been thwarted.
    - f. You will rarely hear him complain about his aches and pains or general health.
  8. Is law abiding, conscientious and responsible.
    - a. He doesn't try to outsmart the IRS or rip off his neighbor in a business deal.
    - b. He is upright, sincere and always tells the truth.
    - c. He's dependable — his word is his bond.
    - d. Being a responsible citizen, he promptly submits to the laws of the land and pays his bills on time.
    - e. In all areas of human relations, he fears God and reflects sterling character.

9. Uses common sense and good judgment.
  - a. He possesses an inner sense of knowing when to speak and how to act in almost every situation.
  - b. Has an ability to size up a problem and cut through to the answer.
  - c. He is big-minded, thinks long range and is able to grasp the best course of action when making decisions.
  - d. Has developed a sense of insight, wisdom and sound-mindedness.
  - e. This is particularly true in the area of human relations — tactful, diplomatic and understanding.
10. Takes charge when necessary.
  - a. This does not mean he's to usurp another's authority.
  - b. It does mean he's to have presence of mind in a difficult situation when an appointed leader is not present.
  - c. He feels a sense of responsibility guided by God's Spirit to uphold the proper standards.
  - d. He keeps his cool and doesn't fold in a crisis situation.
  - e. In dating he always takes the lead and demonstrates by his confident manner that he's a protector and a haven of trust.
11. Maintains vigor, vitality and good health.
  - a. Keeps physically fit.
  - b. He watches his diet — avoids overeating and resist's junk foods.
  - c. He has a regular program of exercise and gets sufficient sleep.
  - d. Knowing that stress destroys good health and peace of mind, he strives to maintain a positive mental attitude.
  - e. Masculinity does not mean developing big muscles, but it does involve maintaining good health.
12. Demonstrates self-respect.
  - a. Godly self-esteem is a trademark of true masculinity.
  - b. A leader must have it if he's to win the respect of others.
  - c. Self-respect is a product of living a clean and wholesome life.
  - d. It's a mature and inner confidence that comes from integrity and a clear conscience.
  - e. He displays an air of control and authority over his life and will have little trouble mastering any situation he may encounter.
  - f. Thus, others will look up to him and will place credence in his character.

#### **IX. A WOMAN'S VIEW OF TRUE MASCULINITY.**

- A. What makes a man "masculine" to a woman?
- B. What is it that makes him a leader and a "real" man?
- C. What does her nature cry out for from him?
- D. Listed below are some of the qualities that women look for and desire in their male counterparts.
  1. A woman was created to want and need a leader.
    - a. First and foremost she wants him to be deeply converted.
    - b. To put God first and remind her to do likewise.
    - c. She wants him to be the head — to know his role and accept it.
    - d. To take charge because he knows he's innately responsible for her welfare.
    - e. The masculine leader then is one she can trust, respect and look up to.
    - f. When he relinquishes his position as head, he causes her to become independent and aggressive — a role that buries her femininity and makes her miserable.
  2. She wants a man that can control her.
    - a. A woman cannot respect a man that she can dominate and wrap around her little finger.
    - b. Nor does she respect the man who tries to win her over by groveling at her feet and meekly following her lead.
    - c. A woman will push until she finds her boundaries.
    - d. The reason: She wants to know whether she can feel safe and secure with him.
    - e. She admires a man who will say, "O. K. Lady, that's as far as you go. "
    - f. A woman will take control and lead if the man doesn't, but be frustrated and unfeminine in doing it.

3. She wants a man who's sensitive to her feelings.
  - a. She wants him to realize that she's more delicate and fragile than he and tires more easily.
  - b. That she's more emotional and can be crushed by harsh correction.
  - c. That she needs encouragement, appreciation and tender understanding.
  - d. To be aware that she's given her whole life as his help-meet and needs his reassurance and acceptance.
  - e. To realize her pressures are just as real and difficult to bear as his, and therefore he should be patient, loving and kind.
4. She finds certain physical qualities masculine.
  - a. She wants him to look like a man.
  - b. His hair should not be too long — a borderline haircut shows a borderline attitude.
  - c. His pants should not fit too tightly, nor his shirt be half unbuttoned.
  - d. He should have straight shoulders, a straight back, and be physically fit.
  - e. His voice should be lower and stronger.
  - f. His body movements should be distinctly masculine — not prissy, delicate or dainty.
  - g. He should be careful of hygiene, body odor and personal appearance.
5. She wants him to be tough and rugged.
  - a. A fragile, weak man is unappealing.
  - b. She is repulsed by tender hands, manicured fingernails and a frail body.
  - c. The kind of man she loves doesn't mind getting grease on his hands or splinters in his fingers.
  - d. He can play the role of a mechanic, carpenter, handyman, etc.
  - e. He doesn't shy away from hard work or difficult tasks — but tackles them head-on with confidence and gusto.
  - f. He's not to be cruel and abusive, but to be master over his life and circumstances.
  - g. Strength — physical, mental and spiritual — should characterize his total personality.
6. She admires a man with confidence and inner strength.
  - a. A woman cannot respect a man who whines, moans and complains about his bad breaks in life.
  - b. He should carry himself as a man with pride — a confidence based on God, not on vanity or ego.
  - c. He's a kind of man who walks with authority and purpose.
  - d. He's aggressive and forceful, yet gentle and willing to listen.
  - e. In a woman's eyes, inner strength is a major ingredient of masculinity.
7. She wants him to be responsible and protective of her.
  - a. To look after her safety and welfare.
  - b. To do little things to let her know he cares — opens the door for her, keeps her car in good repair, does the chores without being asked.
  - c. He gives counsel and guidance in helping her to make right decisions.
  - d. To take the lead in handling such problems as bill collectors, door-to-door salesman, and serious conflicts with the children.
  - e. This type of man is a real gentleman and shows his love and affection in a thousand little ways.
  - f. NOTE: In a dating situation, a God-fearing man will never try to seduce a woman or cause her to engage in a wrestling match to fight him off. When he gets too physical, her respect for him plummets.
8. She wants him to lead her toward God's Kingdom.
  - a. To be a tower of strength she can lean on and example she can follow.
  - b. She wants him to correct her in love and to encourage her to develop her full potential.
  - c. She needs his support in her role as wife and mother.
  - d. She wants him to keep her in line and not let her frustrations get out of control.
  - e. The kind of man she greatly respects is one who radiates the qualities of God's Spirit, even though she may have no romantic interest in him whatsoever.
  - f. In the final analysis, God holds the husband responsible for the spiritual character of his home.

**X. A BRIEF DESCRIPTION FROM A WOMAN.**

"To be a man is a role. It is a position given by God. *'The head of every man is Christ; and the head of every woman is the man; and the head of Christ is God'* (I Cor. 11:3). This position is given by God for a purpose and a function. When a man fills this role, he becomes masculine. The more completely he fills this role, the more masculine qualities he'll develop. If he allows a woman to dominate him (or if he is the type who would), he loses his masculinity.

"*Your desire shall be to your husband, and he shall rule over you'* (Gen. 3:16). A woman looks for this leadership; it's the key to what she finds masculine. All the traits, qualities, and definitions of true masculinity create within her a desire to respond, to be led, to be the helpmeet God designed her to be."

**XI. FINALLY, IT BEHOOVES US AS MEN IN GOD'S CHURCH TO REASSERT OURSELVES AS GOD-FEARING LEADERS.**

- A. To get back to the faith once delivered.
- B. To recapture the great role and purpose that God intended for man to play from the beginning.
- C. To launch on a personal campaign of deep study and prayer in a renewed quest for manhood and leadership.

**XII. WHAT, THEN, IS TRUE MASCULINITY?**

- A. It is taking on the life, nature and character of God and Jesus Christ.
- B. Let's re-dedicate our lives to this end.
- C. Let's become "real" men!

-END-

## **CHAPTER 39**

### **WHAT MADE CHRIST A GREAT TEACHER?**

#### **1. HE WAS A MASTER OF HIS SUBJECT.**

- a. Christ knew the Old Testament scriptures inside and out.
- b. He virtually had committed them to memory and could quote any passage at will.
- c. He was imminently familiar with their background and contents (history, prophecy, chronology, law, etc.) and highly skilled in their use.
- d. Even more important, He thoroughly understood their spiritual meaning and knew how to apply them to any situation in life.
- e. No scholar of His day could come close to His knowledge, qualifications and expertise as a teacher.

#### **2. HE SPOKE WITH CONFIDENCE AND AUTHORITY.**

- a. His positive assertions came from walking with God and personally experiencing His Word.
- b. When Christ spoke, His audience listened because He believed in what He said and was always able to give a convincing answer.
- c. He expressed faith in His teachings because He knew they were inspired of God and founded on truth.
- d. His utterances were logical and sound and none could prove Him wrong.
- e. His was not an arrogant self-confidence, but a confidence that came from sure knowledge and a steady walk with God.
- f. He assumed a certain positive authority by asserting He was the Messiah and establishing this fact through a display of power and mighty miracles.

#### **3. HIS MOST CONVINCING FORM OF TEACHING WAS BY EXAMPLE.**

- a. His works matched His words.
- b. Every command He gave, He also lived.
- c. He is called the "Word of God" because that's what He literally was.
- d. He was the living message sent from God so that men may have a model to follow.
- e. All that He ever spoke, He practiced — His works and words were inseparable.
- f. He would never command without doing.
- g. There is no more convincing form of teaching than by example.

#### **4. HIS FORCE OF PERSONALITY DREW PEOPLE TO HIM.**

- a. The personality of Christ embodied the total attributes of His life and character.
- b. It was an expression of a perfectly balanced life — God's nature in Him.
- c. His personality was what gave life and color, spontaneity and meaning to His message.
- d. He deeply experienced every emotion common to man — love, joy, peace, anger, sorrow, pain, etc. — yet He never sinned.
- e. The influence of His personality attracted people to Him and served as a great tool in teaching.

#### **5. ALTHOUGH A DYNAMIC SPEAKER, CHRIST DIDN'T OVER-DRAMATIZE OR USE THEATRICALS TO IMPRESS HIS FOLLOWERS.**

- a. He was more concerned with getting His message across than with speaking style or the dignity of eloquence.
- b. His supreme desire was that of preaching the gospel in the most effective way possible, and introducing God and His Plan to mankind.
- c. He was powerful and zealous — but His delivery was natural, heartfelt and spontaneous.

- d. For Him to use artificial stimuli, studied methods and religious fanaticism to whip up the emotions of His followers was contrary to His basic nature.
- e. He valued man's free moral right to think for himself and make his own decisions without being duped into an artificial religious life.

**6. HE EXPRESSED AN OUTWARD LOVE AND CONCERN FOR PEOPLE AND DESIRE TO SEE THEM LEARN.**

- a. He really cared! It showed and the people who heard Him speak could detect it.
- b. He expressed warmth and compassion! No one except His hardened critics would question His sincerity
- c. Christ desperately wanted people to believe His message and turn to God — above all things.
- d. Being all things to all men, He was approachable, kind and gentle.
- e. He was always willing to explain things or to repeat lessons only partially learned.
- f. Jesus believed in His true followers and instilled in them a confidence that they would make good.
- g. He was no respecter of persons, but treated all men with genuine concern.

**7. CHRIST NEVER HELD MAN IN DISDAIN OR CONTEMPT, BUT HONORED HIM GREATLY AS A POTENTIAL SON.**

- a. He reflected this attitude not only in words, but in deeds and actions.
- b. The respect for human dignity was a priceless thing in Christ's eyes.
- c. He didn't die for monkeys and apes, but He did die for man who was made in God's image.
- d. Those who had willing ears could sense His love and esteem for them for it was so outwardly obvious.

**8. HE COULD INSTANTLY DISCERN HIS AUDIENCE AND ADAPT HIS TEACHINGS TO THEIR LEVEL OF UNDERSTANDING.**

- a. The following quote describes Christ perfectly: *"To be able to confront an audience and immediately to detect the general level of its ability to follow and to be able therefore to adapt oneself in the use of language and illustration so as to convey essential truth to that audience is the supreme quality of great teaching."*
- b. Generally His message was very simple, being addressed chiefly to the common people — not to the scholars or the fashions of the schools of the day.

**9. CHRIST WAS MORE CONCERNED WITH STIRRING MAN'S HEART THAN ILLUMINATING HIS INTELLECT WITH DRY, MECHANICAL KNOWLEDGE.**

- a. His greatest concern was the state of man's heart and his relationship to God.
- b. Revealing the Great God and His purpose was by far more important to Christ than any other knowledge.
- c. Note the difference between the lessons Christ taught and that of the scholars of His day.
- d. Man's standard of worth depends on the quality of his inner spiritual life, and this is a lesson He wanted made known.

**10. CHRIST LAID GREATER STRESS ON DEVELOPING CHARACTER THAN ON BECOMING AN EXPERT IN DOCTRINE.**

- a. A quick survey of all of Christ's teachings will prove that He spent more time showing man how to live a godly life, than on the exposition of doctrine.
- b. He most assuredly taught doctrine, but He was also concerned that His true followers see the higher and broader spiritual lessons.
- c. Doctrine is imperative — but to stop with an intellectual apprehension of it and fail to go on to higher ground — that which doctrine points to and explains — is dangerous. It can lead to self-deception and a false sense of security.
- d. Thus, throughout His teachings, Christ gives suggestions, visions, principles of conduct and flashes of insight for the quickening of man's mind, heart and inner life.

**11. THE GREAT THEME THAT CHRIST STRESSED THROUGHOUT HIS TEACHINGS WAS MAN'S RELATIONSHIP TO GOD AND TO NEIGHBOR.**

- a. To grasp this simple yet profound concept sums up the totality of religion.
- b. Every doctrine and every law hinges on it — this includes the very Plan of God.
- c. Love is the heart and core of the gospel — the greatest teaching there is when fully grasped in all of its ramifications.
- d. Christ is less concerned with history, economics, philosophy or science, although His words touch on all these departments of human thought and life.
- e. A wise minister of God should keep this theme in mind when preparing his sermons.

**12. THE MOST OUTSTANDING FEATURE OF CHRIST'S TEACHING ABILITY WAS HIS HABITUAL USE OF PICTURE-SPEECH.**

- a. He was gifted with a creative and colorful imagination and a rare speaking eloquence to express it.
- b. He was thoroughly alive to His environment and drew from it graphic word pictures to drive His lessons home.
- c. Christ constantly made use of familiar imagery in everyday life and surroundings to express His thoughts.

**13. TYPES OF IMAGERY AND PICTURE-SPEECH CHRIST USED:**

*Examples:*

- (1) The illustration of general principles by concrete cases.
  - (a) The Sermon on the Mount contains many of these.
- (2) Similes
  - (a) A figure of speech comparing two unlike things that is often introduced by "like" or "as":
  - (b) "*Whosoever shall not receive the Kingdom of God as a little child, shall not enter therein* (Mk. 10:15)
- (3) Metaphors
  - (a) A figure of speech in which a word or phrase literally denoting one kind of object or idea is used in place of another to suggest a likeness or analogy between them.
  - (b) "*When thou doest alms, do not sound a trumpet before thee*" (Matt. 6:2)
- (4) Analogies
  - (a) Resemblance in some particulars between things otherwise unlike — similarities.
  - (b) "*Ye are the light of the world*" (Matt. 5:14).
  - (c) "*The Kingdom of God is as a great pearl....*"
- (5) Parable
  - (a) A short fictitious story that illustrates a moral attitude or religious principle.
  - (b) There are many of these scattered throughout the gospels. The sower and the seed; the unmerciful servant; laborers in the vineyard.
  - (c) These were used to hide the meaning for some, but to unveil the truth for others.

**14. HE ANTICIPATED QUESTIONS BEFORE THEY AROSE.**

- a. Here again is the mark of a great teacher.
- b. To be able to discern the attitudes, needs and questions of people is a rare gift of insight and ability.
- c. Although Christ was inherently gifted with this ability, no doubt He sharpened it through working with people and observing their behavior.

**15. CHRIST LAID DOWN BROAD TRUTHS AND PRINCIPLES — NOT THOUSANDS OF PETTY RULES AND REGULATIONS.**

- a. He placed greater worth on the spirit and life of the law than on strict adherence to the letter — although He taught the letter, too.
- b. The overriding principle in all His teaching was LOVE.
- c. He got down to intent and motive, showing that walking in a loving relationship with God and fellowman is the all-encompassing attitude that really matters.
- d. Principles are easier to remember than rules.

**16. CHRIST'S TEACHINGS WERE RELEVANT TO EVERYDAY LIFE.**

- a. They had to do with man's present condition and His future state — in short, how to live successfully.
- b. He talked about anxiety and God's care for men.
- c. He talked about health and healing.
- d. Christ showed man how to co-exist with his neighbor and make peace with his enemies.
- e. Again to accomplish this, He was direct and plain, avoiding theories and speculations that were empty and vain and which didn't satisfy man's spiritual thirst and hunger.

**17. CHRIST PLANTED SEED THOUGHTS IN THE FORM OF TERSE EXPRESSIONS EASY TO BE REMEMBERED.**

- a. These seed thoughts, although uttered almost 2,000 years ago, are still living with us today.
- b. *Examples:*
  - (1) Ye are the salt of the earth.
  - (2) Ye are the light of the world.
  - (3) Go the extra mile.
  - (4) Do unto others as you would have men do to you.
  - (5) Take up your cross daily.
- c. Seed thoughts have a way of imbedding themselves in our memories and germinating when the right occasion comes.
- d. They are brief, simple, easy to be tucked away for ready reference and jam-packed with rich meaning.

**18. HE USED SIMPLER DIRECT AND CONCRETE LANGUAGE FAMILIAR TO HIS HEARERS.**

- a. He talked about things in nature and extracted from them spiritual lessons.
- b. He used illustrations easy to understand and showed in effect that the invisible things of God can be clearly understood by the things which are seen.
- c. He talked about sinners, not sinfulness; poor people, not poverty; about the Kingdom of God, not going to heaven.
- d. Christ called Himself the door, the good shepherd, the way, the truth and life.
- e. Trivial incidents of the day were made to yield their lessons in clear, concrete language.

**19. HE WAS A MASTER IN THE ART OF REPETITION AND REVIEW.**

- a. The vital lessons of life He went over time and again so as to ingrain these truths in the mind of His true followers.
- b. He talked about the Kingdom of God repeatedly, about repentance, about bearing fruit, about His Father and obedience to Him.
- c. But in reviewing familiar material, He would cover different ground to enlarge their understanding and give freshness to His approach.
- d. The Kingdom of God is as this or that....
- e. Human beings so quickly forget and must be reminded.

**20. IN LAYING DOWN PRINCIPLES, CHRIST ALWAYS GAVE CLEAR EXAMPLES OF HOW THEY SHOULD BE APPLIED.**

- a. His method was to state a principle first, then fill in with details.
- b. He went from the general to the particular, from extensive to intensive, from outward to inward.
- c. Christ first gave an overview followed by enough illustrations so that men may learn how to apply His Word to all situations in life.
- d. The Sermon on the Mount is an excellent example of this.

**21. HE OFTEN UPED THE FORCE OF A ONE-SIDED STATEMENT TO STRESS THE IMPORTANCE OF A CONCEPT.**

- a. Example: *"it is easier for a camel to go through the eye of a needle than for a rich man to enter into the Kingdom of God"* (Matt. 19:24).
- b. This method of teaching is used for emphasis and to make men think.



- c. For Christ to have overqualified such statements with a string of exceptions would have weakened His point.
- d. Too many qualifications can take the force and power out of a message.
- e. The listener is to be entrusted with some responsibility of supplying the qualifications and exceptions himself through other texts and God's Holy Spirit.

**22. HE ALWAYS HELD HIS EMOTIONS IN CHECK IN EVERY DIFFICULT TEACHING SITUATION.**

- a. When opposed He answered wisely; when heckled He guarded His reactions.
- b. He put His critics in their place by pointing out fallacies in their own arguments and reasonings.
- c. He epitomized self-control and discipline even when righteously indignant.
- d. He made sure that no response or erratic behavior on His part could be used against Him later.
- e. This discipline came only through preparation, knowing His subject, perceptive forethought and walking with God.

**-END-**



## CHAPTER 40

### **WHAT YOU SHOULD ACHIEVE AT AMBASSADOR COLLEGE**

Every traveler, when he plans a trip, first determines his destination — and decides how he will get there. He considers the routes he will take, the sites he may stop to see along the way, the time he figures it will take to reach his goals.

As Ambassador College students you have begun a four-year journey toward tremendous, awesome goals of spiritual and personal development. It's a journey filled with great excitement, accomplishment, and hope for the future.

You will be learning a quality way of life that in the years ahead you will be able to share with the whole world!

You will learn how to live 'God's way' — as opposed to the world's way. You will learn how to be truly SUCCESSFUL.

It is a literal trip through time, experience, and spiritual development. As such, it is important that you consider NOW what you want to obtain from an AC education — and 'map out' your personal 'journey' to the goals you seek.

#### **AMBASSADOR EDUCATION IS UNIQUE**

Probably no one can state the purpose behind the 'Ambassador Experience' better than Mr. Herbert W. Armstrong, the founder and Chancellor of Ambassador College:

*'At Ambassador College students acquire a foundation for the art of living happily, usefully, successfully...*

*'This basic knowledge involves the meaning and purpose of life — life's true destiny and how to achieve it — to know what we are, and why we are. It involves the discernment of the true values from the false, and knowledge of the way to achieve them; in other words, to know the way to peace, happiness, prosperity, security, abundant well-being.....*

*'The emphasis upon character building and spiritual development is aptly stated in the Ambassador motto: 'Recapture True Values.'"*

#### **GRADUATION GOALS**

The following ten aspects of character are a profile of what an Ambassador College graduate should have attained.

They should serve as 'road-marks' to help you stay on course as you journey through your college career. Every one is within your grasp to achieve — all you have to do is put forth the effort.

These ten points will act as goals and 'motivators' to help you measure the progress you're making. They are literally phases of success that you should achieve as you grow toward graduation.

#### **A PROFILE OF THE IDEAL AMBASSADOR COLLEGE GRADUATE**

He/she should have:

1. Become deeply converted and established a strong, personal relationship with God.
2. Become thoroughly grounded in the Bible and basic doctrines of the Church.
3. Developed godly character and a pleasing personality.
4. Attained a well-rounded, liberal arts education.
5. Achieved emotional maturity and self-discipline.
6. Become a poised, confident and cultured individual.
7. Acquired an overall grasp of the true values of life.
8. Become well-rounded and balanced.
9. Learned how to successfully interface with people.
10. Built a good name and reputation.

## PRACTICAL METHODS OF ACHIEVING THESE GOALS

1. **Make walking with God your highest ambition and supreme desire.**
  - a. Put Him at the center.
  - b. Keep Him in all your thoughts, plans and efforts.
  - c. Realize that Christ will bring every work into judgment and will determine your ultimate future.
  - d. Keep your eye on the Day of Judgment.
  - e. Prioritize your life — seek spiritual things first, then the physical.
2. **Start experiencing the Word of God and making it a part of your daily life.**
  - a. Make it a quick and ready guide — an instant reference in making decisions and solving life's problems.
  - b. Meditate on every word and amplify its meaning.
  - c. Be creative — think of all the ways in real life situations that you can apply it.
3. **Don't get caught up in fun and frolic and forget your primary purpose in coming to AC.**
  - a. With so many exciting things to do, it's easy to get carried away.
  - b. Settle down quickly and firm up your goals — fix your mind on the things that are important.
  - c. Your social life — parties, dances, trips and dates — is a significant part of your development. But so are your studies and your job.
  - d. Strike a balance — stay on track.
  - e. Don't waste two or three years of valuable training before you wake up and realize it's too late.
4. **Take control of your life — don't be ruled by circumstances.**
  - a. You're the captain of your ship — the one who's responsible for your success or failure.
  - b. Only you can determine the eventual outcome — the course your life will take.
  - c. Don't let trivia, carelessness, apathy, negative people, etc, interfere with your goals and purpose.
  - d. Discipline your time — rule your 'kingdom' well.
  - e. Try to be flexible, but stay on track. Follow a schedule.
5. **Try to extract meaningful lessons and values from daily experiences.**
  - a. Learn from your mistakes, and the mistakes of others.
  - b. Take time to think and evaluate how you would do things differently.
  - c. Apply the principles of cause and effect.
  - d. Also take the positive view. Inquire, probe, analyze why others are successful and blessed.
6. **Look for opportunities to apply the knowledge you are learning.**
  - a. Opportunities for growth and development abound in everyday life.
  - b. Sharpen your powers of observation and look around you.
  - c. Each human encounter presents a new challenge for trying out knowledge and developing new skills.
  - d. Practice being a 'true' Christian.
7. **Start keeping a personal notebook of ideas.**
  - a. This will prove to be an invaluable aid to you later.
    - 1) For sermonettes, sermons, Spokesman Club, Women's Club, child rearing, counseling, etc.
    - 2) For personal growth and mind expansion.
  - b. Be alert for any ideas, quotes, quips you may hear throughout the week.
    - 1) In class lectures, newspapers, magazines, etc.
    - 2) Forums and assemblies.
    - 3) Bible study, Sabbath services, etc.

**NOTE:** *Although his sermons are very basic, Mr. Armstrong always gives something new and enlightening which you may never hear again and might forget if you don't jot them down at that moment.*

  - c. By keeping alert for ideas, you will not only amass a wealth of knowledge, but you will also develop the ability to listen, analyze and discriminate.
8. **Don't waste time and energy on pursuits outside your realm or on goals you'll never use.**
  - a. Having broad and general experiences and expanding your life is an important part of your education. But know your limitations.
  - b. Don't waste precious time in pursuing activities that are counter-productive and foolish, or that have no lasting values.

c. For example:

- 1) Spending hours working out in the weight room and allowing your grades to slip.
  - 2) Taking up a hobby that absorbs your interest.
  - 3) Becoming an expert on Bible contradictions or Greek words.
  - 4) Endeavoring to become a speaker on the *World Tomorrow* program when you have neither the voice nor the talents for this calling.
- d. It's good to reach higher and stretch your abilities to the full — but don't get carried away with unrealistic ambitions.

**9. Learn to take useable notes and review them frequently.**

- a. Listen for key thoughts and summarize material as it is given.
- b. Don't get lost in details.
- c. Generally the instructor will tell you what's important and what you should remember — listen for these clues.
- d. The best method in preparing for tests is to review your notes frequently — preferably every day.

**10. When pressures mount and you start to panic, calm yourself down and think things through.**

- a. School assignments start to pile up, term papers come due, semester exams are around the corner, and other mundane duties clamor for your time.
- b. When this happens, re-establish your priorities — put first things first.
- c. Create a new schedule and take matters in hand.
- d. Dig yourself out one step at a time by putting things in order.

**11. Don't compare yourself to, or compete with others — go at your own pace.**

- a. Some people have gifted minds, exceptional memories, and can make top grades with minimum effort.
- b. Don't let this discourage you, and don't try to keep up.
- c. Give your best effort — but travel at your own speed. Compete with yourself.
- d. Remember that you have strengths and abilities that others desire. Develop your own unique individuality.

**12. Strive for excellence — don't settle for mediocrity.**

- a. Try to improve over yesterday's performance.
- b. Demand a little more of yourself each day.
- c. Ask yourself: 'Would Jesus Christ be pleased with this performance? What kind of grade would He give?'
- d. Put quality into everything you do — but don't try to become perfect overnight.

**13. Follow through and finish what you start.**

- a. One of the most damaging habits you can fall prey to is to undertake projects and leave them half done.
- b. You deal a serious blow to your confidence and self-respect.
- c. By contrast, success and happiness come from seeing a project through to its completion.
- d. Don't be a quitter — hold out to the end.

**14. Learn the importance of respecting your job and building good work habits.**

- a. Put your heart into your job while going through college.
- b. Prove yourself to be a productive and invaluable employee.
- c. This is important not only in terms of building a good work record, but also in terms of learning the art and skill of producing.
- d. Value your job, for it's a vital tool in helping you to prepare for a life's career.

**15. Study the lives of the leaders in God's Work.**

- a. Observe their behavior and analyze what makes them successful.
- b. Study their habits, attitudes and their general approach to life.
- c. Determine why God is using them and the reasons why they have been chosen as leaders.

**16. Start practicing true leadership.**

- a. The place to begin is with your example.
  - 1) 1 Tim. 4:12 — 'Let no man despise thy youth; but be thou an example of the believer, in word, in conversation, in charity, in spirit, in faith, in purity.'
- b. You cannot qualify as a leader until you first surrender your life to God and allow Him to rule you.

- c. If your life is not a testimony of what you say, you will not have the respect, trust or confidence of others.
- d. True leadership is not an office bestowed on you; you ARE a leader if Christ is dynamically living His life in you.
- e. The essence of leadership is summed up in the word itself — a leader leads.
  - 1) He does not crack the whip over others or dominate their lives.
  - 2) He leads by the force, power and influence of his own sterling example.
  - 3) A true leader is motivated by a deep and abiding love for fellowman.
  - 4) He does not seek applause or accolades from others. Instead, he is concerned for their happiness, well-being and success.
  - 5) If you are setting a God-fearing example, the fruits of the Holy Spirit will flow from you and inspire others to follow.
- f. All the other true qualities of leadership will emerge as you walk close to God and drink in deeply of His Word and Spirit.
- g. In short, true leadership is an expression of God's character in all its forms, radiating from you and inspiring others to follow.

**17. Set aside time for personal leisure or to unwind.**

- a. You'll burn yourself out if you keep up a hard-driving pace.
- b. Take out time to do the things you, yourself, personally enjoy — reading a book, taking in an occasional movie, going for a long walk, soaking up a long, hot bath.
- c. This is to recharge your batteries and to clear the fog from your mind.
- d. An occasional break in routine is imperative if you are to bring your life together.

**18. Spend some time each day in the realm of the beautiful and the wonders of creation.**

- a. Observing:
  - 1) A beautiful sunset.
  - 2) Floating clouds overhead.
  - 3) Roses and flowers, humming birds and bees.
  - 4) The passing of squawking geese in the sky.
- b. Take time to see God's handiwork and glorify Him. Slow down and LIVE.

**19. Experience every grand and rare opportunity afforded you.**

- a. These events don't happen too frequently.
- b. Take advantage of them, for they may never come your way again.
- c. Examples:
  - 1) A helicopter ride, a flight on the G-II.
  - 2) Sailboating at sea, a trip to Europe during the summer, etc.

**20. Don't neglect your health.**

- a. What is life without a sound mind, strong body, and healthy emotions? Nothing is really worthwhile if you don't have the stamina and vigor to enjoy life.
- b. Watch your diet and get sufficient sleep and exercise.
- c. Remember that your body is the temple of God's Holy Spirit; therefore, guard your health.

**HOW AND WHERE DO I START?**

**1. Begin a crash program of overcoming and self-mastery.**

- a. Scrape off the veneer and really get to know yourself.
  - 1) Jot down all undesirable habits and rough edges that come to light.
  - 2) Pray for God to reveal to you the 'real inner self' — the way He sees you.
    - (a) *You've got to really mean this in order for God to hear.*
    - (b) *Insincere prayer is an abomination.*
  - 3) Ask your closest friends to give you a 'guts out' evaluation.
    - (a) *Make sure you understand the points they're making.*
    - (b) *Add these weaknesses to your list.*
- b. Attack your most serious and urgent problems first.
  - 1) Re-examine your list to determine which hangups are causing the most trouble.

- 2) Concentrate on these one at a time.
  - (a) *You won't make appreciable growth if you scatter your efforts over a wide area.*
  - (b) *This separates your problems into easy-to-handle bite-sized pieces.*
- 3) Devote full strength to overcoming — reinforce your purpose several times a day.
- 4) Use props, helps, aids, reminders — anything within reason — to attain your goal.
- 5) Set a deadline.
  - (a) *This is your motivation.*
  - (b) *It gives you a tangible goal to shoot for.*
- 6) Once you start, don't quit or compromise.
  - (a) *To succumb at this point means having to start all over again. You have also damaged your character.*
  - (b) *Stick to it with bulldog tenacity until mastery is achieved.*
- 7) Visualize success. (Not bootstrap psycho cybernetics.)
  - (a) *Picture in your mind the benefits and rewards that will come from holding out to the end.*
  - (b) *The scars and bruises of battle will be well worth the fight when you finally attain the victory.*

## 2. **Learn to recognize pride and vanity.**

- a. Realize that unless you've been conquered by God and led by His Spirit, vanity (self-love, self-worship, self-importance) is probably your strongest motivating force.
- b. It is a remnant of the old carnal man that should have been crucified at baptism.
  - 1) It is the opposite of true love and humility that flows out from God's Spirit.
  - 2) In all creation, the animal that best describes raw vanity is the pig — self — self — self.
- c. Vanity is ever present and expresses itself in a variety of ways.
  - 1) In speeches — bragging, boasting, calling attention to self — the big 'I.'
  - 2) In putting the best foot forward when trying to impress others.
  - 3) In sports — cocky and arrogant attitudes.
  - 4) In facial expression — sneers, smirks, raised eyebrows, etc.
  - 5) In cynicism, condemnation of others, raucous laughter at others' misfortunes.
  - 6) In personal disposition such as moods, feelings of self-pity, selfishness, dominance over others.
  - 7) Dress and general appearance — gaudy, sensual, subtle.
- d. Guard against intellectual vanity.
  - 1) Acquiring a great deal of Bible and academic knowledge doesn't qualify a student to be an expert in every walk of life.
  - 2) He still lacks the experience, maturity and overall balance of the older generation.
  - 3) The tendency of some who graduate from Ambassador College is to 'show off' their Bible knowledge and look down on the members as being biblically illiterate or incompetent.
  - 4) The brethren find it difficult to respect such young people until they humble themselves and repent of this attitude.
- e. Ask God to spotlight the vanity in your life. Then take immediate action to root it out.

## 3. **Start producing.**

- a. Don't wait for the big opportunities to come — start now in everyday small things.
  - 1) Clean up after yourself.
    - (a) Wash out the lavatory when finished.
    - (b) Neatly hang up the towel and bath mat.
    - (c) Take the wrinkles out of the bedspread when making the bed.
    - (d) Develop a conscience for keeping your surroundings neat, clean and orderly.
      - (1) *Don't leave dirty clothes lying around.*
      - (2) *Organize your desk, bookshelf & closet.*
      - (3) *'A place for everything and everything in its place' — Benjamin Franklin.*
  - 2) Become aware of the people around you and conscious of ways to serve them and make them happy.
    - (a) Force yourself to become a friendlier person.
    - (b) Learn how to listen and take an interest in what others have to say.

- (c) Look for ways to be helpful.
    - (1) Ask roommate if you can pick up anything for him/her while downtown.
    - (2) Help them out if caught in a bind, such as polishing shoes or pressing a dress late Friday afternoon.
    - (d) Inculcate an attitude of service.
  - 3) Discipline your impulses and be hard on yourself.
    - (a) Overcome an evil impulse with a corresponding good action (Romans 12:21).
    - (b) '**DO IT NOW**' — drill this motto into your mind and your production will soar.
  - 4) Start making use of the little wasted moments.
    - (a) Keep track of time and you'll be surprised at how much of this precious commodity you waste.
    - (b) Use this redeemed time for self-improvement.
      - (1) *Vocabulary cards.*
      - (2) *Scripture cards.*
      - (3) *Reviewing class notes.*
      - (4) *Reading for general knowledge.*
      - (5) *Self-examination.*
    - (c) Remember to keep balanced and don't allow this effort to impair your social life.
  - 5) Once you have inculcated the habit of serving and producing in everyday small things, the pattern will carry over into the major areas of life.
- 4. Start responding to correction and making wholesale changes in your life.**
- a. If you want to insure a successful career in God's Work this is one way to do it.
  - b. The sin that you tolerate will block your spiritual development and ultimate potential.
  - c. Be it ever so painful, act quickly to change — don't rationalize, justify, or make excuses.
  - d. You must first remove sin before God can truly use you.
  - e. The sooner you bear down on yourself and make genuine changes, the quicker you will grow and be recognized as a leader.
- 5. If you want to be used in God's Work, start preparing now.**
- a. Evaluate your skills, abilities and talents.
  - b. Begin by asking what you do best — what interests you, where do your strengths lie?
  - c. Decide on a field you'd like to enter and begin to qualify.
  - d. Make this your underlying ambition — devote more time to its fulfillment than to lesser interests.
  - e. Motivate and drive yourself. Even if your hopes don't materialize immediately, you will be well on the road to success when you graduate.

— END —



## **CHAPTER 41**

### **ARE YOU ABUSING YOUR FRIENDSHIPS?**

*'A man that hath friends must show himself friendly: and there is a friend that sticketh closer than a brother'*  
(Prov. 18:24).

There is probably no more valuable resource than a close, abiding friend. In fact the trust, support and loyalty of a true friend is by far a greater asset than money or physical possessions.

It's comforting to know you have someone special you can rely on in an emergency — without a feeling of reluctance or a fear of being rejected. You may need to borrow his jacket or, in a crisis even ask him to run an errand for you. You may need his honest counsel and encouragement when you are feeling down and out. You may even need to call on him during the night when you're ill. Yes, it's great to have a friend with whom you can confide the innermost secrets of your life — someone you can trust, respect and truly rely on.

Which brings me to the point I want to make: take care that you do not abuse the kindness of a friend and take unfair advantage of his willingness to serve. To do so could lead to resentment and contempt.

The key, I believe, in preventing the dissolution of a friendship is to make sure that you balance out your receiving with giving. That is, do as much for him (or even more) as he does for you. I am not implying that you keep a notebook of good deeds and return favor for favor. I am suggesting that over the long haul you reciprocate services rendered.

Bringing this point down to a specific application, we all have friends who are big-hearted and eager to help. Because of their generosity they make it easy for us to call on them. But if we take them for granted and fail to give in return, they may eventually come to resent us or turn a cold shoulder. If a friendship degenerates to the point that one party constantly gets more than he gives — he ceases to be a true friend and becomes a 'parasite.'

Christian love is a matter of give and take — a delicate balance of serving and being served. For example, a common abuse among friends, and roommates especially, is the problem of borrowing. Many times we assume that it's o.k. to borrow without even asking. Or we take undue advantage of one who is always willing to lend whether it's money, clothing or some other personal item. We must exercise every precaution not to abuse those who are closest to us. We must make sure that we are trying to give as much in return as we receive.

To extend respect, concern and service to others is a principle which, if diligently applied, will build mutual, lasting friendships.

In summary, the apostle Paul wrote that in all our daily personal relations, we should do everything with utmost equality and fairness. He said, *'For I mean not that other men be eased and you be burdened! but by an equality, that now at this time your abundance may be a supply for their want, that their abundance also may be a supply for your want: that there may be equality'* (II Cor. 8:13-14).

— END —



## CHAPTER 42

### **ARE YOU HAVING A POSITIVE OR NEGATIVE INFLUENCE ON OTHERS?**

**I. After your tenure at Ambassador College, whether two years or four, what kind of imprint will you leave on the lives of your fellow students?**

- A. Will you have been a source of inspiration and motivation to them?
- B. Will you have helped them to build character and to grow in the culture and qualities of God?
- C. Will you have been a model of excellence they will long remember — an example by which they may pattern their lives?
- D. Or, will you have proved to be a stumbling block — a cause of irritation, frustration and discouragement?

**II. In future years when your friends and associates flip through the Envoy and come to your picture, what will come to mind?**

- A. Will they remember you for being a gracious, kind and loyal friend or leader who had a wholesome and positive impact on them?
- B. Or will they remember you for the pain and suffering you caused?
- C. What kind of image do you suppose will linger?

**III. Make no mistake, you do leave a mark on every student with whom you come in contact.**

- A. The effect may be ever so slight and subtle.
- B. Or it may be very strong and powerful.
- C. Whatever the case, you do literally influence — for good or bad — the lives of every person with whom you interact.

**IV. For the assembly today, I'd like to speak on the subject of: "Are You Having a Positive or Negative Influence on others?"**

**V. Exactly how do you make an imprint on others and help mold their lives in everyday experience?**

- A. I'd like to briefly quote from a research paper I did several years ago on how our behavior affects the people with whom we interface.

*'To begin, let's talk about a vital fact concerning human behavior you may have never known before. It's a concept that when fully understood should change your attitude toward others and your overall approach to life. That important fact is: every human being generates a distinct magnetic field and radiates it to others. We may describe this field as: an aura, or an outpouring of one's inner self, mental attitude and personality. In some, we call it: charisma, charm, magnetism, vitality, energy, enthusiasm, life, etc. In others it's self-consciousness, inferiority, fear, sarcasm, cynicism, selfishness, immaturity, jealousy, envy, etc. Whatever its correct name, it's real and distinctly recognizable — we've all experienced it, felt it, sensed it and seen it in those with whom we interact on a daily basis.*

*'This brings us to a significant fact about understanding people — there are two broad and general types. These types are: (1) positive and (2) negative. Herein lies the secret of why we are attracted to some people and repelled by others. Just as with a magnet having opposite poles, so it is with people. One category attracts — draws you to them. The other repels — drives you away. There are occasions when we all reflect both roles but generally we are bent toward one or the other.*

*'Which end of the magnetic pole do you represent — negative or positive? Make no mistake, it's one or the other. Whichever it is determines how people view you: whether you are liked or disliked, attract or repel, whether you have few or many friends. But even more importantly, the image you project will determine in large measure the effect you'll have on their spiritual lives.*

- B. Explain how brainwaves can now be detected up to 12 feet or so by delicate instruments that scientists have invented.
- C. Discuss the phenomena of mental telepathy and how our brain waves can seemingly affect people miles away.

**VI. So we do leave a mental, emotional and spiritual imprint on others in the way we think, act and speak.**

**VII. As we shall soon see, not only is this fact proved in the Bible, it is also recognized by people in the world.**

A. I'd like to cite a few quotes from some of the so-called great minds of history.

1. *'If you had the seeds of pestilence in your body you would not have a more active contagion than you have in your tempers, tastes, and principles. Simply to be in this world, whatever you are, is to exercise influence.'* (Horace Bushnell)
  - a. Did you catch the true significance of this statement?
  - b. Your very presence carries an impact!
  - c. Whether or not you realize it, others are indeed affected by your attitude and actions.
2. *'Planets do not govern the soul, or guide the destinies of men, but trifles, lighter than straws, are levers in the building up of character.'* (Martin Farquhar Tupper)
  - a. Note that even little, seemingly insignificant examples, leave their mark.
  - b. How important it is to be a model of Christian behavior at all times.
3. *'The least movement is of importance to all nature. The entire ocean is affected by a pebble.'* (Blaise Pascal)
  - a. This again proves that common, simple actions can have an impact on others like water rippling from a rock when thrown into a lake.
  - b. In other words — we give off vibes.
4. *'The example of great and pure individuals is the only thing that can lead us to noble thoughts and deeds.'* (Albert Einstein)
  - a. What tremendous value there is in example!
  - b. It points the way for others to see what the true Christian life should be.
5. *'I am satisfied that we are less convinced by what we hear than by what we see.'* (Herodotus)
  - a. Words are important — but seeing them lived is more convincing.
  - b. Allow others to see Christ living in you.
6. *'How easily we ignore the fact that those who admire us will imitate our vices as well as our virtues.'* (Thomas Stearns Eliot)
  - a. What a terrible thought to put a stumbling block in the way of neighbor and cause him to sin.
  - b. How careful we should be of our personal behavior.
7. *'Virtue will catch, as well as vice, by contact; and the public stock of honest manly principle will daily accumulate.'* (Edmund Burke)
  - a. Think of the good you can accomplish by pointing others to see the way of God.
  - b. Day by day and week by week you can help build up and edify their lives.
  - c. Your general lifestyle will serve as an ongoing reminder.

**VIII. Now let's see what God, in His Word, has to say about this question.**

A. The positive impact we can have on others.

1. General references.

- a. 1 Thess. 1:5-8 — *'For our gospel came not unto you in word only, but also in power, and in the Holy Spirit, and in much assurance; as ye know what manner of men we were among you for your sake. (6) And ye became followers of us, and of the Lord, having received the word in much affliction, with joy of the Holy Spirit: (7) So that ye were ensamples to all that believe in Macedonia and Achaia. (8) For from you sounded out the word of the Lord not only in Macedonia and Achaia, but also in every place your faith to God's word is spread abroad; so that we need not to speak any thing.'*
- b. Rom. 1:7-8 — *'To all that be in Rome, beloved of God, called to be saints: Grace to you and peace from God our Father, and the Lord Jesus Christ. (8) First, I thank my God through Jesus Christ for you all, that your faith is spoken of throughout the whole world.'*
- c. Deut. 4:5-8 — *'Behold, I have taught you statutes and judgments, even as the Lord my God commanded me, that ye should do so in the land whither ye go to possess it. (6) Keep therefore and do them; for this is your wisdom and your understanding in the sight of the nations, which shall hear all these statutes, and say, Surely this great nation is a wise and understanding people. (7) For what nation is there so great, who hath God so nigh unto them, as the Lord our God is in all things that we call upon him for? (8) And what nation is there so great, that hath statutes and judgments so righteous as all this law, which I set before you this day?'*

## 2. Specific references.

- a. Prov. 27:17 — *'Iron sharpeneth iron; so a man sharpeneth the countenance of his friend.'*
- b. I Peter 3:1 — *'Likewise, ye wives, be in subjection to your own husbands; that, if any obey not the word, they also may without the word be won by the conversation of the wives.'*
- c. I Tim. 4:12, 15 — *'Let no man despise thy youth; but be thou an example of the believers, in word, in conversation, in charity, in spirit, in faith, in purity. (15) Meditate upon these things; give thyself wholly to them; that thy profiting may appear to all.'*

## B. The negative impact we can have on others.

## 1. General references.

- a. I Cor. 8:9-13 — *'But take heed lest by any means this liberty of yours become a stumblingblock to them that are weak. (10) For if any man see thee which hast knowledge sit at meat in the idols temple, shall not the conscience of him which is weak be emboldened to eat those things which are offered to idols; (11) And through thy knowledge shall the weak brother perish, for whom Christ died? (12) But when ye sin so against the brethren, and wound their weak conscience, ye sin against Christ. (13) Wherefore, if meat make my brother to offend, I will eat no flesh while the world standeth, lest I make my brother to offend.'*
- b. I Cor. 15:33: *'Be not deceived: evil communications corrupt good manners.'*
  - (1) The Today's English Version says: Do not be fooled. 'Bad companions ruin good character.'
  - (2) The Jerusalem Bible says: "You must stop being led astray: 'Bad friends ruin the noblest of people.'"

## 2. Specific references.

- a. Matt. 18:6 — *'But whoso shall offend one of these little ones which believe in me, it were better for him that a millstone were hanged about his neck, and that he were drowned in the depth of the sea.'*
- b. I Tim. 6:1 — *'Let as many servants as are under the yoke count their own masters worthy of all honour, that the name of God and his doctrine be not blasphemed.'*

**IX. These verses prove beyond doubt that your personal actions, lifestyle and example are extremely important to God.**

- A. He wants to impress on your mind that you do, indeed, leave an imprint on others by the negative or positive influence you exert.
- B. Remember, as stated earlier, just to exist in this world as a human being means that you exert an influence either for good or bad.
- C. Thus, many scriptures exhort us to lead a holy and righteous life so that God's great purpose may be glorified.

1. Matt. 5:13-16 — *'Ye are the salt of the earth: but if the salt have lost his savour, wherewith shall it be salted? it is thenceforth good for nothing, but to be cast out, and to be trodden under foot of men. (14) Ye are the light of the world. A city that is set on an hill cannot be hid. (15) Neither do men light a candle, and put it under a bushel, but on a candlestick; and it giveth light unto all that are in the house. (16) Let your light so shine before men, that they may see your good works, and glorify your Father which is in heaven.'*
2. Phil. 2:14-15 — *'Do all things without murmurings and disputings: (15) That ye may be blameless and harmless, the sons of God, without rebuke, in the midst of a crooked and perverse nation, among whom ye shine as lights in the world.'*
3. I Peter 2:9-12 — *'But ye are a chosen generation, a royal priesthood, an holy nation, a peculiar people; that ye should shew forth the praises of him who hath called you out of darkness into his marvellous light: (10) Which in time past were not a people, but are now the people of God: which had not obtained mercy, but now have obtained mercy. (11) Dearly beloved, I beseech you as strangers and pilgrims, abstain from fleshly lusts, which war against the soul; (12) Having your conversation honest among the Gentiles: that, whereas they speak against you as evildoers, they may by your good works, which they shall behold, glorify God in the day of visitation.'*

**X. The simple analogy of our being a clean and holy vessel should illustrate just how important your example is.**

- A. II Tim. 2:20-21 — *'But in a great house there are not only vessels of gold and of silver, but also of wood and of earth; and some to honour, and some to dishonour. (21) If a man therefore purge himself from these, he shall be a vessel unto honour, sanctified, and meet for the master's use, and prepared unto every good work.'*

- B. What kind of vessel are you?
1. A vessel of honor filled with the pure oil of God's Holy Spirit?
  2. Or a vessel of dishonor filled with the venom of Satan, or poison of this world?
- C. Yes, your lifestyle and daily conduct do count very significantly with God.
- D. Just think! If a simple encounter can have a positive or negative affect on others, then think what your relationship will mean over a four-year period.

**XI. I'd now like to list a number of damaging and hurtful examples to avoid as a student and then suggest some positive things you can do.**

A. Negative actions to avoid:

1. A complaining and critical attitude or being generally down on life. This might be the result of such things as:
  - a. Your day-to-day pressures.
  - b. Having to study for tests, do term papers and homework.
  - c. Finding fault with your boss or distasteful aspects of your job.
  - d. Being asked to engage in extracurricular activities or do tasks that come with being an A.C. student.
  - e. The irritating things about dorm life or your roommates.
  - f. The administration and how College officials exercise authority.
  - g. Starting the day in a grumpy mood.
2. Failure to maintain personal standards. This might include such things as:
  - a. Sloppy dress and grooming.
  - b. Careless hygiene.
  - c. Unkempt surroundings and cluttered environment.
    - 1) *Disorganized and messy desk.*
    - 2) *Untidy closet.*
    - 3) *Unmade bed.*
    - 4) *Leaving dirty bathroom for others to clean.*
    - 5) *Cluttered laundry room.*
3. Lack of consideration for roommates. Some examples are:
  - a. Turning on light when others are sleeping.
  - b. Making excessive noise when coming in late or getting up early.
  - c. Opening door too widely after bedtime and allowing hall light to disturb roommates.
  - d. Letting alarm ring several times before getting up.
  - e. Setting alarm clock early then failing to get up — thus awakening others in your room.
  - f. Arising early on the Sabbath and disturbing fellow students.
  - g. Playing music that might be offensive to some.
  - h. Abusing the telephone — tying it up for long periods of time when others may need to use it.
  - i. Failing to be quiet during study hours.
4. General carelessness or inconsideration, such as:
  - a. Failure to keep appointments or fulfill promises.
  - b. Habitual tardiness.
  - c. Taking each other for granted.
    - 1) *Borrowing items without asking.*
    - 2) *Failing to return borrowed items.*
    - 3) *Snitching or stealing food from the fridge that belongs to someone else.*
    - 4) *Frequently asking for favors.*
  - d. Using sarcasm and put-downs or making cutting remarks without thinking.
  - e. Lack of modesty in the dorms.
  - f. Failure to comply with rules, regulations and standards of the College.
  - g. Treating Sabbath singing with levity and irreverence — or a failure to show respect for the songleader.
  - h. Failure to give proper attention to fellow students who are giving speeches in class or at an Ambassador Club.

5. General immaturity.
  - a. Selfishness.
  - b. Thoughtlessness.
  - c. Uncontrolled temper and emotions.
  - d. Self-indulgence and greed.

**XII. What are some positive ways you can affect others?**

A. Examples:

1. Habitually greet others with a smile and cheery disposition.
2. Make it a practice of saying 'thank you.'
3. Acknowledge the achievements of people and pay them a sincere compliment.
4. Go out of your way to give happiness to others and make their day a little brighter.
5. Keep your conversation on a positive plane.
6. Wherever you go spread joy and enthusiasm.
7. Never forget that you're an ambassador of Christ — therefore reflect the serving attitude of God's throne in heaven.
8. Be kind and thoughtful to all within your sphere.
9. Practice self-restraint and emotional control when you encounter setbacks.
10. Be the kind of Christian others can't help but notice.
11. Do this for God's honor and not for personal glory.
12. Don't push yourself forward and steal the limelight.
13. Allow God's nature to radiate and flow from you.
14. Treat each other with the same respect and dignity that Christ would treat you if He were on earth.

**XIII. Is there a method of reducing these instructions to a simple formula to be easily remembered?**

A. Yes, there is.

B. All of Christianity, God's Word and His will can be summed up in a single, simple word.

C. That word is love!

1. I John 4:8, 16 — *'He that loveth not knoweth not God; for God is love. (16) And we have known and believed the love that God hath to us. God is love; and he that dwelleth in love dwelleth in God, and God in him.'*
2. Rom. 13:10 — *'Love worketh no ill to his neighbour: therefore love is the fulfilling of the law.'*
3. II Cor. 5:14 — *'For the love of God constraineth us; because we thus judge, that if one died for all, then were all dead.'*
  - a. The word 'constrain' generally means: to draw tight, to compel, to secure by or as if by bond, to clasp tightly. (See Webster's Dictionary.)
  - b. God's love, then, motivates or compels us to action.

D. If you will think about the true meaning of love in all your daily interactions and seek for ways to apply it — you then will have discovered the key of how to positively influence others.

E. This, of course, requires the power of God's Spirit working in your life.

**XIV. To conclude, I'd like to give you some overall wrap-up points.**

A. Summary.

1. *Be aware that you do leave a lasting imprint on others.*
2. *Realize that you transmit negative or positive signals to all with whom you come in contact.*
3. *Drill into your consciousness the power and impact of a good example.*
4. *Be conscious of God's will throughout the day and seek to be filled with His culture and qualities.*
5. *Be aware of the needs, comfort and welfare of everyone around you.*
6. *Guard your words and practice true Christian diplomacy.*
7. *Learn the importance of giving encouragement and building confidence in others.*
8. *Be an attentive listener whom others can easily talk to.*
9. *Strive to crush out self-centeredness and every form of vanity.*
10. *Avoid questionable behavior that might cause others to sin.*
11. *Remember, the effect of your example accumulates with each passing day.*
12. *Make it your goal to live like Christ and glorify God.*

B. This, then, is how you can have a positive and dynamic impact on your fellow students.





## CHAPTER 43

### **CAN YOU BE TRUSTED WITH A CONFIDENCE? or CAN YOU KEEP A CONFIDENCE?**

July 24, 1984

A longstanding friendship between two men was shattered when one betrayed a secret the other confided in him. Information that was considered 'strictly personal' was divulged to other people. The betrayed man was stunned and heartbroken. A friend he thought he could trust turned out to be a devious traitor.

How highly do you value a confidence? How deep does your loyalty run? Can you be trusted — relied upon to keep private information to yourself? Do you conscientiously guard the personal secrets others confide in you? When friends and associates bare their innermost feelings and seek your advice, do you resolve to *'keep it quiet'*?

Let's reverse the situation!

How many of your friends can be trusted with your deepest secrets? Can you be honest and open with them about your personal hangups, problems and frustrations and know they will not betray you? Or do you fear they would react with shock and abhorrence and 'turn you in'?

#### True Friends are Scarce

Even among our closest associates it is rare to find a friend you can really trust. We hear gossip and rumors almost every day. Loyalties are betrayed with reckless abandon. This deplorable condition in our society has come to be an accepted way of life. We seem to have lost the meaning of integrity that true friendship demands. What an odious stench this must be to Almighty God whose character reflects the highest level of trust to His children.

#### This Condition Prophesied

The Bible forewarned that this condition would prevail at the close of this age. Matthew 24:10 states, *'And then shall many be offended, and shall betray one another and shall hate one another.'* The apostle Paul more specifically emphasized that truce breakers and traitors would abound. *'This know also, that in the last days perilous times shall come. For men shall be lovers of their own selves, covetous, boasters, proud, blasphemers, disobedient to parents, unthankful, unholy, without natural affection, trucebreakers, false accusers, incontinent, fierce, despisers of those that are good, traitors...'* (II Tim. 3:1-4).

Have you and I become guilty of this sordid evil in violating the sacred trusts that others place in us?

#### Why Trust is Rare

Why are trusting friendships so scarce in the world today? A principle reason may be the 'loose tongue' syndrome or the callous disregard for the reputation of others. It seems that we give little thought or concern about the damage we inflict on people when we gossip and besmirch their good name.

For example, have you noticed how often a conversation which begins on an uplifting note soon deteriorates into destructive slander. Blunt opinions are carelessly expressed, sharp remarks and suspicions are freely voiced. This is highly displeasing to God and openly defies His Word. *'Speak not evil one of another, brethren. He that speaketh evil of his brother, and judgeth his brother, speaketh evil of the law, and judgeth the law: but if thou judge the law, thou art not a doer of the law, but a judge.'* (Jas. 4:11)

It is of great importance to note that of the seven things God says He hates, three have to do with gossip and slander. 'These six things doth the Lord hate: yea, seven are an abomination unto him: A proud look, a lying tongue, and hands that shed innocent blood, an heart that deviseth wicked imaginations, feet that be swift in running to mischief, a false witness that speaketh lies, and he that soweth discord among brethren' (Prov. 6:16-19).

Another reason we are prone to break confidences is that we probably never were taught at an early age the importance of protecting our friendships. We were probably exposed to the hypocrisy and cynicism of our parents who indiscriminately prattled about the mistakes and foibles of their friends, neighbors and even relatives. Thus, we unconsciously absorbed the 'gossip habit' into our thinking processes. How very important it is that we teach our children to be faithful to the trusts placed in their care — to view them as a cherished obligation. (A word of caution. Please realize that we're referring to the moral obligation our children have of protecting the privacy of others and not to serious or immoral acts that need to be reported.)

### **God's Admonition to Forgive**

One of the most destructive sins we should guard against is exposing past mistakes people have since repented of or revealing weaknesses they are presently striving to overcome. There probably is nothing more humiliating to a person who is genuinely repentant than to have his past life brought up and discussed by others who will not leave his sins buried under the blood of Christ. This is why the apostle Paul admonished the Corinthians to forgive and comfort the man who was put out of the Church for an immoral act but later was reinstated after repenting. *'So that contrariwise ye ought rather to forgive him, and comfort him, lest perhaps such a one should be swallowed up with overmuch sorrow. Wherefore I beseech you that ye would confirm your love toward him'* (II Cor. 2:7-8).

Unforgiving individuals are ruthless and cruel and will surely be judged by Jesus Christ for their merciless treatment. Mark 11:26 says, *'But if ye do not forgive, neither will your Father which is in heaven forgive your trespasses.'* Moreover, Jesus warned, *'Judge not, that ye be not judged. For with what judgment ye judge, ye shall be judged: and with what measure ye mete, it shall be measured to you again'* (Matt. 7:1-2).

### **The Christian Attitude**

Concerning what our attitude should be toward others who are struggling with sin, God's Word is explicitly clear. True love covers sin (Proverbs 10:17 and 17:9). That is, it thinks the best of others and gives them the benefit of the doubt. Instead of babbling their sinful deeds to the world, true friends will do all within their power to rescue a stumbling neighbor from his plight. *'Brethren, if a man be overtaken in a fault, ye which are spiritual, restore such an one in the spirit of meekness; considering thyself, lest thou also be tempted'* (Gal. 6:1). For sure, true friends will not add to the share and disgrace of neighbor by spreading vicious rumors.

Are you given to gossip? Do you revel in advertising sin that others commit? Do you betray the trust of someone ensnared by an evil habit who is crying out to you for help? If you do, then God, in His Word, brands you a traitor whose very own character may be in greater peril than the one you are accusing. *'The words of a talebearer are as wounds, and they go down into the innermost parts of the belly'* (Prov. 18:8). *'A froward man soweth strife: and a whisperer separateth chief friends'* (Prov. 16:28).

### **A Different Kind of Talebearing**

Related to the sin of talebearing is an opposite practice equally as harmful. This practice involves telling acquaintances or friends the juicy tidbits of gossip we hear others say about them. Obviously such indiscriminate mouthings do not serve the cause of peace nor build bridges of good will. Instead, they sow the seeds of discord and create division. God commands us to speak evil of no man (Tit. 3:4). In principle, this means it's equally destructive to pass on gossip to the person affected as to a second party. Try to make the theme of your life one of true and dependable friendship and you will rise in favor with God and man.

### **Importance of Trustworthiness**

An excellent example of just how highly valued trustworthiness is can be seen through the screening procedures of the FBI. When a man is being considered as a prospective agent, everything about his life is gone into — his background, hometown, habits, known friends and acquaintances, after work activities and more. Every detail is taken into account. And, though a candidate may be found to have good character and reputation, if he cannot maintain a trust — if he habitually divulges confidential information — that man will never be appointed an agent.

On a grander scale, God is also looking for men and women who allow His Spirit to develop in

them even higher standards and nobler attitudes. Respect and fidelity are among the highest qualities of character he treasures. Notice the description of the kind of man who will stand before God and be blessed. *'Lord, who shall abide in thy tabernacle? who shall dwell in thy holy hill? He that walketh uprightly, and worketh righteousness, and speaketh the truth in his heart. He that backbiteth not with his tongue, nor doeth evil to his neighbor, nor taketh up a reproach against his neighbor. In whose eyes a vile person is condemned; but he honoreth them that fear the Lord. He that sweareth to his own hurt, and changeth not. He that putteth not out his money to usury, nor taketh reward against the innocent. He that doeth these things shall never be moved'* (Ps. 15:1-5). Are you striving to become this kind of steward?

### **Examine Yourself**

We all need to look deeply inside and examine our attitudes. Are we guilty of the very things we distrust in others? Is it possible that the suspicions we often insinuate stem in part from our own guilt feelings, or our own tendencies to participate in rumor spreading? Is this why we are inclined to criticize others, impute evil motives, and put them through the meatgrinder (our own teeth) when they are not present?

Let's search our own hearts to see if our 'scandalous tongues' belie a twisted and depraved mind that wants to put others down in order to minimize our own shortcomings and lift ourselves above them.

Of course, we should not ignore or condone wrong doing. That is, we should not try to protect people from the law who are guilty of illegal or criminal acts. Or even more important, attempting to conceal the actions of a brother who is sowing discord among God's people and trying to divide the flock.

What the Bible instructs us to do in the case of a friend who is weak and sinning is to go to him privately in a spirit of meekness and try to restore him (see Matt. 18:15-17). We should not want to make him a public spectacle of ridicule so as to destroy his dignity.

### **Be a Faithful Friend**

True and faithful friends are priceless. The Bible commends the brother who 'loves at all times' and the 'friend who sticks closer than a brother' (Prov. 17:17 and 18:24). The friendship between David and Jonathan is held up as a sterling example of unflinching loyalty — of what true friends should be like.

The Bible states that the love that they had for each other was stronger than a man's love for a woman (II Sam. 1:26). The friendship was so unshakable that they would have given their lives for each other. Can you imagine either of them turning 'Judas' on the other — betraying a secret, a confidence or spreading vicious gossip? Can the same be said of us in the way we treat and protect our friends? Can we also be trusted to carefully guard a confidence, to faithfully uphold and defend their honor? Are we a true friend?

### **God is a Trusted Friend**

The greatest example of true friendship and devotion in the entire universe is God Himself. The Bible tells us that all our faults and secret sins are open to His view. 'Neither is there any creature that is not manifest in his sight: but all things are naked and opened unto the eyes of him with whom we have to do' (Heb. 4:13). He knows us through and through. Yet God, who is love, plainly reveals that He does not talk about our sins when we repent (Ezek. 18:22). He forgets them (Heb. 8:12) in His mercy and casts them far from His presence. 'As far as the east is from the west, so far hath he removed our transgressions from us' (Ps. 103:12).

In stark contrast, Satan, our great adversary, constantly gossips and accuses us before God night and day (Rev. 12:10). He is a renowned liar and depraved slanderer (Jn. 8:44) whose primary aim is to destroy our character.

It behooves each of us to make sure we are emulating God and letting Him create His faithful character in us (Eph. 4:23-32). For if we are not on guard we'll find ourselves too often serving Satan, and doing immeasurable harm to God's earthly family.

As we serve God and draw close to Him let us strive to honor our neighbor and become trusted friends.



## CHAPTER 44

### **DATING — A VITAL DIMENSION IN YOUR AMBASSADOR EXPERIENCE**

A whole new and exciting horizon has opened up to you here at Ambassador College.

Your days will be filled with challenging and rewarding opportunities. Vital knowledge will be given to you in classes. Clubs and activities will offer fun and valuable experiences. Dorm life can be filled with unity and friendship.

There is another rich opportunity offered to you at Ambassador College. That is dating.

Mr. Armstrong, in his founder's statement, explains that part of the basic knowledge in true values given at Ambassador is 'instruction in a right and healthy type of dating' (*Ambassador College 1983-85 Catalog*, p. 16).

Also, in *THE MISSING DIMENSION IN SEX*, Mr. Armstrong wrote, 'A date should be an event which adds to the mental, social, moral and spiritual character development of both boy and girl... Dating should be made interesting. But a date can be both interesting and at the same time stimulating, uplifting and a contribution to the very PURPOSE of life — character-building' (pp. 208-209).

Dating is a vital dimension in your Ambassador experience. It provides a valuable avenue for growth, character and personality development. As we begin a new year, let's look at some of the purposes for dating and the right approaches towards it.

#### • **BUILDING FRIENDSHIPS**

True and meaningful friendships contribute to a happy, abundant life. One purpose of dating is to help build these long-lasting relationships.

Friendship grows when we show concern for the feelings and interests of others. 'A man that hath friends must shew himself friendly' (Prov. 18:24). So, in your dating, concentrate on giving and building friendships.

Date widely. This gives you experience in relating to a broad range of different people. You'll find yourself learning how to interface with almost anyone and becoming, as Paul admonished, 'all things to all men' (I Cor. 9:22).

Avoid pairing-off in a premature romance. This is a poor foundation for any lasting relationship and damages the potential for becoming true friends. Instead, build strong bonds of brotherly love. These endure forever.

#### • **UNDERSTANDING THE OPPOSITE SEX**

What makes men 'tick'? Why do women act the way they do? Men and women have unique differences. The way they view life — their feelings, reactions and ways of doing things — are in some instances almost opposite.

In Satan's world, the 'battle of the sexes' is waged. Men and women oftentimes misunderstand each other. Ambassador College students have opportunity to gain a proper insight — through dating!

Date a wide variety of people — and date as often as your schedule will allow. If you limit yourself to a narrow range of fellow students, or rarely date at all, you probably won't gain a good understanding of the opposite sex. Accept the challenge to venture out and date.

The perspective you gain will benefit you throughout your life — especially in your future marriage. You'll also come to appreciate how our Creator made men and women to complement one another.

#### • **ENRICHING EDUCATION**

Textbooks can only go so far in teaching you about places you've never seen and things you've never done. Having the right social life can provide ways to enrich your education in these areas.

Ambassador College has students from all parts of the globe, each bringing his or her special cultural perspective.

As you associate with these different personalities — eating together in the Student Center, going to and from, classes and participating in College activities — you will be exposed to a wide variety of backgrounds. This can help you learn about the people, culture and geography of other lands.

There is also a myriad of talents, interests and experiences among Ambassador students from the U.S.A. Learning from them can also greatly broaden your education.

Take advantage of the unique social and cultural opportunities afforded you while at A.C. This will sharpen your skills in dealing with others and make you a more interesting and informed person.

### • **GROWING IN CONFIDENCE**

Confidence in relating to others — along with friendliness and outgoing concern is an important quality of leadership. Dating is one of the most effective means of developing this attribute.

Confidence involves poise, self-assurance, ease in dealing with people and skill in handling different situations. This comes through practice and experience. Dating provides that experience.

If you feel ill at ease on dates, don't let this stop you from trying! The more you date, the more relaxed you will be. Nervousness will decrease and confidence will grow.

Try group dating also. This reduces the anxiety that sometimes occurs with one-on-one dates.

Concentrate on giving the other person an enjoyable time. This principle can change what might be a dull date into an interesting and successful one. Having many successful dates will greatly increase your confidence.

You will find yourself becoming a well-balanced, socially confident Ambassador.

### • **LEARNING THE ART OF COMMUNICATION**

Ambassador classes and speech clubs will give you training in formal speaking situations. Dating gives practical experience in learning the art of communication in everyday settings.

It takes practice to tactfully express yourself and communicate well with different types of people. Socializing with others will help you gain this practice.

Learn how to say the right thing at the right time. *'A word fitly spoken is like apples of gold in pictures of silver'* (Prov. 25:11).

Express yourself and your thoughts with enthusiasm and color. Expand your vocabulary by learning and using new words.

Become an active listener. This involves giving others a chance to express themselves and showing sincere interest in what they have to say.

By taking advantage of dating opportunities at Ambassador, you'll increase your communication skills. You will grow in the art of encouraging fellow students and being a positive influence on them.

### • **HAVING FUN AND FELLOWSHIP**

Ambassador College life is fast-paced. Between classes, work, clubs, activities and personal studies, you may find that relaxation comes at a premium. Dating can be a pleasant diversion from this busy load.

Use imagination! Take advantage of the mountains, beaches, parks, museums, and theaters which are close by in the area.

Dates don't have to cost money to be fun. The beautiful gardens on the campus grounds provide peaceful settings for enjoyable walks, conversation and fellowship. And don't forget the Frontier Room! Over the years, College students have found this an excellent spot for socializing.

Group dates expand the enjoyment since more can participate. Picnics and games such as volleyball or other team sports are refreshing activities.

Keep in mind that having fun and enjoying fellowship does not mean involving or emphasizing romantic interests. These dates should be for the purpose of breaking the routine, relaxing and just enjoying life to the full. Have fun! And strive to give others a good time.

### • **GIVING & SERVING**

Dating is giving. Education, growth and fun are all important purposes of dating, but one of the primary goals should be giving to the other person.

Be thoughtful and considerate. Look out for the needs and interests of your date and concentrate on making the occasion relaxed and enjoyable.

Be open in sharing your thoughts and ideas and express genuine interest in those of your date.

Notice the individual who may be shy or a newcomer who hasn't yet made a lot of friends. Men, take the initiative to ask this type of girl for a date. On group outings, ladies, include the fellow who is having a hard time breaking in. Give of yourself! Think of others first!

Maintain a friendly outlook towards everyone. Don't be a respecter of persons.

Dating gives opportunities to practice the spiritual law of love that governs every human relationship. Apply God's Word to your dating experiences and you'll be amazed at the results!

#### • **PREPARING FOR THE FUTURE**

One of the ultimate purposes for dating is to lay a foundation for marriage. Out of the friendships you build may eventually emerge that 'special person' who will fit into your life. At that point your dating can become more serious, but keep in mind, this could take several years.

In the meantime, if you're wise, you won't rush into romance or become emotionally involved with a person after the third or fourth date. Nor will you limit yourself only to a few, select people. You'll date widely in order to mature and experience a broad variety of personalities.

Then, when it's time to consider marriage, you'll have laid a proper foundation and gained the wisdom to choose the right mate.

Throughout your college career, be sure to keep your priorities in view. Pray to God for help and guidance so that you'll not stray from His paths. Exercise restraint and seek His will. Remember that God is the ideal matchmaker.

These are the reasons why dating is a vital dimension in your Ambassador experience.

— END —





## CHAPTER 45

### **FEMININITY**

#### **I. WHAT IS IT?**

##### **A. True Femininity**

*Is it curling the hair  
 Or painting the face?  
 Pinning on bows,  
 Pink ribbons and lace?  
 Flounces and frills,  
 Bracelets and rings?  
 Polishing nails?  
 Is it all of these things?*

*No, you can't pin it on  
 Like a bow in the hair.  
 You can't put it on  
 Like the garment you wear.  
 It's deeper than ornaments  
 Gracing the skin.  
 For true femininity  
 Comes from within!*

*It glows from a heart  
 That is gentle and kind,  
 A soul that is chaste,  
 An honest, pure mind.  
 Without inner goodness  
 How futile the bows,  
 For 'pinning on petals'  
 Can never make a rose!*

*— Emily Hunter*

B. Describe a beautiful filly — a thoroughbred with long flowing mane. Spirited, but well-trained. Beautifully groomed.

C. Contrast a rebellious, broken down old nag.

#### **II. BE GLAD YOU'RE A GIRL — ACCEPT YOUR GOD-GIVEN ROLE WITH A POSITIVE ATTITUDE**

A. When God created Eve, she was the most beautiful, perfectly shaped woman who has ever lived.

B. She didn't look like Adam; she didn't sound like Adam.

1. She was soft and gentle.

2. Biological differences in male and female.

a. When guys reach puberty, the male hormones cause their muscles to begin to firm up and become strong. Their skin toughens and a beard begins to grow. Their voice deepens and they become aggressive. They also begin to grow rapidly.

b. By contrast, when a girl's hormones change, her skin becomes soft. Fatty tissue is deposited in certain strategic areas to give her a distinctive figure and prepare her for motherhood. Her features remain dainty.

#### **III. ATTITUDE.**

A. Attitude controls everything! It's the way you think — it's something others can actually see.

They can hear it in your voice, see it in the way you move, feel it when they are with you.

Your attitude expresses itself in everything you do, all the time, wherever you are.

- B. The course of your entire life will be decided by your attitude. It will decide how well you do in school and how well you get along with your friends and family. It will determine whether or not you discover your potential as a girl, develop your abilities, and reach your goals. A positive attitude will make you feel good about being a girl and will move your life forward; a negative attitude will put it in reverse.

#### IV. HAIR.

- A. Throughout history, long flowing hair has been associated with femininity. Women of royalty and nobility spent many hours maintaining their hairdos. Not until the roaring 20's did American women bob their hair to demonstrate their newfound emancipation (when they were given the right to vote and to own property). If you're familiar with writers O. Henry, Scott Fitzgerald and Louisa May Alcott, you'll realize that literature is known to present short hair as a tragic feminine loss. Hollywood has immortalized the blonde with long tresses as the ultimate feminine beauty.
- B. We're not saying that hair must be shoulder length to be feminine. But, in keeping with God's principles, it should be long enough to look like a girl — to be distinguished — even from a distance — from a male.
- C. Find a hairstyle that is becoming to you. Get a good haircut, maybe a perm, and be sure to keep it clean and neat. Stay away from faddish, punk styles that are associated with the rebellious teens of the world. You are called out to be different — to be beautiful.

#### V. CLOTHES.

- A. Who can argue that clothes are a very important part of being a girl?
- B. The Imperial uniforms are very stylish and allow for a great deal of variety.
- C. But how you wear your uniform can make a big difference in the impression you make — and how you feel about yourself.
1. *Make sure it fits.*
  2. *It must be impeccably clean.*
  3. *Press it!*
  4. *Develop the habit of going to a full-length mirror to check your appearance before you leave home each morning. Allow time to make corrections, if needed.*
- D. Always wear a smile. Make it part of the uniform. No matter how great your clothes look, you won't look good if you have a frown or a scowl on your face.
- E. What about when you're not at school. Then how do you dress? In your grubbies? In oversized men's clothes to cover up your femininity? Are you one who just can't wait to get out of that dress?
- F. It's OK to wear slacks when the occasion calls for it, but always remember to look like a girl and act like a girl.
1. There is a tendency for girls to sit in an unlady-like fashion when they're wearing pants.
    - a. one leg over the arm of the chair, or legs spread apart, or one leg crossed over the other, as men sit.

#### VI. VOICE.

- A. Shakespeare wrote that a voice soft and gentle was 'an excellent thing in woman.'
- B. Yet today women seem to be loud, boisterous and coarse.
- C. To be feminine, a girl should remember to keep the volume of her voice down. You shouldn't hear her above the crowd. Neither should she sound screechy.
- D. Wear a pleasant expression on your face to have a pleasant voice. If your face is all wrinkled and tensed up in anger, it will come out in your voice. If you knit your eyebrows together, you'll sound worried. If you throw your head back and stick out your chin, you sound coarse. But when you smile you can't help sounding sunny and pleasant.
- E. Practice with a tape recorder.

#### VII. POSTURE AND GRACEFUL MOVEMENT.

- A. Good posture is important not only for appearance but for good health as well.
- B. The plumb-line test.
1. Stand in front of a mirror. Relax.
  2. Is your head tilted to one side?
  3. Does one shoulder droop?

4. Is one hip lower than the other?
  5. Are you standing pigeon-toed or slue-footed?
- C. Now turn to the side.
1. Could you draw a straight line from the top of your head, through your ear, to your shoulder, the center of your thigh and down to the arch of your foot?
  2. This is your plumb line. Try it.
- D. Walking gracefully.
1. Hold head erect, but don't put your nose up in the air.
  2. Keep toes pointed straight.
  3. Remain vertical from hips up.
  4. Keep your stride moderate.
  5. Don'ts.
    - a. *Drag or click heels.*
    - b. *Over-swing arms.*
    - c. *Over-reach stride.*
    - d. *Slant head or chest forward.*
    - e. *Sway hips unnecessarily.*
- E. To sit down smoothly:
1. Touch knees to back of chair.
  2. Lower yourself, keeping erect.
  3. Sit down and slide back into place.
  4. Don'ts.
    - a. *Reach backwards with posterior.*
    - b. *Slide palms across hips to smooth skirt.*
    - c. *Fall into your chair with a bang.*
- F. To assume a pretty sitting posture:
1. Keep knees together, ankles together.
  2. Sit tall with hands in lap.
  3. Cross legs above knees.
  4. Cross ankles, keeping knees together.
  5. Don'ts.
    - a. *Sprawl like a floppy rag doll.*
    - b. *Twist feet around chair legs.*
    - c. *Sit with knees apart.*
- G. To pick up something from the floor.
1. Squat down beside the object.
  2. Be sure to keep knees together.
  3. Don't.
    - a. *Bend over to get it.*

### **VIII. EMOTIONAL MATURITY.**

- A. It is true that females tend to be more emotional.
- B. They have tender feelings and cry easily.
- C. Girls also tend to be more loving, compassionate and sympathetic.
- D. These are all positive emotions that should be developed.
- E. However, girls also sometimes tend to be moody, irritable and selfish.
  1. There may even be outbursts of anger or frustration when things don't go her way.
  2. Some tend to be grouchy and critical much of the time.
- F. This type of temperament will not make you popular — not with girlfriends, guys, parents or teachers.
- G. The key is to learn to control your emotions, rather than letting them control you.
- H. Make up your mind to be a happy, cheerful, loving person.

### **IX. CONDUCT.**

- A. Most girls are unaware of the effect they have on the guys.
- B. You need to understand how easily a young man's thoughts turn to sex.

- C. When you become overly friendly or flirtatious with a guy, he considers that an invitation for sex.
- D. Some girls can be sending the wrong message without realizing it.
  - 1. They may flutter their eyelashes or give longing glances.
  - 2. They may put their hands on the guy's shoulder.
  - 3. They may giggle a lot when he's around.
  - 4. They may wear clothes that are too tight, or revealing.
- E. Sure, girls know they do these things to get attention.
  - 1. But they don't realize the kind of attention it will get them.
  - 2. Not only do they attract the wrong kind of guys, but they may wind up with a ruined reputation.
- F. Girls have a God-given responsibility not to tempt men sexually.
  - 1. Be very careful of your conduct at all times.
    - a. *Check your actions and motives to be sure you aren't 'leading a guy on.'*
    - b. *Be careful not to copy the seductive expressions you see on TV, the movies or in magazines.*
  - 2. Don't wear skimpy, immodest clothing.
  - 3. Be discreet in the way you sit, walk and stand.
  - 4. Don't use vulgar language.
- G. What should you do if a guy makes suggestive innuendos or off-color remarks to you?
  - 1. Slap his face?
    - a. *No, remember he may have interpreted something you said or did as an invitation.*
  - 2. But you should tell him that you find it difficult to respect him when he behaves in such a manner, and that you'd appreciate his treating you like a lady.
  - 3. If it should ever happen again, tell him that you have no choice except to report him to your parents or the school administrators.
  - 4. Now, you're probably thinking that if you ever did this, your name would be 'mud' with the guys and your popularity would be ruined.
    - a. *Let me assure you that just the opposite is true.*
    - b. *The guys will deeply respect you and you'll gain the reputation of a pure, wholesome girl.*

**X. THESE CHARACTERISTICS WE'VE DISCUSSED ARE THE ESSENCE OF FEMININITY. THEY WILL HELP YOU TO BE MORE CHARMING AND MORE BEAUTIFUL.**

**XI. IN CONCLUSION, I'D LIKE YOU TO REMEMBER THAT...**

- A girl will never be feminine — no matter how light her step — if she walks roughshod over others!
- A girl will never be feminine — no matter how regal her bearing — if she holds her head high in arrogance and self-conceit!
- A girl will never be feminine — no matter how carefully she places her feet one before the other in a straight line — if she cannot walk a straight line with others, if she is crooked in her dealings, deceitful, disloyal, untrue!
- A girl will never be feminine — no matter how graceful her body motions — if she walks awkwardly with her friends, shoving them thoughtlessly aside to suit her selfish whims!
- A girl will never be feminine — no matter how gently she places her heels on the floor — if she 'kicks others around' in her eagerness to get to the top!
- A girl will never be feminine — no matter how harmoniously her muscles are coordinated — if she is out of harmony with her Creator, out of harmony with family and friends, demanding her way above theirs.

*(Adapted from Christian Charm Course, Emily Hunter, Harvest House Publishers.) 12//86*

— END —

## **CHAPTER 46**

### **'GENUINE LOVE IS SPONTANEOUS'**

The time was about 5:00 last Thursday afternoon. Traffic was heavy, and people jammed the streets, struggling to get home after a day's work. As a salesman and I discussed the merits of various items in one of Pasadena's furniture stores, we heard the terrifying squeal of brakes, the howl of tires on the pavement, and the shattering of glass and bending of metal as two cars collided at the intersection. Both of us rushed to a window to survey the situation as one of the cars careened up on the sidewalk.

In the middle of the street was a small foreign car with the front end smashed like an accordion and inside sat a woman, dazed and addled by the accident. Immediately, pulsating streams of blood ran down over the left side of her face and into her eye from a deep gash on her head. The injured lady struggled to free herself from a jammed door, finally managed to step outside, then immediately retreated to her car as dozens of gawking motorists sped by. As the crowd gathered, we could see her anguish and pain, but no one stepped forward to help.

The furniture store salesman and I ran outside the building and through a roaring parade of cars to give assistance until the police and ambulance arrived.

The impact of this gory accident didn't hit me until several minutes later.

Two lessons were driven home.

First was the cold indifference of the crowd to the sufferings of a fellow human being. The people standing idly by did not lift a finger to help — they nonchalantly stared. There was no coming to the rescue, no concern to help or comfort. The general reaction was one of apathy — each doing his own thing, going his own way, and not wanting to get involved.

Secondly, I learned something now about the spirit of service. Even though the salesman and I went to her aid, there was still a degree of reluctance on my part to hold back and not get deeply involved either. And even though we tried to help her, as I think about it now, more could have been done. At the time I didn't have a handkerchief with me — at least I could have asked for one from somebody to wipe the blood from her eye and face. More comforting words could have been said instead of just doing what my conscience said was my duty.

The personal lesson driven home by the accident was the need for love to be spontaneous, automatic, instinctive and true to all in need — not just reserved for our personal friends or members of the Church. Yet, this expression of Godly love can only be accomplished through the constant STIRRING of God's spirit (II Timothy 1:6), and by practicing love toward neighbor.

Paul admonished in Galatians 6:10, 'As we have therefore opportunity, let us do to all men, especially unto them who are of the household of faith.' Clearly, we should not limit our love to just the Church, it should encompass 'all men.' Jesus' parable of the Good Samaritan also teaches a similar lesson. Christ said further, 'And if you salute your brethren only, what do you more than others? Do not even the Publicans so?' (Matthew 5:47). As followers of Christ, we should do much more than Publicans. Our love and concern should be fervent, vigorous, and spontaneous, reaching out to the entire world. When a mother hears her baby cry, she has an automatic impulse to go to it, love it, and protect it. Isn't this the way we should respond to the needs and sufferings of fellow human beings?

It is true that proper caution and prudence needs to be exercised in giving aid to others out the compassion that motivates us needs to be an instantaneous reaction — part of our very being. It is not something we should stew over or artificially and mechanically try to work up. Instead, as we stir up God's Spirit and allow Christ to live in us, His way of love, compassion, empathy and concern for others will become automatic and habitually flow out to others.

Then when a situation arises such as the accident I just described, we will not have to work up the courage to act. Our response will be easy, natural and spontaneous, for it's the pattern of life we have been following.



## CHAPTER 47

### **HOW TO BE A WISE WOMAN**

#### **I. Why do you need wisdom?**

- A. Since most of you are married, or probably will be, why bother with developing this attribute of mind and character?
- B. After all, isn't it the responsibility of your husband to lead and guide you and make all the major decisions?
- C. Isn't your main calling and duty to submit to him and play the role of helpmeet or companion — to support and encourage him but keep meekly in the background?
- D. Is it really that important for you to acquire wisdom in order to make the Kingdom?
- E. You will soon see that seeking wisdom should be one of your most urgent and necessary goals — not only for your present well-being and happiness, but also to qualify for sonship in God's family.

#### **II. Let's approach this question from another viewpoint: If you were married to Jesus Christ, would it change your present outlook, attitude or approach to life?**

- A. Is there anything you would do differently?
- B. Would you work harder at becoming a better helpmeet, wife or companion?
- C. Would you strive to set a more wholesome and God-fearing example?
- D. Would you be more conscious of your speech and conduct and try to reflect the culture and character of a true Christian woman?

#### **III. Don't assume that being married to Christ is just a fanciful idea or religious sentiment**

- A. In a manner of speaking, the Bible says that you are already married to Him.
- B. Rom. 7:1-4 — *'...that ye should be married to... him who is raised from the dead...'*

#### **IV. And what kind of wife does Christ wish you to become?**

- A. Eph. 5:25-27 — *'...That he might present it to himself a glorious church, not having spot, or wrinkle, or any such thing; but that it should be holy and without blemish.'*
- B. Clearly the goals, values and standards that Christ has set for His wife are high and lofty indeed.

#### **V. Proverbs 31 is an excellent description of the kind of wife that would please Christ.**

- A. Proverbs 31:26 lists wisdom as one of her foremost qualities.
- B. On a scale of 1 to 100 where would you place wisdom in importance?
- C. 25th, 15th, 5th place?
- D. Does the Bible even say?
- E. Yes, it emphatically does.

#### **VI. Apart from God's Spirit and its fruits, wisdom is the single most important quality you need.**

- A. Prov. 4:7 — *'Wisdom is the principal thing...'*
  1. The word 'principal' means: a matter or thing of primary importance.
  2. First, foremost, the most important or vital thing.
- B. Prov. 3:13-18 — *'...all the things thou canst desire are not to be compared unto her...'*
  1. Wisdom is more valuable than wealth, fame or riches.
  2. *'She is a tree of life to them that lay hold upon her...'* (vs. 18).

#### **VII. Yet, the Bible speaks of those God has called as the foolish, weak and base things of the world.**

- A. 1 Cor. 1:26-19 — *'For ye see your calling, brethren, how that not many wise men after the flesh, not many mighty, not many noble, are called...'*
- B. Luke 16:8 — *'...for the children of this world are in their generation wiser than the children of light.'*
  1. God's apostle says that we're all seriously lacking in this area of life.
  2. God even likens us to dumb sheep.
  3. *Examples:*
    - a. A member's reaction to the sale of Christmas stamps at the Gladewater, Texas post office.
    - b. A member railing at waitress for bringing toast to his table during the Days of Unleavened Bread.

c. A wife commenting in the presence of her disinterested husband, 'He's unconverted, close-minded and stubborn.'

d. We've all caused much friction and heartache by trying to convert others.

4. Clearly, we all need wisdom.

### **VIII. What is wisdom?**

A. Job 28:28 — '*...the fear of the Lord, that is wisdom...*'

B. Ps. 111:10 — '*The fear of the Lord is the beginning of wisdom...*'

1. These verses give us a broad definition of what constitutes wisdom.

2. It's the fear of the Lord.

### **IX. But exactly what is the fear of the Lord?**

A. The fear of God is a state of mind that puts us into a right relationship with Him.

B. It's an attitude of complete and whole-hearted surrender.

C. It's a condition that tunes us into the Holy Spirit — God's wavelength.

### **X. Note, then, that it's God's Spirit that imparts wisdom.**

A. Eph. 1:17 — '*That the God of our Lord Jesus Christ, the Father of glory, may give unto you the spirit of wisdom and revelation in the knowledge of him.*'

B. This verse clearly shows that once you're tuned into God's wavelength, His Spirit imparts wisdom.

C. Your mind is then enlightened to see the practical answers to the myriad of problems that assail you daily.

D. This does not mean that all your problems are suddenly and miraculously solved.

E. It does mean that you will grow more and more in the ability to cope with stresses and tensions that arise.

F. In other words: You will come to have the mind of God — which is another definition of wisdom.

### **XI. But first, let's examine and discuss the two broad components of wisdom — KNOWLEDGE and UNDERSTANDING.**

#### **A. KNOWLEDGE**

1. Prov. 10:14 — '*Wise men lay up knowledge...*'

2. Prov. 18:15 — '*...the ear of the wise seeketh knowledge.*'

3. Prov. 1:5 — '*A wise man will hear, and will increase learning...*'

a. What is the result of not having knowledge

(1) Hos. 4:6 — '*My people are destroyed for lack of knowledge...*'

(2) Isa. 5:13 — '*...my people are gone into captivity because they have no knowledge...*'

4. Explain the meaning of knowledge.

a. Knowledge is the possession of facts, data, information and truth.

b. It's like the pieces of a jigsaw puzzle, parts of a car, components of a TV set, pieces of a dress pattern, etc.

c. It can be compared to all the materials to construct a building.

d. It's like the letters of the simple game of Scrabble.

e. On the spiritual realm, it's the words, truth, laws, etc. of the Bible.

#### **B. UNDERSTANDING**

1. Prov. 4:5-7 — '*Get wisdom, get understanding...*'

2. Prov. 10:13 — '*In the lips of him that hath understanding wisdom is found...*'

3. Ps. 111:10 — '*...a good understanding have all they that do his commandments...*'

4. I Kings 3:5-12 — Solomon prayed for understanding.

5. Explain the meaning of understanding.

a. It is the capacity to grasp the order and pattern of things.

b. It is the ability to see the logic, sequence and steps of how facts fit together.

c. It is the ability to see the end result or outcome of situations or circumstances.

d. Understanding requires thought, study and careful investigation.

e. Examples:

(1) Jigsaw puzzle — putting the parts together.

(2) Constructing materials into a house.

(3) Assembling the components of a TV set.



**XII. When knowledge and understanding are fused together, the end product is wisdom.**

- A. How will you know when you have this attribute of God?
- B. You will be able to see a problem and its solution in clear perspective.
- C. Wisdom is discernment, perception and insight.
- D. Wisdom is to the mind what eyesight is to the head — it is clear, mental vision.

Definition: WISDOM IS MENTAL EYESIGHT.

**XIII. Scriptures which prove it.**

- A. Prov. 27:12 — 'A prudent man foreseeth the evil, and hideth himself...'
- B. Deut. 32:29 — 'O that they were wise ... that they would consider their latter end!'
- C. Prov. 29:18 — 'Where there is no vision, the people perish...'
- D. Eccl. 8:5 — 'Whoso keepeth the commandment shall feel no evil thing; and a wise man's heart discerneth both time and judgment.'
- E. Eph. 1:16-19 — '...The eyes of your understanding being enlightened...'
- F. Ps. 39:4 — 'Lord, make me to know mine end...'
- G. Ps. 119:18 — 'Open thou mine eyes, that I may behold wondrous things out of thy law.'

Formula for getting wisdom:

First: Collect the facts, data, details, information.

Second: Study the facts until you can clearly see how they fit together.

Third: Apply your mind to the task, problem or difficulty at hand until you form a clear mental picture of its solution or end result.

- 1. Use jigsaw puzzle theory to illustrate.
- 2. Use components of a transmitter to explain the process.

**XIV. How to obtain wisdom.**

A. You must do two things:

1. ASK GOD FOR IT.

- a. Job 28:12-13; 20-27 — God knows where wisdom is to be found.
- b. And how do we get this wisdom from God?
  - (1) James 1:5 — 'If any of you lack wisdom, let him ask of God...'
    - (a) Ask for wisdom in specific things and for specific needs.
    - (b) To be a better mother, wife, neighbor — to control emotions, temper, etc.
      - 1. I Kings 3:5-14 — Solomon asked for an understanding heart to judge Israel.
      - 2. I Kings 4:29-34 — Because Solomon's heart was right, God gave him wisdom.

2. APPLY YOURSELF TO GET IT.

- a. To find wisdom you must be willing to pay the price of discipline and sacrifice.
- b. You must also have an inquiring mind.
  - (1) Eccl. 7:25 — 'I applied mine heart to know and to search, and to seek out wisdom...'
  - (2) Prov. 2:1-7 — '...incline your ear unto wisdom...'
  - (3) In your general quest for wisdom, ask the following six questions: WHAT, WHERE, WHY, WHEN, WHO and HOW.

**XV. James 3 describes the kind of wisdom that God imparts.**

- A. James 3:17 — 'But the wisdom that is from above is first pure, then peaceable, gentle, and easy to be entreated, full of mercy and good fruits, without partiality, and without hypocrisy.'
- B. Please note carefully the individual words that describe the quality of wisdom you'll receive.

**XVI. Twelve overall ways to get wisdom.**

A. General methods:

**1. By studying the life, example and teachings of Jesus Christ.**

- a. He epitomized wisdom.
- b. He was the perfection of wisdom in all walks of life.
- c. I Cor. 1:24, 30 — '...Christ... the wisdom of God...'

**2. By diligently studying God's Word.**

- a. II Tim. 3:15 — '...scriptures, which are able to make thee wise unto salvation...'
- b. Prov. 15:1 — 'A soft answer turneth away wrath...'

**3. Through meditation.**

- a. Josh. 1:8 — *'This book of the law shall not depart out of thy mouth; but thou shalt meditate therein day and night, that thou mayest observe to do according to all that is written therein: for then thou shalt make thy way prosperous, and then thou shalt have good success.'*
- b. Ps. 119:97-98 — *'O how love I thy law! It is my meditation all the day. Thou through thy commandments hast made me wiser than mine enemies: for they are ever with me.'*

**4. Through observation.**

- a. Prov. 1:20-23 — *'Wisdom crieth without; she uttereth her voice in the streets...'*

**5. Through experience.**

- a. Job 32:7 - *'I said, Days should speak, and multitude of years should teach wisdom.'*

**6. Through seeking counsel and advice.**

- a. Prov. 13:10 — *'...with the well advised is wisdom.'*

**7. By walking with wise men.**

- a. Prov. 13:20 — *'He that walketh with wise men shall be wise...'*

**8. Through reflection.**

- a. This involves thinking things through and taking stock of your mistakes.
- b. It has to do with general self-examination with an eye toward improvement.
- c. It involves thinking of ways to apply the Bible and God's laws to all of life's experiences.

**9. By reading good books.**

- a. Dictionary of thoughts.

**10. By studying God's creation.**

- a. Rom. 1:20 — *'For the invisible things of him from the creation of the world are clearly seen, being understood by the things that are made, even his eternal power and Godhead; so that they are without excuse.'*

**11. By praying for it.**

- a. James 1:5 — *'If any of you lack wisdom, let him ask of God, that giveth to all men liberally, and upbraideth not; and it shall be given him.'*

**12. By applying your whole being to get it.**

- a. Eccl. 7:25 - *'I applied mine heart to know and to search, and to seek out wisdom, and the reason of things, and to know the wickedness of folly, even of foolishness and madness.'*

**XVII. Attaining total wisdom involves setting priorities and organizing your life.**

- A. A list of priorities in order of importance.
  1. Build and maintain a right relationship with God.
  2. Learn to love, submit to and respect your husband.
  3. Learn how to love and train your children in godly character.
  4. Learn to be a good homemaker.
  5. Become a dedicated servant to the Church and God's people.
  6. Be a good neighbor and a light to the community.
  7. Continually strive to improve your life.
  8. Be a faithful and productive employee.

**XVIII. A profile of a truly wise woman.**

- A. Characteristics.
  1. She recognizes her role and calling in God's plan.
  2. She maintains a high standard of conduct, striving to avoid all appearance of sin.
  3. Her lifestyle is discreet and modest.
  4. She understands the admonition to be quick to listen and slow to speak.
  5. She knows how to gain and hold the respect of others by acts of kindness, generosity and genuine concern.
  6. She controls her emotions, they don't control her.
  7. She's always positive and upbeat in her outlook on life.
  8. She strives to encourage and edify others, instead of depressing them through negative attitudes and remarks.
  9. She always supports and stands behind her husband.
  10. She possesses the ability to weigh matters and foresees the outcome or solution to a problem.
  11. She is capable of making critical decisions in a time of crisis.

12. She recognizes the extent of her capacity and defers to others when matters are beyond her reach.
13. She strives to be knowledgeable and competent in her realm of responsibilities.
14. She is self-disciplined and self-motivated.
15. She's a confident and charming person who expresses calm inner peace and joy.
16. She's patient and long-suffering toward others and tolerant of their faults.
17. She's innovative and resourceful and knows how to think her way through difficult situations.
18. She understands people and knows how to adapt to their personality and temperment.
19. Her children reflect intelligence, strong character and good breeding.
20. She evidences trust and faith, and a close walk with God.

**XIX. Conclusion.**

- A. Make walking with God your number one goal and you will become truly wise woman.
- B. Start now.

— END —

**CHARACTERISTICS OF A TRULY WISE WOMAN**

1. She recognizes her role and calling in God's plan.
2. She maintains a high standard of conduct, striving to avoid all appearance of sin.
3. Her lifestyle is discreet and modest.
4. She understands the admonition to be quick to listen and slow to speak.
5. She knows how to gain and hold the respect of others by acts of kindness, generosity and genuine concern.
6. She controls her emotions, they don't control her.
7. She's always positive and upbeat in her outlook on life.
8. She strives to encourage and edify others, instead of depressing them through negative attitudes and remarks.
9. She always supports and stands behind her husband.
10. She possesses the ability to weigh matters and foresees the outcome or solution to a problem.
11. She is capable of making critical decisions in a time of crisis.
12. She recognizes the extent of her capacity and defers to others when matters are beyond her reach.
13. She strives to be knowledgeable and competent in her realm of responsibilities.
14. She is self-disciplined and self-motivated.
15. She's a confident and charming person who expresses calm inner peace and joy.
16. She's patient and long-suffering toward others and tolerant of their faults.
17. She's innovative and resourceful and knows how to think her way through difficult situations.
18. She understands people and knows how to adapt to their personality and temperment.
19. Her children reflect intelligence, strong character and good breeding.
20. She evidences trust and faith, and a close walk with God.



## CHAPTER 48

### **HOW TO BUILD AND SUSTAIN TEAM MORALE**

#### **I. Wise King Solomon once said, 'When the righteous are in authority, the people rejoice' (Prov. 29:2).**

- A. When applied to a king ruling over his subjects, we all know what this verse means:
  - 1. His people are happy and feel secure because they know their king loves them.
  - 2. He puts their interests above his own.
  - 3. He will protect them from foreign invaders and will see that justice is fairly administered.
  - 4. Because he fears God, they know he will guide them in right paths, never abuse his office or power or rip them off in self-serving schemes.
- B. When applying this verse to you and me, as leaders or managers, the same principles should apply.
  - 1. If we're God-fearing and loving toward our employees, they will enjoy high morale and be happy and productive.
  - 2. They'll know we're solicitous of their well-being, are considerate of their feelings and have their personal welfare at heart.
  - 3. They'll be motivated to produce the finest quality of work.
  - 4. Our team members will support us willingly for they know from first-hand experience that we're honorable and trustworthy.

#### **II. Today I would like to present a discussion on how to build team morale.**

- A. In this limited time, it would be impossible to cover every aspect of this subject.
- B. Therefore, I plan to discuss only the most important aspects of effective leadership in building team morale.

#### **C. FOURTEEN STEPS:**

##### **1. Good team morale starts with the boss.**

- a. Whether or not employees within your division, department or section are motivated to produce and excel rests largely with you, the leader in charge.
- b. This involves being enthusiastic and positive-minded and possessing the ability to unite your team into a smooth-functioning, well-oiled machine.
- c. You have to be the motivator and spark plug inspiring your people into cohesive action.
- d. If there are conflicts and clashes in the workplace, you and I would do well to re-examine our leadership skills.
- e. Peace, goodwill and harmony among team members, as well as their productive output, are strong indications that you are a competent leader.

##### **2. Use the Bible as your chief management textbook.**

- a. The Bible is replete with hundreds of management principles.
- b. In fact, there are dozens of passages touching directly on employer-employee relationships:
  - (1) Ephesians 6:5-9
  - (2) Colossians 3:22-23
  - (3) Matthew 25:14-30
  - (4) Matthew 20:1-16
- c. Actually, all commandments dealing with everyday Christian living can — and should — be applied on the job.
- d. Whenever you, as a boss, conscientiously incorporate the Bible into your day-to-day management style, you will find that the spirit and morale of your team will soar.

##### **3. Be the kind of leader your people can trust and respect.**

- a. To build a strong and viable team, it's essential to reflect trustworthiness and steadfast character.
- b. Your employees need the assurance that your loyalty for them is true and feel confident you'll never let them down.

Examples:

- (1) Keeping your promises.
  - (2) Being dutifully fair to all and not showing favoritism.
  - (3) Being certain to get all the facts before administering discipline.
  - (4) Not using harsh threats which cause employees to feel their jobs are insecure.
- c. As to the matter of respect: This involves your skills and qualifications as a leader and how you measure up.

For example:

- (1) Maintaining high standards and values.
- (2) Being honest and ethical in your business practices as well as in your private life.
- (3) Keeping up-to-date with the state-of-the-art.
- (4) Looking for ways to improve the operation and innovate positive changes.
- (5) Projecting an image of sound-mindedness and good judgment and the ability to make intelligent decisions.

**4. Realize that every person on the team is important.**

- a. According to I Cor. 12:12-25, there is no insignificant member in the body of the Church.
- b. Every person counts, even the uncomely parts.
- c. How critically true and important this is in the workplace.
- d. If a job needs to be done — no matter how small or menial — then the person performing that task serves a useful purpose.
- e. Remember that a watch has both large and small cogs in order for it to function properly.
- f. Make each person under your charge feel needed and appreciated.

**5. Encourage open communication and free interchange of ideas.**

- a. First and foremost it is imperative that you, as the boss, communicate the desired goals of the Work to every rank and file member on the team.
- b. They need to be updated on the latest news, breakthroughs and plans for the future.
- c. This makes them feel like they are an important part of the team.
- d. Conversely, it's equally as important for your people to feel free to come to you with ideas and suggestions
- e. Although you may not be able to use every suggestion offered, your willingness to listen builds morale.
- f. Not only should you intently listen, but also (if possible) allow team members to participate in implementing approved changes.
- g. Be humble and approachable!
- h. Communicate — keep the team informed and hear them out!

**6. Provide opportunities for job enrichment and employee growth.**

- a. Employees will be motivated to push themselves and try even harder if they know there's room to grow.
- b. Thus in building morale it's vital to find ways to challenge them and to increase their usefulness.

Examples:

- (1) Cross-training.
  - (2) Promoting from within.
  - (3) Delegation.
  - (4) On-the-job training.
  - (5) Paying for classes or seminars to improve technical skills.
  - (6) Purchasing necessary books and training aids for an office library.
- c. Help build your people, and they will help build God's Work.

**NOTE:** *Mr. Graham Hawkins said in a lecture he gave in a management class for students that, 'The mark of a good manager is that if he must be gone for an extended period of time, his office will run smoothly and efficiently just as if he were there.'*

**7. Give praise, recognition and rewards.**

- a. Praise is a tonic that stimulates employee growth and productivity.  
Areas of praise that a good boss should note frequently:
  - (1) Improvement in efficiency and error rate.

- (2) Increased production.
- (3) Being dependable, reliable and always coming through when needed.
- (4) Willingness to work overtime.
- (5) Being thrifty and cost-conscious.
- b. Recognition is equally as important.
  - Examples:
  - (1) Publicly recognizing a notable achievement.
  - (2) Giving credit where credit is due. (Nothing is more demoralizing to the team than for the boss to take credit for their accomplishments and be a glory hog.)
  - (3) Giving a plaque for 25-year service.
- c. One of the most important ways of motivating the team is to reward them monetarily for a job well done.
  - Examples:
  - (1) Regular raises.
  - (2) Bonuses.
  - (3) Raising to higher pay scale when qualified and deserving.
- d. Remember the biblical injunction, '*The labourer is worthy of his reward*' (1 Tim. 5:18).

**8. Show your employees you care for them as people, not just as workers.**

- a. Team members should never be looked on as mere units, statistics or fishes in a pond.
- b. Make it a point to show your personal concern for them as individuals.

Some examples:

- (1) Phoning or visiting them when they are sick.
- (2) Sending flowers and get-well cards during prolonged illness.
- (3) Acknowledging a death in the family.
- c. Also express concern for employees' comfort and well-being in the work environment.

Examples:

- (1) Comfortable temperature and lighting.
- (2) Safety.
- (3) Adequate equipment and furniture.
- (4) Keeping machinery in good repair.
- d. Consider impact on families when transferring, laying-off or firing.

Examples:

- (1) Child may be a senior in high school.
- (2) Climate may be injurious to health.
- (3) Employee may be deeply in debt and severely strapped if laid-off without warning or sufficient time to prepare.
- (4) As to firing, has the employee been patiently worked with and given a chance to improve? Can he or she be moved elsewhere and salvaged?
- e. Be thoughtful and sensitive to the feelings and needs of all who work for you.

**9. Stress cooperation and teamwork.**

- a. This not only involves interaction between employees within a section or department, but to all areas of the Work.
- b. Strive to be a peacemaker and a builder of bridges.
- c. Remind employees that as a worldwide Work, we must work together in harmony, each giving and sharing to help the other.
- d. Again, here's an area where good communication is so important.

**10. Create a family atmosphere of closeness and fellowship.**

- a. Try to inject a sense of family and togetherness in the work place.
- b. Have occasional office parties or pot-luck luncheons.
- c. If the staff is small enough, you might treat them to an occasional lunch or dinner on the house.
- d. Plan some activity where families can be invited.
- e. Have extended coffee breaks where employees can join you in informal rap sessions.
- f. Remember the importance of a warm family environment and the proper use of humor.

**11. Infuse into each employee a 'quality' mode of thinking.**

- a. In 1 Corinthians 10:31 we are commanded, '*... whatsoever ye do, do all to the glory of God.*'
- b. Matthew 5:48 tells us to become perfect.
- c. Ecclesiastes 9:10 exhorts us that, '*Whatsoever thy hand findeth to do, do it with thy might....*'
- d. These verses, among many others, most assuredly stress the importance of being quality conscious.
  - (1) Examples:
    - (a) Not allowing smudge marks or strike-overs on a letter.
    - (b) Being sure that printed material such as booklets are evenly trimmed.
    - (c) Require tidy housekeeping.
    - (d) Make sure employee reports are well-organized and accurate.
- e. It's a known psychological fact that, when people are encouraged to excel in their endeavors, their sense of quality improves proportionately.
- f. Thus enthusiasm and high-spirited morale are automatic spin-offs when employees are encouraged to attain excellence.

**12. Use authority to lead and guide the team, not as a whip to drive them.**

- a. People work much better in an atmosphere of love and encouragement than in one of anxiety and fear.
- b. Scare tactics and veiled threats may get the job done, but human beings innately resent this kind of treatment.
- c. The severe and heavy use of authority indicates that the leader lacks confidence in his ability to lead.
- d. Authority should be used as a tool for service, never as a means to exalt self.
- e. As a side note: a leader should never use his power or office to get special privileges.
- f. Sometimes authority may have to be strongly used, but only after kindness and love have been tried first.

**13. Keep the team inspired and motivated by helping them see the big picture and how their jobs fit in.**

- a. Boredom and routine can set in unless you as the leader keep the focus sharp and clear.
- b. Talk about the growth and plans of the Work and the hopes and dreams of Mr. Armstrong.
- c. Frequently remind employees how their jobs are fulfilling an intrinsic role in carrying the Gospel to all the world.
- d. Help them to realize the seriousness of their calling and that the way they carry out their duties will in part determine their reward.
- e. Stress the fact that we're working for the living God and not just a pay check.

**14. Set a sterling example in all walks of life.**

- a. This has to do with maintaining high morals, impeccable ethics and high values.
- b. It has to do with setting high standards for yourself and creating a tone of efficiency, hard work and excellence.
- c. Be circumspect in small matters such as:
  - 1) Paying for personal postage, long distance phone calls and xerox copies.
  - 2) Not allowing yourself to think you're above the law and that the rules don't apply to the boss.
  - 3) Watching your language and never telling shady jokes.
- d. Be everything you wish your employees to be and they will eventually absorb your desires, ideals and Godly way of thinking.

**III. Good managers would do well to deeply reflect on and inculcate the principle found in Is. 40:11.**

- A. Is. 40:11 — '*He shall feed his flock like a shepherd: he shall gather the lambs with his arm, and carry them in his bosom, and shall gently lead those that are with young.*'



## CHAPTER 49

### **HOW TO CREATE THE DESIRE TO ACHIEVE**

- I. Did you realize that you possess a power that can revolutionize your life and transform you into a more likable, popular and successful person?**
- A. That it can make you more self-assured and confident
  - B. That it can enable you to improve your grades, make you a better athlete and upgrade the general quality of your life!
  - C. That it can help you achieve just about any goal you want as long as it's realistic and within the realm of God's law!
- II. Stop and think for a moment about the fellows and girls you secretly admirer.**
- A. Did you ever wonder what makes them tick and why they seem so lucky?
  - B. Why they are so well-adjusted and have many friends?
  - C. Why they seem to have such untiring drive and energy to get things done?
- III. It's simply because they've learned how to tap this inner resource with which every human being is born.**
- A. They've discovered the simple, little secret that all achievers have found.
  - B. An inner power so real and dynamic that if earnestly applied can turn your life around!
- IV. What is this power?**
- A. It's a gift that God has given and it's a power you've had from birth.
  - B. It's a power you use-every day — but probably were unaware of it.
  - C. As a matter of fact, you've already used this power a number of times since you awoke this morning.
  - D. God gave you this power in order to be useful, productive and a fulfilled human being.
- V. Exactly what is it?**
- A. Put in its simplest form — it's the power to choose.
  - B. That's right — it's the power to make decisions affecting the way you live your life.
  - C. It's the power to decide how you'll use your time.
  - D. Or how you'll react to pressure and face disappointment.
  - E. In essence, it's the power to decide whether you'll succeed or fail.
- VI. Of course, I'm not implying that you are free to make any decision you please.**
- A. As long as you're under age and supported by your parents, you'll always be under their authority.
  - B. Because of your youth and inexperience some decisions they must make for you.
  - C. Yet, within your limited boundaries you have the responsibility of making dozens if not hundreds of choices in your day-to-day life.
- VII. Before explaining how you can use this power, let's first notice a number of scriptures explaining God's views on the subject**
- A. Deut . 30:19 — *'I call heaven and earth to record this day against you, that I have set before you life and death, blessing and cursing: therefore choose life, that both thou and thy seed may live.'*
  - B. Josh. 24:14-15 — *'Now therefore fear the Lord, and serve him in sincerity and in truth: and put away the gods which your fathers served on the other side of the flood, and in Egypt; and serve ye the Lord. (15) And if it seem evil unto you to serve the Lord, choose you this day whom ye will serve; whether the gods which your fathers served that were on the other side of the flood, or the gods of the Amorites, in whose land ye dwell: but as for me and my house, we will serve the Lord.'*
  - C. Prov. 1:29, 31 — *'For that they hated knowledge, and did not choose the fear of the Lord: (31) Therefore shall they eat of the fruit of their own way, and be filled with their own devices.'*
  - D. Prov. 3:31 — *'Envy thou not the oppressor, and choose none of his ways.'*
  - E. Isa. 7:14-15 — *'Therefore the Lord himself shall give you a sign; Behold, a virgin shall conceive, and bear a son, and shall call his name Immanuel. (15) Butter and honey shall he eat, that he may know to refuse the evil, and choose the good.'*

**VIII. How then can we harness this power and apply it in everyday life?**

- A. Before giving you the answer, first let me tell you about a unique law that most people have little knowledge of.
- B. Yet, it has a profound effect on the way you think, live and act.
- C. It's called the 'pleasure-pain principle.'

**IX. Just what is this strange-sounding law and how does it work?**

- A. We human beings are always seeking ways or things that will bring us pleasure.
  1. We might say that life is a constant 'want.'
  2. We are constantly wanting things that will give us comfort, satisfy our needs and please our senses.
  3. This might include such matters as:
    - a. *Eating when we're hungry.*
    - b. *Drinking when we're thirsty.*
    - c. *Sleeping when we're tired.*
    - d. *Buying things we want.*
    - e. *Listening to music.*
    - f. *Watching TV.*
- B. At the same time we're seeking things to bring pleasure, we're also avoiding circumstances that bring pain.
  1. We attempt to shield ourselves from situations that hurt us or cause discomfort.
  2. This might involve such examples as:
    - a. *Coming in out of the rain or cold weather.*
    - b. *Avoiding embarrassing situations.*
    - c. *Putting off chores and assignments that require mental effort or hard work.*
    - d. *Getting up early.*
    - e. *Doing yard work or housecleaning.*
- C. Whichever of these two drives — pleasure or pain — dominates is the one you're most likely to choose.

**X. This now brings us to a most surprising and vital truth.**

- A. True success cannot be attained simply by seeking pleasure.
- B. To attain success, you must also experience pain.
- C. It takes both pleasure and pain to achieve the goals you want in life.
- D. But the amazing truth is that to attain success you must reverse the process — pain first, then pleasure.
- E. This is a great law of life the average teenager does not realize — that to enjoy the true pleasure of success he must first work, toil and experience pain.

**XI. Let's notice how this important truth is revealed in God's Word.**

- A. Scriptures:
  1. Gal. 6:7-9 — *'Be not deceived; God is not mocked: for whatsoever a man soweth, that shall he also reap. (8) For he that soweth to his flesh shall of the flesh reap corruption; but he that soweth to the Spirit shall of the Spirit reap life everlasting. (9) And let us not be weary in well doing: for in due season we shall reap, if we faint not.'*
  2. James 5:7 — *'Be patient therefore, brethren, unto the coming of the Lord. Behold, the husbandman waiteth for the precious fruit of the earth, and hath long patience for it, until he receive the early and latter rain.'*
  3. II Tim. 2:12 — *'If we suffer, we shall also reign with him: if we deny him, he also will deny us.'*
  4. Acts 20:35 — *'I have shewed you all things, how that so labouring ye ought to support the weak, and to remember the words of the Lord Jesus, how he said, It is more blessed to give than to receive.'*
  5. Luke 6:38 — *'Give, and it shall be given unto you; good measure, pressed down, and shaken together, and running over, shall men give unto your bosom. For with the same measure that ye mete withal it shall be measured to you again.'*
- D. The significant key to focus on is that according to God's Word, work precedes reward; seed planting precedes harvest; practice precedes perfection — or pain before pleasure.
  1. This has always been the law of life.
  2. And it always will be.

**XII. But what will also come as a surprise is that even though you experience pain in the pursuit of success, it will eventually become a source of pleasure.**

- A. You'll know your efforts will pay off.

- B. You'll receive a reward down range.
- C. You'll eventually reach your goal — if you're patient and endure.

**XIII. What this all boils down to is that the power of choice finds its motivation in the pleasure-pain principle.**

- A. Or, to use another word with which we're all familiar — desire.
- B. That's correct — a deep, inner burning desire.
- C. If the desire is strong enough you will have the driving determination to overcome obstacles that cause pain to reach your ultimate goal of pleasure (success).

**XIV. And how do you generate this desire?**

- A. I'd like to share a short little article with you that explains how two teenagers — a boy and a girl — created the desire to achieve some noteworthy goals.
- B. How they developed the drive to discipline themselves.
- B. Notice as we go through this article the inevitable connection between the power of choice and its relationship to the pleasure-pain principle.

## **HERE'S HOW TO BECOME AN ACHIEVER**

Jim is an ordinary teenager in many respects. Yet he's achieved extraordinary success. One glance into his room will tell you he's uniquely different. Plaques, medals and blue ribbons neatly line the walls. Trophies and high achievement awards are displayed throughout the room. There's no doubt that Jim is an achiever.

If you flip through his junior high school yearbook, you'd notice on page 93 that Jim was selected by his class as being the most likely to succeed.

Mary is also a high achiever. She's received a number of decorations and awards from school, clubs and sporting activities. Yet, like Jim, Mary has an average I.Q. and ability.

What makes these two young people so outstanding? What is this inner driving force that motivates and pushes them on? Where do they get their energy, determination and stamina?

All these questions can be answered with one simple word — desire. That's right — a plain, simple burning desire! It's this whole-hearted desire to achieve and excel that stirs them with enthusiasm and determination to succeed.

If you'd observe their day-to-day lives you would be impressed by the zeal with which they attack each new challenge and drive themselves.

Where did they get this burning desire? Was it something inherited, or did they develop it on their own?

As we will see shortly, the motivation to succeed stems largely from their own initiative and positive way of thinking.

Here's how the process works.

Thought is the basis of desire. If you hold a thought in your mind long enough, it will enhance and stimulate imagination. Imagination produces a vivid picture of the goal you would like to attain. The more you think about and envision its reality, the desire to achieve becomes sharper and stronger. One thought leads to another. Ideas and concepts start flooding into your mind. You also become attuned to useful information from things you read and what people say. As thoughts increase, your desire will intensify and propel you forward like a surfer riding the crest of a wave. Success is virtually assured as long as you keep your goal in mind and sustain your drive and desire.

This is the way Jim and Mary accomplished the many goals in their lives. An original thought for something they wanted to achieve entered their mind. They nurtured it with determined concentration until it caught fire. The momentum pushed them on. Success was just a matter of time.

You can also achieve what you want out of life if you follow the same process with dogged tenacity. It will mean, however, strict discipline and self-denial. It will mean forsaking some activities you may enjoy for the sake of a greater goal.

As a reminder, there are two cautions to keep in mind: 1) Don't try to achieve too many goals at the same time. In other words, don't spread yourself too thin. Trying to accomplish too much at once will dilute your drive, energy and desire. 2) Be sure that your goals are honorable and worthy. Don't compromise your conscience or principles on interests and things that will hurt you or harm others. Always let God's Word and His will be your guide and He will bless your efforts (Prov. 3:5-6).

Why not start today on a new adventure? Begin with something small that you can easily handle. Concentrate on it until you build a burning desire. Drive yourself to reach your goal. Then set a new one. You'll be truly amazed at what you can do!

**VI. Let's briefly review the procedures that Jim and Mary followed in creating desire and attaining their goals.**

A. We'll put them in numerical order for easy reference.

B. Steps:

1. The true basis of success is desire.
2. The basis of desire is thought.
3. Thought stirs the imagination.
4. Imagination forms and creates a vivid mental picture of the thing desired.
5. A vivid mental picture inspires concentration.
6. Concentration produces ideas, answers and solutions on how to attain the object of your desire.
7. The reality of attainment intensifies courage and determination.
8. Courage and determination motivate to action.
9. Action builds confidence with each step you take.
10. Momentum will push you forward until you reach your goal.

**VII. Getting back to our original question: Do you realize that how you use the power of choice will determine the outcome of your future?**

A. That, in a sense, your destiny lies in your own hands.

B. For example, you can choose to:

1. Look to God for help in guiding your life and making right decisions. OR: Do your own thing and ignore God completely.
2. Build Godly character and become a leader. OR: Live a wild and carefree life and suffer the consequences of being mediocre.
3. Set high personal standards and build a good reputation. OR: Go along with the crowd and allow peers to drag you down.
4. Discover and develop your hidden talents. OR: Waste your time on meaningless pursuits, such as TV, video games and fictional reading.
5. Control your moods and feelings. OR: Whine, pout and become a cry-baby.
6. Be diligent, resourceful and form good work habits. OR: Do as little as you can get by with and destroy your chances of earning a good living.
7. Determine how happy you'll be, how successful, how prosperous. OR: Blame others for your bad breaks and make excuses for your failures.
8. Determine whether you'll study hard, make good grades and get a good education. OR: Goof off, daydream and cheat yourself out of a future.
9. Choose a career and prepare yourself for it. OR: Take life easy and be willing to settle for anything that comes along.
10. Protect your health by watching your diet and getting sufficient exercise. OR: Stuff yourself with junk food and suffer from life-long illnesses and disease.
11. Learn the art of caring about others and building friendships. OR: Turn others off by being rude and inconsiderate.
12. Be responsible, dependable and trustworthy. OR: Get a reputation of being unreliable and not caring how your reactions affect others.
13. Willingly obey and respect your parents. OR: Treat them with contempt and fall under a curse from God.
14. Obey the laws and respect those in authority. OR: Defy law and order and carry the shame of a police record for the rest of your life.

**VIII. I'd now like to describe a few true-to-life circumstances you might face and ask: how would you handle them and what choices would you make:**

A. Examples:

1. Your parents are leaving for an evening out. They remind you to clean up the kitchen before turning on the TV or starting a game of Monopoly.

2. There's a big test scheduled in Algebra today. You don't think you'll do very well on it. Your mom will probably let you stay home if you tell her you aren't feeling well.
3. Your gym instructor is asking for volunteers to help several weaker students with dribbling and passing fundamentals. You are asked to work with the 'class klutz.'
4. [For the girls] One of the 'ordinary' guys in your class asks you to the Thanksgiving Dance. You are expecting 'Mr. Popular' to ask you, but he hasn't yet.
5. You want to go to the beach with friends on Sunday. You dad expects you to mow the lawn, wash the car, and weed the front flower bed. You could probably get all three jobs done in time to join the group going to the beach, but it would require going to bed early Saturday night, getting an early start Sunday morning, and working at top speed for several hours. Do you 'go for it' or complain and try to get out of the work?
6. Your diligence and hard work are earning you a reputation as a 'goodie-two-shoes' or 'teacher's pet.' You really want to be more popular and accepted by your classmates.
7. Whenever there is work to be done by your Y.O.U. group, are you eager to help or do you make excuses for not showing up?
8. You NEED several additional articles of clothing for the upcoming school year, but you know things have been really difficult for your family financially over the past six or eight months. Do you selfishly insist on Dad buying them, or get a summer job to pay for them yourself?
9. When the alarm rings in the morning, do you get right out of bed, or roll over for a 'short' snooze?
10. You break one of the rules in a game, but no one sees you. What do you do?
11. Your best friend asks you to tell a 'small' lie, or 'shade the truth' for him to keep him out of trouble.
12. One of your friends has just started taking drugs and is trying to get you to start. He keeps saying it's fun but you're scared of your parents.

**IX. In concluding our topic, I'd like to read an interesting little paper written by two former Imperial teachers: Mr. Larry Van Landuyt and Mr. Tom Lombardo.**

- A. It summarizes very powerfully the subject we've been talking about today.
- B. It's entitled: 'Choices — As You Make Them, They Make You.'

Good character is a victory — not a gift! The many decisions you make each day are shaping your character now — and your success later. You may not realize it, but each day you make hundreds, even thousands of important decisions.

The question is, are you making right, or wrong decisions? Your popularity, your abilities, your happiness, your success, your reputation, your wealth, even your 'talents' are all greatly determined by the choices you make in life.

In most cases life is a matter of CHOICE rather than chance. True, time and chance happen to all. But making proper and timely choices beginning in one's youth greatly reduces the instances and the effect of 'time and chance' or 'bad luck,' as it is often called. Most 'bad luck' isn't the result of luck at all, but of wrong or unwise choices.

Believe it or not, you can mold yourself, over a period of time, to become the following:

<i>popular or unpopular</i>	<i>educated or ignorant</i>
<i>contented or frustrated</i>	<i>organized or chaotic</i>
<i>happy or depressed</i>	<i>brave or cowardly</i>
<i>wise or foolish</i>	<i>decisive or indecisive</i>
<i>successful or a failure</i>	<i>obedient or rebellious</i>
<i>compassionate or hardhearted</i>	<i>financially stable or in debt</i>
<i>physically fit or weak and flabby</i>	<i>diligent or slothful</i>
<i>confident or fearful</i>	<i>trustworthy or deceitful</i>
<i>neat and clean or dirty</i>	<i>reliable or unreliable</i>

To a great extent, your future is in your hands. Right now, the decisions you are making can result in your future success — or failure! The choice is yours. Are you willing to fight, like a salmon struggles upstream to reach its goal, or are you content to float downstream like a dead fish?

As Thomas Edison used to say, '*Genius is one percent inspiration and ninety-nine percent perspiration.*'

You are not caught in a series of uncontrollable circumstances. YOU can determine the way you think, the way you act, the way you react, the WAY YOU ARE. Your choices, big and small, go together to make up you. As you make choices day in and day out, THEY MAKE YOU!

**X. In summary, God has given you a marvelous gift: THE POWER TO CHOOSE.**

- A. Will you use it to work hard and make something of your life?
- B. Or will you choose the easy, lazy painless route and fail?
- C. What you'll become tomorrow is determined by your choices today!

— END —

## CHAPTER 50

### **HOW TO KEEP EMPLOYEES MOTIVATED**

#### **I. One of the most important challenges we face as managers and supervisors in God's Work is that of keeping our employees motivated.**

- A. The level of their morale, the quality of their work, and the quantity of their production rests greatly on our ability to draw out the best in them.
- B. It's vitally important that we master this art and realize the immense value God places on it as a part of our management responsibilities.
- C. Note how this concept is even recognized and reinforced in the business world:
  - 1. *'Most management experts agree that motivation is the key to good productivity. The supervisor's task is to create the right atmosphere conducive to motivation, using all the resources and skills he or she possesses.'* (W.H. Weiss, Supervisor's Standard Reference Handbook, Prentice-Hall, Inc., Englewood Cliffs, N.J., p. 192.)
  - 2. *'The level of performance in your department will directly relate to the skill and effectiveness with which you stimulate and inspire your employees to excellence.'* (Ken Allen, What an Executive Should Know About Motivating His People Effectively, Dartnell Corporation, Chicago, 1975, p. 2.)
  - 3. Peter Kyne states in his book, The Go-Getter, p. 59, *'In the army, sir, esprit de corps doesn't bubble up from the bottom. It filters down from the top. An organization is what its commanding officer is — neither better nor worse.'*
- D. The Bible also alludes to this essential truth in Hebrews 10.
  - 1. Heb. 10:24 — *'And let us consider and give attentive, continuous care to watching over one another, studying how we may stir up...to love and helpful deeds and noble activities.'* (Amplified Version.)

#### **II. The title of today's lecture is: 'How To Keep Employees Motivated.'**

- A. Please note and underscore the word 'keep.'
- B. It isn't enough just to inspire our people with occasional pep talks.
- C. The goal we should aim at is to keep them excited and inspired day after day, month after month and year after year.

#### **III. But some may think:**

- A. 'Well, my employees already are motivated.'
- B. 'They work hard, are dedicated to their jobs and produce an above average quota of work every day.'
- C. 'I rarely have to correct them for substandard performance or lack of interest.'
- D. 'My employees are productive, their morale is high and we respect each other as one happy family.'
- E. 'I'd say that 85 percent of my staff is so self-motivated that they require very little of my time and attention.'
- F. 'After all, most are converted and deeply realize this is the Work of God.'
- G. 'What else can be done to inspire them to work harder and produce more on the job?'

#### **IV. First, let me explain why I feel this subject needs to be given.**

- A. Granted, all the above points may be true.
- B. But it's my observation from many years of experience that unless we recognize some inevitable pitfalls, this type of motivation will eventually wind down and evaporate.
- C. For example:
  - 1. Our employees can become bored and stagnate with the same routine over a period of time.
  - 2. We can stifle their growth and initiative if we neglect to provide them with creative challenges.
  - 3. We can hinder them from finding the niche where they can be the happiest and most productive if we never bother to give them new opportunities.
  - 4. We can obstruct greater output and production by thinking they have reached their maximum level.

- D. Yes, it's possible to assume that all is well and everyone is operating at full capacity — unless we perceive inherent dangers.
- E. Therefore, I submit, that there is a higher level of motivation than just maintaining the daily grind.
- F. For our employees to be truly enriched, fulfilled and satisfied in their jobs, there is something yet we can do.

**V. But, first, let's look at some key verses showing that God created man to be engaged in meaningful work.**

A. Scriptures:

1. Gen. 2:15 — *'And the Lord God took the man, and put him into the garden of Eden to dress it and to keep it.'*
2. John 15:2, 8, 16 — *'Every branch in me that beareth not fruit he taketh away: and every branch that beareth fruit, he purgeth it, that it may bring forth more fruit. (8) Herein is my Father glorified, that ye bear much fruit; so shall ye be my disciples. (16) Ye have not chosen me, but I have chosen you, and ordained you, that ye should go and bring forth fruit....'*
3. Eph. 2:10 — *'For we are his workmanship, created in Christ Jesus unto good works, which God hath before ordained that we should walk in them.'*
4. Luke 17:10 — *'So likewise ye, when ye shall have done all those things which are commanded you, say, We are unprofitable servants: we have done that which was our duty to do.'*
5. I Cor. 15:58 — *'Therefore, my beloved brethren, be ye stedfast, unmoveable, always abounding in the work of the Lord, forasmuch as ye know that your labour is not in vain in the Lord.'*

B. Yes, God intended for man to work productively and be an achiever.

1. The foundation of His plan and great purpose is based on this concept.
2. Our ultimate job in the Kingdom will be determined by the quantity and quality of our works.

C. One of God's greatest sources of joy and pleasure is meaningful work and activity.

1. John 5:17 — *'But Jesus answered them, My Father worketh hitherto and I work.'*
2. Rev. 4:11 — *'Thou art worthy, O Lord, to receive glory and honour and power: for thou hast created all things, and for thy pleasure they are and were created.'*

**VI. What, then, are the keys to this higher form of motivation?**

A. Let's start with the leader himself.

**1. To motivate others, you must be motivated yourself.**

- a. *'Any business responds to leadership from the top, and if management is willing to make the effort of injecting itself it can pretty well establish the attitudes it desires. People, I found, want and respond to inspiration, but that stimulation has to come with some frequency.'*  
(Stanley Marcus, Quest for the Best, The Viking Press, New York, 1979, pp. 41-42.)
- b. Charles F. Kettering taught the men working under him to enjoy their jobs....*'Whatever the method, there is no finer gift you can give than to arouse a genuine joy in work!'*  
(E.F. Wells, What An Executive Should Know About Creating His Replacement, Dartnell Corp., Chicago, 1978, p. 19.)
- c. *'The manager at the helm, whether he's president, a division manager, or a department head, creates excitement by osmosis if he's a natural enthusiast.'* (Raymond Dreyfack, What An Executive Should Know About What It Takes to Climb to the Top, Dartnell Corp., Chicago, 1982, pp. 23-24.)
- d. *'Nothing turns people off faster than the supervisor who preaches motivation, but doesn't practice what he preaches. The motivator must be motivated; this means animated, striving, realistic, energetic, and so on.'* (Training Magazine, March 1980, p. 56.)
- e. *'To effectively motivate employees the supervisor needs to set a good example. His dedication, his hard work, his conviction cannot help but be noticed and followed. Most employees will follow the supervisor's example, whether it be good or bad. If the supervisor truly wants to motivate his employees he must first motivate himself.'* (Gary Endres, MPC supervisor.)

**2. You must really care about your employees and strive to promote good morale.**

- a. They say, 'Love makes the world go round.' A little 'caring' makes the wheels of industry turn smoother and faster too....

*'As consultants to hundreds of firms, we have often been asked to advise management on coping with such things as absenteeism, lateness, loafing, and careless work. Time and again we have observed that where such personal problems abound, managers are indifferent to employees. Pay scales may be high, benefits may be lavish, but morale remains low. Management indifference is the root of the problem.'*



*'Employees feel, 'They don't care about me, so why should I care about them? Why should I work so hard?'.....*

*'Whenever you see performance or attitudes deteriorate, consider the possibility that employees think you don't care about them anymore. Show them that you do, and you may be surprised at the difference in their work.'* (Dr. Ernest Dichter, Manager/Motivator, The Economics Press, Inc., Fairfield, New Jersey, 1987.)

- b. *'Showing interest in employees and developing knowledge of their lives aids greatly in promoting good morale.*

*'People want to feel important and personally significant. Take time to know each person individually. Learn names of spouses and children; ask about families; find out about leisure activities. This personal concern will pay off in increased productivity. Personal knowledge of employees will provide clues as to what reinforcers can be used effectively in the future.*

*'Knowing your employees — their habits, worries, ambitions, touchy points and pet prides — helps you appreciate why they behave as they do.*

*'Concern shown for an employee by the supervisor will be returned in more concern by the employee for the job to be done.*

*'Good morale cannot be imposed or bought: it must be earned. It is the product of consistently high management character.*

*'Morale is the worker's emotional stance toward his work. It may be measured by the degree of satisfaction of four basic wants: a sense of security, a sense of achievement, a sense of justice, and a sense of participation.'* (Of Interest to Executives, The Royal Bank of Canada, Montreal, 1955, p. 36.)

**VII. Here, then, are the keys on how to produce a higher level of motivation among employees.**

1. Realize the most powerful form of employee motivation lies in the joy of worthwhile achievement.
  - a. Employees desire to be involved, to participate and offer meaningful contributions to the Work.
  - b. The job itself should give the worker personal incentive.
  - c. This is clearly established in the Bible.
    - (1) Eccl. 3:22 — *'Wherefore I perceive that there is nothing better, than that a man should rejoice in his own works; for that is his portion: for who shall bring him to see what shall be after him?'*
    - (2) Eccl. 5:18, 19 — *'Behold that which I have seen: it is good and comely for one to eat and to drink, and to enjoy the good of all his labour that he taketh under the sun all the days of his life, which God giveth him: for it is his portion. (19) Every man also to whom God hath given riches and wealth, and hath given him power to eat thereof, and to take his portion, and to rejoice in his labour; this is the gift of God.'*
  - d. Job satisfaction and the joy of achievement are primary motivational keys recognized by the experts in industry.
    - (1) *'Personnel experts and industrial psychologists have learned that.... the job itself is the most important motivator. Workers want jobs that give them a sense of achievement, enable them to be recognized and permit them to move up to something better after good performance. They are motivated by work that is meaningful, gives them responsibility, and lets them grow.'* (W.H. Weiss, Supervisor's Standard Reference Handbook, Prentice-Hall, Englewood Cliffs, N.J., 1980, p. 52.)
    - (2) *'A characteristic that is noticed very quickly in a motivated worker is his willingness to extend and exert himself beyond the ordinary limits. A worker who is motivated by the job itself is never a clock watcher....it is significant that the reward he desires for this extra effort is not primarily financial....To the worker motivated by his work, extra effort means extra satisfaction. A major part of the richness in his life comes from his sense of satisfaction and fulfillment in his job.'* (Anthony J. Roan, Modern Management, Part 3, Ed. 2, International Correspondence Schools, Montreal, 1971, pp. 14-15.)
  - e. Although physical rewards and benefits are of paramount importance, a simple example will illustrate that drive and motivation do not come from money and other perks by themselves.
    - (1) Example:
      - (a) *Would you be motivated and happy peeling potatoes eight hours a day, six days a week for 20 years even though offered \$1,000,000?*
      - (b) *Obviously, our workers should derive a greater sense of satisfaction from their jobs than just receiving a wage.*

2. Make sure that each employee sees the value of his job.
  - a. It's doubtful that Rolls Royce could produce a first class automobile unless each worker had a sense of pride in the final product.
  - b. The same is true with employees in God's Work.
  - c. You as the boss should make sure that each individual understands how the puzzle fits together and the intrinsic role his job plays in your overall operation.
  - d. *'The effective manager takes the time to make sure that the worker thoroughly understands where his job fits into the company's total operation. The worker then knows why his job is important and why he should take pains to do it as well as he can. It is worth mentioning here that the worker who is motivated inwardly to do a good job never has to be watched or closely supervised. A worker's own sense of pride and challenge is the most effective manager a company can possess.'* (Anthony J. Roan, Modern Management, Part 3, Edition 2, International Correspondence Schools, 1971, p. 13.)
  - e. The operation of your office is similar to the links in a chain — each one is crucial in completing the task at hand.
  - f. Remember that a watch is composed of many parts — large and small — but each one is vital for it to run efficiently and accurately.
  - g. God shows us in 1 Corinthians 12 that each employee counts no matter how insignificant and trivial his tasks may be.
    - (1) 1 Cor. 12:18-23, 25 — *'But now hath God set the members every one of them in the body, as it hath pleased him. (19) And if they were all one member, where were the body? (20) But now are they many members, yet but one body. (21) And the eye cannot say unto the hand, I have no need of thee: nor again the head to the feet, I have no need of you. (22) Nay, much more those members of the body, which seem to be more feeble, are necessary: (23) And those members of the body, which we think to be less honourable, upon these we bestow more abundant honour.... 25)...that the members should have the same care one for another.'*
3. Make each employee feel important and needed.
  - a. We as managers in God's Work should make every effort to fill this inherent desire in each of our workers.
  - b. *'If you can make people feel important, they will be more willing to cooperate, do good work, and be pleased with their job. The psychology behind this is simple — feeling important makes you look at your work as worthwhile, necessary to the company, and something not everyone can do. When you don't feel important, it's natural not to be enthusiastic about your work or anxious to get it done.... 'A good way to make a man feel important is to thank him for something he has accomplished.... [Furthermore,] the most pleasant word to a man's ears is his own name. It makes him an individual distinct and unique from others. It adds identity. So, to make a man feel important, use his name when talking to him and when talking to others about him in his presence.'* (W.H. Weiss, Supervisor's Standard Reference Handbook, Prentice-Hall, Inc., Englewood Cliffs, N.J., 1980, pp. 55.)
  - c. *'You are attracted to the person who contributes to your positive self-image. You feel a bond with that type of individual. There is an almost uncontrollable urge to do things for the person who makes one feel important....Look for the good qualities in others.'* (Robert Conklin, How To Get People To Do Things, Contemporary Books, Inc., Chicago, 1979, p. 32.)
  - d. Here are some practical ways you can heighten an employee's sense of self-worth:
    - (1) Ask his opinion on future plans, proposed changes, and suggestions for improvement.
    - (2) Write an occasional note explaining why his job is important and why his contributions are well received.
    - (3) Have private one-on-one talks in the office reinforcing the value of his or her skills.
    - (4) Occasionally stopping at someone's desk to show you are interested in what the employee is doing.
4. Give feedback, praise and recognition.
  - a. This is a duty and privilege that a manager must not neglect.
  - b. It has to do with verbal and outward commendation rather than just a passing comment.
    - (1) *...there are millions going to bed every night starving emotionally for a few words or gestures of appreciation....Studies have shown that there is more job dissatisfaction caused by lack of appreciation than all other causes combined.'* (Robert Conklin, How To Get People To Do Things, Contemporary Books, Inc., Chicago, 1979, p. 35.)

- (2) *'The need or desire for recognition is as essential to the nature of man as the need for a sense of achievement. If a man does a job exceptionally well, he wants people to know it and to recognize the fact....it has been proved time and time again that recognition is actually a stimulus to even greater production.'* (Anthony J. Roan, Modern Management, Part 3, Edition 2, International Correspondence Schools, Montreal, 1971, pp. 17-18.)
- (3) *'Research has shown that appreciation of work done is one of the most important motivators. Every individual has a desire to achieve and likes to have someone recognize that achievement. People need to feel important, regardless of how modest their position is. 'Good job performance must be noticed if it is to continue. The surest way to demotivate someone is to take him for granted.'* (Frank Goble, Excellence in Leadership, pp. 104-105.)
- (4) *'Arnold Bennett, the writer, was intrigued when a publisher he knew kept singing the praises of his secretary. One day when Bennett and the secretary were alone he asked her, 'What is the secret of this wonderful efficiency of yours? Your employer is always talking about it.'*  
*'It is not my secret,' smiled the secretary. 'It is his.' And she went on to explain that whatever duty she performed, however small it was, he never failed to acknowledge it and thank her for it. This encouraged her to give of her very best, whatever she was doing.*  
*'A few words of gratitude and encouragement do bring out the best in other people. Just give it a try and you'll see.'* (Francis Gay, Working Together, Dartnell Corporation, Chicago, 1984, p. 2.)

- c. Make it a practice to give encouragement and feedback on a regular basis so that employees will know how they're measuring up and whether they're pleasing the boss.
- d. Remember the example Christ gave in Matthew 25.

(1) Matt. 25:21 — *'His lord said unto him, Well done, thou good and faithful servant: thou hast been faithful over a few things, I will make thee ruler over many things: enter thou into the joy of thy lord.'*

#### 5. Ignite a spark of drive and ambition.

- a. This largely involves the matter of infusing confidence and incentive into the employee.
- b. Winston Churchill called it 'imputing a virtue.'
- c. It simply boils down to expressing the idea that you believe in the abilities of your people and what they can accomplish.
- d. It's recognizing their potential and inspiring them to reach higher.

e. *'My first job away from home was waiting on tables. The owner complimented my work highly. Soon he began to tell me that he could see qualities in me that were destined to carry me to large success in life. He constantly expressed great confidence in me, and what I would be able to accomplish, if I were willing to put forth the effort.*

*'I had never realized before that I possessed any abilities. But now, for the first time, I began to believe in myself. This hotel owner aroused ambition — created within me the desire to climb the ladder of success — to become an important somebody. This, of course, was vanity. But it also was ambition for accomplishment — for self-improvement. He also stimulated the will to put forth whatever effort it would require to achieve this success. He made me realize I would have to study, acquire knowledge and know-how, be industrious and exercise self-denial. It impelled me to driving effort.*

*'It is impossible to estimate the importance of this sudden arousal of ambition — this injection of an intense desire for success — this igniting of the spark of determined energy to achieve worthy accomplishment. This was the turning point of my life. There had awakened within a totally new outlook on the future....*

*'What a tragedy the vast majority of human minds cannot be given this hope — this desire — this ambitious expectation — this confidence — in their future!' (Herbert W. Armstrong, The Autobiography of Herbert W. Armstrong, Vol. 1, Worldwide Church of God, 1986, pp. 10-12.)*

f. *'Believing in your people and having confidence that they can do the work will increase their level of performance because they will attempt to live up to your expectations and be worthy of your trust.'* (W.H. Weiss, Supervisor's Standard Reference Handbook, Prentice-Hall, Englewood Cliffs, N.J., 1980, p. 192.)

#### 6. Instill initiative by giving a challenge.

- a. Human beings will accomplish a great deal more when they're inspired to stretch their abilities to the utmost.
- b. They will be motivated to think and use their minds to a higher level.
- c. Therefore, keep your employees sharp and alert by giving them challenging opportunities.

- d. *'By giving a little encouragement, and by gradually increasing the difficulty of assignments, a manager will find that most of his subordinates will rise to a surprisingly high level of action or ability. The worker who is encouraged to use his own initiative becomes involved emotionally and intellectually in the performance of his job.'* (Anthony J. Roan, Modern Management, Part 3, Edition 2, International Correspondence Schools, Montreal, 1971, p. 12.)
- e. *'Worthwhile people cannot be really content in jobs where they are not being challenged, not learning new things, not making personal progress. If you're after good results, this is a fact of life you can't afford to ignore.'* (Bits & Pieces, Vol. 13, No. 4, The Economics Press, Inc., Fairfield, N.J., April 1980, pp. 2-4.)
- f. *'Whatever you do, be careful not to underrate people. A new look may surprise you. Visualize the man or woman in a more challenging situation. What counts is not what they were capable of yesterday, but what they can do for the business today and tomorrow.'* (Bits & Pieces, Vol. 15, No. 12, The Economics Press, Inc., Fairfield, N.J., December 1982, pp. 19-20.)
- g. *'First things come first. In most successful organizations developing people heads the list. And the best way to develop them is to make them stretch a bit. The more capable your subordinates, the more they need a constant challenge to maintain their interest.'* (Bits and Pieces, Vol. 13, No. 4, The Economics Press, Inc., Fairfield, N.J., April 1980, pp. 2-4.)
- h. Examples.
- (1) Delegate a special assignment or study as a cost-saving measure.
  - (2) Ask the secretary to reorganize the files in a more efficient manner.
  - (3) Find the cause of a bottleneck in the production flow and offer solutions.
7. Set Clearly Defined Goals.
- a. Spell out your expectations in clear and simple language.
  - b. Insist on quality standards, but avoid frustrating employees with unrealistic demands.
  - c. Set quotas.
  - d. Try to break last year's record on the production line.
  - e. Set benchmarks along the way to make sure you're on target.
  - f. As a manager, take an interest, get involved, monitor progress and reinforce with encouragement.
  - g. Strive to see that major goals and objectives are clearly understood by each member of the team.
  - h. 'Goals Are Essential to Achievement'
    - (1) *'The right goal will arouse ambition. Ambition is more than mere desire. It is desire plus incentive — determination — will to achieve the desire. The right goal will be so intensely desired it will excite vigorous and determined effort. It will fire one with incentive.'* (Herbert W. Armstrong, The Seven Laws of Success, Worldwide Church of God, 1974, p. 20.)
    - (2) *'Achievement is never possible except against specific, limited, clearly defined targets, in business as well as in a service institution.'* (Peter Drucker, People and Performance — The Best of Peter Drucker on Management, Harper & Row, New York, 1977, p. 135.)
    - (3) *'To get somewhere, you must know where you're going...Planning is the road map that leads you to your destination. Motivation is the fuel that will get you there. But first, you have to have a goal...  
'There can be little joy in working aimlessly. It's debilitating. Negative attitudes and poor self-esteem fester in the frustration of purposeless labor. [However] virtually nothing on earth can stop a person with a positive attitude who has his goal clearly insight.'* (Denis Waitley and Reni L. Witt, The Joy of Working, Dodd, Mead & Co., Inc., New York, 1985, pp. 36-38.)
8. Encourage ideas and creative thinking on how to solve problems and do a better job.
- a. Solicit input and ask for suggestions on how to eliminate redundancies and increase production.
  - b. Encourage workers to examine and evaluate their individual tasks in an effort to improve efficiency.
  - c. Have them look at old procedures and techniques through new eyes.
  - d. Inspire continued creativity.
  - e. *'Good leaders expect people to think about how to do things better — they ask them for their opinions and really listen. When they have problems, they share them — everybody is expected to think.'* (Bits and Pieces, Vol. 13, No. 4, The Economics Press, Inc., New Jersey, April, 1980, pp. 2-4.)
9. Arouse pride of workmanship.
- a. Col. 3:22-23 tells us: *'Servants, obey in all things your masters according to the flesh; not with eye service, as menpleasers; but in singleness of heart, fearing God; (23) And whatsoever ye do, do it heartily, as to the Lord, and not unto men.'*
  - b. I Cor. 10:31 exhorts: *'Whether therefore ye eat, or drink, or whatsoever ye do, do all to the glory of God.'*

- c. Eccl. 9:10 states: *'Whatsoever thy hand findeth to do, do it with thy might; for there is no work, nor device, nor knowledge, nor wisdom, in the grave, whither thou goest.'*
- d. We should encourage each worker to be the best that he can be — to become an expert in his field of responsibility.
- e. Such a goal can't be accomplished overnight and we must not forfeit quality for quantity.
- f. Interestingly, this concept is recognized in industry.
- 1) Charles F. Kettering taught the men working under him to enjoy their jobs by arousing pride of workmanship. He felt that even digging a ditch could give a man a sense of accomplishment if he dug it with artistry, making a circle perfectly symmetrical, its sides handsomely vertical. (E.F. Wells, What an Executive Should Know About Creating His Replacement, Dartnell Corp., Chicago, 1978, p. 19.)
10. Prevent boredom and burnout by cross-training employees and rotating routine jobs.
- a. This will provide many benefits to the Work and to the employee alike.
- b. Makes backup available in case of sickness or an emergency.
- c. Gives your people a challenge to learn something new.
- d. Builds morale by demonstrating you care as a boss.
- e. Provides a ready replacement in the event of marriage, transfer or death.
- f. Employees will become better educated in the full scope of your operation.
- g. *'Let's face it — a great deal of work required in business is repetitive and monotonous — not very challenging or motivating to anyone. Aside from trying to do the same thing better, there's not much opportunity for a sense of personal accomplishment.'*
- 'There are ways, however, that a smart boss tries to give people even in the most repetitive jobs a greater sense of involvement. It may be by turning over to them certain decisions they can learn to handle, by asking their opinions, by having them keep an eye on certain 'special' things. Even the smallest things may help people feel they are...more important to the organization.'*
- 'People generally would like a bigger, not smaller, piece of the action. They crave greater recognition, greater responsibility, more chance to feel that what they do really matters. They want to use more, not fewer, of their talents.'*
- 'You don't have to be concerned about motivating people who get a sense of achievement from their work. They motivate themselves.'* (Management Memo, The Economics Press, Inc., Fairfield, N.J., 1980, No. 469.)
11. Provide adequate training and the opportunity to grow and develop.
- a. The focus here is job enrichment and enabling the employee to become a true professional in his special line of work.
- b. The objective is to encourage growth and development within the worker.
- c. *'Employee growth and development is one of the most important functions of management, but it is also probably one of the most over-looked, due to the fact that it is long-term in effect. It doesn't create a daily impact or crisis if we neglect it.'* (Eric Shaw, MPC Supervisor.)
- d. *'Every person wishes to develop his own potentialities as fully as possible....'Because this desire to grow and to advance as a person is so basic to the worker, it is one of the primary factors in true motivation.'* (Anthony J. Roan, Modern Management, Part 3, Ed. 2, International Correspondence Schools, Montreal, 1971, p. 19.)
- e. *'Employees, especially new ones, really appreciate a boss who will provide the necessary training needed to do the job right. One of the most frightening things an employee can face is a job which has no parameters defined, because he fears that he will certainly do something in time which will displease the boss — and usually he does.'* (Lee McGraw, Personal Correspondence writer.)
- f. *'[Provide] the best training you can — because well-trained, competent employees are your biggest asset, the backbone and most of the appendages of your business — and worth more than your physical plant.'* (Printers' Ink.)
12. Be aware of the physical needs and comfort of your staff.
- a. Comfort needs would include:
- (1) Proper lighting, temperature and ventilation.
  - (2) Clean floors, windows and restrooms.
  - (3) A properly fitted chair.
- b. Physical needs would include:
- (1) Adequate and well-maintained equipment to do the job.

- (2) Sufficient storage and work space.
- (3) Necessary office supplies.
- 13. Reward for effort, sacrifice and achievement.
  - a. This gets into the area of adequate pay and bonuses.
  - b. Of recognition for long-time service.
  - c. Occasional paid time off for those who have gone above the call of duty or who have worked extra-long hours.
  - d. Lunches or dinners for special recognition.
  - e. Flowers or gifts in commemoration of anniversaries, a new baby, etc.
- 14. Pray daily for your team and ask God to sustain their enthusiasm for His Work.
  - a. If you're praying earnestly for your people from the heart, your interest and concern for them will come through.
  - b. Your whole demeanor and attitude toward them will take on a genuine sincerity.
  - c. If you ask God for help and inspiration, you'll find that your employees will be consistently motivated.

— END —

## **CHAPTER 51**

### **MILLION-DOLLAR DAUGHTER**

#### **I. Are you a million-dollar daughter?**

- A. When your mom and dad cuddled you in their arms as a cute little bundle of joy, are you the darling girl they envisioned you'd grow up to be?
- B. Have you developed into the kind of girl that brings pleasure, delight and honor to them?

#### **II. Cite the example of Denise Garrison.**

- A. As a young girl growing up in the Church, she manifested all the wholesome qualities that would give any parent a glowing sense of pride.
  1. Respectful toward adults.
  2. Obedient to her parents and responsive to their wishes.
  3. Considerate of her friends and peers and was held in the admiration of all.
  4. She always had a smile and cheerful disposition.
  5. Hard working, creative, made top grades.
  6. Did more than was expected around the house.

#### **III. By contrast, cite the example of \_\_\_\_\_!**

- A. She was spoiled, demanding and insolent.
- B. She was lazy and expected Mom to pick up after her and do all the housework.
- C. She exuded an air of superiority and it didn't seem to bother her if she offended others.
- D. Coming from a financially secure background, everything was given to her on a silver platter.
- E. When corrected by her parents, she would pout, sulk, or likely as not berate them.

#### **IV. What, then, are the traits that aptly describe the million-dollar daughter?**

- A. Here's a profile of the kind of girl every parent dreams of.
  1. Jump out of bed when the alarm goes off.
    - a. This sets you apart as a girl who has goals, purpose and vision.
    - b. Few things are more disconcerting to your parents than to have to yell at you several times to get you up and going.
  2. Make your bed and straighten your room without having to be reminded.
    - a. This type of behavior reflects strong character and shows that you have your life under control.
    - b. Mom and Dad not only become exasperated, but also discouraged when they have to remind you time and again.
  3. Willingly help Mom with breakfast, lunches or quick morning chores.
    - a. Doing these things voluntarily adds beauty and value to your life.
    - b. Taking an extra five or ten minutes to help with the dishes, dust, put clothes in the washer, etc., means a great deal to your mother, especially if she's facing a busy day.
    - c. Remember that Mom is not your slave and that you warm her heart when you consider her feelings.
  4. It would be nice to give Dad a hug and let him know you love him.
    - a. In your dad's eyes, this little gesture adds a great deal of charm and sparkle to your character.
    - b. Don't forget that he cares for you deeply and works hard to provide for your needs and the extra things you want in life.
    - c. Make your hugs a regular habit.
  5. Discipline yourself to carry out your parents' wishes and prove that you can be trusted.
    - a. You break your parents' hearts when they catch you in deceit, telling lies or betraying their faithful training.
    - b. Commit yourself to obey their instruction, even when they're not around.
    - c. Don't cave in to the influence of your peers when they're tempting you to engage in dishonorable practices.

6. Be dependable and follow through with assigned chores and responsibilities.
  - a. Far too few teenagers in society today have this depth of character.
  - b. Yet, it's the distinguishing mark that will give you the edge in being successful.
  - c. Your mom and dad will be more inclined to help you get ahead when you've proved yourself to be trustworthy and responsible.
7. Try hard to be pleasant and sweet-natured as an on-going way of life.
  - a. For starts, avoid beginning the day in a sour, grumpy, irritable attitude.
  - b. Watch your mood swings and force yourself to be cheery and thoughtful.
  - c. Brighten the lives of your family and friends by being courteous, kind and caring.
  - d. Smile from within and it'll show on your face.
8. Set high personal standards and build good habits.
  - a. This involves a variety of daily disciplines.
    1. *Going to bed on time.*
    2. *Eating breakfast.*
    3. *Curtailling junk foods.*
    4. *Setting aside time for school assignments.*
    5. *Resisting too much TV.*
    6. *Be meticulous in hygiene and grooming.*
    7. *Get organized and fulfill your priorities.*
  - b. When you achieve high ideals, you build self-respect.
9. Make a special effort to respect and honor your parents.
  - a. Always uphold the family name and never permit yourself to disgrace it.
  - b. Realize that your parents simply cannot grant every request you make.
  - c. Some things would be harmful to you, or you may be too young to handle some situations (dating, parties, overnight trips, etc.).
  - d. Be patient and understanding when your parents make mistakes and never hold them in contempt.
  - e. Listen to their counsel and seek their advice when you face difficult problems.
  - f. Remember there's no one on earth who loves you like your parents.
  - g. When you fulfill the Fifth Commandment sincerely from the heart, you have the promise of God's special blessings.
  - h. Eph. 6:2-3 — *'Honour thy father and mother; which is the first commandment with promise; (3) That it may be well with thee, and thou mayest live long on the earth.*
10. Don't neglect study and prayer and make God a part of your daily life.
  - a. Your life will run much more smoothly and successfully when you seek to please God.
  - b. He will give you added favor and abundant blessings when you humbly and thankfully obey His Word.
  - c. Rather than losing friends, walking with God will make you more appealing and attract others to you.
  - d. Even though you're only a teenager, God will grant you special understanding to live life wisely if you diligently seek it.
  - e. Prov. 8:17 — *'I love them that love me; and those that seek me early shall find me.'*

**V. This, then, is how you become a million-dollar daughter!**

— END —



## CHAPTER 52

### **ON GIVING ADVICE — HOW TO HELP YOUR BOSS SUCCEED**

No human being has the sum total of wisdom, understanding and knowledge. Therefore God intends that men give and receive counsel. In fact, the Bible exhorts men to actively seek wise counsel and advice. The benefits of being well-advised include safety, success and wisdom.

God Himself has twenty-four elders surrounding His majestic throne in heaven (Rev. 4:4). One of the titles of Jesus Christ is Counselor (Isa 9:6). In ancient Israel, Moses established a system of counselors to aid him in his daily administration (Ex. 18:13-27). David, a man after God's own heart, had counselors — for example, Hushai and Ahithophel (II Sam. 16:16-23).

For those in authority, whose decisions affect the lives of scores, hundreds or even thousands of others, wise and trustworthy counselors becomes vitally important.

I.D.E. Thomas in his book A Word From the Wise (p. 121) wrote:

*'Concerning those who rule over us, Solomon had much advice to offer.*

*'First, rulers should secure truthful aides. 'Take away the wicked from before the king, and his throne shall be established in righteousness' (Prov. 25:5).*

*'A king, not being omniscient, is dependent most of the time on aides and advisers that surround him. He thus becomes vulnerable to their particular prejudices. Because of this, he is advised to exercise every care in the appointment of such aides, and to take swift action to remove such aides whenever their advice proves false and corrupt. Failure to take such action will damage the king's reputation, and may even bring down his house. Aides wield great power, but little responsibility. They take chances and remain unaccountable. A king has to be on guard, for his reputation is in their hands.'*

As the above quote points out, an advisor has a high degree of responsibility. Therefore, he must be deeply aware of his power to influence decisions, whether for good or evil. It is a job to be taken seriously. To be a really good and effective adviser requires the proper fear of God and strong Christian character.

Adam Clarke, in his Commentary (Volume 5, p. 156) stated:

*'The best service a subject can render his prince [superior] is to lay before him, in the plainest but most respectful manner, what the law of God requires of him, and what it forbids. How unutterable must the punishment of those be who are chaplains to princes [advisers] or to great men, and who either flatter them in their vices, or wink at their sins.'*

This paper gives practical guidelines on how to be an effective adviser.

#### **THE IDEAL CHARACTERISTICS OF A GOOD ADVISER**

##### **I. Have close daily contact with God through prayer.**

- A. Pray daily about your job, realizing you need God's help and guidance.
- B. Realize that you must be close to God in order to have the confidence that your counsel is right and sound.
- C. Pray regularly for greater wisdom and understanding in order to serve more effectively.
- D. Grind up your prayers into details asking God for specific answers to particular problems.
- E. Never try to go it alone — doing what seems right in your own eyes.
- F. Realize that the hidden influence of Satan, the world and your own carnal nature, if followed, will lead you into wrong paths.
- G. Dan. 2:14-18 — Daniel sought God in prayer before giving advice to King Nebuchadnezzar.
- H. Eph. 6:18 — *'Praying always with all prayer and supplication in the Spirit, and watching thereunto with all perseverance and supplication for all saints.'*

**II. Be led by and respond to the Holy Spirit.**

- A. Keep tuned in to God's wavelength so that your mind will attract God's thoughts, attitudes, insights and understanding.
- B. Aim to have a continuous, uninterrupted fellowship with God.
- C. Remember that God's Spirit is a source of power and strength that you can draw on instantly to guide you in everyday situations you face on the job.
- D. Understand that to be led of God's Spirit on a consistent daily basis demands total repentance, faith, surrender and self-sacrifice.
- E. Rom. 8:14 — *'For as many as are led by the Spirit of God, they are the sons of God.'*

**III. Desire above all things to glorify God and to do His will.**

- A. Strive to please God in every area of your life and to be a proper vessel in which God may dwell.
- B. Have God's Word and will constantly in your thoughts; remember that following your own devices and schemes will eventually result in humiliation and failure.
- C. To glorify God as a begotten son is a privilege of the highest magnitude.
- D. Therefore, look to God with all your heart in fulfilling your responsibilities and serving your boss.
- E. Rom. 15:5-6 — *'Now the God of patience and consolation grant you to be likeminded one toward another according to Christ Jesus: That ye may with one mind and one mouth glorify God, even the Father of our Lord Jesus Christ.'*

**IV. Keep God's Kingdom constantly in view.**

- A. This should be the center around which your life revolves.
- B. Make God's Kingdom a beacon of light that keeps you on track.
- C. Weigh your advice and counsel against this backdrop — this grand, overall perspective.
- D. Make the Kingdom the criteria by which you judge the value of every plan, thought or decision.
- E. Remember that taking your eyes off God's Kingdom is tantamount to losing contact with God.
- F. Matt. 6:33 — *'But seek ye first the kingdom of God, and his righteousness; and all these things shall be added unto you.'*

**V. Ensure that true love and concern for others is your daily guide and motivation.**

- A. Make it your primary desire to truly help and serve in a positive way all with whom you interface on the job and especially your boss.
- B. Strive to create an environment of peace, good will and friendliness.
- C. Watch constantly for opportunities to encourage and motivate others.
- D. Remember Galatians 6:10 — *'As we have therefore opportunity, let us do good unto all men, especially unto them who are of the household of faith.'*
- E. Eph. 5:2 — *'And walk in love, as Christ also hath loved us, and hath given himself for us an offering and a sacrifice to God for a sweet smelling savour.'*

**VI. Know and apply the Bible to everyday life.**

- A. Make the Bible your bedrock of knowledge — saturate your mind with its common-sense principles and living truths.
- B. Consider it your first and foremost textbook on life.
- C. Let it be a quick and ready guide — an instant reference.
- D. Before offering advice or answering a question, scan your memory for a scripture or principle that applies to the situation.
- E. Remember that for every human problem, God has provided an answer in His Word.
- F. Matt. 4:4 — *'But he answered and said, It is written, Man shall not live by bread alone, but by every word that proceedeth out of the mouth of God.'*

**VII. Be highly dependable, loyal and responsible.**

- A. Be reliable — always keep your word and any commitments you have made.
- B. Never let up when the pressure is on. If necessary, work overtime to meet a deadline or fulfill a pressing assignment.
- C. Ensure that you are always 'there' when needed so that the boss can count on you.
- D. Make any written reports of the highest caliber — thorough, accurate and complete.
- E. Prov. 20:6 — *'Most men will proclaim every one his own goodness: but a faithful man who can find?'*

**VIII. Strive for excellence in your field of endeavor or expertise.**

- A. Know your business — become a real professional.
- B. Stay up-to-date — keep abreast of trends and patterns affecting your job.

- C. Keep pertinent information at your fingertips.
- D. However, avoid being radical or overly aggressive in your attitude or actions.
- E. Combine sound-mindedness, caution and objectivity.
- F. Maintain a clear perspective — keep the big picture in view.
- G. Prov. 22:29 — *'Seest thou a man diligent in his business? he shall stand before kings; he shall not stand before mean men.'*

**IX. Practice true humility.**

- A. Avoid being a glory-hog or a thief who steals ideas from others and takes the credit.
- B. Do not advertise or grandstand your accomplishments.
- C. Don't neglect to express appreciation to peers and associates for their help and service.
- D. Acknowledge that you can't go it alone and that others deserve praise and recognition for their part in your success.
- E. Ask God daily for the power to see and overcome vanity.
- F. 1 Pet. 5:5 — *'Likewise, ye younger, submit yourselves unto the elder. Yea, all of you be subject one to another, and be clothed with humility: for God resisteth the proud, and giveth grace to the humble.'*

**X. Develop the qualities that Moses looked for in his captains.**

- A. Develop your skills, talents and abilities.
- B. Fear God.
- C. Do not compromise with truth or principles.
- D. Hate covetousness, deceit and hypocrisy.
- E. Judge righteously and fairly between kindred and strangers.
- F. Do not respect persons in judgment but listen to the small as well as the great.
- G. Do not worry what others may think.
- H. Ex. 18:21 — *'Moreover thou shalt provide out of all the people able men, such as fear God, men of truth, hating covetousness; and place such over them, to be rulers of thousands, and rulers of hundreds, rulers of fifties, and rulers of tens.'*
- I. Deut. 1:15-17 — *'So I took the chief of your tribes, wise men, and known, and made them heads over you, captains over thousands, and captains over hundreds, and captains over fifties, and captains over tens, and officers among your tribes. And I charged your judges at that time, saying, Hear the causes between your brethren, and judge righteously between every man and his brother, and the stranger that is with him. Ye shall not respect persons in judgment; but ye shall hear the small as well as the great; ye shall not be afraid of the face of man; for the judgment is God's: and the cause that is too hard for you, bring it unto me, and I will hear it.'*

**KEYS TO GIVING EFFECTIVE ADVICE**

**I. Have the right Christian approach and attitude when advising the boss.**

- A. Recognize that you are under his authority and that as a loyal and dedicated servant you should honor and submit to him.
- B. Respect his office — never become overly familiar or 'palsy-walsy' with him or take him for granted.
- C. Strive to make him successful and give him your best effort.
- D. Be willing to go the extra mile — do more than you are asked or paid to do.
- E. Serve him as though serving Christ — with humility, enthusiasm and gratitude.
- F. Eph. 6:5-7 — *'Servants, be obedient to them that are your masters according to the flesh, with fear and trembling, in singleness of your heart, as unto Christ; Not with eyeservice, as menpleasers; but as the servants of Christ, doing the will of God from the heart; With good will doing-service, as to the Lord, and not to men.'*

**II. Remember, your responsibility is to assist the boss, not to take over and do his job.**

- A. Guard against being pushy, presumptuous or having a superior attitude.
- B. Don't assume rights and authority that haven't been given.
- C. Keep within your area of responsibility. Don't branch out, wield power over others, meddle in their affairs, unofficially give orders or 'run the show.'
- D. Never work around your boss, using tricks, schemes or political chicanery to implement your ideas or get your way.
- E. Remember that your role is to serve and support the boss — not to become jealous and resentful of his position or to try to steal his honor.
- F. Don't become exalted with pride and try to undermine his position.

**III. Keep in mind your power of influence and use it wisely.**

- A. As a confidante or adviser to the boss, you play a vulnerable role.
- B. You can influence him for good or evil, for his success or failure.
- C. Your words, tone of voice and over-aggressiveness may have a greater and more far-reaching impact on him than you realize.
- D. Build and maintain a high level of trust and integrity in your working relationship by trying to be 100% reliable.
- E. In weighty matters, never advise without facts or give a precipitous viewpoint or solution.
- F. Consider the impact your counsel may have not only on your boss but on yourself and others.

**IV. Get to know your boss and adapt to his temperament, moods and sensitivities.**

- A. No two bosses will do things exactly alike or see things the same way.
- B. Because of their background, upbringing and personal experiences, each will think and act differently.
- C. Study your boss's habits and emotional make-up — note what makes him tick, what he likes and what upsets him.
- D. Get to know his value system — what he considers important, what his goals and priorities are and what he hopes to achieve.
- E. Be flexible — adapt to his personality.
- F. Don't become discouraged or feel intimidated if your boss occasionally blows up — we all have our bad days. This does not mean you are to become a 'yes-man'; it does mean using the art of tactful interchange so as to serve him in the most effective way possible.
- G. Maintain a calm and steady head under all circumstances — show that you're durable and will not fold under pressure or criticism.

**V. Choose the right time to offer advice.**

- A. Use common sense as to when to approach your boss — particularly when important decisions and weighty matters are involved.
- B. Choose a time when he's free of pressure or personal problems.
- C. Look for the time when he's happy and in a positive frame of mind so that he can give you his undivided attention.
- D. Pick a time when conditions are right and he has had few interruptions and distractions.
- E. Catch him when his mind is fresh and clear — not at the end of a long day when either of you are likely to be tired or irritable.
- F. Sharpen your powers of observation, test the air and use good judgment.
- G. Prov. 15:23 — *'...a word spoken in due season, how good is it!'*

**VI. Before challenging or questioning the boss's method, try to understand his reasons.**

- A. Don't rush in and try to change your boss's approach or the direction he's trying to take — that is the height of presumptuousness and vanity.
- B. David beseeched God, *'Keep back thy servant also from presumptuous sins; let them not have dominion over me...'* (Ps. 19:13).
- C. Realize that once the boss has explained his course of action and you see his logic, you may 'come out with egg on your face' (Prov. 18:13).
- D. The proud peacock doesn't know any better when it struts around, but for you to behave in this manner as a mature and intelligent adult is reprehensible.
- E. Work first at understanding your boss's needs, wishes and plans — then you'll have a clearer view of how to help him.

**VII. Get the facts so you will know whereof you speak.**

- A. This is a point that can't be emphasized too strongly or too often.
- B. Realize that your boss is relying on you to give him accurate information.
- C. Prepare thoroughly — seek counsel from those who are experts in their field. Remember that in the multitude of counsellors there is safety (Prov. 11:14).
- D. Double-check your information — make certain it's correct.
- E. Leave no stone unturned until all gaps are filled and all questions that may be asked are answered.
- F. Consult with all involved parties for counsel and feedback.
- G. If you have done your homework, generally the facts will speak for themselves.
- H. Remember Prov. 25:19 — *'Confidence in an unfaithful man in time of trouble is like a broken tooth, and a foot out of joint.'*

**VIII. Always be prepared with written, backup material in case it is called for.**

- A. Writing down facts will help you to thoroughly think them out and organize them the most logically.
- B. It allows your boss to have a permanent record of what you discussed with him. He can go back, re-examining the details before making a final decision.
- C. A written memo is also evidence of your efforts and integrity, should they ever be questioned.
- D. It can also be referred to retrospectively, for the purpose of follow-up.

**IX. While gathering and organizing information, periodically update your boss of your progress.**

- A. This can be done orally or in memo form.
- B. Mention what you have come up with so far and what steps you plan to take next.
- C. Regularly get the boss's feedback or direction for follow-up.
- D. This will enable you to stay on target and help your boss to think through the facts gathered so far.
- E. At the same time you fortify your value as a faithful and responsible servant.

**X. Present information in an easy-to-follow and well-organized manner.**

- A. Try to present your case in such a way that the answer is obvious or that the facts speak for themselves.
- B. Be concise — repeat key points or proofs for emphasis.
- C. Anticipate questions and objections that may be raised and have ready answers.
- D. Make sure that your boss understands your input — use clear transitions and tie things together.
- E. Remember that what is not clear can cause confusion and is subject to misunderstanding, the consequences of which can be costly.
- F. Don't just try to sell your 'baby' or 'pet theory'; present the best and well-thought-out idea that will benefit all.

**XI. Give a complete picture — present all sides of the issue.**

- A. Don't just present a ready-made or one-sided answer but give a complete overview.
- B. Show the boss the pros and cons — advantages and dangers — but allow your boss to draw his own conclusions.
- C. If he wants your opinion, be prepared to express your reasons.
- D. Do more than just give an off-the-cuff answer — show that you've considered all angles and have weighed carefully every detail.
- E. You might say, 'I would do it this way, for these reasons...'

**XII. Always be honest and truthful.**

- A. For your boss to trust your word and judgment is one of the greatest compliments he could pay.
- B. To be an effective and trustworthy aide, you must be honest even if it means being unpopular.
- C. Express your feelings from the heart — humbly, openly, sincerely and tactfully.
- D. Tell the truth even if the information is unpleasant.
- E. Give him all the information you have or can find on a project. Don't hide some of the facts or try to deceive him.
- F. Withholding needed information may lead to an even more unpleasant situation when it causes your superior to make a bad decision.
- G. Your boss may perceive that you do not enjoy giving this type of information, but he will respect you for your honesty.
- H. Preserve your integrity at all costs, for if you lose it, your usefulness as an adviser has ended.

**XIII. Use God's form of psychology.**

- A. Put your ideas in such a way that they become his ideas.
- B. Suggest, ask questions, get your boss thinking about ideas or approaches he may have never considered.
- C. Stimulate his mind, arouse his curiosity, plant the seeds so that he will want to take the ball and run with it.
- D. Stress the pluses, demonstrate the advantages — perhaps show him how others are already using these ideas and principles successfully.
- E. Remember Prov. 25:11 — 'A word fitly spoken is like apples of gold in pictures of silver.'
- F. Avoid the impression that you've hatched out a 'brilliant brainstorm' — thus calling attention to yourself and exposing your vanity.
- G. Do not be wise in your own conceit (Prov. 26:12).
- H. If for no other reason, the boss may reject your ideas in order to keep you in line.

**XIV. Use tact and wisdom when giving advice.**

- A. The calm, mild and mature approach is best if the atmosphere is conservative or calls for caution.
- B. Try to avoid language that is incriminating; put everyone at ease — work at removing barriers.
- C. Don't come across as a know-it-all or one who enjoys using others as the brunt of your jokes.
- D. Strive to win the cooperation and good will of all by hearing out their ideas and viewpoints.
- E. Apply Prov. 15:2 — *'The tongue of the wise useth knowledge aright: but the mouth of fools poureth out foolishness.'*

**XV. Give advice in private — unless you're in a group discussion.**

- A. In presenting matters that you've thoroughly researched, it's better not to have others present who are unfamiliar with the facts — they will complicate or hinder the decision by raising already answered questions.
- B. This does not mean to avoid what others may say for fear of being challenged or shot out of the saddle.
- C. Common sense dictates that the fewer people present, the more freely your boss can think and evaluate the facts.
- D. However, this presupposes that you have the integrity and professional courtesy to consult with all involved before presenting ideas that may affect their lives or the welfare of the organization.

**XVI. When your boss introduces a subject, don't go off in a thousand directions.**

- A. Keep on target, try to avoid bringing up unrelated matters or details.
- B. To interrupt a discussion by introducing side issues, criticisms or judgmental remarks is not only rude, but counterproductive.
- C. Be interested in your boss's problem — get on his wavelength.
- D. Your involvement and interest will enable you to give your boss better advice and thereby help him find an answer.
- E. Remember that your boss needs your help — not clever quips or arguments.

**XVII. Keep your emotions under control — especially in an open give-and-take discussion.**

- A. In a brainstorming situation, it's only natural to attack an idea or suggestion you don't like or strongly disagree with.
- B. Feelings can heat up. Remember Prov. 25:28 — *'He that hath no rule over his own spirit is like a city that is broken down, and without walls.'*
- C. Remember that your boss is looking for ideas and solutions — everyone should be allowed to express his views.
- D. The boss is in a better position to know what he wants, or how to evaluate the worth of a suggestion.
- E. Don't stifle a free give-and-take situation with ridicule, sarcasm, personal putdowns or intimidation.
- F. Out of twenty ideas offered, only one may be of value — but it may take twenty to find the one that works.

**XVIII. Recognize when it is better to present your input or viewpoint in writing.**

- A. Realize there are times when you can communicate better by writing than orally.
- B. This may be when the issue is very complex and many factors are involved.
- C. When figures and statistics are important to the decision, tables or graphs can be most effective.
- D. When your boss is extra-busy, it may be a good idea to present your thoughts in a memo, which he can study as time allows.

**XIX. Be team-oriented — build up and give credit to others where due.**

- A. Think in terms of helping to build up and edify everyone in the organization.
- B. Realize that on the human plane, people — employees, fellow workers, associates — are your boss's greatest asset and most important resource.
- C. Try to be fair and concerned for all, sincerely desiring to see them succeed.
- D. Praise them to the boss and boost morale — call his attention to their special contributions and creative efforts.
- E. Show empathy and regard for their needs and well-being when speaking to the boss on their behalf.
- F. Keep in mind, however, that the goals of your boss or the organization must take precedent and never be minimized or subjugated to the whims of complaining employees.

**XX. Before presenting faulty, premature or incriminating evidence about others to the boss, make sure you have the facts.**

- A. Don't rush to the boss with every little insinuation, innuendo or tidbit of gossip.
- B. As far as possible and within your realm of responsibility, check out the validity of the story.
- C. Avoid upsetting the boss with a rumor that has no real basis in fact.
- D. Don't be a tattletale — yet, don't withhold damaging information you know to be true.
- E. You will lose credibility and create distrust if your rumor-mongering proves false.
- F. Remember Prov. 18:13 — 'He that answereth a matter before he heareth it, it is folly and shame unto him.'

**XXI. If in doubt about a rumor, suggest a fair and honest investigation.**

- A. You have the responsibility to protect the name and reputation of all with whom you work.
- B. Think of how you would like to be treated if roles were reversed.
- C. You'll win the respect and admiration of everyone, including your boss, if you show largeness of heart and a sincere desire to protect and uphold the good names of others.
- D. Don't give way to evil forces by perpetuating slander on flimsy evidence.

**XXII. Jog the boss's memory about things he may have forgotten.**

- A. Think of yourself as a 'backup memory' in case your boss forgets.
- B. Jot down dates, deadlines, commitments, etc. so you'll remember.
- C. Keep track — within your realm. Check on progress.
- D. Be sure to always come across as being helpful and not critical.

**XXIII. Encourage and reinforce the boss's confidence when necessary.**

- A. Things can go wrong — unexpected trials and events have a way of intruding into his life and plans.
- B. Peers and associates can become critical, enemies from without harass and malign.
- C. Your boss is vulnerable — he's human and subject to the stresses and strains of life like anyone else.
- D. Usually, however, because he's the boss — the responsibility he shoulders is much greater than that of the average 'Joe Blow.'
- E. At times he will want to throw in the towel and quit.
- F. It's during these dark moments that he needs a lift and positive reinforcement.
- G. Get his mind back on track by reminding him of his past achievements and successes.
- H. Infuse him with hope and courage — and remind him that with the help of God he cannot fail.

**XXIV. Pray for humility and remind yourself daily of what you are — a simple servant.**

- A. Be ever watchful of the tendency to become puffed up with vanity or an attitude of self-will.
- B. Restrain the urge to be insistent, independent or to do things the way you want.
- C. Remember that pride and lack of submission are displeasing to God (Jas. 4:6).
- D. Pray for a submissive and willing spirit — be responsive and obedient.

**WHAT NOT TO DO WHEN GIVING ADVICE**

**I. Don't try to manipulate your boss to get what you want**

- A. Never use your close relationship to secure special favors, gain recognition or receive promotion.
- B. This puts your boss in an awkward position and will strain the relationship — he will eventually recognize that you are using him.
- C. Consequently, he may begin looking to others for counsel resulting in you being put more and more out of the picture.
- D. Remember that getting the breaks through manipulating your boss will likely result in quick demise because your qualifications will not match your responsibilities.
- E. Instead, keep a humble attitude and let your good works speak for themselves.
- F. Work on improving yourself so that you will be ready for a higher position when one is opened up to you.

**II. Don't try to flatter and make points with the boss.**

- A. Realize that flattery is falsehood — it is lying — and as such breaks the Ninth Commandment.
- B. Excessive compliments or false praise are not going to be of benefit to you, your boss or the organization (Prov. 26:28).
- C. David considered flatterers his enemies (Ps. 5:8) and asked that God 'let them fall by their own counsels' (vs. 10).
- D. Your boss is interested in good, productive ideas that will help the organization, not in flattery which is vain and helps no one.

**III. Don't think in terms of self-preservation or 'what I can get out of it.'**

- A. Don't give or withhold information simply to preserve your position.
- B. This selfish, narrow-minded approach may result in your boss making a poor decision that will adversely affect the entire organization, including you.
- C. If possible, try to refrain from giving advice in a situation where you stand to benefit personally — bow out due to a conflict of interest, knowing that you will be tempted to give biased advice.
- D. If you are unable to avoid this type of situation, be totally up front with the boss about your dilemma so that he can take this into account. Then go on to advise him as neutrally as you possibly can.

**IV. Don't allow personal prejudice, envy or pride to reject others' ideas.**

- A. Refrain from judging a person's idea by his status, rank or background.
- B. Avoid a tendency to ignore input from younger members of the team — there is no reason why it can't be valuable.
- C. Never elevate your ideas, intimidate others or 'drop names' because of your position.
- D. Remember that to show partiality or to have respect of persons is hurtful and unfair to others (Prov. 28:21).
- E. Think through each idea, logically and rationally, irrespective of who gave it.

**V. Don't use sarcasm, put downs or intimidation in a group situation.**

- A. Such practice reflects immaturity, rudeness and a lack of godly character.
- B. Any cutting remarks will quickly stifle discussion and prove counterproductive.
- C. Ridicule or other expressions of contempt shows lack of love or concern for others.
- D. By elevating yourself you will soon lose your boss's respect as well as that of your fellow employees.

**VI. Don't give advice in order to get even or harm someone who may have done you an injustice.**

- A. Strive to be fair and impartial when your advice will affect someone with whom you may have had a conflict in the past — never allow personality conflicts to color your recommendations.
- B. Forget the past. The inner bitterness that results from holding a grudge will hurt you more than anyone else.
- C. Matt. 6:14-15 — *'For if ye forgive men their trespasses, your heavenly Father will also forgive you: But if you forgive not men their trespasses, neither will your Father forgive your trespasses.'*
- D. Carefully examine your motives before making recommendations.
- E. Forebear giving advice in a situation where you feel that you cannot remain neutral, rather than presenting tainted and therefore harmful advice.

**VII. Don't be afraid to say 'I don't know.'**

- A. Never give information you are not certain of.
- B. Your motive behind coming up with any sort of an answer when you don't have a good one is probably self-protection or vanity.
- C. Your employer will respect you more for admitting that you don't know the answer than for giving him erroneous information that will cause problems later.
- D. Remember that decisions based on incorrect input can be very damaging to those directly affected by the decision as well. As the reputation of your organization, boss and yourself.

**VIII. Don't present just problems, but offer solutions.**

- A. Your role as an adviser is to present the boss with information that would otherwise be too time-consuming for him to gather personally.
- B. Think of all the possible alternatives to the problem — and then offer the best options.
- C. Point out the pros and cons of each suggestion, trying not to show partiality, unless one is obviously the best solution.
- D. Let your boss select and decide which is the best. Always keep in mind that your boss has asked you to advise him, not make decisions for him.

**IX. Don't put pressure on your boss to accept your advice or decide the way you think best.**

- A. Don't try to hardsell your idea by being pushy or presumptuously this will only tend to irritate and make your boss less receptive.
- B. Keep calm and logical, remaining open to any feedback your boss may give.
- C. Remember that your boss is more likely to understand the ramifications of his decision than you are.
- D. Avoid repetition — it will make you seem insistent. Present your thoughts clearly the first time around. (If your boss does not understand something, he will ask.)



- E. Don't pressure your boss into making a decision before he is ready to make it — a rushed decision is likely to be wrong.
- F. Your impatience will soon become annoying and may also cause you to appear immature. Patience (also called longsuffering) is one of the fruits of the Spirit (Gal. 5:22).
- G. Don't use phrases like 'this must be done' or 'it cannot wait' — these sound as though you are giving orders, not advice.
- H. Even if your boss makes an error in judgment, he certainly does not want to be reminded of it by an employee chiming in with a childish 'I told you so.'

**X. Don't get upset if your advice is not taken.**

- A. Bear in mind that the boss is in charge and the ultimate decision rests with him.
- B. He must make the decision he feels is best because of being held responsible for it.
- C. Realize that even if your advice is not taken, you have served your boss by helping him understand more about a decision than he would have without your counsel. (Don't forget that he is in a position to see more of the angles than you are.)
- D. Reacting emotionally if your advice is not taken will only cause your boss to hesitate asking you for advice in the future.
- E. Just because your boss has not followed your advice does not mean he thinks less highly of you than before.
- F. No matter what the final decision, submit to it, remembering Eph. 6:5 — '*Servants, [employees], be obedient to them that are your masters [bosses] according to the flesh, with fear and trembling, in singleness of your heart, as unto Christ.*'

— END —



## **CHAPTER 53**

### **PARENTS: SHOW YOUR TEENAGERS YOU CARE**

It is Monday morning at the local high school in a midwestern town. As 15-year-old Susie walks to her locker, she is surrounded by her jubilant friends. They are all excited about the weekend just past. 'Oh, Susie, you should have been at the football game Friday night!' they exclaimed. 'We won! And the party afterwards — it was a real blast. WOW — some really neat guys were there from out of town!'

Distraught and depressed, Susie strolls to her first period class. 'Why is my life so dull?' she ponders. 'Why can't I have an exciting life like my friends? I don't want to break God's Sabbath, or go out with guys in the world, but Mom and Dad don't seem to understand that I need recreation and excitement. Since we came into the Church, our lives have become so dry, meaningless and boring. We seldom do anything as a family, and Mom and Dad don't want to bother taking me and my brothers to Church socials.'

#### **Parents Have Great Responsibility**

The above experience is not an uncommon scene in God's Church. Unknown to many parents, their teenagers harbor deep resentment and bitterness from being deprived of a normal life and regular social opportunities. Thus, some teenagers have negative attitudes toward the church, not because it's at fault, but because Mother and Dad have neglected their responsibilities.

#### **Dual Role of Parents**

Mark well this fact: whether or not our teenagers stay in the Church and remain true to God's way depends largely on how well we present God's Truth to them and relate it's benefits to their lives.

Because the world offers such tantalizing fun, frolic and glitter, our children are naturally drawn to its perverted influence. Therefore, we have a double responsibility of not only pointing out to them the evil of Satan's society, but also of providing the kind of wholesome activities that properly represent the BETTER way of God.

Every father knows that it is his duty to supply the basic necessities of life for his children — food, clothing and shelter. Likewise, every mother knows that she's responsible for providing nutritious meals, clean clothes, and a neat, attractive home. But, how many parents realize that in addition to providing these basic needs, they are also accountable to God for their children's social life — A RESPONSIBILITY EQUALLY AS IMPORTANT. Too many parents seem to have either neglected or overlooked this vital role. Thus, their kids may have become self-conscious, social misfits, lacking poise and confidence — and certainly lacking proper, healthy respect for God and the Church. '*Fathers, stop exasperating your children, so as to keep them from losing heart*' (Col. 3:21). (Williams Translation.)

#### **A Sacred Trust**

The apostle Paul states in I Timothy 5:8, '*But if any provide not for his own, and specially for those of his own house, he hath denied the faith, and is worse than an infidel.*' While this verse basically means caring for the physical needs of a man's family, in principle it also means providing for their social, cultural and spiritual development. God wants our teenagers to grow up as intelligent, balanced and well-adjusted men and women. Therefore, He levies on us as parents the sacred trust of providing a rich and fulfilling life for them so they become responsible individuals and an attractive light to the world. '*And, ye fathers, provoke not your children to wrath: but bring them up in the nurture and admonition of the Lord*' (Ephesians 6:4).

#### **It Isn't Too Late to Change**

Some parents reason that because their children were already teenagers when they were called into God's Church, there is little they can do to win them over to God's way. Others who have been in the Church for many years may not realize they are about to lose their teenagers to the world

because they have been robbed of fun and excitement. It's time to awaken to the seriousness of your responsibilities and realize it's NEVER TOO LATE to change! You must understand that teenagers have natural social drives which cry out for fulfillment. Therefore, working with your teenagers should not be looked upon as a drudgery or burden or an impossible task, but as a wonderful new CHALLENGE. Granted, changing old patterns and approaches may require much sacrifice, time and prayer, but the end result will be abundantly worth it!

### **Where To Begin**

You need to start by building a new relationship with your teenagers. This means sitting down with them and having a heart-to-heart talk. You might begin by reading and discussing this article with them and telling them you are making a new commitment as parents. Taking the initiative may seem awkward and embarrassing at first. But it's necessary to break the ice.

Have a round-table discussion, draw them out, and get them to talk about their feelings. Don't criticize or react negatively when they are honest. You want to know how they really think and feel about family life without fear of rejection or recrimination. You will want to get their total input as to how the situation in your home can be improved. Ask for suggestions on what activities they'd like to have. Stress the need to be fair-minded, but encourage open give-and-take.

### **Plan Group Socials**

In these family discussions — of which there should be many — you and your children should plan small group activities with other teenagers in the Church. Include both boys and girls so that they have the opportunity to interact with the opposite sex in a proper wholesome environment. Remember, we're not advocating single dating. Nor do we encourage building cliques. It is important, therefore, for your children to be exposed to a variety of friends. The purpose for these activities is to give your young boys and girls an outlet in order to broaden their horizons, and to build their social skills.

### **Suggested Activities**

Listed below are a number of ideas that you might work into your schedule as time, money and opportunity permit. These are activities that you personally can plan so as not to depend solely on the Church to fulfill your teenagers' social needs.

#### **• SATURDAY NIGHT PARTIES**

To minimize transportation problems, and the soaring costs of gasoline, this would be an ideal time to plan get-togethers. Thus, those who live in distant areas could plan to stay over from the Sabbath. Some types of activities you might consider are: card games, parlor games (Monopoly, Careers, Risk, etc.), sing-alongs, Bunco, Spoons, Charades, or limited dancing. Serve simple refreshments such as punch, popcorn and cookies, or let the guests chip in to help cut costs.

It is necessary to maintain proper supervision, but don't let your presence dominate the atmosphere. If the kids invite you to take part in the action, by all means do so — in fun and courtesy. But allow the kids to be themselves.

Occasionally, invite an out-of-town family with similar age children to spend the night. You could have a potluck dinner. Plan something special for the evening.

After you've approved a given activity, allow the kids to do most of the planning and preparation. With most teenagers, anticipation is just as meaningful as the activity itself. Whatever the case, lend your support.

#### **• SPORTS & GAMES**

This category could involve dozens of possibilities. You and your teenagers may want to compile your own list in addition to the suggestions that follow: volleyball, softball, croquet, basketball, badminton, soccer, dodgeball, four-square, etc. (If you don't have space in your backyard or immediate neighborhood for these games, check out a nearby park or school.)

Again, the emphasis is on group involvement so as to give your sons and daughters an opportunity for social mixing. Your direct participation in this type of outing may be especially helpful in bridging the gap between parents and youngsters.

## • **MISCELLANEOUS ACTIVITIES**

Due to obvious factors of distance, time and expense, the following outings can only be held occasionally. But they are types of experiences that should be included somewhere in your calendar of events: Beach party, hiking trip to the mountains, overnight camping trip, all-day picnic, zoo, amusement park, etc.

Occasionally take in a special movie, play, concert, ice capades, museum, sightseeing, art gallery, skating, etc.

## • **SUPPORT CHURCH ACTIVITIES FOR THE TEENS**

Throughout the year the Church will have several Y.O.U. functions. Make it a point to see that your children attend, if at all possible. Share transportation with other families.

Volunteer to chaperone occasionally, if needed. Let your kids know that you really care and are concerned about their happiness and welfare.

### **Plan Carefully**

All the above suggestions may seem overwhelming and financially out-of-reach, but with careful planning and forethought a workable solution can be found.

If all parents in the Church were to cooperate and mutually share these responsibilities, no one family would need to suffer. Suppose Susie had 8-12 Church friends over for a Saturday night party. In turn, if the parents of each of these invited Susie for an activity, you can see that no hardship would be imposed on anyone too frequently.

To finance some of these more expensive outings, several children could launch a fund-raising activity. In all fairness, the teenagers should be made aware of the needs of the entire family and not make unreasonable or selfish demands.

### **Have Regular Talks**

As mentioned earlier, it's imperative to have frequent talks with your teens in these crucial, formative years. It is vital to keep the lines of communication open in order to build a close family relationship. Hopefully your love and endearment will grow so strong that your children will want to come to you with all their personal problems and not feel compelled to seek the counsel of their peers. Be kind, patient and empathetic when they approach you with their hangups, fears and frustrations. Be a good listener — don't rush in with premature advice until you've heard their story.

Treat them with respect — and as individuals. Consider their feelings. Be generous with praise and compliments in those areas where they are making progress. Reinforce their good behavior by pointing out their strengths and successes. Gently correct and fine-tune their weaknesses. For example, if a son or daughter is expressing a bad attitude in a sports activity, or pouting when losing a game, bring this out during one of your talk sessions. Continually encourage them to venture out socially in order to grow in confidence, culture and self-esteem. Teenagers need exposure and experience to round out their lives.

The more opportunities kids have to interrelate with other teens, particularly the opposite sex, the more well adjusted they will be as youngsters and adults.

By the time they reach the age of dating, they will have become experienced in knowing how to conduct themselves in most situations in a mature and responsible manner.

### **Don't Delay**

In conclusion, it's important to emphasize the seriousness of the charge that God has placed on us as dutiful, loving parents. It is incumbent on us to present God's Truth in the most APPEALING way possible. Whether or not our teenagers survive the pressures of this world and respond to God's call, may very well depend on how effectively we fulfill our role. Let's resolve to prove to our teenagers that we really care.'

— END —



## CHAPTER 54

### **PRINCIPLES OF GOAL-SETTING**

#### **Step 1. Recognize that God has predetermined your two most important goals.**

##### **A. To Enter the Kingdom of God.**

1. This should be your master motive of life.
2. Every other goal, pursuit and endeavor should center around this grand and noble purpose.

##### **B. To fulfill your calling and role as a woman.**

1. Nothing you do will glorify God more and bring Him greater happiness than to reach your highest potential as a woman.
2. Nothing you do can clothe you with greater honor and beauty than to be the kind of person God intended.
3. You should make this goal your second priority and embark on a special study to learn what God's description of a virtuous woman truly is.

#### **Step 2. Decide what additional goals you want out of life.**

##### **A. Nail these down and get specific.**

1. Marriage
2. Career
3. Higher education
4. Travel opportunities
5. Laying a more complete foundation before marriage
6. Etc.

##### **B. Unless you identify your goals, you will scatter your efforts over a broad area and make little progress.**

#### **Step 3. Separate your goals into three main categories.**

##### **A. Short-range (1-6 months)**

1. Losing weight
2. Breaking a bad habit
3. Clearing up complexion
4. Improving grades
5. Completing assignments on time

##### **B. Intermediate (6 mos. - 1 year)**

1. Improving personality
2. Broadening your perspective, experiences and outlook on life.
  - a. Attending cultural functions.
  - b. Learning to play a musical instrument.
  - c. Taking up a new sport.
  - d. Writing a short story.
  - e. Reading books you've intended to get to.
  - f. Learning a new hobby.

##### **C. Long-range (1 - 5 years)**

1. Marriage
2. Career
  - a. Teacher
  - b. Secretary
  - c. Fashion designer
3. Becoming outstanding in some particular area.

**Step 4. Explicitly define and commit your goals to writing.**

- A. Set a deadline.
  - 1. This will give you motivation.
  - 2. Allow no other interest to get in the way.
- B. Place your goals in a strategic location so they can be reviewed several times a day.
  - 1. On the bathroom mirror.
  - 2. On your desk or the wall above it.
  - 3. On the refrigerator door.

**Step 5. Tie your goals together so they interrelate.**

- A. Your goals should be so clearly laid out that each aids you in accomplishing the other.
- B. Examples:
  - 1. You want to lose weight — why?  
*Answer: To enable you to grow in stature as a gracious and charming woman.*
  - 2. You're taking several AC classes — why?  
*Answer: To achieve your two primary goals.*
- C. If you do not see a clear relationship between your goals, the tendency is to become unbalanced and spend too much time on minor objectives — or on those goals which are more pleasurable to you.

**Step 6. Determine how much extra time remains after all your essential duties are tallied.**

- A. You cannot make appreciable growth unless you devote a portion of your schedule to this end.
- B. It's vitally important then to know how your time is organized and spent.
- C. Make out a schedule of essential daily duties.
  - 1. Prayer and Bible study.
  - 2. Grooming and related responsibilities
  - 3. Classes
  - 4. Job
  - 5. Class preparation and study time
  - 6. Eating and exercise
  - 7. Sleep
  - 8. Dating and social life
- D. This exercise will enable you to determine how much free time you have left for other goals.

**Step 7. Assign a portion of your free time each day or week to your overall program of goals.**

- A. Arrange a workable and feasible time table.
- B. You control your schedule — don't let it control you.
- C. Discipline yourself and be the master of your own destiny.

**Step 8. Recommit your life to your goals daily.**

- A. As said earlier, review your goals several times each day.
- B. Drill them into your mind until they become crystal clear.
- C. See yourself as having already reached them.
- D. Determine that once you set your hand to the plow, you will march forward and refuse to look back.
- E. Burn all bridges behind you and move steadily and confidently forward.
- F. A daily review and recommitment of your goals serves many purposes:
  - 1. *It gives you a sense of what's important in life.*
  - 2. *It keeps you on target.*
  - 3. *It gives you motivation.*
  - 4. *It serves as a check-list to see how you are progressing.*
  - 5. *It will keep you in tune to your environment in looking for answers, aids, helps, etc., in achieving your goals.*



**GENERAL PRINCIPLES TO KEEP IN MIND:**

- A. Incorporate as many of your goals as possible into everyday life.
1. Becoming a gracious and charming person.
  2. Developing inner poise, confidence and friendship.
  3. Let your goals become your life.
- B. Begin a crash program of overcoming and self-mastery.
1. Scrape off the veneer and really get to know yourself.
  2. Attack your most serious and urgent problems first.
- C. Learn to recognize vanity.
1. In your facial expression and posture.
  2. In the expression of personal habits, moods and temperament.
  3. In calling attention to yourself by telling others what you've accomplished and what a nice person you are.
  4. In a 'glorified self-image' you try to portray.
- D. Start practicing feminine leadership by learning to be responsive and submissive.
1. A true feminine leader is motivated by a deep and abiding love for fellowman.
  2. She does not seek their applause or court their favor for selfish reasons. Instead she seeks their happiness, well-being and success.
  3. If you are practicing a God-fearing example, the positive fruits of character will flow from your life and convince others you are sincere. They will then be inspired to follow you.
- E. Start producing.
1. Don't wait for the big opportunities to come — start now in everyday small things.
  2. Become aware of people around you and look for things to do to give them pleasure.
  3. 'DO IT NOW' — drill this motto into your mind and your growth will soar.
  4. Start making use of the little wasted moments.
  5. Once you have inculcated the attitude of serving or producing in everyday small things, the pattern will carry over into the major areas of life.
- F. Start responding to suggestions for improvement and making wholesale changes in your life.
1. The weaknesses you allow to remain will block you from reaching your higher goals.
  2. Be it ever so painful — act on correction.
- G. Study the lives of the top flight women in God's Church.
1. Observe their behavior and analyze what makes them tick.
  2. Study their attitudes and approaches to life.
  3. Determine why they are calm and gracious and the reasons they've attained success.
- H. Start keeping a personal notebook of ideas.
1. This will prove to be an invaluable aid to you later.
  2. Be alert for any valuable ideas, quotes and quips you may hear throughout the week.
  3. By keeping alert for ideas, you will not only amass a wealth of knowledge, but you will also develop the power of concentration, discrimination and the ability to listen.

-END-



## **CHAPTER 55**

### **PRINCIPLES OF LEADERSHIP**

#### **I. I've been asked to speak to you today on the 'Principles of Leadership.'**

- A. Probably most of you are thinking, 'Oh, no. We've got to sit through another boring lecture on how to become a leader.'
- B. You're likely asking, 'What's he going to say that I haven't heard a thousand times already?'
- C. 'We hear leadership talked about in sermons, Y.O.U. Bible studies, church literature, from Mom and Dad and school counselors.'
- D. 'Why is it necessary to cover the same old stuff again?'

#### **II. Before you tune me out and let your mind wander onto other things, I'd like to address a facet of leadership you may not have considered before.**

- A. It's another side of this vitally important subject that will have an impact on the rest of your life.
- B. It will determine whether you find your hopes and dreams or settle into mediocrity and second best.

#### **III. First, let's discuss some misconceptions about leadership**

- A. When you think of a leader, most of you picture individuals who occupy prominent positions of influence and authority, such as:
  - 1. Politicians, government officials, law enforcement agencies.
  - 2. Corporate executives.
  - 3. Professional athletes.
  - 4. Ministers and church officials.
  - 5. College administrators.
  - 6. Class officers.
  - 7. Y.O.U. officers.
- B. In other words, you normally think of leaders as the cream of the crop of society or the top five percent.
  - 1. A select group of people you could never qualify to be a part of.
  - 2. A unique class totally beyond your reach.
- C. But the kind of leadership I'll be discussing involves a much broader spectrum of people.
  - 1. This facet of leadership is easily within your grasp.
  - 2. It's the kind that will enhance the quality of your life and increase the level of your respectability.

#### **IV. I know that for some of you, the idea of becoming a leader may be a giant turn-off or a repulsive thought in your mind.**

- A. For example:
  - 1. You may sometimes think those in leadership positions in the Church are 'square' or 'holier than thou' because they're always doing what is right.
  - 2. Some in leadership roles become cocky and arrogant and make themselves appear superior to others.
  - 3. Some people misuse authority and put a bad light on leadership in general.
  - 4. You may think that a leader has to stand alone and speak up when the right thing is not always popular.
  - 5. Young women in the Church particularly have difficulty relating the concept of femininity with leadership.
- B. In other words, because the word leadership connotes a negative meaning, some of you may find it more comfortable to blend in with the crowd and avoid the stigma of ridicule and rejection by your peers.

**V. With this background in mind, let us explore another new approach to leadership.**

- A. Keep in mind that the type of leadership we'll be discussing does not necessarily mean having a position of authority or power over others.
- B. It does not mean occupying the chief seat, being in the spotlight or having the right to give orders.
- C. It does not mean being appointed to an office or being given a title.
- D. This brand of leadership does not mean just being popular, the life of the party or being liked by other people.
- E. It most assuredly does not mean assuming a temporary position that may fade from view after the tenure of office is up.
  - 1. Such as a politician, athlete or actor who loses popularity.
  - 2. Or any position of influence that is appointed for a short duration.

**VI. No, the kind of leadership I have in mind has to do with developing the aptitudes and inner qualities of character that will enable you to reach your highest potential and to be the best you can be.**

- A. It has to do with just being you — daring to be unique.
- B. It has to do with becoming a well-adjusted, confident individual.
- C. To achieve this noble ambition, however, will demand hard work and dedication.
- D. It will mean approaching life with real gusto and renewed enthusiasm.
- E. It will mean painful sacrifice, but the lasting rewards are well worth it.

**VII. Consider the following facts for just a moment.**

- A. For most in this room, you've already lived one-fourth of your allotted lifespan.
- B. This means that three-fourths of your life is yet ahead of you, if time should go on that long.
- C. Thus, you've reached the point where you're now responsible for your actions, decisions and new-found freedom.
- D. The success of your life from this day forward rests within your own hands and the choices you make from day to day.
- E. Up to this time, you may have been ensnared and controlled by that powerful influence called peer pressure.
- F. You're at the crossroads of deciding whether you'll continue to be led by the opinions of friends and associates or break out of that tyranny and start controlling your own life.
- G. You can continue to be held in bondage by 'what others think' and end up as a mediocre Joe, or break loose from the crowd and become the master of your fate.
- H. As an example, you can wind up making a living with a broom or shovel, or you can prepare yourself for a career that will lead to abundant success.
- I. If you are a starry-eyed girl at age 18, you can marry a service station attendant and live in a shanty the rest of your life, or set your sight on a secure future with a caring and mature man.

**VIII. What this all boils down to is that while you're developing your potential, you'll also emerge into a model of excellence that others will look up to, respect and want to emulate.**

- A. Thus, in your own special way, you'll become an effective and influential leader.
- B. You will have built into your life an element of strength and confidence that others will admire.
- C. Whether male or female, you will silently wield a powerful influence on those with whom you come in contact, even though you never have an official title.

**IX. I would now like to explore the major characteristics or principles of leadership you should strive to incorporate into your life.**

- A. Traits:
  - 1. A burning desire to succeed.
    - a. Do you want to settle for second best?
    - b. Are you interested in only getting by?
    - c. Will you be happy knowing you could do better, while choosing to take the no pain, no sweat route?
    - d. If you lack the drive and motivation, go to God and ask for help.
    - e. Pray earnestly for a breakthrough and don't give up until He's answered.
    - f. If you're sincere, He will implant into your mind a powerful, positive desire that will transform your life.

- g. Isa. 40:28-31 — *'Hast thou not known? hast thou not heard, that the everlasting God, the Lord, the Creator of the ends of the earth, fainteth not, neither is weary? there is no searching of his understanding. (29) He giveth power to the faint; and to them that have no might he increaseth strength. (30) Even the youths shall faint and be weary, and the young men shall utterly fall: (31) But they that wait upon the Lord shall renew their strength; they shall mount up with wings as eagles; they shall run, and not be weary; and they shall walk, and not faint.'*
2. The discipline to establish meaningful, clear-cut goals.
- Without a game plan to chart your life, you're like a ship at sea with no port in sight.
  - Leaders go places, because they choose the places they want to go.
  - Don't just live for the moment and exist from day to day.
  - Plan or perish — decide your future.
  - Make up your mind what you want to become — quit vacillating.
  - Start setting goals now, even in small everyday things.
3. The ambition and drive to forge ahead and pursue your goals.
- Be a self-starter — get tough on yourself.
  - Keep your eye on your goals and allow nothing to distract you.
  - Set measurable benchmarks or target points along the way to keep you on track and continually motivated.
  - Be specific in what you're trying to achieve.
  - For example, suppose you want to earn money.
    - But is it for college, a car, a new wardrobe?*
    - Determine how much you'll need.*
    - Then set a deadline to earn it.*
  - Thus you've not only established a goal, but tangible benchmarks toward its attainment.
  - Propel yourself forward and don't allow your goals to be diluted with other interests.
4. Persevere until your goals are accomplished.
- The key point here is not to become discouraged and quit.
  - This may call for blood, sweat and tears, but determine to fight to the bitter end.
  - It may mean-bouncing back time and again when you've experienced momentary defeat.
  - Decide that nothing will stand in the way of achieving success.
  - Two examples:
    - Thomas Edison experimented 10,000 times before he perfected the light bulb.*
    - Abraham Lincoln ran for a political office 11 times even though he was only elected twice.*
5. Self-discipline and moderation.
- Take control of your life and quit pampering yourself.
  - Stop procrastinating and wasting precious time.
  - Get into the habit of quickly responding to the tasks that need to be done.
    - Doing your chores.*
    - Writing a term paper.*
    - Being punctual with assignments.*
    - Being diligent and hard working on the job.*
  - Govern your natural drives and instincts instead of letting them control you.
  - Stop glutting yourself on junk foods.
  - Put the heat on and do what you must to fall in line.
6. Dependability and trustworthiness.
- What are you worth if you can't be relied on?
  - How can you hope to get ahead if you let others down when they need you?
  - The quality of faithfulness is one of the most valuable attributes you could hope to develop as a leader.
  - Many people are failures simply because they lack this priceless ingredient.
  - An employer will pay a big premium to keep a worker on the payroll who proves to be dependable.

7. Going the extra mile.

- a. This is the trait that gives you the edge over the average person.
- b. It simply means going above & beyond the call of duty & giving that extra touch of service.
- c. It means doing more than you are paid to do, or putting the interests of others above yourself.
  - (1) For example, completing a job even though it will take a few minutes past quitting time.
  - (2) Or if you're a babysitter, washing the dishes and providing extra little services that you're not expected to do.
- d. Not only will you find this to be a source of satisfaction, but also it will eventually pay handsome dividends.
- e. Luke 6:38 — 'Give, and it shall be given unto you; good measure, pressed down, and shaken together, and running over, shall men give into your bosom. For with the same measure that ye mete withal it shall be measured to you again.'

8. Courage and grit to conquer an obstacle or face a new challenge.

- a. At times this will mean being bold and daring.
- b. It may seem that life has dealt you a bum rap and your plans are falling apart.
- c. You'll experience problems and pitfalls you never anticipated.
- d. It could simply mean overcoming fear and entering uncharted waters.
- e. Don't back down — plunge in head first.
- f. Come out fighting and do it with tenacity.
- g. Get involved with activities in an effort to improve and grow.

9. Integrity and character.

- a. Honor your conscience and do what is right no matter how painful or what the cost.
- b. Don't compromise your principles even if it means losing the advantage.
- c. Walk with God and know He's your judge.
- d. Love fellowman and treat him fairly and justly.
- e. Stand tall, steady and strong for what you believe in.

10. Humility and the willingness to sacrifice for others.

- a. The essence of greatness is to think of others first and put their needs above your own.
- b. It is forgetting yourself in service.
- c. Consider the example of Jesus Christ — the greatest leader and servant the world has ever known.
- d. He set aside His position in heaven and became a mortal being in order to make eternal life available to us.
- e. Pride, vanity and self-conceit are not to be found in the life of a true leader.
- f. Don't confuse humility with being mousy, weak and overly modest, but realize it's a willingness to stoop down and try to lift others to your level.

11. Poise and skill in dealing with people.

- a. You'll raise your stock in value when you master the art of human interaction.
- b. Be diplomatic, tactful and sensitive in the way you treat each person you meet.
- c. Practice the rules of etiquette and protocol — be polite, thoughtful and considerate.
- d. Realize that a selfish, ill-mannered person is a revolting and disgusting blight to society.
- e. Learn to gracefully share this world with others.

12. Maturity and emotional self-control.

- a. Read the following article:

*'Maturity is many things. First it is the ability to base a judgment on the Big Picture — The Long Haul. It means being able to pass up the fun-for-the-minute and select the course of action which will pay off later. One of the characteristics of infancy is the 'I want it NOW approach.' Grown-up people can wait.*

*'Maturity is the ability to stick with a project or a situation until it is finished. The young person who is constantly changing jobs, changing friends, and changing mates — is immature. He cannot stick it out because he has not grown up. Everything seems to turn sour after awhile.*

*'Maturity is the capacity to face unpleasantness, frustration, discomfort and defeat without complaint or collapse. The mature person knows he can't have everything his own way. He is able to defer to circumstances, to other people — and to time.*

*'Maturity is the ability to live up to your responsibilities, and this means being dependable. It means keeping your word. And dependability equates with personal integrity. Do you mean what you say — and say what you mean?'*

*'The world is filled with people who can't be counted on. People who never seem to come through in the clutches. People who break promises and substitute alibis for performance. They show up late — or not at all. They are confused and disorganized. Their lives are a chaotic maze of unfinished business.'*

*'Maturity is the ability to make a decision and stand by it. Immature people spend their lives exploring endless possibilities and then do nothing. Action requires courage. And there is no maturity without courage.'*

*'Maturity is the ability to harness your energies and to do more than is expected. The mature person refuses to settle for mediocrity. He would rather aim high and miss the mark than aim low — and make it.'*

— Author Unknown

**X. In addition to the personal benefit that will come to you from applying the principles just described there are many other people whose lives you'll inspire.**

- A. As said earlier, by developing your full potential, and stretching your abilities to the limit, you should become an influential leader in society.
- B. Here's a list of the people your example will most readily affect.
1. Parents.
    - a. You owe your parents a lot.
    - b. Your growth and success will give them great pride and joy.
    - c. You will increase the value and stature of the family name.
  2. Friends, associates and peers.
    - a. You'll become a tower of strength that your friends can look to and lean upon.
    - b. Your example and lifestyle will do much to show them the way to success and motivate them to try harder.
    - c. You will gain greater respect from them and become a model by which they may pattern their lives.
  3. Church members.
    - a. Because you're service oriented and dependable, you'll be given many opportunities in your local Church.
    - b. You'll be sought after to get things done.
    - c. Because you're positive, confident and outgoing, you'll be an inspiration to other young people attending services.
    - d. You'll also become known as a source of comfort and encouragement.
  4. Neighbors.
    - a. They will appreciate having you around because you'll keep your premises neat, clean and in order.
    - b. Since you're a responsible and mature person, they know you'll look out for their well-being and protection.
    - c. Your positive approach will be an asset to the community.
  5. Casual acquaintances.
    - a. You'll be liked because you'll make people feel good about themselves.
    - b. They'll find it easy to talk to you because you're genuinely interested in them.
    - c. You'll radiate an aura of good will and friendliness that just about anyone can relate to.
  6. Employer.
    - a. Because you take initiative, work hard and strive for excellence, you'll become a valuable asset to your boss.
    - b. This will open up greater opportunities for a better job and higher pay.
    - c. When you show ambition and the desire to see your company succeed, you create the kind of atmosphere and enthusiasm that an employer will highly prize.
  7. Fellow workers.
    - a. People need an example to look up to.

- b. They need someone who is industrious and diligent to lead the way.
- c. People on the job need encouragement, too.
- d. If you develop the proper style of leadership, your presence should make itself strongly felt.

8. Teachers.

- a. Teachers appreciate encouragement by someone who shows enthusiasm for their class.
- b. They need students who understand the value of what is being taught and who will make them feel worthwhile.
- c. As a leader you can extend your influence into all these areas of life.

9. The unconverted world.

- a. Society at large is a treasure house of opportunity for service.
- b. People need to be shown kindness, sympathy and concern.
- c. This might involve complimenting a waitress or clerk who is having a rough day.
- d. It might involve helping a cripple or elderly person across the street.
- e. The world needs to see an example of someone who's thoughtful, generous and has it all together.
- f. As a growing, developing leader, seize upon these challenges and opportunities.

10. God.

- a. You'll give God great pleasure when He sees you're trying with all your heart.
- b. You will inspire Him and give Him much joy when you keep Him at the center of your life.
- c. Seek His will and humble yourself before His presence.
- d. Be the kind of leader He can always depend on and use in a time of need.

**XI. In summary, remember that you don't have to be appointed to an office or be given a title to become a leader.**

- A. By developing your abilities to the fullest, and reaching for the stars, you will emerge into the ideal person God intended.
- B. The process will resemble a rosebud unfurling in gorgeous splendor or a butterfly emerging from its cocoon.
- C. You have the choice of existing in mediocrity or ascending to great heights.
- D. Don't wait five years to get started — make up your mind to do it now!
- E. As a clump of clay, will you become a common piece of pottery or a priceless work of art?
- F. Fellows and girls, the choice is yours!

-END-



## **CHAPTER 56**

### ***PUTTING MAGNETISM INTO YOUR PERSONALITY***

With the new direction God's Work is taking, we in the ministry will be called upon to serve God's Church and the local community in a more visible and viable way.

A servant is one who serves. A leader is one who leads. This requires that we be front line examples in ministering to the needs of people, both converted and unconverted. '*As we have therefore opportunity, let us do good unto all men' (Gal. 6:10). The Apostle Paul said further, '...I am made all things to all men' (I Cor. 9:22).*

The attitude in which we do this, I feel, is super important. And this is where personal magnetism figures in. As ministers of the gospel. We should reflect a spontaneous attitude of concern the way Christ did. Christ attracted people to himself, not out of vanity, but through the sterling qualities of God's character in him.

A flow of energy and love and compassion emanated from Christ. He epitomized selfless service and this through joy, love and genuine concern. He went about doing many good works and showed no reluctance in attending to the needs of the lowliest person. Christ sparkled. Although He grieved over the sins of the world, His general disposition and outlook was happy, joyful and magnetic.

Personal magnetism is not an inherited trait. However, it can be developed, and the key is having a positive mind. This requires that we continually imbibe of God's Spirit — a source that produces the qualities of love, joy, peace, etc. It is only through God's Holy Spirit that we can achieve a warm, dynamics personal approach toward people that attract them to the way of life we represent.

People continually need a helping hand and an attentive ear, especially in times of trial, stress, and sickness. An encouraging outlook from one who can point out the ways particular tests act as opportunities for growth, stepping stones to accomplishments, can do much to lift a discouraged person out of his plight. An attitude of wanting to see the best things in life happen to people, of accepting them for what they are even when they are weak and sinful, can inspire and motivate them to greater heights of drive, determination and achievement. This is the kind of direction and mental framework that is needed to develop and maintain a magnetic personality.

True, life has its serious moments, but the well-balanced, positive individual will always keep things in their proper perspective. Rather than always appearing to be sober and hard-driving, we should be able to see the funny side of life's situations, and impart a sparkle of cheerfulness when appropriate. This is not to say that a magnetic person must always be the 'life of the party' because humility also plays a role in his life. Such a person can be dynamic and manifest an undercurrent of spiritual strength without dominating every situation with empty babblings, braggings about personal exploits, or drawing attention to himself out of self-righteous vanity. The magnetic personality enjoys listening to and learning from the experiences of others. The positive, real life examples of others often add zest and color to one's conversation, sermons and counselings.

Now that we as a ministry are to reach out and touch our neighborhoods and communities, in addition to shepherding, our own flocks, we should have deeply impressed in our minds the reality of what we are representing — the very work of God itself. All our deeds, works, and actions should reflect the sense of urgency that comes from being a true servant of God.

Love is truly the basis of it all. A minister who is filled with love and the fruits of God's Holy Spirit — his energy source — will be a magnetic and dynamic force for the good of the family, community, Church, and the world.

**-END-**



## CHAPTER 57

### **QUALITIES OF A TRUE GENTLEMAN AND LADY**

#### **I. When you were baptized and received the Holy Spirit, you became a begotten member of the royal family of God.**

- A. Do you grasp the awesome implication and magnitude of this incredible truth?
- B. Does it really hit home and sink in?
  - 1. You are now qualifying to be born as literal sons and daughters of God's ruling Family.
  - 2. Because you have been placed in God's divine family, you occupy a position of higher rank and nobility than the royal family of England.
  - 3. You are now princes and princesses in training to become eternal spiritual kings and rulers.

#### **II. To prove that you are of the royal seed of God, let's consider these points:**

- A. The fact that Jesus Christ is living His life in you proves that you are a member of the same royal family He is.
  - 1. I John 5:11-12 — *'And this is the record, that God hath given to us eternal life, and this life is in His Son. (12) He that hath the Son hath life; and he that hath not the Son of God hath not life.'*
  - 2. Rom. 8:9-10, 14 — *'But ye are not in the flesh, but in the Spirit, if so be that the Spirit of God dwell in you. Now if any man have not the Spirit of Christ, he is none of his. (10) And if Christ be in you, the body is dead because of sin; but the Spirit is life because of righteousness. (14) For as many as are led by the Spirit of God, they are the sons of God.'*
  - 3. II Cor. 13:5 — *'Examine yourselves, whether ye be in the faith; prove your own selves. Know ye not your own selves, how that Jesus Christ is in you, except ye be reprobates?'*
- B. You are now joint-heirs with Christ of a glorious heritage.
  - Rom. 8:16-17 — *'The Spirit itself beareth witness without spirit, that we are the children of God: (17) And if children, then heirs; heirs of God, and joint heirs with Christ; if so be that we suffer with him, that we may be also glorified together.'*
- C. Paul revealed that our true citizenship is in heaven.
  - 1. Phil. 3:20 — *'For our conversation is in heaven; from whence also we look for the Saviour, the Lord Jesus Christ.'*
- D. The apostle Paul also declared that, as begotten sons and daughters, we sit in heavenly places.
  - 1. Eph. 2:4-6 — *'But God, who is rich in mercy, for his great love wherewith he loved us, (5) Even when we were dead in sins, hath quickened us together with Christ, (by grace ye are saved;) (6) And hath raised us up together, and made us sit together in heavenly places in Christ Jesus.'*
- E. Jesus Christ is called King of kings and Lord of lords.
  - 1. Rev. 17: 14 — *'These shall make war with the Lamb, and the Lamb shall overcome them: for he is Lord of lords, and King of kings: and they that are with him are called, and chosen, and faithful.'*
  - 2. Rev. 19:11-14, 16 — *'And I saw heaven opened, and behold a white horse; and he that sat upon him was called Faithful and True, and in righteousness he doth judge and make war. (12) His eyes were as a flame of fire, and on his head were many crowns; and he had a name written, that no man knew, but he himself. (13) And he was clothed with a vesture dipped in blood: and his name is called The Word of God. (14) And the armies which were in heaven followed him upon white horses, clothed in fine linen, white and clean. (16) And he hath on his vesture and on his thigh a name written, KING OF KINGS, AND LORD OF LORDS.'*
- F. The book of Revelation states that we will be kings and priests in God's coming Kingdom.
  - 1. Rev. 1:6 — *'And hath made us kings and priests unto Go and his Father; to him be glory and dominion for ever and ever. Amen.'*
  - 2. Rev. 5:10 — *'And hast made us unto our God kings and priests: and we shall reign on the earth.'*
- G. Jesus Christ has also promised us that we will be given authority over cities.
  - 1. Luke 19:16-19 — *'Then came the first, saying, Lord, thy pound hath gained ten pounds. (17) And he said unto him, Well, thou good servant: because thou hast been faithful in a very little, have thou*

authority over ten cities. (18) And the second came, saying, Lord, thy pound hath gained five pounds. (19) And he said likewise to him, Be thou also over five cities.'

H. The first book of Peter tells us that we are God's royal priesthood.

1. 1 Peter 2:9 — 'But ye are a chosen generation, a royal priesthood, an holy nation, a peculiar people; that ye should shew forth the praises of him who hath called you out of darkness into his marvellous light.'

**III. With this breathtaking future laid-out before us, we should come to visualize and internalize its meaning and true reality in our day-to-day lives.**

- A. There's no doubt about it, we are destined to become literal members of the ruling family of God — the royal court of heaven.
- B. This necessitates that we prepare ourselves now in an intensive crash program to learn how to be cultured and well-bred as princes and princesses in God's holy Family.

**IV. The vital questions we want to answer today are:**

- A. How do we acquire this needed training in everyday experience?
- B. What are the standards — what is expected?
- C. Where do we start?

**V. If you had the opportunity to ask Jesus Christ these questions, what kind of answers do you suppose He would give? What qualifications would He list for each sex?**

- A. Interestingly, these qualifications are already identified and described in the Bible.
- B. They are found throughout its pages from Genesis through Revelation.
- C. They are the identical qualities that Jesus Christ designed for Adam and Eve to fulfill when He created them.
- D. Doesn't it behoove us, then, to study God's Word in an effort to understand our individual roles?

**VI. Today, we are going to discuss 20 of the most important qualities that constitute God's ideals for a true gentleman and a true lady.**

**VII. Before we embark on this study, it is essential to underscore a most important foundational point common to all.**

- A. That point is: Recognize God's sovereign rule over your life and develop the proper relationship with Him.
- B. This necessitates diligent Bible study, heartfelt obedience, and a willingness to change when corrected.
- C. When we're walking in the fear of God and are filled with His Holy Spirit, the fruits and qualities of true manhood and womanhood will begin to emerge.
- D. The male and female roles will naturally fall in place.
- E. The fruits of God's righteous and holy character will begin to flow and radiate in the distinctive way He intended.

**VIII. To begin this study, let's envision that Christ is conducting a finishing school for princes and princesses.**

- A. There are 20 steps He is going to teach each sex.
- B. We need to realize that we don't have these qualities so He is outlining them for us and showing us how to acquire them.

**IX. Here are the 20 traits and characteristics that describe the original role that God intended for a man.**

- A. Points listed.
  1. He accepts his role and responsibility as the leader.
    - a. At the time of creation, God assigned man this role.
    - b. God designed the man to be the aggressor, provider and protector — a responsibility for which He will hold him accountable.
    - c. He equipped man with the necessary abilities — mental, physical and emotional — to step out and take the lead.
    - d. If the man relinquishes this role, the woman will feel insecure, unloved and abandoned.
    - e. Her life will become miserable and emotionally distraught.
    - f. As a final recourse, she will feel compelled to take over his functions.
    - g. God never ordained this arrangement and it only leads to further frustration.
    - h. A weak, cowardly, irresponsible man is a shame and disgrace to God and the woman.

2. *His carriage and mannerisms are distinctly masculine.*
  - a. God created the male to think like a man, act like a man and look like a man.
  - b. Manliness is a matter of attitude — viewing yourself as a capable leader.
  - c. When you receive the mind of Christ and allow His Spirit to work in you, you'll start acting like Him — a real man.
  - d. Being effeminate is disgustingly revolting — it is a sin which can keep a man out of God's Kingdom (see I Cor. 6:9).
  - e. Endeavor to eradicate such things as:
    - (1) *A soft, thin voice.*
    - (2) *Prissy or prim movements.*
    - (3) *A whiney and negative disposition.*
    - (4) *Shyness and timidity.*
    - (5) *Aversion to rugged challenges.*
  - f. As a king in training, develop a manly physique.
  - g. Strive to cultivate masculine characteristics and features of the true leaders of God.
  - h. Dare to do! Engage in hard physical labor from time to time such as:
    - (1) *Cutting wood.*
    - (2) *Digging a ditch or post holes.*
    - (3) *Climbing a mountain.*
    - (4) *Tackling a repair job on the car.*
3. *He is a man of courage and radiates strength and confidence.*
  - a. A healthy brand of self-assurance comes from achieving goals and building on success.
  - b. It is not to be confused with arrogance, haughtiness or self-conceit.
  - c. Rather, it is a godly attribute based on faith, drive and all-out determination.
  - d. This will necessitate a degree of gallantry, courage and some risk taking.
  - e. A man will never gain trust and respect from a woman unless he develops strength and confidence.
4. *His character is founded on honor and integrity.*
  - a. A man with these qualities leaves a lasting impression.
  - b. They are bedrock stones in the foundation of his character.
  - c. They are an out-cropping of a deep walk with God.
  - d. Conscience plays an integral role in his dealings with others.
  - e. Motivated by the fear of God, he will not lie, cheat, steal or take advantage of a person's misfortune.
  - f. His motto is: honor before wealth, fame or fortune.
  - g. Also related to honor is the emotional maturity he exercises when things don't go his way.
  - h. He keeps calm when criticized and strives for peace.
5. *He sets goals and pursues them with vigor and determination.*
  - a. You will never attain true success unless you set definite goals, plan a strategy for their attainment and see them through to completion.
  - b. Don't just let life happen by taking the easy road or basking in the comfort of mediocrity.
  - c. Crawl out of your rut, upgrade your priorities and plan for the future.
  - d. Stop pampering yourself and making excuses.
  - e. Take immediate control of your life — break the hold of fear and inertia.
  - f. Aim high and visualize yourself as a competent, successful person.
  - g. Get out of the bachelor mode of thinking and dedicate yourself to a new life of improvement and growth.
  - h. Be a wise planner and active doer.
6. *He is genuinely humble and diverts attention away from self.*
  - a. Man is prone to praise himself, boast of his exploits, and put himself in the best possible light.
  - b. He thrives on attention and innately desires to be admired.
  - c. His conversation is laced with personal pronouns to elevate his self-importance.
  - d. God hates these tendencies and turns His face from those so infected.
  - e. True humility is completely dying to yourself and allowing God's life to fill you.

- f. As one writer said, *'Humility is not just thinking lowly of yourself, it is not thinking about yourself at all'* (author unknown).
7. *He is polite and courteous and reflects good breeding.*
- This describes the kind of gentleman who has dignity and class.
  - Such a man practices old-fashioned chivalry and is particularly attuned to the sensitivities of a lady.
  - He educates himself in matters of etiquette, diplomacy and protocol.
  - He is tactful and carefully guards his manner of speech.
  - He keeps reminding himself that he is a king in training and will someday occupy a position of grandeur in the family of God.
8. *He exercises common sense and good judgment, and continues to grow in wisdom.*
- A leader who is respected and honored has a track record of making wise decisions.
  - He has developed a sense and perception for what is good and proper.
  - Even the little details don't go unnoticed.
  - He thinks matters through to the end result and steers his life to avoid pitfalls and dangers.
  - A woman admires and trusts a man who exhibits these qualities.
9. *He is temperate, balanced and keeps his drives under control.*
- God commands moderation in all things and to abstain from fleshly lusts (see Phil. 4:5, 1 Pet. 2:11).
  - Few things are more repulsive than to see a man motivated by greed, gluttony or other carnal excesses.
  - If a man is unable to discipline his instincts, he will be looked on by the opposite sex with derision and contempt.
  - When we think of the emperors of ancient Rome who withheld no desire or pleasure, we evoke images of gross sensuality at its worst.
  - To be the kind of son that God admires, restrain your urges and passions by staying close to Him.
10. *He is open and honest, and willing to admit when he is wrong.*
- Most men fear they'll lose face if they acknowledge their mistakes.
  - However, women view this matter quite differently.
  - To them it takes a big man with courage and grit to confess error.
  - Remember that genuine confession and heart-felt repentance are a vital part of true Christianity.
11. *He is caring, thoughtful and generous.*
- This giving attitude should pervade every nook and cranny of his life.
  - He has discovered the true joy that comes from sharing the blessings and bounty God has given to him.
  - Conversely, he is repelled by the ugliness of the get way, including the notorious self-sins: self-pleasing, self-gratification, self-aggrandizement and self-importance.
  - The tone and tenor of his nature is that of love to God and neighbor.
12. *He radiates happiness and a positive outlook on life.*
- God's basic disposition is one of joy and enthusiasm (see Ps. 16:11).
  - If a person is filled with and led by the Holy Spirit, he, too, will express these emotions.
  - A sour, bland, dull personality repels others.
  - Avoid cynical remarks and negative put-downs.
13. *He maintains impeccable standards of personal hygiene grooming and appearance.*
- A gentleman with culture and class places a high premium on these qualities.
  - His personal hygiene and appearance reveal how he feels about himself.
  - If he appears slovenly and unkempt, and reeks with B.O., he manifests a disregard for God's standards and a contempt for fellowman.
  - Can you picture yourself in God's Kingdom, sitting on a throne in a rumpled robe, having disheveled hair, and looking like a bum?
14. *He is alert and sensitive to the needs of people around him.*
- A true Christian leader is people-oriented and attuned to their comfort and best interests.

- b. His mind works like a radar screen surveying his immediate environment.
  - c. He is aware of every person within his proximity.
  - d. Viewing himself as a servant, he befriends, assists and lends a helping hand to those who need it.
15. He motivates others by making them feel appreciated and important.
- a. One of the most powerful hungers in human beings is the need for acceptance and recognition.
  - b. The true Christian leader understands how to fill this need by reaching out to fellowman and expressing agape love.
  - c. He lifts their spirits, builds up their faith, and helps them to put their problems in perspective.
  - d. He encourages them by showing how their efforts and contributions have value and importance.
  - e. Such a leader is able to turn the negative thinking of others into a more positive outlook.
16. He reads widely, keeps current with world events and continues to upgrade his education.
- a. A true leader knows the importance of being well-read and knowledgeable.
  - b. He is curious about the world in which he lives and makes an effort to learn from every opportunity.
  - c. Knowing the value of time, he prudently selects material that has relevance and meaning to life.
  - d. He builds a varied library consisting of research material, biblical aids, self-improvement books, biographies, etc.
  - e. Remember that the desire for knowledge and understanding was a hallmark of Mr. Armstrong's life.
17. He has a knack for conversing with others and putting them at ease.
- a. The ability to converse with ease and confidence is a goal to be earnestly sought after.
  - b. Effective and pleasing conversation is a mutual give-and-take experience or sharing of ideas.
  - c. You can achieve this skill if you're willing to devote yourself to it and pay the price.
  - d. Most libraries and bookstores carry material covering this subject.
  - e. Learning the techniques of good conversation will pay high dividends and make you an interesting and scintillating person.
  - f. Equally important, however, is the ability to ask the right questions and be an interested listener.
18. He appreciates music, art and the refined types of entertainment.
- a. People of royalty and good breeding realize the intrinsic value of adding this dimension to their lives.
  - b. One who has cultivated these tastes has come to appreciate the hard work, self-discipline and hours of sacrifice needed to attain artistic excellence.
  - c. All this is a necessary ingredient in becoming a well-rounded prince.
  - d. It is time to reach beyond your present diet of TV, movies, rock and country music and include a higher caliber of entertainment.
19. He views all mankind as God's created sons.
- a. A true gentleman deeply understands and recognizes man's potential.
  - b. He sees fellow human beings the way God does — as diamonds in the rough.
  - c. Deep in his heart he wishes the best for them and is grieved by the state man is in.
  - d. Thus, he always extends honor and respect when interacting with others.
20. He treats women with gentleness, honor and utmost respect.
- a. A test of man's true character and leadership skill shows in the way he interfaces with the woman.
  - b. He is kind and gentle and cares about her feelings.
  - c. Although she is called the 'weaker vessel' (see [1 Pet. 3:7](#)), he never views her as being inferior.
  - d. He remembers that God created her as a special gift to man.
  - e. This fact endears her to him and impresses on his mind the responsibility it entails — being a provider, protector, example, pillar of strength and a shoulder to cry on.
  - f. In marriage, this means that he is fully devoted to her — even being willing to lay his life down for her if necessary (see [Eph. 5:25](#)).

**X. Here are the 20 traits and characteristics that describe the original role that God intended for a woman.**

A. Points listed.

1. She recognizes her God-ordained role as helper and companion.
  - a. The woman who is deeply converted will go back to the beginning and study the purpose for which God created her (see Gen. 1 and 2).
  - b. She will seek understanding and desire to please Him by fulfilling her role.
  - c. God explicitly states that she was made for the man — to be his helper and companion (see Gen. 2:18; 1 Cor. 11:8-9).
  - d. In essence, this means that her ultimate calling in this life is to be a wife, mother and homemaker.
  - e. Thus, she will go all out to prepare for this responsibility with a positive outlook and joyful attitude.
2. She defers to the man and practices true and willing submission.
  - a. The road to joy and real fulfillment in a woman's life is in practicing the God-ordained command of willing submission (see Eph. 5:22, 24).
  - b. True submission should be viewed as a profound privilege and an expression of love.
  - c. It should not be thought of as an irksome duty or a demeaning burden to be endured.
  - d. When the woman resists the position that God has assigned her and takes an independent stand, she introduces chaos and confusion into His holy plan.
  - e. Even a single woman needs to realize the importance of practicing this attitude when interfacing with men in general.
  - f. Be on guard against Satan's suggestions of being assertive, career-driven and a loyalist to the ERA.
3. She wisely directs her power of influence and inspires a man to believe in himself.
  - a. Most women are unaware of the latent power that resides in true femininity.
  - b. God has equipped the woman with the potential to inspire the man to achieve great heights.
  - c. If used wrongly, however, she can undermine his confidence and eventually destroy him.
  - d. This unique power brings out the best in the man and heightens his drives and ambitions.
  - e. When he's discouraged, she can infuse new life and determination in him through support and positive reinforcement.
  - f. It has been said that behind every great man there's a great woman.
  - g. Think beyond your personal realm and aspire to this noble duty.
4. She desires to please the man and do those things that will make him shine.
  - a. On the physical plane, her primary aim should be to complement the man and do all she can to help him succeed.
  - b. She should be willing to step aside and let him have center stage.
  - c. She knows that by pleasing the man, God will bless her and in her own special way she, too, will shine.
  - d. In interacting with men, whether boss or friend, she should keep this principle in the forefront of her mind.
  - e. This does not mean that she should sacrifice her own hopes and dreams and lose her identity.
  - f. Quite the contrary, Proverbs 31 describes a successful, multi-talented woman who brought fame to herself by fulfilling her role and honoring her husband.
5. She reflects godly character and highest integrity.
  - a. In this decadent society, character and integrity have become lost values.
  - b. The time-honored virtues such as honesty, morality, trustworthiness and truthfulness have been cast aside.
  - c. To become the kind of woman God wants you to be, you must recapture these values.
  - d. This will require courage and sometimes even mean the loss of popularity.
  - e. However, the rich rewards God promises will make the sacrifice well worth it.
6. She manifests the culture and refinement of a well-bred lady.
  - a. A woman who is a member of God's royal family needs to acquire the social graces this position demands.



- b. To bring honor and glory to God, she should embark on this venture with heartfelt commitment.
  - c. Read everything at your disposal on these subjects and observe elegant women who are poised and polished.
  - d. Learn, for example, from the gracious manners of Queen Elizabeth and Queen Sirikit who portray qualities of true womanhood.
7. *She radiates an aura of inner calm, peace and joy.*
- a. This disposition is acquired by walking in faith, being close to God and living a sin-free life.
  - b. It's a matter of being self-assured and confident in dealing with any situation that may arise.
  - c. God says great peace have they who love His law (see Ps. 119:165).
  - d. Joy & contentment are a matter of overcoming pessimism and replacing it with a positive mind.
  - e. Habitually look for the good in life and be thankful for God's blessings.
8. *She is virtuous and modest in her appearance.*
- a. The woman who is zealously preparing for God's Kingdom practices modesty and virtue in her personal life.
  - b. She is aware of the importance of her posture and graceful bodily movements: sitting, standing, walking, stooping or reaching.
  - c. A God-fearing lady steers clear of any action that might lead others to think she is morally loose.
  - d. She learns how to coordinate a stylish wardrobe while avoiding fashions that are revealing or suggestive.
  - e. She never forgets that she's a daughter of God and always carries herself in a manner that glorifies Him.
9. *She controls her moods and strives for emotional maturity.*
- a. Generally, a woman is more sensitive and emotionally expressive than a man.
  - b. She tends to cry more easily or collapse under pressure.
  - c. Because of her genetic and hormonal makeup, her moods are prone to fluctuate throughout the day.
  - d. However, with God's help and determined willpower, these mood swings can be brought under control and leveled out.
  - e. Be aware that when your emotions are running rampant and you give in to depression, Satan finds an opening.
  - f. A refined lady comes to grips with herself and overcomes these tendencies.
10. *She glows with charm and effervescence.*
- a. The woman who has developed a vibrant personality greets people with a smile and a radiant countenance.
  - b. She has a zest for life and a twinkle in her eye.
  - c. Be animated and let your enthusiasm flow out to others.
  - d. Resist depression and the doldrums.
  - e. Wake up and recognize the opportunities for service all around you.
11. *Her voice is soft and feminine.*
- a. She is always conscious that her voice expresses warmth and friendliness.
  - b. To a converted man, one of the most pleasing sounds in all creation is a soft, feminine voice.
  - c. It is the opposite of what we so often hear from women in the world today: loud, raucous, harsh, coarse.
  - d. Ladies who possess a meek and quiet spirit temper their speech with tact and wisdom.
  - e. They know the power of fitly spoken words (Prov. 25:11), and choose them with discretion.
  - f. This charming quality comes from God and yielding to His Holy Spirit.
  - g. Look for the good in people around you and be on guard against the destructive tendency toward gossip.
12. *She shows kindness and compassion toward people at all levels of society.*
- a. God stresses this as one of the primary qualities of the virtuous woman described in Proverbs 31.
  - b. Men are particularly drawn to women who possess a kind and gentle nature.

- c. Some married men have admitted that this was a major factor in choosing their mates.
  - d. A man can learn how to be tender and sympathetic from the example of such a lady.
  - e. It helps to soften his aggressive drives and adds a dimension of empathy he could learn no other way.
13. *She listens with interest and offers encouragement when needed.*
- a. This is another area where you as a woman can excel.
  - b. God has given you a special disposition to help nurture, console and comfort others.
  - c. It is a power that can particularly inspire the man and help him regain his perspective.
  - d. Cultivate the art of being a good listener and a genuine friend.
14. *She is a gracious hostess and makes each guest feel welcomed.*
- a. A truly refined lady has the ability to entertain others and put them at ease.
  - b. The atmosphere in her home is warm and cheerful.
  - c. She is calm, organized and well prepared.
  - d. She looks after the needs of all her guests and gives each of them special attention.
  - e. If an awkward situation develops, she handles it with kindness and diplomacy.
  - f. She tries to make each occasion a memorable experience.
15. *She grows with goals and pushes herself to achieve.*
- a. To be a daughter God will admire, commit yourself to a life of growth and improvement.
  - b. Falling into a rut or coasting blocks your vision and stifles your initiative.
  - c. Isolate areas of your life that need attention.
  - d. Set realistic goals and prioritize them.
  - e. Establish target dates and pursue your goals with vigor.
  - f. Grow in some small way every day.
16. *She seeks to improve her mind and education.*
- a. Your mind is your greatest physical asset.
  - b. As to gaining knowledge, it has no limitations.
  - c. God expects you to develop your mind to the highest possible degree.
  - d. Someday you will be privileged to help Him rule the universe — so learn all you can now.
  - e. The true knowledge acquired in this life will be carried over into eternity.
  - f. Also, it will make you a more scintillating and productive person today.
  - g. Therefore, read widely, study worthwhile materials and expand your mind.
17. *She cultivates her skills and creativity as a woman.*
- a. Here is another area of life where every woman can excel as an individual.
  - b. It involves a wide gamut of challenges: decorating a home or apartment, trying new and exciting recipes, sewing a new wardrobe, etc.
  - c. Brighten up your life and extend yourself into new areas of growth where you've held back.
  - d. Get the best mileage out of your God-given talents and strengths. (Every woman has them.)
  - e. Take classes in creative skills and ask older, more experienced women to teach you.
  - f. Men greatly admire women who have acquired a wide range of homemaking skills.
18. *She gives proper attention to her health and personal hygiene.*
- a. Without good health, life can be a drag — it can even affect your relationship to God.
  - b. Poor health could also mean the difference between attracting the right man and having to settle for second best.
  - c. To keep physically and mentally fit, watch your diet and get plenty of rest.
  - d. Moreover, never minimize the importance of proper hygiene: fresh breath, bodily cleanliness, clean hair, etc.
  - e. Untold scores of relationships have been ruined because of inattention to these areas.
19. *She watches her figure, exercises regularly and tries to look beautiful the way God intended.*
- a. Remember, again, you are a princess in training — and a temple of God's Holy Spirit.
  - b. A pleasing figure enhances one's self-respect and engenders confidence.
  - c. Are you striving to please God by keeping fit and trim?
  - d. Also, are you aware that you can increase your chances of finding a mate by taking a greater interest in your appearance?

20. *She sees herself as the affianced bride of Christ.*

- a. This concept should be the heartbeat and driving force in your life.
- b. You should share a deep and close relationship with Jesus Christ (see Rev. 3:20).
- c. You should excitedly anticipate His coming and plan your hopes and dreams around that event.
- d. Day by day, seek to prepare yourself for your spiritual marriage to Him.
- e. As a result of doing these things with your whole heart, you will also prepare for a physical marriage in this life.

**XI. *A final word of advice.***

- A. Throughout this lecture I've been describing the ideal gentleman and lady.
- B. Obviously, none of us yet measures up to these high standards.
- C. Attaining them will take time and perseverance.
- D. Therefore, don't despair, become discouraged or succumb to guilt.
- E. Take these steps one at a time.
- F. Commit yourself to a new life of growth and be determined.
- G. Realize that with the help of God, self-mastery is possible (see Phil. 4:13).
- H. Picture in your mind the kind of person you'd like to become and start living that role today.
- I. Don't procrastinate — do it now!

**-END-**



## **CHAPTER 58**

### **THE SIMPLE SECRET OF TRUE CHRISTIAN LOVE**

*Are you overlooking the vital  
key that unlocks the true  
meaning of love? This article  
reveals it!*

Love is one of the most commonly used words in our everyday conversation. It is the underlying theme behind most songs we hear, human interest programs on television, books and magazine articles we read. Yet, if you should ask a hundred different people to give their personal definition of love you would probably get one hundred slightly different answers. It seems that the word love has come to have such a broad and ambiguous meaning in today's society that it's almost impossible to boil down to its true essence.

What is the meaning of this all-important word? Can you think of a single term that most accurately describes it? Did you know that such a word exists and that the Bible either uses or refers to it repeatedly from Genesis to Revelation? Even you, yourself, are familiar with this word and may be using it unwittingly in your day-to-day conversation. It has only one syllable and contains four letters.

This simple little word if properly understood and applied could virtually put an end to all wars, strifes and human conflicts. It could save marriages, unify families and build lasting friendships. Strange that more people are not practicing this word since it is one of the vital keys to happiness, success and personal well being. The more you apply this practical definition of love, the more you begin to experience one of the great secrets of a fruitful, Christian life.

#### **An Important Clue**

What is this profound little word? Let's notice a clue in John 3:16. '*For God so loved the world, that he gave his, only begotten Son, that whosoever believeth in him should not perish, but have everlasting life.*' Did you catch the relationship between the word 'love' and the word 'gave'? God loved and He gave. This verse describes God's definition of true love. It tells us how His love works — it's an outgoing concern that prompts Him to action. It's directed away from self and out to others. God so loved that He gave.

The word we are searching for that most accurately describes love is the word GIVE. It's difficult, if not impossible, to think of love in any other way. True love is giving. The underlying motive is to care and show concern for others and to see their lives enriched. There is no selfish thought of getting when one gives freely from the heart. Love that gives to get is not true love: that brand of love is self-centered greed.

The very nature of God is that of giving. You can see it reflected in the whole of His creation. Think of the myriads of blessings and benefits that God gives to us as His created beings. He has given us life itself with its manifold pleasures and delights. He has given us this beautiful earth to inhabit with its gorgeous flowers, towering mountains and breathtaking landscapes. He has given us a vast variety of foods to eat and enjoy. All of creation is a constant testimony of God's love in action.

God has even infused this concept of giving into the laws of nature. Cows give milk. Trees give fruit. Clouds provide rain in due season. No matter where you look in your natural environment, you see this principle of love at work. Thus, the word 'give' tells us in a nutshell what true Christian love is and how it is to be practiced.

#### **The Biblical Approach**

Since God's nature is that of giving, it should come as no surprise that His Word also instructs us to strive for the same characteristic. Numerous passages talk about and expound the 'give' principle of love. Acts 20:35 says, '*...it is more blessed to give than to receive.*' Giving, as a principle of life, is more

productive than receiving. When you give you are helping to upgrade the lives of others by contributing to their success and happiness. But when you practice the 'get way,' you are the only one who is benefitted. This is a selfish and narrow approach. Think of how much you could better the quality of life for fellow man when you practice outgoing love.

Matthew 10:8 commands, '*...freely you have received, freely give.*' God has bountifully blessed us in ways beyond measure because He is a giving, loving heavenly Father. His most supreme gift was His Son Jesus Christ, whom He gave to save the world. Since God has freely given us all things to enjoy, He desires that we adopt this same giving lifestyle. God did not give us our blessings solely for our own personal enjoyment. He gave them in order for us to share with neighbor so that He, too, can be blessed. Thus, if you want to know whether you're motivated by God's form of love, you can determine the answer by how much you are willing to sacrifice and give.

II Corinthians 9:7 states, '*...for God loveth a cheerful giver.*' Notice the kind of person God says He loves. He loves one who gives freely and cheerfully. He takes delight in the person who has a generous heart, puts others first and is genuinely concerned about their welfare.

Thus, we can see from the above verses that the 'give way' is the 'love way.' This giving concept epitomizes in a simple and succinct manner how true love should be practiced.

Is it sheer coincidence that Mr. Herbert W. Armstrong has adopted the 'give way' versus the 'get way' as the theme of his message to world leaders? Doesn't this motto sum up the true meaning of the Gospel?

### **The Practical Art of Giving**

Since we have now demonstrated that to give is practical love in action, let's discuss some of the ways that you can put it to work.

In answering the question of a rich young man on how to receive eternal life, Jesus said, '*...if thou wilt be perfect, go and sell that thou hast, and give to the poor, and thou shalt have treasure in heaven: and come and follow me.*' (Matt. 19:21). Here then is an area of life where you can start practicing true love. In place of selfishly hoarding your personal possessions, God wants you to cheerfully share what He has given you with those who have less. Notice how this principle is further brought out in Luke 11:41, '*...give alms of such things as you have...*' Matthew 5:42 says, '*Give to him that asketh thee, and from him that would borrow of thee turn not thou away.*' And again in I John 3:16-18, '*Hereby perceive we the love of God, because he laid down his life for us: and we ought to lay down our lives for the brethren. But whoso hath this world's good, and seeth his brother have need, and shutteth up his bowels of compassion from him, how dwelleth the love of God in him? My little children, let us not love in word, neither in tongue; but in deed and in truth.*' Clearly, giving to those in need is one of the most charitable and positive ways to fulfill the law of love.

But there are also other forms of giving you can practice. You can give kindness, courtesy, and friendship to those with whom you come in daily contact. You can give encouragement to those who are depressed or who have failed in some endeavor. You can give of yourself in time and service to your neighbor when he needs a helping hand. You can give comfort and compassion to the lonely and suffering. There are hundreds of opportunities all around you in everyday life where you can practice the art of giving.

The attitude of giving even applies toward your enemies. Proverbs 25:21-22 instruct, '*If thine enemy be hungry, give him bread to eat; and if he be thirsty, give him water to drink: for thou shalt heap coals of fire upon his head, and the Lord shall reward thee.*' Imagine! If you are to take on the very nature of God as one of His children, you, too, must bless your enemies and truly be concerned about their comfort and well being just like our heavenly Father. '*But I say unto you, Love your enemies, bless them that curse you, do good to them that hate you, and pray for them which despitefully use you, and persecute you; that ye may be the children of your Father which is in heaven: for he maketh his sun to rise on the evil and on the good, and sendeth rain on the just and on the unjust*' (Matt. 5:44-45).

The all important key to remember in describing true love is in the meaning of the word 'give.' It is probably the most descriptive term in the English language that tells us in a nutshell what God's brand of love is all about.

The spirit and practice of giving is what indeed marks a true Christian a child of God. If you are led of His Spirit outgoing love for neighbor will become easy, natural and spontaneous.

### **The Reward of Giving**

It's a human propensity to 'give' in order to 'get.' We either expect something in return for our generosity or we perform good deeds in order to be seen of others. We want to impress them and have them think well of us. These are selfish and negative forms of giving and do not meet with God's approval. A true sense of giving should always be from the heart, without any selfish motive whatsoever to get.

Does this mean that acts of giving are without reward? And that we should never expect to receive anything for our Christian deeds and good works? Of course not! God who is the greatest giver in the universe has built into His laws an automatic reward system if they are faithfully obeyed. For examples in giving His Son to save the world, He will ultimately reap millions and perhaps billions of additional sons for His family. He knows by virtue of His created laws that He will receive if He first gives in love.

Notice how this truth is revealed on the human plane in Luke 6:38. *'Give, and it shall be given unto you; good measure, pressed down, and shaken together, and running over, shall men give into your bosom. For with the same measure that ye mete withal it shall be measured to you again.'*

In Ephesians 6:8 the apostle Paul affirms, *'Knowing that whatsoever good thing any man doeth, the same shall he receive of the Lord, whether he be bond or free.'*

Galatians 6:9 says, *'And let us not be weary in well doing: for in due season we shall reap, if we faint not.'* II Corinthians 9:6 further emphasizes, *'But this I say, he which soweth sparingly shall reap also sparingly; and he which soweth bountifully shall reap also bountifully.'*

How reassuring! Just as you plant seed in the field and will eventually reap a harvest, so in like manner when you practice the give way in your daily Christian life, you will also reap a reward.

### **God's Spirit Empowers**

To assume that we can attain this noble love for mankind by our own strength is a serious and tragic mistake. We are not born with this kind of godly love. Nor is it an emotion we can work up or create within ourselves. True giving love is a gift of God bestowed by His Holy Spirit. Romans 5:5 says, *'And hope maketh not ashamed; because the love of God is shed abroad in our hearts by the Holy Spirit which is given unto us.'* Therefore, the first step in attaining God's love is to ask Him for it (Luke 11:1-3). Pray earnestly for the power to replace the stranglehold of carnal, self love with God's divine, spiritual love. Then start practicing it. You will discover to your amazement that as you walk in faith a transformation will occur in your attitude and outlook. Giving will become a delightful pleasure — an experience that you will actually enjoy.

### **Be Thankful and Act**

How marvelous are God's ways, and how thankful you should be for such wonderful knowledge! By the simple act of giving you not only fulfil God's law of love, but you also set in motion a principle of life that blesses all within your sphere of influence. Who would have ever dreamed that the simple act of giving could be one of the most powerful forces for good in the universe! It is the rule by which God exists and sustains all of creation. It is a graphic description of His loving, righteous and holy character.

Why don't you resolve today to embark on a new adventure of giving? Strive to become a source of good to all with whom you come in contact — a beacon of light to this morbid, dark and sinful world. Remember that true love is the give principle set in motion. Make it a constant, daily goal to practice this godly attitude — give!

-END-





## **CHAPTER 59**

### ***HOW CHRIST EDUCATED HIS DISCIPLES***

#### **1. THE EDUCATION OF THE DISCIPLES WAS UPPERMOST IN CHRIST'S MIND.**

- a. More than half of His recorded words are addressed to them.
- b. Gradually and steadily His ministry resolved itself into the definite work of training the twelve.
- c. Many miracles were wrought exclusively for their instruction.
- d. One-third of the parables were addressed directly to them.
- e. The last year and a half of His ministry was spent in intensive training.
- f. Christ realized they were to be witnesses of His life and example and would later carry the gospel into all the world.

#### **2. MOST OF THEIR EDUCATION CAME THROUGH DIRECT CONTACT AND ASSOCIATION WITH HIMSELF.**

- a. They watched, observed and absorbed everything He said and did.
- b. They saw Him handle thousands of problems and little occurrences throughout His daily life.
- c. Slowly and steadily they were transformed into His likeness.
- d. They listened to His teachings and absorbed His values.
- e. Like the slow process of nature they came to act, believe and think as He did.
- f. Through association and companionship they received vital training.

#### **3. CHRIST'S EYE WAS NEVER OFF THE DISCIPLES — HE WAS ALWAYS LOOKING FOR AN OPPORTUNITY TO MAKE A POINT.**

- a. To correct a misconception.
- b. To rehearse a lesson forgotten.
- c. To point it out and clarify the erroneous thinking of the religious leaders of their day.
- d. To explain His actions if the disciples were ever in doubt.

#### **4. CHRIST BELIEVED IN HIS DISCIPLES AND MADE THEM FEEL CONFIDENT THEY WOULD SUCCEED.**

- a. He expressed belief in their abilities and assured them they would make good.
- b. He knew their doubts and anxieties because of their lack of formal education and experience.
- c. Yet, He communicated to them the feeling He would help them and see them through to the end.

#### **5. HE ASKED QUESTIONS AND ENCOURAGED FEEDBACK AND INTERCHANGE.**

- a. This approach disclosed His constant interest in the disciples' progress.
- b. It also shook them out of lethargic habits of mind and made them think for themselves.
- c. This type of question-and-answer interchange is one of the most powerful means of teaching.
- d. It reveals the weak spots in understanding, as well as reinforces the strong.

#### **6. CHRIST DESIRED THAT THEY ASK HIM QUESTIONS.**

- a. When the disciples were still in doubt, He wanted to know so that He could more completely ground them in truth.
- b. Quite a considerable portion of the gospels is occupied with their queries and Jesus' explanations.
- c. He never reacted in anger or with impatience whenever they grilled Him in unclear areas or inquired about something they didn't comprehend.

#### **7. JESUS TAUGHT THEM HOW TO THINK AND OBSERVE ACCURATELY.**

- a. This was one of His great hallmarks as a teacher — He caused them to look below the surface and think things out.
- b. He urged them to question current-day opinions and ideas and never to accept so-called truth on mere assumptions.
- c. He taught them how to reason, how to investigate and how to test all present forms of thought in pursuit of truth.

**8. HE NEVER INDULGED IN ABUSIVE SPEECH OR SARCASM.**

- a. He treated them as mature adults and guarded against intimidation that would have shaken their confidence.
- b. He held their self-respect and dignity in highest esteem.
- c. Christ knew that to ridicule them would be fatal to their education.
- d. He did express disappointment at times which implied that He expected better things of them.
- e. But He never showed signs of impatience or scorn for their incapacity, just the disappointment of a teacher whose scholars aren't doing their best, who knows they can do better if they can only try harder.
- f. When called for, Christ openly rebuked them for presumptuous or other sins hurtful to their character.

**9. CHRIST ENCOURAGED REST AFTER DIFFICULT AND LENGTHY SESSIONS TO LET THE LESSONS SINK IN.**

- a. All good teachers know that the time of rest that follows a period in which new matter has been taken into the mind is vital and necessary for mental development.
- b. Conceptions then become more clear and complete and solidifies a sure lodgement in the mind.
- c. Thus, He tried to avoid distractions before His ideas had time to root.
- d. The Bible implies that Christ took the disciples away for a rest after strenuous work and much teaching.

**10. CHRIST ENCOURAGED THE DISCIPLES TO BE THEMSELVES AND TO RETAIN THEIR INDIVIDUALITY.**

- a. He did not make them copies after one pattern.
- b. That which was native to each man and marked him off from all others He carefully preserved.
- c. He intensified in each disciple the desire to develop his own personality and to follow with vigor his own natural gifts.

**11. HE INSTILLED IN EACH MAN A DEEP SENSE OF PERSONAL RESPONSIBILITY.**

- a. One of Christ's great principles — always present — was His carefulness to keep alive in each disciple a deep sense of responsibility.
- b. He taught them to guard against every defect, for their own followers would copy them — faults and all.

**12. CHRIST USED 'PROGRESSIVE ASSIMILATION' AS AN ADVANCED FORM OF TEACHING.**

- a. This is called the 'experimental method' or giving them greater challenges as they were able to receive them.
- b. Something was proposed which they had to solve for themselves.
- c. A deep mystery, or a parable arrested their attention — they were asked to solve it.
- d. Christ taxed their faculties to the utmost.
- e. He knew that a problem thought out and solved was better for their development in their later stages of training than giving the answer ready-made.
- f. In following this procedure of 'progressive assimilation' He was preparing His disciples to face virtually any challenge the devil and the world may hurl at them.

**13. THEY LEARNED BY DOING.**

- a. Christ didn't do everything for the disciples, but left something for them to do themselves.
- b. They weren't to be just spoon-fed throughout their training or mere passive recipients of His teaching.
- c. They were to go out and take part with Him in the very Work itself.
- d. They must now put to use the knowledge they had learned and bear the brunt of responsibility.
- e. Effective teaching never stops with theory; it goes on into training and practice.
- f. In the case of Christ's disciples, He moved them steadily along these two paths.

**14. CHRIST ALWAYS HAD IN MIND THEIR MISSION AFTER HIS DEATH.**

- a. Their training must be thorough and complete.
- b. No stone must be left unturned until they were ably qualified and prepared to enter their calling.
- c. Christ covered all the essentials so that His men were fully ready and able.
- d. They knew what to do and were confident, with God's help, they could do it.
- e. The only thing lacking was God's Spirit, which they would receive within a few days.
- f. With this last ingredient, they would now go forth with might and power and shake the world.

## CHAPTER 60

### **ABUSING FRIENDSHIPS**

*“A man that hath friends must show himself friendly: and there is a friend that sticketh closer than a brother” (Prov. 18:24).*

I can think of no earthly resource more valuable than a close, abiding friend. Money is a necessary commodity and we couldn't survive for long without it. But the trust and support, the love and loyalty of a true friend is by far the greater asset.

It's a great feeling to know you have a person to whom you can go at any time for any thing — without reluctance. You may need to borrow a tool, use his car to run an errand or even ask him to do it for you, in an emergency. You may need his honest counsel and encouragement when you are feeling down and out. You may even need to call on him during the night. Yes, it's great to have individuals with whom you can confide the innermost secrets of your life — someone you can trust, respect and truly rely on.

To quote an anonymous poet on friendship:

*“A friend is a person who is for you always... He wants nothing from you except that you be yourself. He is the one being with whom you can feel safe. With him you can utter your heart, its badness and its goodness. Like the shade of a great tree in the noonday heat is a friend. Like the home port with your country's flag flying after a long journey is a friend. A friend is an impregnable citadel of refuge in the strife of existence...He is the antidote to despair, the elixir of hope, the tonic for depression... Give to him without reluctance.”*

Which brings me to the point I want to make: take care that we do not abuse the kindness of a friend and take unfair advantage of his willingness to serve. To do so could lead to resentment and contempt.

The key, I believe, in preventing the possible dissolution of a friendship is to make sure that we balance out our receiving with giving. That is, do as much for a friend (or even more) as he does for us. I am not implying that we keep a notebook of good deeds done and return blessing for blessing. I am suggesting that over the long haul we mutually reciprocate services rendered.

Bringing this point down to a more specific application, we all have friends who are big-hearted and eager to do us favors or help us out. They make it so easy for us to call on them for their help. Their affectionate, kind gestures are not wrong. But if we take the service of our friends for granted and fail to give in return, they may eventually regret to hear us call or see us pull into their driveways. If a friendship degenerates to the point that one party constantly gets more than he gives — he ceases to be a true friend and becomes a “parasite.”

Christian love is a matter of give and take, a delicate balance of serving and being served. For example, a common abuse among single friends, and roommates especially, is the problem of borrowing. Many times we take it for granted that it's O.K. to borrow something without even asking. Or we take undue advantage of one who is always willing to lend whether it be money, clothing, or some other personal item. We must be sure not to take advantage of our friends and be sure that we are at least trying to give as much as we receive. Friendship is a two-way street.

Remember the example Jesus set when He washed the disciples' feet? In this simple act of

humility, He taught us a grand principle of love — that of serving as well as being served. Jesus pointed out to Peter that there are times to be served: *“Peter said unto him, thou shalt never wash my feet. Jesus answered him, if I wash thee not, thou has no part with me!”* (John 13:8)

To extend mutual respect, concern and service for others is a principle which, if properly applied, will insure lasting friendships.

In summary, whatever we do ought to be done with fairness and equality so that as Paul wrote, *“For I may not that other men be eased and you be burdened: but by an equality, that now at this time your abundance may be a supply for their want, and that their abundance may also be a supply for your want: That there be equality!”* (II Cor. 8:13-14).

— END —

## APPENDIX 1

### **FINANCES AND MARRIAGE PREPARATION**

Dr. Herman Hoeh

23-Jul-1977

*(partial transcript)*

I presume that this can be heard well enough. Is there any way of checking to be sure that things are in proper order in the other room in terms of hearing? I was passed one question and it is possible that, based on what I am going to discuss there may be questions elicited. There are two ways of doing it: if we find that questions seem especially appropriate that are focused on our discussion today, then I should like to handle those questions; if on the other hand there are questions that you are interested in that do not directly focus on this particular occasion, since we tend to dismiss at approximately noon or a half hour before other services here, I'll be happy to spend a little time out in the area between the Music and the Science areas and discuss any questions of a general nature.

I had a chance two evenings ago to be a guest with my wife with a number of you, some of whom I see here, in the home of Beverly Glenn, and we discussed certain matters pertaining to older people, a number of whom are either widows or whose husbands are not in the church, and not with their families. We had some discussion otherwise, as well, that I thought might be of some help, to give some form to the general statements made in the letter you received. In thinking it over what I would like to do is take an approach that will, as much as possible, avoid any fundamental repetition with material that might have been covered before, and perhaps give an entirely new overview, something much broader in perspective than the general concepts that we have of dating and human relationships.

First, I should like to pose the general question: Is dating itself a fundamental aspect of our human relationships between the sexes, or is it only one aspect that should be seen in a much broader whole. I think this is important. First of all, there are a number of scriptures in the Bible that I should like to dwell upon, many of them in fact deal with the broader perspective and not with dating.

For example, if we were to go through a number of illustrations as well as the law what we would discover is this — that dating is in terms of the acquaintanceship fundamentally not discussed in the Bible. There are certain rules which are discussed in terms of conduct when we meet one another, but there are other aspects far more important that we have generally overlooked, and which, if taken into consideration might well affect the whole view of dating in society, not to mention the Church of God. I am going to deal fundamentally today with an aspect that actually transcends dating, but which is related to it. It is a word that you're all familiar with. It's the subject of money. Because whether you like it or not, the fact remains — interestingly enough — that the question of money and morality are linked together in the relationship between men and women. If each one were properly cared for, questions that often would arise in matters of dating would be much more readily handled. I should, first of all, like to take the Bible as it moves along in a story.

Very little is given until we come to the account in the case of Abraham. Here I would like to give you some indication of situations that existed in times past, so that we can better understand what the picture is of society then, and what God chose to put into the Bible. In a certain sermon, long ago, on the subject of tithing, Mr. Dart made an interesting comment, that one has to bear in mind that what we have in the Bible is there for a reason because there is no reason to assume that God would have wasted time on material that has no bearing on our lives. Therefore, we may take it as important that there is something fundamental in meaning in any event or example that is given in the scripture. We know that society varies from one generation to another, and many of you who are older know to

what extent it probably has varied two or three times in your lifetime. Therefore we may presume that there are variables which, if not discussed in the Bible, are not fundamental, but there may be other things in the Bible that become fundamental so that we may understand better how to cope with the variations in society with which we have to live.

The first and most important one is in Genesis 24. This is the case of Abraham taking his servant, asking him under oath to obtain a wife from Abraham's family in Mesopotamia for son Isaac. I would like to point up a number of things that we perhaps have read over and then focus in on because I think it will help a great deal. First of all, we just picked the story up in verse 4. The servant was asked to take a wife for son Isaac. Verse 5 says, "what if the woman will not be willing to follow me?" What we discover here is something significant in a story. We know that in societies there are those cases where women are completely free to make their own decisions once they are of age, as in our western society, or in strict orthodox Hindu society where women are never free to make a decision of a husband, or let us say, in Christian India where women are free to say "No," but normally do not initiate original recommendations, which are entered into most often by parents. So we have variations. Interestingly enough the first clear example that we have here in detail is one in which it is recognized that a woman has a right to say "No" in terms of any representative of the husband and presumably also therefore in terms of any recommendations of the woman's father. The first thing then we do learn by example in the family of Abraham, as distinct from what it was like in Sodom, what it might have been like in some Gentile country, is that the people whom God chose to use as the beginning of the foundation of His church, nation, and society, has a custom, and that's the way it is presented, in which a woman, irrespective of parents' wishes, does have a right to say "No." It does not say the servant said to Abraham "peradventure the father of the woman." It speaks of the woman's rights herself. Now this is what I want to get over as a beginning picture.

This is important in terms of a situation which we too often do not have, and that is where the implication is also that the parents are involved. Today our society leaves it strictly to the woman. The background of the story will bring the parent in, but in any case, the woman has a measure of freedom that must never be overlooked. We move along now in the story.

The servant, in verse 10, took ten camels and came to his master, and necessarily much of this was for feed to take care of the animals en route. They weren't loaded with ten camels of diamonds. When the servant meets the girl, and I'm presuming you have already read the story a sufficient number of times that you remember Rebekah came to the well at an unusual period when this man wanted his camels watered. And the man took a golden ring of half a shekel weight and two bracelets for her hand of ten shekels of gold and gave them to the girl whose family he had inquired of. Rebekah then goes to her brother verse 29, whose name is Laban. Now at this point we will suddenly discover that Rebekah's and Laban's father seems not to have been around and presumably not living, when we see the rest of the story. So Rebekah was essentially under the supervision of her brother. And this brings up an interesting picture of responsibility. I think today, in our society, there is a tendency to have the kind of freedom that we see reflected in single women along streets hitchhiking and accepting a ride even from an unknown single man. There is basically no feeling of responsibility by brother for sister in our society when the father is dead. This is, in my estimation, therefore, around us a society that has gone beyond good judgment. What we are picturing here is a family relationship that, when the mother is alone and the father is dead, the oldest brother therefore, who is at home, becomes responsible for the care and in fact decisions of sisters.

I have an interesting illustration of that where a surviving brother in Fiji, who is a Hindu — my Muslim friend Abdul Azees (sp?) found husbands for his sisters, who were responsible men, who could care for them, because his own father and the sisters' father, was dead. Now, it came to pass when Laban saw the earrings and the bracelets upon the sister's hands, and when he heard the words of Rebekah, that of course his eyes lit up. Laban was an unusual person and very perceptive when it came to things like that. The servant brought forth jewels of silver, we are told in verse 53, and jewels of gold, and raiment and gave them to Rebekah. So, in other words, it's as if in a sense the

prospective husband's father's family does do certain — shall I use the simple term — nice things, in this case reflected in jewelry. It may be reflected in some other manner, or it reflects a certain interest and solicitation for a prospective daughter-in-law. He gave them to Rebekah, but he also gave to her brother, as it would have been the father, and to her mother, precious things. And in turn he was entertained.

Ancient custom has its parallels to this account. In this account it is not called by any specific term, a bride price, but what is found here by example in the society of Abraham is, in fact, essentially equivalent to many of the customs in society that used to be extant and, in fact, are still extant in some lands. I will show you there is a change later that takes place. And that is that when a family loses a daughter the family is compensated, for the premise is that the daughter is responsible for no small amount of the house work that now the mother is not, in fact, doing, but that would have to pass to some servant. In other words, a daughter who is accepted into another family is essentially compensated for. Now, our society has varied very greatly from this, but I would only point up the significance, at least of the custom as it began. We will take a look at various customs. Remember this is not a law. It is a custom. But it recognizes something that I think will help you. The woman was not earning her own living alone, somewhere off in another city. She was, in fact, assisting in the caring of family responsibilities. Now, our society differs appreciably from this because we often live in little apartments and we don't even have room to take care of the children much after high school is finished. The society originally, however, was predicated on the premise that a woman's responsibility significantly was to take care of things in the family that the mother was not always able to do, or it freed her to do certain things that she might not otherwise have been able to.

The next step would be in this sense to present gifts, that whether we think of it in terms of a bride price, or merely a gift that is an estimation of the quality and character of the individual, that is, an extension of the idea of esteem, is incidental. In any case, her family received at this time certain things from a prospective husband's family. Now, the custom in other societies was often that if the woman, for some reason, completely displeased the man, such things as were presented to Rebekah's brother and her mother were returned. That is what is called "bride price." That is not gone into here because I presume we are dealing with a society, freer than the strict enforcement of such rules; this is a family relationship that we find presented. Of course, the woman being a type of the church, did please her husband. In any case, we do recognize that in this environment, and this is what I'm getting to, that the girl played a significant role in her father's or her mother's family, in this case because the father was dead, and she was not at the same liberty that our society is today.

When we go through the examples of the Bible we will find some variations over periods of time. But there will always be a significant theme running through it. That's why I brought out the issue of money in the first place, which might seem rather unusual. You see, there was no opportunity to date but there was a recognition that not only was the father's — in this case, the brother's and the mother's family — to be compensated for such a daughter as Rebekah was found to be. But it implies that she herself had the opportunity while in her father's home to have her own sources, shall I say, of food and clothing and shelter; that she was, in fact, you see, cared for by the brother, and so we have the implication that in going to meet a young man by the name of Isaac, whom she had not yet met, that what was given by the servant in some way also would reflect the care that Rebekah should have in her new husband's home. Thus, whether we think of it in terms of the African concept of Labolo (sp?) or bride price, whether we think of it in terms of the generosity of the groom's parents as reflecting their capacity to provide for her. In any case what is fundamental in this initial situation is the fact that Isaac's got money. I want to point out how many problems in marriages arise, not because of sexual incompatibility but because the money aspect or the ability to care for another is overlooked, and sex is thereafter often used as a tool to punish; the woman denies, the man insists, or sometimes he denies, it all depends on your attitude, but it is more and more a recognized factor that many of the problems surrounding sex in marriage are not caused by incompatibility because we're not properly wired, it's caused by other things, and fundamentally money. I hope I get that over clearly, because indeed you will find this to be far more often true. Ignorance is very unlikely as a fundamental cause, especially in the Church of God with the literature we have available.

But look at the strange phenomenon here; we don't have Isaac and Rebekah dating at great length, getting acquainted, each comparing the other with a list of 60 things you must find in your mate. What is fundamental is the ability to care for the needs of the woman financially. I think you have to bear this in mind. You can't overlook it even though there may be variations in the background of the story compared to another one I'm going to read. This is fundamental.

We're going to move now to an entirely different situation, not picture of the wealthy, but a picture of the poor, in the law as distinct from in an example, and I think it is interesting that when it came to family exchanges and relationships among those who have money, that is who are able to provide, we have an example; there's far greater freedom. When it comes to poverty we have law, because when it comes to poverty there is the need to be sure that certain things are not misunderstood and they're properly enforced. Poverty— Exodus 21: "If you buy a Hebrew servant six years he shall serve you and the seventh he will go out free. If he comes in by himself he shall go out by himself. If he were married his wife will go out with him. If his master has given him a wife" — I think this is significant, too — "and she shall have borne him sons or daughters, the wife and her children that she shall have from this man shall be her master's." It doesn't say her husband's. "And he, at the end of the six years, or in the seventh, shall go out free." He has, in part, been paid by having a wife and children; he has, in part, been paid in salary whatever it seems to have been required on the basis of his job. "Now, if the servant shall plainly say — I love my master, my wife, and my children; I will not go out free, then his master shall bring him to the judges and he shall be brought to the door of the court — so to speak — and his master shall put a hole in his ear, like women who have earrings, and he shall serve him and the Hebrew forever" is a clear reference in Jewish tradition to the jubilee. That is, he shall serve him to that point in time with the family until the jubilee is up and he shall have the chance to return to his inheritance. You see, he's a Hebrew servant in the first place. He returns to his inheritance, at which point he can provide for her.

Now let us note the impact. Let us reverse the law and see what we like to think it to say, which it does not. "If the master give him a wife and she has borne him sons or daughters, the wife and the children shall be the servant's and he shall go out with them" is not what it says, but it's what most people would think. The premise of the latter would be predicated on (1) that it is more important for a man to have a wife for reasons of sex than it is to have the woman and the children properly cared for, because the presumption is the man not only not returning to his inheritance yet, he in fact has little to support her and further didn't even have the money to buy her freedom. The law therefore, interestingly, presumes that it is more important for the children to be cared for and the wife by the master than to have the marriage continued. We don't have a servant-master relationship. We have the corporation-labor union relationship today, but the principle that underlies it is very significant. We have too many fathers who have turned over their daughters to a man who could not provide either for his daughter or the children properly. The law presumes that there is a fundamental right of a woman to have herself cared for even as a servant. Now granted, the woman belonged to the master and she could have been free if, indeed, some one of her relatives or the young man's had come into money somewhere in the past six years and could have bought her freedom. That is not discussed. The presumption here is that there was no such money. What is significant is that the history of many church decisions in the past was a situation in which the church took over the responsibility of caring for a woman and her children while she was living with a ne'er-do-well husband. We felt, for instance, that the tithe we call the third tithe for the poor and the needy and those who are otherwise incapacitated should take care of situations because we assumed the marriage had precedence over this responsibility. And I can cite you a case that I am aware of where a man probably didn't earn any more than \$75.00 in a year because he couldn't get up off his chair often enough to get to work. His problem was not in his legs; it was in his brain. And Paul said such a man if he will not work should not eat. The church misunderstood. A woman has a right to be cared for, not to be a sexual servant to a husband — I'm speaking plainly — where she has to earn her living, take care of her children for a husband who can do neither, while she serves him in bed. This kind of thing is not what the law gives as an example. I want to make it plain because, indeed, we have often emphasized the thing that was not clear.



Now, all scripture is given by inspiration. We do look at the law today not in terms of a covenant which was administered then by Levites and Judges, but in terms of the intent and purpose of the law. And the intent and purpose is to tell us when there is such poverty that a man has to sell himself like a servant, which is equivalent to say that when young men are in debt and want to get married, and really can't get out of debt, the father is not using very good judgment when he turns his daughter over to such a man. The example of the law is given. What a father does in terms of permission granted, or what the girl wants to do, may indeed be her decision, but I think it is fundamental here to recognize that the issue was not whether they liked each other and got acquainted with each other through dating, the issue really is whether this man had the capacity to take care of her needs, and the order in which they are listed in verse 10.

A man has a duty to the woman sexually. That is the third in order; the first is food, and the second raiment, and raiment certainly would include housing, but the fact you live with a man already presumes that in the first place. This means that she is properly to be cared for, and any man who feeds himself, as some do, and do not take care of the wife and children in terms of food and clothing, is not doing his duty. In which case, if he fails in any of these, even a servant woman was allowed to go free if, of course, this was the master's son. Not someone else's.

The emphasis therefore is clearly on something commonly overlooked. Too many young men in the church today have a list of many things they would like their wives to be. I think we ought to analyze and think as to what kind of personality, what kind of mind, what kind of family and all, but I think we need to take note that what is required of the man is not to decide what he wants in the woman, but to decide what he is going to do to make it possible for her to live in a situation that is comfortable and pleasant and will be good for the children. The responsibility of the man is not so much the judging of what kind of woman he wishes; it is that he has taken care of his part in terms of his capacity to earn a living and to prove what he can do. Yet I frankly think that the average person in our American society has gone in another direction. We have, instead, emphasized and glamorized handsomeness, beauty — with respect to the two sexes — a vacation in the sun, and then all the other possibilities, you know, that you can enjoy without ever realizing or showing on TV how you pay for what you are using. You know, all the products are shown, but never how you work to earn the money to buy the products. And I do believe that very little of men's minds today have been properly educated as it should be in terms of realizing whether the job you have is going to please you and resolve, I think, three areas — financial, which is important; the intellectual, so that you are happy with your job; and a third component for converted people, that it also provides some special need and service, which is the spirit of love, agape, to others and to society as a whole. Now, if a man thinks of those things and is prepared, you see, to keep himself, that his mind is alert and he has the ability to work with other men or women on the job, then I think it is quite clear that he has the capacity to do his part, but we so often want to think whether the woman is going to do her part, and I'm sure many women, of course, are thinking on what the man's responsibility is, but I think we need to focus in — and I'm speaking as a man here — I think many men need to focus in more on their responsibility, and they're likely to find that they will discover a woman who is taking care of hers also.

Now, with this in mind, we will go to another area which I think is significant. There is always the chance that in a society where there is freedom to date, that emotional difficulties can arise and we have moral problems. In Deuteronomy 22 I will pick up one in particular of a number of illustrations. We are given law but we are also given here manners of administering judgment in order to prevent, in a carnal minded society, the continuance of any fundamental problems. And to start with one that is very late in the sequence in Deuteronomy specifically verse 28. "If a man find a damsel who is a virgin, is not betrothed, and lay hold on her and lie with her and they be found," or discovered, not necessarily in the act, but that it be discovered that this has occurred, then the man who has done this shall give to the damsel's father a certain sum. In this case 50 shekels of silver was the sum. She shall be his wife because he has humbled her. He may not put her away all his days.

I want to take a look at some of the implications of this. First implication, the girl is a virgin.

That's not merely an implication, it's a statement of fact, but it implies that we are not dealing here with a prostitute or a loose woman in the village, or in the city today. And this one is not betrothed. That is, not involved with someone else. And involved in my term here means interested in although I find that the term involved today means practically anything up to sexual intercourse; at least that's the way it finally comes to me when young people tell the story. And I have to say, well, will you explain what involved means. And then you finally get the picture.

In this case an interesting thing occurred that I think is very important and, in fact, might well be a solution to an increasing problem among young people in the church and/or any college campus, whether Ambassador or any public institution. In this case, we are clearly told that a man who is involved with a young woman who has previously not had sex relations with anyone, is required to marry her, and he was not allowed thereafter to divorce her all his days. Which presumes that there were other kinds of situations in which a man could divorce a woman. This is a very significant matter. In another verse, which I won't turn to, there is a further statement — well, maybe I can, just quickly — so you see also one other part of the story — in Exodus 22, "if a man entice a maid" — verse 16 — "who is not betrothed and lie with her, he will endow her to be his wife." The word "endow" here is the equivalent of the 50 shekels of silver which forty years later was a fixed sum, but here he implied that a certain sum of money again was given to the girl's family, a certain sum of money was given to the girl's family in compensation for their loss of her work, services. If her father utterly refused to give her to him, he shall pay money according to the dowry of virgins, he still had to pay, but nevertheless she then was not given to him. This implies an added thought, once stated was not repeated in Deuteronomy, which was given about forty years later. It implies something significant that a father had the right to say "no" to a prospective marriage, and to make it stick. Now remember this is God's society. In our society once a girl is of age whatever a father may wish doesn't necessarily carry through, because there is no way to enforce it, you understand. So what we're saying is, that there are some examples in the Bible that show what would be best in handling problems of such a society, and they may have equivalents today, and there are characteristics of our society that would be so different it wouldn't even be done. But in a situation like this, a father is apparently one who has authority to say no to a young man because he is responsible to see that his daughter is cared for. There is no indication anywhere that I know of in the Bible that a father had to exercise such a right in terms of his son. He exercised it in terms of his daughter. I want you to get the point. I believe that one of the fundamental weaknesses today in the Church is this — that parents are not concerned for the financial welfare of their daughters as they should be.

I will say that I believe some parents are. I chanced, as I said it, to have my eyes fall on Miss Herrmann, here, whose parents I know very well, and since her father does correspond with me in lengthy epistles, I respond with postcard length items. I know that he has been very careful in this society to see that they were all able to earn their living, that is they were able to sustain themselves. I think this is a very important aspect that too many parents overlook. Either you provide the money, or you provide the skills for earning a living. You see that a daughter is properly educated and able to make her way and never need to be unemployed. Now I am emphasizing this because I know some girls marry fellows because they have no other way to turn. It's a whole lot easier just to rely on the first fellow who comes along. If a father properly cares for his daughter in terms of, first, financial survival — we could say, you know, blessings and prosperity in a wealthier society, but now it's practically a matter of survival, we'll use that term, she is therefore not forced in the same manner to find some man. I know young girls, I've dealt with cases that involved divorces, sometimes girls were turned loose at 16, 17, 18 to work in restaurants, on tables, and I don't say that's a wrong occupation, I'm coming to a point, these were usually the 24-hour types where you're working your shift, where truck drivers and all sorts of people came in who were really the riff-raff of society, and they would be dated sometimes by the people who would come through, and one of the first, second, or third fellow who comes along they married because they didn't want to have to wait on table this way all the rest of their lives, which was a very, very menial living. I think this is very unfortunate, when girls are turned loose by parents. And this goes back and forth to another aspect — family planning. Families should plan the number of children that they are about to care for, not merely provide for them, until they get

of age and then they have to earn a living, for the simple reason that there is no further way for father and mother to care. I think this is very sad. But it's the way many of our own people have come into the Church with this kind of background.

What I am setting up here, in fact, whether we realize it or not, are some interesting views in terms of parental responsibility that takes some of the financial pressure off individuals when it comes to dating. You would be surprised how often that's a factor in terms of decisions that girls rush into. Not the only one, but it is a factor. So here we have a situation, again indicated in these two verses, that if the man has a daughter who is a virgin, not otherwise interested in someone else, or spoken for, and if she has been involved, it was the requirement of the society of God's state, God's Church, that they be married except that a father who felt that the man was so worthless wasn't even worthy to be his son-in-law or to take care of her, and he had the option to say "no," why we have emphasized the option. But we do see here now one other thought. It is my view that we would cut down quite a lot on fornication among young people in local churches, and in society as a whole of course, and in the college, if this were enforced and if the young man suddenly discovered that the girl he ruined, and I will use that term, hurt emotionally and/or physically, who has previously been a virgin, he now has to marry. We have never enforced this. Naturally, a father can say "no," but there was a time when we dealt with it only in terms of expulsion. But I think we have not seen to what extent, when God gave this judgment He didn't merely impose a penalty, He imposed a penalty plus the fact that any man who would do that deserved to have no other choice, not only at the present time forced to marry her, but for the rest of his life. I am going to have to draft a letter. I'm drafting it to Mr. David Antion because we've talked on the phone in response to last Sabbath's sermon of his in which he pointed up the importance of the subject and our need to evaluate what to do. It may or may not be the basis of the discussion of some administrators in the College, that's not for me to decide at all, but I do believe that it is significant now for us to realize that the law in fact gives an example of how you solve a problem that can happen on dates.

Thus far nothing is said as to whether you should or shouldn't date. It is presumed you get acquainted, it is presumed that there are marriages in which you haven't gotten acquainted, and here is a case where you do get acquainted — the date itself is incidental. Society may have it or may not have it in terms of opportunities that are available. That is not a question of black or white or yes or no. It is a question, rather, of the capacity to provide for the girl — that's the financial aspect — and, on the moral aspect, the responsibility that if any fellow does this to a virgin he doesn't deserve any other choice. And he ought to be required to marry her apart from the one option. Now, there are necessarily in our society or, there is another option — the state cannot enforce it nor therefore can the Church, but therefore another penalty is going to have to be in some way exacted that has been far too laxly thought of. That's not my responsibility, but it clearly involves what we would recognize as this and I believe that some of our problem would disappear.

Over the years, as we have already seen between Abraham and Moses, there is a great variation between the capacity of the fathers, of the boy's family to compensate, which might be parallel with the bride price. There develops later in society — and here you note you shall endow her — let me go back here to Exodus again; the terms will vary but the implication here in Exodus 22 he was to pay money according to the dowry of virgins, the sense of it here is that any woman has a right when she enters marriage to have a certain amount of money. Now, first the implication was the husband's father's family provided for it and compensation was given to the bride's family. Later the development went from bride price to a kind of dowry where the girl's family provided certain sums for the girl, when it became commonplace that many men could not do their work and also take care of some of the more necessary and personal things and the need for survival. That's why in the case of Exodus 21 you have the implication that the master provides. The master provides, and if the young fellow cannot he has no right even to continue with her in that particular kind of situation. In our society regulated by the state that could not be enforced. But we are dealing here with a very strong implication that, indeed, a woman has rights. Now there we discover that there is the need, in other words, of a woman to have a certain sum set aside. The damsel's father got the 50 shekels in this case. It's called

the dowry of virgins in the other. The meaning of the term, in terms of custom, is that at first the father kept it as compensation for the loss, and later on it was the girl who received it from the father in order that she would have what she needed that would take care of her needs. Now, this is what we call, later on in society, the dowry, which enabled a woman who was married in many cases to take care of herself in terms of her own needs.

Now this is quite different from the modern American society, but it is very significant because we're drifting into a direction — and remember many of the differences in society are matters of drift and circumstance — we're coming to the place and where commonly today we have the husband/the wife both working. Right? And the children are cared for by third parties — the schools, or babysitters, and then later on we pay taxes to take care of social workers to supervise our delinquent children. This is the way things develop. Now the way God set it up is that the girl is cared for, and later on the term dowry of virgins had reference to moneys from the girl's family that went with the daughter to care for her so that she would be cared for when it became more commonly difficult for every man to take care of every need, and in this case what was very interesting in Jewish custom, which I think is important for you to know, that the woman's dowry could be loaned to her husband, in which case she got title to any land he had and compensation for whatever cash or jewelry or other things he used of the dowry. This meant that if the man, in any case, repudiated his wife for whatever cause, she was able with that dowry to take care of her needs. Today it might be reflected in a woman's capacity to earn a living.

The unfortunate problem about earning a living when you have children is the fact that you also probably earn money and the potentiality of delinquency in the great metropolitan areas of our society. But you could do it both ways. A man may well find that his wife has justified reasons to work, and I am not opposed to women having to work so long as they are not reflecting against the well-being of children. It is my conviction in this case that if children do come that a woman has the responsibility to take care of those children, the man to work, and it should have been analyzed in the first place by her parents to see that she had enough so that her living standard, and the style in which the children would be reared is a good example, would be appropriate for your family. There is a great responsibility then that should have rested on the parents of the girl when the responsibility or the onus for it passed from the boy who married, you see. At first the responsibility seems to have been on the boy and his family to make the proper provision. When that varied it came to be the responsibility more of the girl's parents or uncles — that is, family — to care for those extra needs. There is no basis here of what we would call alimony, that when the woman left, the man was not constantly having to pay alimony and be reminded of the past marriage if he remarried. I think that's one of the unfortunate things of the concept of alimony. It is based, again, on the idea of credit. You are constantly having to put into the future payments that ought to have been made in advance. Alimony is the basis of caring for a woman on credit, that's what it is. You're paying after the divorce to care for her, where in reality the law, the example, and many traditional societies put an emphasis on the parents, to see that the girl was cared for in this kind of situation where the responsibility was not so much on the man. In either case whether it fell to the boy or girl's family the implication is that the responsibility was the parents. I think this is what has been neglected in our society. We have passed almost every duty to children and not to parents. Thus it became possible to multiply children to take care of the parents' work and yet never to have enough to set the boy or the girl up, shall I say, in business or in homes. I think this is one of the tragedies of the black ghetto, one of the greatest tragedies of the black ghetto. It is a growing tragedy in the non-middle and upper class white community. It is even an increasing problem in the middle class society, black or white, or Chicano, or whatever you wish. We are coming today to a place where more and more the capacity for a boy or girl to survive is dependent on the boy or girl and there is nothing that has been set aside. I think it's very difficult to set it aside today. Therefore an alternative, and the only valid alternative, to follow the implication of the examples of scripture, is to see that the boy or girl are properly trained and educated and have the proper personality and skills and initiative — they all go together — to be able to earn a living independently. I do not recommend this, in my estimation, as the best but in our society it is the only alternative to the fulfillment of a requirement. We have placed far too much responsibility on chil-

dren to get started. This is one of the reasons, by the way, that most young people do nothing but rent for the first ten years of their lives, or twenty, and some never get out of renting. I think it would be very helpful in this case for parents to be able to provide for the daughter either a husband who has the capacity to own property, or to provide in money the capacity to invest so you no longer have to rent and live like poverty-stricken people for the rest of your life.

As it's turning out, I don't want to reveal unnecessary things — my second daughter was engaged the night of her graduation from high school. She is not a member of the Church. She is not baptized, as our older one. She hasn't made up her mind to be, and she is engaged to her hairdresser. She actually does artwork for him and her artwork, through him, has been exhibited in Palm Springs and Beverly Hills and locally here in Pasadena. It was one of those things that, you know, happens with dates. Many things can suddenly happen, but in this case he happens to have the kind of judgment where he's buying his own property, he is able to care for himself, he is quite able to sell what his skills are to others. In this case her skills are incidental except to support his. I am very happy at least that the situation is such that we are, in this case, dealing with a proper establishment of the home that will never have money as a fundamental problem. It is one of the great problems and sources of irritation in a family, even to this day even after people are converted.

With respect to the fact that there are some women who really want to earn their own living to get independent of their husbands, I am not addressing this as wisdom. That is not what I am referring to. We recognize that some women want to get a job so they can get some money so they can leave their husbands. That's one of the problems when a woman has to earn, as distinct from a society in which a woman is essentially cared for by husband and parents in the various stages of life. Nevertheless the implication is that a woman should have a certain measure of independence in terms of her capacity to survive. That is, she needs to be assured that she will be taken care of no matter what happens to her husband. We do it today in terms of insurance. That again is the credit system. Whereas God's would have had the sum of money initially provided, but this is the next best solution and therefore I think in the Church it is unfortunate if women have children, husbands are barely able to make food, clothing and rent, and there is no provision in case there is a loss either of the wife — who's going to care for the children when the father's working? — or the husband. So we have too many who have thrown themselves onto the Church when better judgment in advance could have been had. We grant that the purpose of this fund is to enable people who have difficulties and to help those people, but what we should do is to try to obviate the need in the first place of third tithe usage.

In the Book of Proverbs there is an interesting implication: Who can find a virtuous woman, her price is far above rubies — verse 10. The heart of her husband safely trusts in her. He has no need of spoil — that is taking money from somebody else who had abused his wife while he was gone — she will do him good and not evil — that is, she isn't going to use sex to get her way to deny her husband — she seeks wool and flax and works willingly in her hands. She has the capacity to shop. She is like the merchant ship. She brings her food from afar. She does the shopping both in terms of food and clothing. It doesn't preclude a man's function. She rises also while it is yet night and gives meat to her household and a portion to her maidens. Her husband, apparently, or she, had the capacity to hire somebody to do some things — we have people who hire people to work on lawns or care for other needs — this woman also got up early enough that breakfast was there in time and wasn't served to her in bed. She considers a field and begs her husband money to buy it? Is that what it says? Now this is what — look at this, we say this is a great chapter, but uh uh. We don't want this to happen to women. I'm speaking of too many men. This woman has her hands on sufficient money that she considers a field, may not even have said anything to her husband, and buys it. That's what is said here of a virtuous woman, who didn't spend her money, if you please, at movies and restaurant meals before they married until it's all gone. And with the fruit of her hands she plants on it a vineyard. That is, whether she did the planting, it's the fact that what she did with her money enabled her, shall I say, to buy the labor and buy the plants so that there was even a vineyard and she's apparently turning her money into a profit, or if you want to put it another way, she's putting her dowry to work. She girds her loins with strength and strengthens her arms — there are dainty women, as I say, my women at

least can push a piano around, and as I say, that's when I'm gone, then she pushes the piano; when I'm there it's amazing how much help she needs even with the light things. Now either she likes my company or she thinks I need the exercise. She perceives that her merchandise is good, her candle goes not out by night — that could have varied meanings. One can say she works into the night, you know they had to provide candles, there was no electricity in that day, but if a woman is so poor she doesn't even have candles and half the night is that we would now work, you know, the night averages 12 hours — you normally don't need more than 8 hours sleep, there are a few exceptions, that means that roughly one third of what we call night for an average year would be spent with candlelight in such a society, or electricity today. And this woman saw that that part of the time was available.

There are very poor and wretched societies where people sit outside of huts, there is no electricity, there is no candle, there is no work, there is only gossip. She lays her hands to the spindle and her hands take hold of the distaff — now in this case we have a woman who works at home, and I think one of the problems in our society is that we have created one in which women work away from the home instead of being able to do things in the home with the children if they're there. Now I grant when they're at school you might have an outside job successfully. But if you have to educate your children, and you're responsible as this society was for their literacy, then many of the things you make money from you would do at home. She stretches out her hand to the needy, not afraid of the snow, for her household — she works in the winter you see as well as the summer — and her husband is known in the gates. He apparently was a man who was a judge, or some fundamental function through the day, where he sits among the elders of the land. She makes fine linen and sells it, delivers girdles to the merchant. She's making money and it doesn't tell you how much she had to turn over to her husband. I think this is an interesting picture because we never looked at it. So I think it is important and it varies with the way families want to handle their needs. I think sometimes husbands handle most, sometimes wives do, and it will depend on whether you want to take the time as a man, or whether you want your wife to. Dr. Meredith was always very careful to see that most of the regular duties of the home passed to his wife and she was very capable of going out and buying furniture, very capable of buying clothing and food, and paying the bills and all things like that and they pooled their money. But in any case our family operates differently. My wife prefers that I pay the bills out of my money, which is proper. Her children rise up — verse 28 — and call her blessed. Her husband also, and he praises her. Many daughters have done virtuously but you exceed them all. This is really a slightly different picture than. I think many women in the Church have had of themselves. But, look, her motive was not to get even with her husband, to get a job to leave him, and to take the children, her motive went hand-in-hand with the character to utilize this money which meant that it was also something that could pass to her children, not to give her independence. You see, her motive is here proper. I'm mentioning this because we've sometimes had women who deliberately had another motive and purpose.

Now, when you look at this you are setting out, both in terms of finances and moral responsibility, a very remarkable difference in the background in which dating may occur, than most of us have ever thought. Am I coming clear to you? This implies a great responsibility on parents so that fellows and girls are not forced into situations due to finances. You know, the idea that two can eat cheaper than one. It's not true. Two eat more expensively than one, but less expensively than two separately. Two can live cheaper than one, no, but less expensively than two separately. And too many young people have been forced by finances into marriage situations. Now, in contrast, this doesn't mean that marriages necessarily are postponed. An interesting thing in society is, in the Jewish community, which represents the continuity of the Church of God, that marriages were often sometimes arranged when children were quite young — I say arranged — by parents. Normally, it was expected that the average Jewish man would have married, young man, would have married by age 20. We would regard today that marriage should be postponed until the earlier 20's toward the middle 20's. The reason for this is — and I think Mr. Armstrong's judgment is right — the reason for that is that we have created a system that enables boys in particular, and girls to no lesser extent, to remain infantile longer than they need to, for the boy hasn't had to work. He's only gone to school and wasted his time in the summer. You know how often this is the case, and the girl hasn't had to grind the food, see.

She's picked up a sack of Post Toasties, and she's gone to the movie and she's sat before television and she's been given money to take care of her little needs, she's had no sense of responsibility as she would have had in another society. So indeed whereas it would be possible for parents to care for things and still to have children marry comparatively young at 20, we have a situation where we have postponed the ability to make decisions, the ability to grow up, so that it is wiser to marry after college age.

I agree with Mr. Armstrong's evaluation of today's society, but in so doing we are also eating foods that tend to make for sexual maturity earlier, thus studies made in the armies of Napoleon and the Polish armies and the German armies a century and three quarters ago indicated that most women did not enter the state of puberty until about age 17. And many boys not until that age. And that maturity today is coming earlier and earlier, so it is down to the period of 13 to 14. This imposes, now look what happens, (1) we don't provide the financial resources, (2) we have fed ourselves food that enables us to mature earlier biologically, (3) we tend to postpone marriage which places a sexual emotional burden on young people for upwards of 5 to 7 years instead of merely 2 to 3, and then we turn our children loose to date freely without chaperones, in movie houses, in automobiles, they can go to Lake Arrowhead, or whatever it is that young people go in this area, see? And we turn loose of moral responsibility, we may talk about it briefly, but then we turn them loose and we are creating problems for ourselves. I haven't said that chaperones are necessary, I am saying that when we look at all this we are actually pulling all the underpinning out so that dates become sources of emotional problems. There are far too many. Therefore, dating, you see, is an incidental part of the picture if you have your moral and emotional control of yourself as you should have, and if you know in a sense financially the kind of person you're looking for and you see something of the quality of the other family, it wouldn't be very difficult at all to make right decisions after you get acquainted with people. So dating is an opportunity, but so many more things should be thought of apart from just the issue of dating. Then you will discover, in fact, that most of the problems that do come up will be so much more minimalized that you will be able I think to be more concerned for other people, you will have taken care of those things that worry you — or maybe that ought to — too many people don't let these financial things even come into their minds. But if we have taken care of — boys took care to see that their pockets were properly cared for and that fathers saw that the boys were able to get a start, and that the girl's parents were also careful and we have these things cared for, where they learn how to spend their money and didn't waste their money and knew the value of the money and used it properly on dates, we would discover that the focus of our interest on dates would be far more what we have come to share instead of merely checking each other out. I think you'll discover how many of these problems literally become incidental because your minds will be on something far more important. You can even therefore share your relationship with others because you have a little more to work with, and it makes it even easier if your moral training is right. I am very sorry we have so many weaknesses that do show up in this manner because we have focused in on dating too often as a social situation in which mates are hunted for, and in fact I think parents have a very great responsibility to even find out who the children are dating and to encourage proper choice of dates. It's very easy to make some mistakes, for young people get so emotionally attached that it's difficult to shake someone. I've dealt with a situation where a girl can hardly say no to a fellow who shouldn't marry her. Emotionally they are so different, but there's no parent around. Our college system is fundamentally wrong. I'm talking about the whole nation, not just Ambassador College. When it (1) divorces our whole dating structure away from or divorces them from any parental knowledge on the one hand — it's quite all right if you live locally here, and (2) when we have an administration, if that ever be the case, that also exercises no real discipline, because any college has, in fact, assumed a parental responsibility, or the society has opted for a premise that I do not hold to be true in the biblical examples, that after a fellow or a girl are 18 their moral and social life are on their own. There is the need to guard because there's always temptation. And because there can be emotional temptation, it's always wise to have proper contact with either parents or near relatives, on the one hand, so you do not lose your moorings or at least have very careful awareness and contact with a college administration. You want to set yourself up in such a situation that morally these things are properly evaluated in advance.





## **APPENDIX 2**

### **HOW TO IMPROVE YOUR EDUCATION**

Dr. Herman Hoeh  
9-Jun-1979

Trying to resolve the question of education and human development after high school for many of those who are single find a responsibility to earn a living after that period. It is likely, therefore, that we will minimize the area of education by the very necessity of earning a living. What then, can one do in terms of improving oneself as human individuals?

Could we say, that we could divide or subdivide the areas of human knowledge and experience into twelve areas — there's some biblical connections, I presume, with the number twelve — and proceed for me to define for you, as of the present, perhaps the singular most effective volume or book in such an area that would enable you to better understand that area in order to become a more self-assured (in social contact) effective worker on your job? I came to the conclusion with every single person I have commented to that we need a different kind of approach to the problem if we're going to be effective in terms of the education of the whole man.

There is a building that Mr. Armstrong had an inscription placed on, and that is — *"The Bible is the Foundation of Knowledge."* But, how we proceed from this point on remains a question. I would like to summarize what we have here, "How to improve your education," and on the one hand, keep the costs down, and on the other, lead us out of ignorance, to understanding and those topics which for us, are important, which tells us that there are topics, that for some of us, are not as important.

How we could divide our experience and to hold in to some configuration what it is we are seeking to do, we came to the conclusion that the traditional idea that is that man really does not readily remember things beyond five in number. It's easy to remember five things, or an administrator learns that you deal with something like four to six people (if you want to really understand the area over which you have major jurisdiction). You can spread yourself otherwise too thin. So, I talked with Mr. John Hopkinson on this matter. He worked with me for years and I bounced ideas against him like we do on a blackboard, and we came up with an interesting approach to the topic that I think will help us all to take note of what it is that we are doing when we seek to be better educated individuals. I am recognizing that some of us are in our 80's, some of us may be handicapped in terms of blindness or other difficulties. I am not going to address these specific problems. But I think those of you who have to live with some difficulties that are just natural in life will recognize how to cope with the problem. Mr. Hopkinson suggested as we were discussing the matter, "Why don't we define the problem in the following way: What we are really concerned about is the care of the body, mind, and the spirit." Three simple ideas. The Greeks used the expression, I'll give the modern Greek, "*soma*" — that was the body, "*sehee*" — the mind, and "*pneuma*" — or spirit. What we want to take a look at is what Paul really meant when he asked God to preserve us in this sense — to keep the whole man, at that level that God expects of us. When we think of these terms, we will think of it in terms, perhaps, of the Hebrew biblical record rather than the Greek philosophers who used these words in their own way. We learn, for instance, that from our point of view, body and mind certainly play a role in health. From the Greek point of view, health was irrelevant to either being far more a matter the decision of the gods or some magic, depending on one's class level. So, when Paul uses these terms there is little doubt that he is using them in terms of the impact of the Old Testament — the Hebrew scripture, the Jewish community — on the minds of his Greek hearers, the bulk of whom were converted after having first, in some way having attendance at the synagog, and their experience. We will look at it in the sense that these terms come to have meaning both in the New Testament and in our own language.

The New Testament defining these words in many areas, and our language essentially deriving the meaning from the Biblical use of such terms, as body, mind or spirit. Our issue is a recognition of the problems that we are really dealing with.

We recognize that the human being, in this sense, is made up of that vehicle of the mind which we call the "body." The mind could not carry out its ideas or thoughts without the capacity of the body and its senses, to execute and to receive information. The body in this sense is like a structured vehicle to enable the mind to perform, to carry out and to think. The mind and the body are very clearly interrelated, if we think of the physical realm. Now, when we come to the question of conversation, we discover that the mind and the spirit are very clearly interrelated. We are not going to define, theologically, these specific relationships of mind and spirit as natural to man and the Holy Spirit, but we are going to take a broader view that I think will be helpful in understanding the broad picture of what it means to be educated or to develop character with respect to all these areas.

The interrelationship of body, mind and spirit is apparent in health where we think of psychosomatic problems — that is, the *soma*, body; the *psyche*, the psycho or mind — that is, we have mind-body problems. This means that there are factors in the body as well as in the mind that affect our health, our thinking, and our behavior. With the natural mind, which doesn't exclude the spirit in man, we recognize the limitations as well as capacities of the natural mind and the spirit of God through conversion. Here we are taking the whole aspect and not excluding the spirit of God from our thought. Even though man is not born with the spirit of God, we recognize that man was made intended to receive the spirit of God that would enable him to comprehend what he couldn't on his own. Our point of view differs, then, from those not in the church in that we regard a massive area of education as in some way related to the biblical account which is understood as a result of having the spirit of God. So when we take a look at education and the improvement of the human being, we discover that the Bible tells us a great many things about some subjects and very little about other subjects. Our point of departure will be a recognition that starting with the spirit aspect, we focus in on the Bible. When we look at the Bible, we are impressed by the inadequacy of information in it on some subjects — inadequacy in the sense of what we might have expected — and the immensity of information on other subjects which we wish were not always there to tire us. What we should learn by that, since this is sufficient for the whole man, is that there must be vast areas of knowledge in which the Bible speaks thoroughly that are dangerous to study on their own, and equally so, vast areas of knowledge outside the Bible of which it says little or nothing that are safe to study. The fact that the Bible tells us a great deal about some subjects on which much has been written would indicate that those subjects are dangerous to study on their own apart from scripture. Or God would not have spent that much time in scripture on the subject. For example, chemistry where there is such a great body of knowledge — in the Bible you don't find a single chemical formula, which implies the relative safety in studying this area. If you have this approach, I think you will understand the problem. That is that you can proceed safely in those areas in inverse proportion to how much they are discussed in the Bible.

We do not include, therefore, that because the Bible spends an immense amount of time on some subjects, that makes those subjects exclusively important and other things unimportant. What we should recognize instead is, rather, that there are areas in which the human mind and spirit — even with the spirit of God — must clearly have scriptures as a guide. Because there is some impact in that area that is not discernable apart from scripture or can lead to misunderstanding through the five senses only. Or human reasoning. Thus, we will take the question of law. What one word summarized the three-part structure of the Old Testament? Law. Law therefore represents the most fundamental aspect of the Old Testament. Whether you see it in terms of case history or legal definition. All human experience in one way or another is governed by human law (or custom in societies that haven't perceived law). As a chemist I am likely to be safe as a Christian whether I look into the Bible often or not. But as a lawyer (shall I finish the question?) it would be very advisable to examine the Bible to be sure that I know the basis of my judgments. The differences in which law is defined by men may be seen compared with scripture. Chemistry and law are the two extremes. We can rely on the decisions made in the chemistry field in terms of definition and general practice. Now when it

comes to the application to health, the Bible tells us about health and healing. But it doesn't define chemical formulas. So here we begin to see the interplay of knowledge in all of these areas. What I would like to suggest, then, is that we take the most important areas and move down like you do from the top of a pyramid. We have noted that you start with the Bible as the basic book. And since the subject of books was what I was asked to talk about, I would like to propose the following thought: we all have the Bible as a book that we use. Perhaps we have a favorite Bible or binding or whatever it is that makes this Bible your favorite. If you are going to be effective in studying the Bible, I would offer first the following suggestion: that you make it a practice, besides the Bible that is the favorite one you use for whatever reason, that you add another, different translation that provokes you to read it for some of its differences. Now theoretically I should say to you that the one Bible the church approves first is this, and the second Bible the church approves is this. I do not take that approach because I would say there are those who do feel that God speaks in the manner in which the King James Version is expressed. If you happen to have been reared to find that comfortable, then you will find the American Bible Society's Good News for Modern Man very vulgar, as my wife does. Maybe that's where you started and you don't perceive its pedestrian expressions. Therefore you would find the King James a challenge and a contrast. The point is that if we are going to succeed, we have to recognize that we each have different backgrounds, different comprehension of language, and communication is sometimes expressed better in one version than in another. I started with a King James Version, so I add another. Mr. Armstrong always liked Moffatt. I frankly know that today he uses the RSV more often. I personally more often read one version for the Old Testament and another for the New. I don't always read the same one. I try to find the one that satisfies me most where I have to be least concerned after I've gone over the material. You might find that the New English Bible, which I find effective in some places though not in others, is a nice addition. But you might find it safer to read the RSV. Whatever decision you make, this is the starting point and the proper method. Now we want to bear in mind costs.

We can, of course, run the cost of education up appreciably. For those who insist on the need of finding particular scriptures as distinct from reading scripture, there will no doubt be the value of a simple concordance. There are concordances to the RSV — one to Moffatt I've seen, and certainly to the King James Version. Now you can buy inexpensive used concordances very often in a used bookstore. That is not something I'm recommending, I'm only telling you how you can keep costs down if you want to make the Bible effective. There are many who in commencing to read the Bible, find a Bible dictionary would be of appreciable help. There are different ways of approaching this problem. If I were to address you in 1920, my answer would be one thing. If I were to address you in 1950, it would be another. And if I were to address you in 1979, it would be another, for the simple reason that as years go by, new authors write and new books come on the market. Therefore, in every area as with translations of the Bible, it would be advisable that you take a look at a few such dictionaries that are on the market. There are two ways of doing this: 1) Go to a good bookstore that deals in up-to-date books and has a section devoted to Bible, religion, and so forth. Since we live in Pasadena, I would state that to my knowledge, A.C. Vroman is as satisfactory as any, but there are Bible houses — and I'm not saying you shouldn't examine those — that's wholly up to you. But it is possible in the Pasadena area to make such decisions. There are ways to handle this. The simplest way is to find a one-volume summary. I could name two or three. I would rather suggest that you just remember that you might find as the next best step is a dictionary of the Bible that is one volume. Your budget might well determine your decision.

Your budget might not have to determine your decision. If I found that something was too expensive, and you can be now in the \$25 range, I would make a decision to use the library until I could provide the money. That would be an alternative. A dictionary of the Bible is not inexpensive. Bibles are much more inexpensive. I'm not stating at this point is even that essential, unless you are trying to understand what it is that the Bible is trying to say as a document or a piece of literature. You can pass by such references as the coinage referred to in the New Testament: farthing, penny, talent. You can get the intent, the premise, without ever having to go into a Bible dictionary to find what was meant in the original. Therefore, a Bible dictionary is not that critical. You see the difference? There are things you understand from the Bible in terms of character and general statements, and you might

find the best solution is to go to a library — our own is sometimes available to use a dictionary of the Bible there. But in your own life, there is no doubt that you should have two different translations of the Bible, on the one hand, and you may want to consider either a dictionary of the Bible or a concordance on the other. A modern rendition, one-volume, of Hasting's original is one of the best. Unger is another. But you will constantly find new ones, and it pays to look into this kind of book on the basis of saying, well I am interested in a particular subject. Let me see what it says in this book on this subject. And when you are satisfied that three or four subjects — this is the way I would proceed — are dealt with so much more clearly in expression and effectively in meaning, I would tend to give weight to this volume as distinct from another. This is the way I would approach the topic.

Even though a dictionary of the Bible is not necessary, in terms of your own personal library, as I would determine two translations to be (and you can go beyond that, of course), there is a kind of dictionary that is important. That is a dictionary in the language you speak. Here I feel I would like to make a suggestion: dictionaries, on the one hand, must be updated. You therefore will have to realize that when I came to college with my 1947 dictionary, I do use it for spelling but I do not use it for definitions of new words. I must be sure that I constantly keep up-to-date. As an illustration—I have a reason to introduce it — if you were to examine the word, “blow,” you might understand clearly from such a dictionary what it means when the wind blows. But it would be difficult looking into that dictionary now 30 years old to understand the expression, “to blow my mind,” which is a new expression. I grew up on a 1905 — an original unabridged was issued sometime in that period. And it is amazing the words that are missing and the words that are spelled differently. So be sure that you learn one other thing. If you are 20, your library will look different when you are 60. You will have to keep choosing through life to keep up-to-date, to improve yourself. But a dictionary is so important a function, whether we know it or not, that I would like to recommend that you don't choose a cheap volume that comes apart at the binding or that is a paperback and looks dog-eared two weeks after you have it so that it is unattractive. I suggest that psychologically since man is an artistic creature, that you will find a dictionary of solid binding worth the extra money, because it says something to you that as a book I want to be handled, I want to be used, rather than turning aside to something else.

In this connection, I would like to point out the importance of a dictionary in terms of grammar. You should have a dictionary that does explain both punctuation and grammar in separate sections. For those of you who have those in a book that you have from high school, that's fine. If you don't have a grammar book close at hand, it is advisable to see that you do have a dictionary that contains material (separate category) on punctuation and on grammar (a separate category). And it would not hurt you to consistently review these. Now if you were listening carefully today, you would already have heard bad grammar used in this room. Maybe you didn't catch it. Maybe that also is your problem. But it can happen. We can all make slips of the tongue and begin habits. An educated person is one who properly utilizes the language of his birth or land, and it is advisable that you constantly keep up-to-date. There are expressions that are allowed that 20-30 years ago were not. There are forms of punctuation when you write that would indicate you are a better educated person.

I would like to state one thing about Mr. Herbert W. Armstrong's writing in this connection. Mr. Armstrong, of course, sends many manuscripts through. There's one thing that I find he always does. He writes grammatically correct. I have never found that he has made a grammatical mistake in all my reading. His spelling is average. But he has a habit that whenever he doubts a word, he looks into the dictionary, and when he doesn't have the time, he has the editors take note of the fact by putting a (sp?) meaning spelling in the margin somewhere. Because he regards spelling as important. Now we're not all perfect grammarians or spellers. But it is the importance of it that I think you should recognize. That when you can't walk on two legs you use a crutch; when you don't have a dictionary you still use good judgment — in recognizing that it doesn't embarrass me or Mr. Armstrong to say, well, this is the way it's spelled here but would you please check it out? I have doubts about it. That is the way of approaching life that I would say leads to the fullness of education, as others see you. You are judged often not by just the knowledge and character you have, but by the manner in which you express it verbally and in written form. I'm trying at this point to move down the pillar of the pyramid as

I would perceive in my life and in yours areas of significance. Now I'm telling you how to approach problems not in the sense of a library but of use, and what it means for the whole person. There is little doubt that Mr. Armstrong regards the question of character, which essentially is defined in the Bible, as of utmost importance. Aside from the question of speech which I have dealt with and closely related to it is the subject of etiquette. If you know the history of etiquette in the college, the history of how Mr. Armstrong regards poise and how you deal with other people, your own confidence, making other people feel comfortable. You will recognize, of course, the constant use of the term grace in the New Testament, which most people merely assume means a bloody forgiveness because somebody died for somebody else, without realizing the word has many other meanings in Greek. Paul uses it with other meanings. The grace of Christ be with you has a meaning far more than you realize. I'm using the simple English term "etiquette" because I'm saying the basis of etiquette or poise essentially is to help someone else feel comfortable, you know when you sit in an audience, some speakers make you feel nervous. I know you know it because it happens to me. There are other speakers that I feel are in command and they put me at ease. When you go into someone's home, you sense the same thing. Some people put you at ease, some do not, both by the environment and their personality. Etiquette is a subject that is the closest reflection of love we can have, but dealing with human custom that may vary. The love of God is permanent and defined by spiritual law and etiquette is variable. But it is a way of applying love to the different customs that are permissible. I do not think that there needs to be a book in your library on this subject if money is a factor. I do think you need to read a book on this subject and need to know where you can get it in a reference library in advance of certain specific things you may do. See my approach? I have two books on etiquette, because one is 30 years out of date and what you did 30 years ago was different than what you do today. I do remember that it is still permissible to eat that salad leaf under the salad. That was permissible then and still now. I know a lot of people don't, but I know I have Emily Post, now dead, to back me up. Mind then there are new people who come along. This just gives you an idea that sometimes you think are forbidden, like eating a lamb chop with your fingers which was introduced to the British because Queen Victoria, of German graphic and political background though she was of the royal family of Britain, adopted in England a German custom of doing with the lamb chop what the British had approved for the chicken. The British had never seen this done with a lamb chop and were first, appalled and then, amazed at the judgment of their queen. There are a lot of interesting little things along the way that make for an educated person, that make others enjoy conversation with you.

I was with a young woman who had come from abroad, having been originally born here, and I asked her questions about where she'd been, and she answered all these questions. When I ran out of questions, there was nothing more said. It was a one-way conversation because it always started with me. I have a daughter who keeps me entertained by the questions she asks. To be able to ask questions, to be able to comment, is important. To be able, also, to know when to keep your mouth shut, when you don't know about a subject. I would suggest that as we look at human experience and education, we learn the importance of this area and also where to find that information. I am of the importance that many of the social problems that we have in dating go back to the broad premise of not knowing how to conduct oneself (the ultimate premise underlying good etiquette). And that involves conversation and the lack of experience, through reading primarily, that would enable us to be successful in our human relationships. It is not enough just to have the Bible. It is the foundation of knowledge. We go from there.

Now what areas could we acquire information from? How would we view these areas in terms of our own experience? There is what is called the world of books, but I will put that aside for the moment, even though that was thought to be important when the question was first posed in terms of education. Remember, books are published often five years after the subject has been thoroughly digested, if it is on something new. A book is often a year in the making, unless it is an exception. You will find that books tend to be dated. Where can we find that which is updated and also reasonably safe? We can take a look at other forms of media like radio and television, which, I will not address. Obviously, the most singularly important area is the newspaper.

It is coming out daily. So you tend to have the most up-to-date information. I would regard that the educated world of the west for 300 years and more — and the early newspapers were first issued

by the government of the Holy Roman Empire to define the state of affairs in the 30 Years War of 1618-1648. I happen to have one or more copies of one of the earliest newspapers of the 17th Century in my library as illustrations of the news of the time. They were more in the form of a miniature booklet rather than our gigantic newspaper. There was news in the Roman world, but the modern beginning goes back to a period of about then. How would we look at the subject?

You can use a weekly or daily newspaper. If the job is important, you must have a daily, or more than one. In our home we do not get a daily paper. I am already bored with radio, and I would only be bored more with the daily news. I find I am more satisfied by some other kind of solution. We do have a local newspaper that keeps me informed of local news. I recommend that you be aware of what is a great newspaper. Without any question the *Wall Street Journal* is, the *Christian Science Monitor* is, and then you come to the great newspapers of New York and Los Angeles. And of course the British newspapers. I can't make a decision for you. You have to decide how much time you want to spend. My wife decided she did not want a newspaper because she doesn't know what to do with all the paper. That was the basis of our decision. I don't know why I'd want to buy a stack of newspapers that just move up like that. But I know that there are people who need that kind of information. I prefer to go to a weekly news magazine that digests the material with some more forethought than just the hour between press time and when the article must be written. A newspaper is very important. I never neglect it. We will buy specific issues, but I have to ask myself, is that my primary medium of acquiring information? If it is for you, do it. I've given you some very good names. I prefer, myself, to consider the impact of a news magazine as primary.

From there I would proceed to other areas in which areas we could be specific today. There are all sorts of magazines available today on particular subjects. I subscribe rarely, but I choose specific items to satisfy my need. So we learn that in this human experience as we proceed through Bible, to dictionary, through other media of the printed word, that newspapers and magazines are critically important. Mr. Armstrong does regard the quality of editorial work in *U.S. News and World Report* to be impressive. We do not regard its literary style as impressive. *Time* has style, flair, and vanity. You have to be aware of that. *U.S. News* is more commonplace, and you should learn to note when you read in the *Plain Truth* or any magazine the style and expression. Now for those who have specific serious interest in a topic, there is one other category that I will pass by with one exception, and that is the area of journals. Journals that are devoted to one specific topic of scholarly endeavor.

I'm pleased to say that I was recently given a new publication of which I had no basic prior knowledge. An older gentleman in the church said he thought I would be interested. Indeed I am, having seen it. It's called the *Wilson Quarterly*, a national review of ideas and information. I could bring you any number of journals. That's not the purpose because there are too many specific subjects. You have to define those subjects when we come to an area in mind. But if we are just going to look at the broad areas, I would like to suggest that there may be a simple way of acquiring information as to: where do you find this or that topic? In this particular journal, there is a section devoted to periodicals, one devoted to public opinion, another to religion and society in this issue, race and education, the American military — background books included in that, current books-perspectives, reflections. I spent quite a bit of time going over this before I brought it to your attention. It is well written. "*The Fading Hope of European Unity*" is a book looking at the problem as it is today, and therefore the implications of radicalism tomorrow if it is going to be brought about. An evaluation of the Soviet military and a nice little map in color. This may not be for you, but the idea is that it would pay to know a volume such as this that would probably be as informative as any volume could be, in giving you an in-depth perception beyond a newspaper or magazine. You could find such books on specific subjects in the library, have the library order such books, look for them in a bookstore, have the bookstore order them. I would highly recommend that you take a look at that journal afterward just to see what a journal is like.

I'm introducing now various media which certainly affect the mind of man. Obviously when we introduce the subject of newspapers, books, and journals, we're dealing with the question of mind as distinct from spirit — that is, where intellect and reason are cognitive powers, all playing a role signifi-

cantly more important in this area than one's spiritual understanding. The human being must be satisfied in his mind. Curiosity is one thing we are all born with in an immense capacity, and curiosity tends to shrivel as we also bodily shrivel. Whether we like it or not, as the body shrivels with age, the mind's curiosity shrivels. We come to be less and less curious. One of the tragedies of minorities in the ghetto or in homes where there is little interest in things provocative is the absence of the creative impact of parents to encourage the well spring of curiosity in youth. I had an excellent art teacher for our children, Mrs. Morros. She said, in her experience (the same thing could be said of anybody teaching English) that if I were to go to the home of any of my students who enjoy art, whether talented or not, I would find art in that home in ways that the family may not even have realized. Young people are influenced from early in life by what they see. They have a visual perception of things they perceive in the various art forms. It would be much more likely that if you had played with cats and dogs when you were little that you would have the feel of movement in the art form of a cat and dog if you were in a class than if you had never played with the animal and had seen one for the first time. That is just the reality and importance of experience. The curiosity then that is characteristic of the human mind should not be limited, and we should as parents or whatever our responsibilities attempt to elicit this curiosity in others.

I will at this point introduce the subject of books as the other area or medium of communication, since I think it fits as well here as any. In this area of developing the mind, we have numerous reasons for reading books. Some relaxation. Some clearly necessitated by the job or by having to get a job. Some by the need of satisfying our curiosity. That is, I am a person who might find happiness without concern for the problems chemists face because I have never had an environmental experience that would demand that the questions chemists still have unsolved would be important to me. My wife would find this more important in her interest in nutrition. I might find unresolved questions in archaeology or history more important because of my interest in the Bible as a book. So we all have different areas of interest, and we have different compulsions to have issues resolved. I am not forced in my mind or by my mind to resolve every area of concern. You have areas that for you are more important. Now Mr. Morossis is a chemist. I find it interesting to listen to him. I have to decide in my mind that all the questions he has, I would rather him resolve. I have questions that I must resolve, or I'm not going to be as happy a man as I am. His must be resolved, and we might mutually share the consequences of what we have learned. But we all have to make a decision. The human mind has a far broader capacity than most people admit and certainly broader in terms of what could be fulfilled in the time that is allotted on earth to us. So we have to make a decision with our mind: where do I put the emphasis? How do I avoid being narrow minded and how do I avoid being scatter-brained? You have to come to the place where there are some fundamental areas for you that are more important than others. An educated man is not one who knows everything about everything, but a man who knows where to find the information when he has to — albeit Bible, dictionary, book on etiquette, magazine, library or bookstore, or to pick other people's brains in conversation.

There are particular volumes that might be of some interest. I would draw your attention to the fact that I was asked to address the question of history and geography, on the assumption that if you know something of geography and something of history, you are a better educated individual. It may not affect your job appreciably. It certainly could affect your understanding of the Bible.

I know of no geography book that is just the book for you to buy to use for the rest of your life. If you have any reason to doubt what I say, look at a map of Africa in 1960, look at a map of Africa in 1979, and it is quite clear that something has happened. With this in mind, it is so obvious that you need to be kept up-to-date, and probably in geography more than anything else. I would definitely say this: you would be by far the wiser person to find value geographically in whatever source is most satisfying to you. Maybe it is an encyclopedia, maybe a geography book, maybe a travel guide. Don't spend money needlessly on an area that must be updated every few years. You are better to have a basic book that is suitable, well bound, lasts you a long time, and becomes an historic background of recent date. Then you proceed by taking note of things as they come along. You want to keep up-to-date. Perhaps one of the annuals — I never buy more than one in a decade, but I must buy one now I think, like *Information Please* or *World Almanac*, just to keep up-to-date. I'm appalled at the population

statistics: India, 650 million people — when I first studied India, it had 350 million. Now 300 more million does affect my understanding of the country, and how people are living. One of the greatest tragedies, in my estimation — and I am very happy that geography is listed — is the failure of human beings to know something of the globe that is man's inheritance, even today, not to speak of eternal life. I know that I had to be told where the Lake of the Ozarks was. Mr. Raymond McNair clearly pointed out to me that it is in Missouri. I did not in my experience find it necessary to know where it is. I did have to know where Palestine is to understand the biblical relationships. But it illustrates a point. There is much more to learn, and if you are going to understand anything in a newspaper or magazine, it would pay you to have geography as a basic subject. I would call this one of the most basic subjects because it doesn't have to be elaborate, it tends to be visual, it is something to enable you to understand Bible, world events, history, commerce, trade, food production, where the OPEC nations are, international relations — this is the basis. So if I emphasize it and yet tell you no book, I say there are numerous geographic works. You should find the one for your budget and needs that is nice for you to use, in understanding and attractiveness. Some are not as attractive as others, and it ought to be attractive for you to consistently use it. I know because the first subject that ever attracted me in books was my father's geography book. It was in such pretty colors, when I was little. Nothing like dull greens and browns. Those are commonly used today. I was really impressed. It was so interesting — like a picture book. By the time I was completing the third grade, I had already studied and understood the longitudes and latitudes of all the seas of the world. To understand that, you have to know something of the land masses and islands around. So it is not difficult for me to know that when a crisis occurs in Cyprus, I'm dealing with Creeks and Turks and not Indonesians and Japanese. The picture is clear. From a biblical viewpoint, this is one of the most fundamental areas for the educated person. This is talking about the mind. We're not talking about Psyche or the Spirit. We have moved from the area of character and divine law, etiquette, poise to the area of basic satisfying knowledge to give us a real grasp of the world around us and an ability to converse. I think it would be very awkward for you going to Mauzalon if you decided to go there with no interest in geography and didn't know whether it was on the Caribbean or Pacific side, wondered why it's hot and you need a hat, why you got a sunburn when you came back. You just didn't realize that it's the borderline between the temperate and tropical zones — the line runs right through the city. That should be a warning by the way!

Of all the works in history, one of the best — and I could recommend it far and above every other work — is a very simple conception by William Langer, called *The Encyclopedia of World History*. Obviously when William Langer is dead, you will have a situation when somebody else will pick it up or start it anew, however it be developed. I have both first and second editions. It is a simple way to take a look at all of human experience, to look at the whole thing in a single volume, to be able to say, well, I am either interested time-wise or place-wise geographically in a certain area. I have found it the most useful of all books of this sort. Everything else you use for support. History is covered in a very satisfactory manner. You will not be imposed upon like some works which try to be historic tables. This is a truly remarkable work, respected for what it is. You go to a large work on Islam if that's what you want, you have a simple summary here. It is a starting point. That I can tell you is an absolutely worthwhile approach to the topic and would summarize all the newspapers and magazines you don't have collections for, because it is the rest of the story back through history. Very fine index, heavy bold face to draw attention to some things, varying from the papal budget — showing that during the Middle Ages the papal budget spent over three quarters of the sums of money of the papal states for war. Charity was somewhere in the percent of two or three! One of the tragedies that tell you a lot. If you never read another page, you could tell reams of history by a simple statement of that nature.

There is a book that was drawn to my attention by Mr. John Hopkinson in another area that pertains to jobs. I will rely on his judgment in this case. It's titled "*What Are You Going to Do with the Rest of Your Life?*" I would like to point out that there are books that are cheap and no good in this subject. This book has to do with determining what you are and what you want to do the rest of your life, and how to proceed to do what Mr. Armstrong did when he wanted to know what he should accomplish. John Crystal is the author.

I would like to recommend one other. I would like to keep this very minimal because I didn't feel a list was the way to approach it. I'm adapting to the group I see in front of me. There is a major



problem in economics today, as you should all know. There's one book I would like to suggest that was given to me by the News Bureau as a recommendation for you. It's called "*Economics in One Lesson*," by Henry Hazlitt. It will help you to understand what the issues are and what terminology is used, and therefore to evaluate written material. I happily get written material xeroxed from our Legal Department. Our News Bureau regards this as the single most effective one-volume work that is also effectively written.

Now we have moved, as you can see, through these various areas. Before we move on to soma or body, we need to take note of, in the question of the mind, one of the most obvious things of human experience is that we do tend to be interested in other people, adventures, biographies, autobiographies. My purpose here is not to bring up our own literature specifically — that should be in the area of spirit, when you think of that area, therefore our literature — but there's no doubt that you will learn a great deal from the story of other's experiences. A woman or a man may choose different approaches. I have commonly told people about experiences recorded in some books that I have found fascinating that I think are truly works of character, as distinct from something to sell. I don't adopt the idea that a book has to be naturalistic and vulgar to be correct and expressive. I will not repeat books that I have given in former Bible Studies here. If you want to ask me about them later, I will be available afterward.

But I will draw attention to one publication as an illustration merely to show that AICP, in its concern for people whom we meet, has through Everest House, published a work on the tragedy of King Leopold III of Belgium by the French author Remy. It was translated by Stanley R. Rader, and that's another reason I am mentioning it, because Mr. Rader is an educated man. His purpose in life is not to accumulate money, but to use money. It is titled "*The 18th Day*." Mr. Rader is a self-educated man in French, and rendered this work from French to exceptionally fine English. I would like you to take a look at it afterward. That is not the book in this area, it is a book. But it illustrates an approach. I think it would be interesting to look at the story if you are in one of the Hilton Hotels, to look at a book on the life of Hilton and see that he built the hotels for you and in the process, destroyed his own marriage. Tragedy. It might be interesting while you are in Mexico to know something of the great Mexican hero, Benito Juarez. If you are in Israel, to know something of Golda Heir. To read the experience of a great person in the land in which you are, because travel as with biography is very important. I'm going to put travel later, though it logically belongs under mind rather than body, although I think most people travel for reasons of soma.

Let me get to the area of the interplay between mind and body. Here we come to recognize the importance of health. Health laws will be seen in one light by a housewife who normally plays the role of a cook and mother; it will be seen a little differently in terms of the man who must maintain his health for the job outside the home — of course, there are many women working outside now. How we are effective in mind and body is very important. So in this area of *soma*, we will take the modern view of the term — this vehicle of the mind. In this area it is important to take note of the most critical one, and that is health. What kind of a work would you want? There are different approaches. You might be interested in health in terms of nutrition, in terms of raising food, cooking, exercise. What we really have is a pyramid. There's no way to say, when you get to the 12 most important books you can forget all the rest. You may be so old you'll never get through 12. So we have to take a look at what's important. As a person who appreciates art, nutrition, gardening, cooking, it is obvious that I would find numerous volumes in this area of interest. I would like to suggest that every person who is involved in taking care of food will necessarily have to have besides the Bible, dictionary, newspapers, magazines, and geography book, there's little doubt that you must have some kind of cookbook. This is so logical as to be imperative. You could use magazines, but there's nothing simpler than having a nice book that folds out. Not one that you constantly have to keep the pages from flopping. But something that responds. In the same way that the dictionary must be attractive. What that cookbook is, the decision you must make. You will find at Vroman's, probably no less than 100 sorts. Paperback and hardback, paperbacks lees costly. You should make the decision on the basis of what it is you want. What it is you can do. What are your limitations? These are decisions you make yourself. I am limited,

I want something basic. I've had good training, I want something specialized. You have to feature these things in geography — I'm not going to buy the same geography book you might because my background might be much more extensive. You must make the decision in this area. You take a look at what's available and if you're not satisfied, go to the library and get whatever information you need till you are. That is the best approach I can recommend. You do not choose a cookbook on the basis: does it agree with everything said in the Bible? There isn't such a one. Tailor it to your needs. I don't always agree with the editorial policy in *U.S. News*. I find it is more sensible than many magazines. I certainly don't agree with every book reviewed in here, but found some very good commonsense. A broad perspective in this particular work. I don't agree with every translation of the Bible. I couldn't say that any translation is that perfect, by the very nature that we're dealing with human weakness. So we take the same approach here. Where your interests are, there you should be led, to come to sensible conclusions.

Books are important in the sense that we deal with travel. When I'm in a place, what would I want to know? This is more in the area of the mind. First you want to learn why people want to go there. What do they do when they're there? That tells me much of what I can do. That should be so logical I wouldn't have to expound it further. When you are in a place, it wouldn't hurt to read a little bit about the history of the place. Whenever you are it pays to have a map that gives you a general feeling of what the layout of the community is. If you know the direction of the streets, you can walk without getting lost. Or when lost, you will find yourself. Once you get the feeling of a community geographically, you are freer to move around and to do what people do who know the area. Then you can do the things that tourists don't do! Become acquainted with the people and move in the areas that are not the purpose for which people normally go there. When tourists go to a place, you will normally meet tourists. What you really want to do is to begin to understand what the other people do who live there all the time. What do they do? How do they think? What is life like? To appreciate a country you want to know whom you want to spend the time with, how you want to spend it, do you want to function as a group or as an individual?

I would suggest that somewhere along the line, as an educated person, you will ultimately be better educated by having at least an ability to read, in limited form to communicate, in another language. I'm not suggesting a crash course at Berlitz, you should have taken that before, and perhaps in your home. It is worth putting a little money into a travel guide. A travel guide would be imperative to a trip to Jerusalem and Israel.

I hope that this is some kind of philosophic summary of how to view life through the various media of learning that you can have with you wherever you are. When I speak of body, mind, and spirit, I'm really talking about the fact that when we deal with the question of learning, we are really satisfying different areas. Instead of dividing the human categories of knowledge, character, and experience into succinct limitations and compartments, it is much better to think of the whole man and the basic areas of mind, body, and spirit, and let your mind think of each of these areas, and what seems of interest to satisfy those areas. Then give some weight to what you can most effectively use first. The Bible has its role. The geography book has its role, the dictionary, a travel guide if you're traveling (otherwise not that important but certainly a sensible way to utilize your time and money effectively). And where you go, like to a library on etiquette or feel like you can buy an etiquette book, so that you can be a kind of person that others appreciate being with, and not do foolish, embarrassing things.

— END —

## **APPENDIX 3**

### **DATING**

Dr. Herman Hoeh

4-Jul-1976

We will try to limit ourselves on this occasion to essentially questions related to our social conduct as distinct from other areas that we might normally bring up at a Bible study. The paper itself suggested in a letter that went out under the Singles Activities' Committee's name, that we discuss such matters as dating as it pertains to cultural, religious, and racial diversity.

I will also be discussing problems of the older people, the unmarried, and the divorced. I will give some general comments in certain areas, and if there are questions that are precipitated either by neglect of a subject that should come up that hasn't yet come to my attention, or added questions or comments, I'd be happy to receive them up here and we'll take a look at them. This is not so much an analysis of specific verses of the Bible that are at issue in any one person's mind as it is to give a broad outline of our general conduct, how we should conduct ourselves with respect to one another, and with respect to friends who are in the world who are not converted. Whether all of you are converted here, again, is always a question. Some are, some are not. Some are young people who perhaps have not yet been baptized. Some are friends who are here. I was talking with my wife about the question, that there are some very successful marriages between unconverted people in the world, and very unsuccessful ones between two people who, for some reason, have been baptized, let me put it that way.

We need to take a solid look at the whole picture. I would like to start out with an experience that others have been familiar with and it came to my attention last September on the island of Mauritius in the Indian Ocean. I will address first of all the question of interfaith — inter-faith, not intra-faith. Most of our social relationship is intra-faith, that is within the faith or body of beliefs and practices that we hold. Inter-faith is between varied faiths, in this case normally within the Christian world denominational backgrounds.

In the island of Mauritius, and this could hold true of other areas and it may hold true of specific areas within the United States and Great Britain, or parts of Africa. There are a number of young people being called, all of whom are men. There are no young women. This is an unusual situation because from a social point of view there can be no dating if the rule pertaining to our social contact is an absolute rule related only to intra-faith relationships, or families at least that are normally in our fellowship. Sometimes, of course, there is an unconverted mate in such a family who comes.

The question would arise, what should be done in a situation as in Mauritius, as in some congregations in Great Britain, as in many areas of west Africa, where I am also familiar by verbal contact, where only young men are being called. Now the reason for this should be obvious. The men are more educated than the women. The men go out of the home. The daughters are protected. The men are likely to read a magazine that is on a newsstand. They are likely to converse with someone in business and the woman is at home helping her mother, or whatever the relationship is.

So I would like to start out with a fundamental area that may be of secondary importance to most of you, but one that we at least should look at so that we have it in proper perspective. In this case of dating someone who is not of the same faith, we have some varied problems related to it. The question is, many of our children are involved in social occasions within the Church but they are not yet converted. This may pertain to the Colleges as well, and what do we do in high school or colleges

when our young people are not attending Ambassador or had not been attending Imperial. What do you do on social occasions such as that? Remember, the question of dating is only one of a series of questions relating to this subject, because it would be very difficult to tell young people that if you date you can never become serious with someone, if you become serious you can never marry that some one because the some one is not of the same faith. I say it would be very difficult. It might be possible. Where children are absolutely obedient to parents they are likely to find that they can say “no” irrespective of their own emotional feelings. This is not true in most American homes and the way most of American children are reared, whether in or outside of the Church. So we have to face the seriousness of a question such as this, because if dating occurs on an interfaith basis there is always the possibility of having, let’s say, falling in love without realizing it and then you have to extricate yourself from it, or you will inevitably be involved in an interfaith marriage, if you go ahead with it. So I want to point up that there are areas of the world where we do have rather severe limitations, so we’ll take a look at certain principles.

In the Old Testament there were, and you’re familiar with these verses, prohibitions about marrying in another faith. Maybe the word “faith” is not even a nice word to use there. It would be better to call it religion. When the children of Israel entered the land of Palestine, or were to enter, they were told not to contract marriages — this is in Deut. 7 and elsewhere — which marriages could lead to the introduction of another religion, something opposite to what Moses had, through the power of God, been teaching the children of Israel. Their sons could turn away your daughters, their daughters could turn away your sons, and they were told not to contract such marriages. How absolute is such a statement? From the days of Moses to the fall of Judah we have no record in the Old Testament account, whether through Joshua, Judges, the Kings, or that part of Chronicles covered in this period, we have no record that any marriage that may have been contracted, was ever officially or formally set aside. Not that it may not have been, but we have no record. The first record we have pertains to the story of Ezra and Nehemiah. I would like to point this up. In other words, in the Old Testament, the reason we had the up’s and down’s in the book of Judges is the fact — we know this — that they had involved themselves in inter-faith, or inter-religious, marriages. Marriages with people who had another religious conviction, and indeed, idolatry among other things, and undoubtedly sabbath-breaking and who knows what kind of sins were the consequences of such relationships.

The question, however, is when a marriage is so contracted, is it necessarily void? And the answer is no. Any such marriage that is contracted is voidable because the law said it shouldn’t be entered into. Therefore it is voidable, that is subject to be set aside if a judicial decision is made. But we have none that is recorded to my knowledge, until we come to the days of Ezra and Nehemiah. That some may have occurred is very likely, but the Bible makes no issue of it one way or the other. In the days of Ezra and Nehemiah when there were only tens of thousands of Jews left who returned to Palestine, there were inter-marriages with the Philistines of Ashod, inter-marriages with Ammonites and Moabites and for that matter Samaritans, we have such records, and at this point there was even the impact of culture that affected the language of the children that were being born. Now, at this point, Ezra and Nehemiah — it’s really focusing in under the work of Ezra here as the religious leader and Nehemiah as the governor — came to a conclusion that for the good of the nation these marriages not only had to cease in the future, but had to be set aside in the present. That’s the first record we have of such a situation. The survival of the community of Judah and Levi was at stake at this point. We are not here dealing with the broad distinction of Negro Africa, or oriental Asia, in terms of white Europoid or Caucasoid stock. We are dealing here with a mixed people, they are already defined as mixed of Ashdod, Ammon, and Moab, who descended as cousins from the children of Israel. So the question of race at this point is not fundamental to the issue. The question was the matter of marriage with people of another religious conviction and of another cultural background, and of course, linguistic diversity, which would have jeopardized the continuity of the Jewish culture, that is the culture of the then congregation, or church, of God, the congregation of Israel, it would have jeopardized the language so that the language in two or three generations would not even have been Hebrew and they wouldn’t even have been able to read the Bible, as it had been given to them.

Now since the law forbade a marriage, any marriage, with someone of another faith, the Canaanites being singled out but the Canaanites were themselves of a diverse racial group by this

time, which may be perceived very clearly from the skeletal remains from that period. There were numerous tribal groups. There had been intermarriage undoubtedly in the background of the Canaanites, but we're not dealing fundamentally with a question of race at this point in these verses. We're dealing essentially with a religious cultural matter. The law forbade it. Nevertheless, it was not in force in the sense that the state therefore would have a right to intervene and to set aside such a marriage by a legal permissible divorce in God's sight. But when Ezra and Nehemiah had to take action they did, and their action was not a blanket statement, that all of you who are married are now divorced. Their action was this: each single marriage was examined and there was a decision made of a divorce so that now there was a legal and an appropriate settlement for the care of the children and the wife who was put away, and there could be no further legal recriminations on the basis of the decision. In other words, it was not something that left the wives and children, or vice versa, some of the husbands — if a man had married his daughter to a Moabite or Ammonite — all those marriages were dealt with individually in order that financial and other needs were appropriately cared for. This is the only way to handle such a situation. The Jewish community, at that time, drew a hard and fast barrier. Now, when I say such a marriage initially is voidable I mean that it is left to the authorities in the community to decide whether to act or not to act. Parents could exercise, at the lowest level, such a decision if the church were the only governance, but in this world we have to recognize that there are only two ways — either there is recourse to the courts of the land, which would not recognize it on such a basis normally, or there is the matter of fellowship and disfellowship, which has a very strong means of influence if people have real spiritual conviction. In the days of Ezra and Nehemiah they did exercise the question of disfellowship for anyone who wouldn't have, or divorce for those who didn't submit. And all who were not of the same religion became treated as common — the word common or unclean are used in the New Testament — a clean animal that has been wounded when you pursue it, or that dies of itself is common, it's not an unclean animal, it's treated as common. In this sense the word common was applied to the Gentiles just as it was applied to some animals that God would not normally ask you to eat, you know those laws. That was a term that came into the language, so the Jew did not have fellowship with someone who was of another faith — that's social religious fellowship. He was not to eat with them and there were various other rules. It came to the point where they even prohibited drinking wine that Greek feet had trodden out, as I have said.

This is why you have these arguments that appear in Galatians and the Book of Acts, and why Peter withdrew himself from Gentiles, because of the strict pressure that was still in the Jewish community from the days of Ezra and Nehemiah when the survival of the community was at stake. However, when Paul came along into the Greek world in Asia Minor, and the Greek Isles of Cyprus, there were now problems in the Greek area, outside of Palestine and Syria, it was not uncommon for Jews and Gentiles to marry. Mostly the Gentiles were those who attended the synagogue — that would be obvious — but not necessarily that the men were circumcized, they at least were in attendance, and this was commonplace in the world outside of Syria and Palestine. There were such marriages as illustrated in the case of Timothy, whose father was a Greek and whose mother was a Jewess. So such marriages did take place. There were marriages now, not only between the Jew and the Greek, but Paul discovered in the church, as we do, that there are marriages that have taken place before when two people were unconverted and now one is converted. Maybe the man is, maybe the woman. The converted person attends church and the unconverted does not, or may, it doesn't matter. Here you have then a situation after a marriage in which one is now of another faith. Paul had to address this issue. His conclusion is simply stated. The law, as it is written, gives the converted mate the right — the letter of the law does — the right to put away an unconverted mate. By the very nature that such marriages shouldn't have been entered into in the first place, and now that conversion has taken place on the part of one it puts that one in a situation of having been bound in a marriage contract to someone who's not converted. Paul says, however, at this point, that it is his judgment — let me read carefully how he words it in I Corinthians so we understand. "But to the rest speak I, not the Lord." Now, the Lord spoke in Deuteronomy, the Lord spoke to Ezra and Nehemiah. "It is not good to enter into an interfaith marriage." That was the statement that the Lord gave to a congregation of Israel that was not converted, but now this is the converted Church of God. "If any brother has a wife who believes not, and she (the unbelieving wife) is pleased to dwell with him, let

him not put her away.” That’s Paul’s counsel. He said, “I speak, not the Lord.” Christ had not told him, but after all, having the mind of God and looking at the law in terms of its intent and purpose, Paul drew this conclusion, because if two people are happily married and one is now converted, why should they break it up. And Paul draws the conclusion as Christ’s apostle here, in an area in which Christ had not previously spoken, either in the Bible, or to the twelve, or to Paul himself. “Let him not put her away.” Therefore, we have to tell converted men not to put away their unconverted wives, if she, the unconverted wife, is pleased to dwell with him.

Now, if the man does, he’s going in accordance with the letter of the Law. Paul is expounding the intent of the law. That should be clear. Now, the woman which has a husband who believes not, and if he is pleased to dwell with her, let her not leave him. What does it mean to be pleased to dwell with? It should mean, let’s say, that there is a desire to live with the other person, and an expression that you’re happy to live and you wouldn’t want to break it up, it does not mean that the man can demand sex and beat up his wife, it doesn’t mean that the woman can demand half of the man’s income but refuses to submit herself to her husband in any way. I think it should be clear what the intent is.

So what we learn is that in terms of the intent of the law, Paul admonishes the individual person in the church to be willing to live at peace with an unconverted mate and not rock the boat if that unconverted mate is pleased to dwell with you. That is the proper thing to do. We cannot forbid divorce if people insist on doing it, and Paul does not address the ministry and tell the ministry what to do. That is, you have to punish somebody who does divorce in a situation like this with an unconverted mate. Such a person is going to be judged in the judgment and perhaps talked to sternly. But now what I’m getting at is that it is possible for church members to have a happy marriage and have only one of a family converted. You see the picture that I am painting? It was not wise, ever, to enter into such a marriage in the Old Testament times when people were unconverted, and didn’t have the power of the Spirit of God. Now it would not be wise to separate if such a marriage had previously been entered into. It is possible, in other words, to obey God and still to live with an unconverted mate, whether man or woman. Is that clear? Whether a man or a woman. Therefore, it is not a sin to live with an unconverted person in marriage, whether man or woman. I am leading you step-by-step so you’ll understand what the Bible says. The Bible says, don’t get into any marriage where any children could be turned aside by someone of another faith, but it also says it is possible to live with someone of another faith if the other person is willing to live in peace and not make religion an issue, not make something else an issue. If religion is not an issue between the two, and it’s otherwise a happy marriage, Paul says “let it be.” It is not the ideal marriage. So what about unconverted friends of young people or older people who are converted. What does the converted person do in terms of dating people who are not in, say we say, our fellowship? First, we know that as older people we have children who may date children of church members, but the children themselves are not converted. We have to recognize, therefore, in the American or western custom of dating, which has many meanings but we know what it means — that is, to have social contact, either as one-on-one or group basis — you have among children who are not baptized dating that takes place between trained children but still unconverted and sometimes in Ambassador College and in the local church converted young people dating unconverted people who are children of church members who attend our social occasions. So within the church we already know. Is that clear? That when we have young people some will be converted depending on how young they are when they are converted and others will not be. Some are converted at the end of their teens and in the early twenties, and some frankly are not, yet we have never asked that children of church members — whether in college or in the church — must not date one another, that you have to wear a plaque “I’m baptized” or “I’m not baptized.”

(Tape over, missed some)

.... unconverted and converted young people to date as long as there has been training given by parents and the church. That therefore could lead to a marriage, couldn’t it? And if you’re going to allow your son or your daughter to date a son or daughter of other church members but who are not

converted, if you're going to allow that dating to occur as a parent, you must accept the responsibility that you have no true social right to prevent a marriage from occurring between a converted son and an unconverted daughter of church parents. Or don't allow the dating in the first place. It is not fair to young people to say, "well, you can date but you can't fall in love." Or "you can fall in love but you can't marry." Now either parents must exercise strong control, and if a date does occur they should tell the child not to date more than once or twice if there is a potential of interest developing until the other person is clearly converted, or else as a parent to allow it. And it is your decision. The church has never exercised a decision-making power in this area. It has left it to the individual. We have cautioned young people. But if a marriage can exist between a converted and an unconverted after one has become converted and still be happy and at peace then it is possible for two young people who were reared in the church, one is converted and the other is not, who have lived together side-by-side in the local congregation for years to be married and to live at peace. It is also possible to be married and not to live at peace. It is also possible for two young people who are baptized to be married and not live in peace either. Don't kid yourself. That's happening too often. Some are not really converted. Some are not living up to what they intended to. They are falling by the wayside. But it is clear from this, is it not, that it is possible in terms of our own practice, for young people to enter into a marriage where there has been church training, even though one is not converted. Mr. Herbert Armstrong has, in times past, performed such a marriage. I have also. This goes back years. This isn't only of recent date. That should now make it clear what God permits.

Now it doesn't say what He recommends. What I am saying here is what He permits. Now what He recommends is already given you. It is not wise to enter into a marriage that has religion as a difference, but if the training is basically the same it would be very difficult not to tell the young people to go ahead if you, as parents, have allowed them to date to the point they become interested. We should go back to what Mr. Herbert Armstrong wrote in his autobiography, that if you think you could fall in love with someone, and you felt that it was not wise to be married to that someone whom you could fall in love with, for religious reasons or whatever, biological reasons, family problems, otherwise, don't date again so you don't get so close that you can't say no. We don't follow the advice that Mr. Herbert Armstrong wrote in that book, which is very important in terms of our social training.

But now, what do we do in Mauritius, where the young people are mostly liberal Hindu, in fact, all the young people other than the two Chinese men, all of them are essentially liberal Hindu young men who are being called. Not conservative idolatrous Hindus, but liberal non-idolatrous Hindus. There's a different school of thought. Mauritius is inhabited by people from India. It is my conviction that the following is an appropriate solution. The same for West Africa, where most people are Christian in a community in which our people are, Muslims live in the north, most of the church members live in the south. That is, I'm speaking of Nigeria or Ghana, for instance. It is my conviction that you have a choice to face. The scripture says, in the same chapter, it is better to marry than to burn. That is, to have sexual temptation and problems. It is better to be married than to live with a sexual problem. That can lead to sin. So let us now weigh the question. It is better to be married to an unconverted person than to commit adultery or sodomy, to get involved with prostitution, or any sexual sin. You have to weigh the question. To forbid all young people in the Church of God who are men to marry in Mauritius, or in West Africa, or young men in certain congregations of England where there are no young women, would be to say, it is better to burn than to marry.

It was my recommendation, and I drew up a statement which Mr. Ted Armstrong has approved, and that is there are certain situations such as you have in these places I have mentioned in Africa, and Mauritius as an illustration, but it doesn't limit itself to those, it's applicable here, but particularly there there is something very interesting. Women are expected to adopt the religion of their husband. Therefore, a young man in Mauritius who may marry a liberal Hindu has, in fact, socially in his own community the right to ask her to consider his religion and in that sense to attend our services. That's just sort of custom. Now happily, God isn't calling just women, so that they would have the problem of only marrying a man who would expect them to change. At least God is calling the men in this case. In West Africa it's the same way. A woman who marries out of her tribe, or out of her religion, is expected to consider and in a sense to cooperate with or adopt the religion of her husband.

As far as we're concerned we don't require it, because you can't convert somebody else by just using the power of influence. I was in Fiji before I got to Mauritius. There a church member, a young man, is converted. He had been married before conversion to a fine young Fijian woman, they're both Fijians, she asked about baptism. I went in a car to a street side out in the country, got out of the car and walked across timbers, across swamps and a stream, and came to their little house in which there are no chairs. We sat on the floor with their five children and discussed this question of baptism, because she knew that church members should be baptized, and therefore she wanted to be baptized so she could have the same religion as her husband. So I explained to her what conversion means and what baptism means, and it was a relief to her not to have to be baptized because she wasn't of a converted mind. But she was willing to live happily with him. So we would not ask these women, but I would have to conclude that in these places of the world it is better for a young man to marry an honorable, responsible, upright, openminded submissive (apply it to yourselves, ladies) young woman than to get involved in sexual problems by not marrying. Even though that woman is not converted. I would have to make that recommendation. I would say it for West Africa. I would say it for anywhere in the world as a matter of principle. But you know I described the woman in such a way that you really wouldn't have any trouble if you married someone like that. But you notice I'm addressing it from the point of view of a man to the woman. In such a society I would not want to recommend the reverse normally, because of the impact the man has in such a society.

In our western world now we come to something different. Our western world recognizes that it's possible to have such an intermarriage and you don't have to change your religion. Our western world also recognizes, as any Jew would say, any Catholic, any Episcopalian, any Mormon, to have an inter-faith or inter-religion marriage is not the wisest thing. Therefore it is not the wisest thing to date steadily with someone who is not of the same faith. It is therefore also not the wisest thing to date in the first place, but there may be reasons why, in a high school or a junior high if there is a requirement, that an occasional date is not something that is wholly forbidden. But I would recommend what Mr. Herbert Armstrong said: Don't date more than once or twice. If you feel there is any possibility of having some kind of interest develop in the other person if the other person is of another faith. It is not the wise thing to do. On the other hand, I know that it is possible for young women who are working in business, secretaries or otherwise or young men who are working, to be reasonably familiar with someone of the opposite sex at business, or let's say at Pasadena City College or some other college or junior college, and you can get close enough that you are emotionally interested in the other person. You should recognize that there are always problems that will arise, and it is wiser not to get so involved that it goes to that point. The parents should exercise a responsibility to guide their children not to make such decisions. We have not prevented our two older girls — one of whom is now 20 and the other is 17 and will be 18 this year — we have not prevented them from dating outside of the church in the sense that there is a high school or a college function. Not everybody in college is converted. I have exercised no control over my daughter who is in college, whether she dates someone who is baptized or not, she happens to be. The younger one is not baptized and therefore she's not converted either, and we have not prohibited her from dating someone outside of the church. But we have instructed and we would be very careful if they weigh the question, and when one is baptized this is a question one must also consider. It is not something the Church of God would recommend, and with this number of young people here as well as some of you who are older, there should normally be no reason why you should not find someone of interest, someone who is possibly one you could spend the rest of your life with. Don't worry about it. Maybe you're not one who has to marry. Some people emotionally and physically have no reason to. Maybe they're like Paul. But we want to be very careful about this.

We haven't addressed the question of someone who is a divorcee, or who is divorced, or who is a widow or a widower. Paul does have something to say about this in the same chapter.

Paul says the wife is bound by the law as long as her husband lives, as long as she lives with a man who is her husband she is bound to him. Now if her husband be dead she is at liberty to be married to whom she will, only in the Lord. So we want to notice carefully verse 39. Now she is happi-



er if she so abide after my judgment, and I think that I have the Spirit of God. She is at liberty to marry whom she will but he thinks she's happier not married. And that's Paul's point of view. I think indeed some women have had such a happy married life that no other marriage would make it as successful because that first man was a remarkable husband. But Paul recognizes that she is free to marry if she wishes. Now it states here at the end of verse 39, in, I Cor. 7, only in the Lord. What is unique about this is the following. When we state that you should marry only in the Lord we are quoting this verse. There is no other verse in the Bible using that expression pertaining to marriage. To whom is it addressed? It is addressed to a widow. It is not addressed to every young woman, and it is not addressed to men at all. Normally when the law speaks the law speaks in terms of the male. You shall not covet your neighbor's wife. That's the law speaking. This doesn't mean a woman can covet her neighbor's husband, but the law doesn't have to define it in terms of man and woman. Law presumes that the principle that governs the relationship when stated in terms of the man is applicable to the woman, but when a statement in law is addressed in terms of the woman we should sit up and take notice because that's not the normal way it is expressed. And when it is addressed only to the widow we sit up twice and take note. Paul expressly in his wisdom forbids a widow who is converted to marry outside of the Lord or the church. Now the Lord is a term very important because there are people in the church who are outside of the Lord, or did you know that. They are in our fellowship but not of us. They may even be baptized and really have unconverted minds. This can happen. Paul doesn't say it's a question of in or out of the church as a congregation because we don't forbid unconverted men or women to come into our congregation and have fellowship with us with their converted members of the family. There is a plain statement here that a person who is a widow is likely to have a certain amount of money, possibly sexual temptation in a way that puts her in a very difficult position in which greater care and discretion should be maintained. There are many men who will try to take advantage of a widow because she may have been left with money. And there are women who are easy prey who crave a man's company after the death of the husband, who can't say no to a fool. In a situation like this Paul's admonition to a widow is very important. Otherwise we have only the rest of the Bible as a guide.

In the rest of the Bible we have Esther, who married Xerxes — now she didn't have very much of a choice — on the other hand she could have looked ugly, she could have looked the part to have turned him off, she didn't have to marry him, you know that. She could have done what a lot of wives do to their husbands, and Xerxes wouldn't have been interested, or Ahasuerus is the biblical name, but she knew what wives ought to know, how to influence their husbands. Therefore, we have a Bible example, that it is possible for a woman, and it is very difficult to think of Esther as other than a converted Jewess. She played no less a role than the prophets of old. She saved a nation, just as the judges did, as Deborah did in the book of Judges. And she married someone who was hardly converted, if you look at his personal life. So we have that example.

There is no doubt that, from a biblical point of view, we shouldn't marry out of the faith where religion is an issue. We should normally therefore not marry out of the faith, because religion can become an issue. We are not forbidden to retain a marriage with one who is unconverted, and therefore we cannot absolutely forbid a marriage with someone who is unconverted. But it is not the wise thing to do. It may, however, in certain cases be the only alternative, and by far the wiser thing, instead of getting involved with sexual problems because there is no converted woman, or vice versa. So it is a matter of weighing all of the scriptures that I have given. The statement in the book of Deuteronomy, chapter 7, which in a sense forbids unconverted nations to get involved with other nations, even if this one nation Israel did have the truth. That's like telling an unconverted child of a church member's family how important it is to marry someone who is also the child, converted or unconverted, of another church member family. Our unconverted children are like ancient Israelites, and it was absolutely told them it would be wrong to go marry outside — that is to marry some man or woman who was reared in a family having no connection with the Church of God. Yet Paul recognizes in the New Testament that if one is converted it is possible to live with just such a person and live at peace if the other person is willing to live at peace. So we do not have here the absolute statement that some have thought to be in the Bible. But we have a sufficient number of scriptures to point up the wisdom of the direction we should go. Unconverted children are like ancient Israel. They should

only marry within the fellowship of the Church of God, in terms of their safety and not marry somebody who has no contact with it. I'm talking about your unconverted children. Now converted young people should also marry within the faith, could marry children of converted church members even if the children are not converted, and on rare occasions could not be forbidden to find a wife who is of another faith, because Paul recognizes such a marriage as possible and successful and it is better to marry than to burn. I'm giving you the various implications.

For you to go out and rather freely date, and to go to social functions of this world I would think you should know would be unwise to find people out there instead of those in our midst. I think it is unwise. Paul goes so far, in fact, as to say to widows not to marry out of the Lord. That is a very strict statement. Now if you do Paul doesn't tell the church what to do. I can probably guarantee you'll lose your money, and the fellow will take advantage of you and you may lose him, and that would be an unwise thing to do.

I hope I have gone over this very thoroughly and very carefully, because any other problem is less serious. Our problems of a cultural nature, linguistic nature, of diverse ethnic or racial origins, all lie within the group. The most serious problem is that which lies without the group. I hope you understand why we should look at the area that is of greatest concern. Every generation, whether we like it or not, tends to evolve its particular traits. This is apparently true in the Church of God by the nature of the fact that our young people do grow up in the world and our parental control is similar to our environment. We are either strict, or not strict, depending on the world around us.

Let's take note of the fact that the kind of dance varies from generation to generation. Young people tend to dance the way other young people do, which is not always the way parents dance. Now who gets it started is a good question, but we tend to find that young people want to do it differently, and so we have now the craze going back to the 30's and 40's and 50's, certainly country western — which was almost unknown for a lot of young people in the United States, but by no means all — you know, you're dealing with a regional area — the western was really unknown for nearly a whole generation of young people who were reared on rock and related forms of music. Now there is a tendency to drift back to the music of the 40's. There was a time when ballroom dancing went out, and other kinds of dancing were dominant among young people. There was a time before ballroom dancing entered, that ballroom dancing was looked upon as immoral, but the people who dance ballroom dancing now would view some of the hug styles as immoral.

(Changed tape, may have missed some.)

So I would like to point up that, to my knowledge, the Bible does not have a chapter devoted to the proper form of dancing. I do not find women dancing in circles with women, with the men playing, forbidden, this is what we have in Tonga — the women and girls, as a whole, dance and the men play the musical instruments. In other societies it's men with men and women with women, and then there are some musicians. In our societies we have often the intermix, as they do also in those cases. There will be many forms of dance. So I would like to address the question. Mr. Herbert Armstrong has always pointed up that the most important thing is that you concern yourself with (1) your own conscience, why you do what you do; and (2) your concern for the conscience of another. If how you dance offends others then you need to consider whether you should dance that way when others are there, or dance that way when others are not there. It has to do with eating meat before a vegetarian, drinking wine before a Seventh Day Adventist friend, such as I have. I don't offer him wine. What you do, have your liberty with yourself or with others who are understanding and not present a situation which can be problematic. Now, in a large group, suppose we have 100, 200, 300 people gathered together, inevitably there will be some older people, maybe some younger, who would be offended without any question, that is the offense is some thing like this — “well, how can they dance like that without having sex on their mind?” Now, I don't know whether they can or can't. But I would put it this way. If you find that a Church-sponsored dance has so many kinds that upset you, then don't go to the social occasions and get upset at the church. I'm being plain.

Do you know why I don't attend most of the social occasions of the church? The music is too loud. I have yet to get this over, despite what I have said, and I have not attended any to know whether it has been successful. I have walked in on occasion where music was being played, with all the modern electronic gadgetry, and after 30 seconds I had to leave. And I'm not going to harm my ears. When you get old you'll appreciate them. A lot of young people today won't even get old before they'll appreciate them because of the damage that is being done. I'm not talking of the kind of music, I'm talking of the loudness, but I'm saying this. I would rather not get all upset at the church for allowing that kind of thing to occur, because I suppose there are a lot of young people who think anything less is not audible. And for their sake I'll go somewhere else, and not be offended by it or get upset. I normally am not a kind of person to get offended, I will use that term, I'm thick skinned. But I just would be upset and would just have to say, "well, so that's what's happening." And of course that is what's happening, but if I'm not there I don't recall it so often.

Let's face the fact the church does not ask you to give up vegetarianism, it does not ask you to drink wine in order to inherit the kingdom of God. The church does not ask you to dance, it does not ask you to tone down your music in order to enter the kingdom of God. It does not say ballroom dancing is wrong, but the fox trot is right, it doesn't say that whatever modern form — that varies now — a form related to the hug rather than each one dancing separate but let's say opposite that was typical of some of the rock dances, and I'm not acquainted with the terminology — the church has not defined it nor has the Bible defined it. Apparently David danced the kind of dance that offended his wife. He shouldn't have done it. She shouldn't have gotten offended, but it happened. And it can happen in our midst. Let us try to have wisdom not to go so far as to look questionable and not to be so concerned as to be emotionally upset with what you see. We should be careful to think of the conscience of another person and to examine our own consciences in terms of what we're doing. There are things that I would do that somebody else would be offended at, or would say, "what's he doing that for, being a minister?" and undoubtedly it could be the reverse. Mr. Herbert W. Armstrong has said in years past, and all who are responsible in the Church have said, that we should do that which is uplifting, that which is of benefit, and our cultural differences in our upbringing can vary this higher. There was a time when we were perhaps defining what the most proper form of culture should be, where we wanted everybody to seek the highest; that is now beyond our capacity. We have to put the responsibility on the individual church member. And so, more and more, is the responsibility of young people to their parents and parents to Christ. Now dating on these occasions should not be strictly limited to just being alone with somebody, or related to a social function, attending a movie alone, or having a dinner just together, now it's not wrong to attend a movie, it's not wrong to be alone, not wrong to dine, but be very careful not consistently whenever there are areas of doubt as to the wisdom of marrying someone, don't get so close in a one-on-one relationship that you would find it emotionally traumatic to say no or to break it up. It's better to have dinner with another couple, go to a movie — if you go at all with another couple, and I'm not recommending "*One Flew Over the Cuckoo's Nest*." I have not seen it, and just because it won all the awards I don't think we should now suddenly become interested in insane asylums — which is what it's about — but if you do see a movie I think it is good that you have the company of someone else, when possible, group functions are very good. It enables you to think more widely and, in fact, I think you enjoy things better. Now when you have come to the place that there is no doubt in your mind but what it is possible that you might find real emotional satisfaction in living with someone like that the rest of your life, that's another matter. But what often happens is we find young people dating out of the faith, getting so far removed in areas of cultural and ethnic background, and alone, that they get involved before they have analyzed the wisdom of what they're doing. So let us be careful in evaluating our dating situation, because it's very often left to the individual. Let us be very careful, be discreet in our conduct. I talk to too many people who are not discreet, and they sometimes wonder why they let themselves do what they did before they were married because the consequences emotionally are paid afterward.

So the Bible asks you to dance that which is enjoyable, that which is uplifting, and that which is hopefully least offensive because there's always bound to be in a social situation, something like this that will offend. Music is the same way. There are kinds of music that some people appreciate and

others cannot. I think we should seek in our social functions to have that which is acceptable to the largest group at any time, and if we need to have social functions for some who perhaps are of an older generation and those who are younger and let it be known what the emphasis will be, so that we don't ask young people to come to hear music that, in fact, they have no real interest in and have an evening they have no pleasure with, or older people — and I don't say that there's always a hard-and-fast line, so I'm not telling you how old you have to be to be older — where you might enjoy some kinds of music and not others. I think we should have it as diverse as possible. It is essential that we have social functions that don't involve the aspect of marriage as the only logical result. There are people who, at their age, young or old, frankly are not interested in getting married, and dancing as a whole is an opportunity to get emotionally closer to someone than merely attending the Museum of Fine Arts, or things of that nature. I think we should have social functions for individuals, both who may be interested in marriage and those who are not. And we do have more older women than men, and I think this is one of the problems that we have to take a look at what would be good for some of our older women. I think there should be a reconsideration of the breadth and depth of our social life for people who have other interests, intellectual, musical, horticultural, artistic, or whatever it may be, to provide opportunities, and I would like to recommend that. I do know that there are many such opportunities that we have not availed ourselves of because we have never really given thought to it, and I think we should have such an opportunity.

I will tell a story. This happened in the Crimea, if I am not mistaken, with my wife and a number of women who were on the bus — I don't know if there were any men other than myself and the driver — this was in our 50th anniversary trip in the Soviet Union. The area was a remarkable garden that pertained to the nobility of times past, and the guide was having trouble trying to translate her thoughts of Russian into English because she didn't know the answer to all the things she wanted to explain in the botanical garden. So my wife began to help her, and my wife, she clearly saw, knew enough about it that she said, "look, why don't you then lead the group through the botanical garden, and I'll just walk along with you." And so my wife was explaining to these high school and college teachers what they themselves were interested in and didn't know. This was a group of historians who were not necessarily that oriented in this area, and we have individuals — I know Mrs. Elliott has done a great deal and I know others that be who are making, let's say, a social life available and of course we have the community itself around us that can help that way where there are opportunities for tourism, but I think we can create something that we haven't done, and I'm just giving this as a single illustration, we have able individuals who can be used, and if you want to talk to my wife I give you permission in this matter. That's why I brought her along. I want to get her involved. I think it is good because there are opportunities to help others in their social life and then there are opportunities for groups to visit people who can't go out, who are handicapped because of age, and we should help to take care of them. My children find that visiting some elderly people, and I'll name one in particular, Mr. Hugh Mauck's mother, they find intellectually stimulating even though she can't come out to visit them when we, on rare occasions, visit her, they have commented, "why that woman" said our 14-year-old boy "she's interesting." Now a lot of young people don't know how interesting older people can be, because they've been around the Dolans. Now, I'm saying that for your benefit, to be on your guard. I believe it's true. I think we have some very interesting elderly people, and there are others of course who need our help who have never had the opportunity to be interesting because their experiences were never that impressive. And they never knew how to use them, it was unfortunate. So much for that view. I hope we have something we can do there because I know that there are areas in which we can help socially a great deal, and all of you can help. I want you to work on that.

Now with respect to the untouched and untouchable area, I would like to make a general summation. First of all, sometimes there are things that I can say that others cannot, and things that I could not say because of my background. I am not and do not think of myself in terms of the flesh as an Israelite and therefore from a Gentile background — or a goy, as a Jew might look at it — there are things that I might not have been able to say because it might have been misinterpreted as someone who is not an Israelite versus someone who is. In the other hand I'm a member of the, what we call the white community, so I hope you will understand that I speak as a man, as a member of the

white community, I speak of someone who's ancestry is not an Israelite country and I was never reared to think of myself as a traditional American. I speak of someone as someone who appreciates brethren and loves to be with them in their culture, whether I'm in Tonga or Fiji or Mauritius or South Africa, or Pasadena. There are certain points we should bear in mind, and I can make it plain and simple.

Marriage is a relationship of the total person. When you marry someone who is not converted it will never be a totally happy marriage. Just by nature, that you cannot fully share that aspect, but I don't think that any marriage is totally happy, because we all have limitations. Marriage with someone in the faith is a benefit, without any question. Now, as we differ more and more in various areas, we have to recognize there are greater potential problems, so we should be careful whether within one's own ethnic or cultural element, or within one's own social stratum. It would be very unfortunate for a young woman brought up in a very cultured home to marry a young man who's father normally spread his arms out over the table and drank out of a beer can and shoveled the food in, and to have to live with a husband like that. Now if she grew up like that it probably won't affect her. It certainly will affect the children, but the marriage might be happy.

We can be happy at different levels depending on our upbringing. Mr. Armstrong has cited the uneducated around the world often have a measure of happiness that is lost when they suddenly climb the ladder of social success. When we consider so many areas, we have to recognize language as a barrier. Language is a barrier that has kept many people of the same basic racial stock — I will use that in its broad sense — from intermarriage, whether in Africa or Asia or Europe, but once there is a language unity, as English in the United States, then that barrier disappears. But marriage involves religious fellowship, or it should. It would certainly have to have some kind of linguistic fellowship, I think that's a foregone conclusion, so that two people who biologically, and every other way, might be happy, if they can't speak each other's language there's no use living with them, unless you're the last two on earth. But you have to realize that. That is a factor within the Spanish-American community, or Latin American community.

There are financial matters; there are educational matters; emotional matters. All of these things need to be taken into consideration, but you should know this from what we've said from the pulpit or what has been said in our literature, what Mr. Armstrong has discussed in his autobiography, where he did dwell upon this and, of course, in the section of the book, *"The Missing Dimension in Sex,"* this whole thing of proper dating is discussed.

Now the church has a unique situation in this country because we have diverse linguistic backgrounds. English is certainly overwhelmingly dominant, but we have to have translation even in some of our local churches in the United States, primarily into Spanish. We have to recognize that we have a large ethnic element, multicultural, multiracial in background, in the Latin American community. We have a diverse Asian community, and of course, without any knowledge of further background, the large number of our black brethren who's language now is wholly English in this country, though it may be French in some other areas of the world where the church is.

What do we do when we have social occasions? We could have social occasions administered by the local groups. People who wish to get together. That is your responsibility how you handle it. The church does not intervene in every local function that you, as brethren, might like to have by inviting your friends. The church itself has a responsibility and we have different kinds of functions. We have one where everybody is invited, the married couples. Then we have others that are emphasizing the singles, and in many local churches it's both together. Now we have occasions where we might have a German night, I can't say a Black night because how would we define that? But we have a German night, we have our black brethren having a social occasion, we have a Latin night on occasion where Spanish might be dominant, and then one where both languages are used, depending on the connection we have with our neighboring countries or our family background, we try to have all of these. What now should we do in terms of what is socially appropriate?

Let us say we have a young Asian girl, there are no Asian men, but we have black and white and this is a small local church. Because there is no Asian man, shall this Asian girl never attend socially our occasions, or if she attends shall she always sit in the corner because it would be inappropriate for any black or white man to date her because that's the first step to marriage? People who assume that every date is the first step to marriage are, of course, making a mistake. Maybe for them it is, but they're taking the wrong step. Dating may, but fundamentally should not be, the first step to marriage. It is an occasion which you share something of yourself with another. It is not something that you're trying to get. Fellows who want to get a girl, girls who want to get a man, it is a matter of sharing fellowship with another. The more diverse you can be in dating the better it is for you until you do discover someone who, emotionally, is that attractive that you really want to spend the rest of your life with that individual.

We have, as human beings, a social obligation that has nothing to do with the question of inter-ethnic or inter-racial marriage, that when in small groups locally we have individuals who have no one else of that ethnic background to escort them, we have a social obligation to extend men or boys to girls — men to women — or vice versa — to extend oneself to provide an interesting social evening. Whether a black young man or a white young man or a Latin young man steps up to an Asian girl, let us say, where there are no Asian men, to offer her a single occasion or to come as a group if you have a dance that involves numerous ones, the various squares and the rounds that we have — there are all kinds of dances — this would be right and it would be wrong not to. There is a responsibility that we have socially as human beings that a wallflower or someone like that should never be considered as someone to be treated as a pariah. I hold, and have held and do hold and shall hold, that if that that's the social occasion we have, where we cannot take care of someone in the situation that I have described, then we better not hold a social occasion.

What if this Asian girl is in a local congregation where there is a single Asian man? Shall we assume that the single Asian man always must escort this single Asian girl? Is this what the teaching of the church is? And the answer is no. Is this what the practice may have been? And the answer is, possibly.

Let us suppose that you have a single white man and a single white woman, unmarried, they could be blacks, they could be Asians, doesn't matter what group, do you think that if you just take one white man and one white woman out, that automatically those two could always marry and be happy. Of course not. It is therefore unthinkable that every Asian fellow should have to date always the single Asian girl in this congregation merely because she's Asian and there aren't any others. And so they get so involved emotionally that they think they have to get married because they have gotten involved. There were ten social occasions during the year, and those ten they were always together, and by the time you're together at ten social occasions and assume that every time you want a date in between you have to date this same person, it's very hard not to think you have to marry the individual. And the result may be a disastrous marriage. We have had this happen, where single black men and single black girls in a local church have felt that because there wasn't anybody else there they had to consistently date that individual and it was never thought through, either by the local church or the people, that those two may not actually be mated in the sense of socially, emotionally, intellectually or otherwise, really capable of having an ultimately happy marriage. And yet because they dated that often they thought they had to get married. They didn't know anybody else in the local church, and so they were married, and so the marriage is a disaster.

Now am I making it clear that it is possible to force a situation on young people when we have ethnic groups that are few in number, to force a social situation on those young people where they're thrown together to date consistently, where they in fact practically have to get married emotionally when they should not, because it isn't going to work. Now I think I've gotten through to all of you to paint the picture. That's the one extreme we must avoid. We have a social obligation to take care of those in our society of the opposite sex. Now where only men dance with men and women with women there is still the obligation but in this case it's the obligation of the same sex. In our society we

tend to work it the other way around. If there's a single black man in a local congregation but a larger number of Latins, the dominant majority white, and a few Asians, our society has two alternatives. The black man can either stand there, what do we call a man who isn't a wallflower, is there a male flower that we can use, that's the situation, he can either stand there in an awkward situation, or we can have an alternative. Either he can ask, since he is a man, a woman to dance with him or ask to join in a group occasion if you a round or something like that, or else it can be the reverse. The women in the local congregation, of whatever background, have a responsibility to see that that single black person is not left without appropriate social opportunities for that evening. I hold that to be self-evident. Now because of the touchy feelings in different regions of this country and other countries, I would suggest, since this does not normally pertain to Asians like it does blacks, and it may pertain to Latins in some areas, the man should be very careful if he's alone, and there's no one of the same ethnic or racial background, he should be careful for his own good even in the Church of God, sorry to say, not to over extend himself first, but to offer the opportunity for young women to extend their responsibilities first because it is often thought, but untrue, that if a black man asks someone of another race or ethnic background to dance with him that he has ulterior motives. But they're no more ulterior than the other way around. And if they're ulterior that's only because he's a single individual and it would be no different than any other individual who may have such motives.

But we must be careful in our society and in the church itself, to do it as appropriately and carefully as possible, and I know people can misunderstand. Therefore I would caution men who are the single individuals to at least allow an opportunity for young women to offer the opportunity first. I think that is the wiser thing to do, but it is not inappropriate next for such a man, whether he is a single Asian, a single white, a single Latin — I'm just giving you various groups — whether it be Arabic or black, to ask in a social group such as ours, and suppose there's a single black fellow and a single black girl, it would be unwise consistently for that fellow always to ask the single girl out unless, of course, the two are really matched in terms of what their interests are. That's another thing. But we have to bear in mind that in the church we have a social responsibility toward others, so that an evening is appropriate. And we have a social responsibility to teach not to get so emotionally involved with dating that you get to the place where you want to marry someone whom you should not, because your marriage will be a disaster. The church must not force this by mistaken social concepts, and in our society where we're not compelled to, therefore we must not do it ourselves.

I have given you the exception of the single individual. Well, you finally have sometimes two or three and you have five or ten, and finally you come to the place you may have a church which has a Latin majority, or you may have a black majority in some congregations in the American south, and/or the great cities of the north and west, depending on what part of the town the local congregation may meet in. Now you're dealing with a question of degree, and you're dealing with wisdom. We are no longer in that period of time when we pass from segregation to the first social steps in the world of desegregation. That is now one generation ago, and of course that wasn't even one generation ago in some areas, and it was several generations in others. It all depends on the attitude that began to develop in the 1950's. What I'm saying is, that since dating on the one-to-one basis can involve marriage, we should not ask individuals where the number of the young people of that ethnic element is very limited, consistently to date to the point that a disastrous marriage is the result. But on the other hand, we should recognize the wisdom that comes with evaluating the differences of language, of culture, of genetic background, and the church has taught that we have sufficient examples in the way God describes how the world was repopulated, that God did segregate, divide, the sons of Adam as we are told in the book of Deuteronomy. That was in the pre-Flood world, and that God did scatter abroad in the post-Flood world the various nations, and when we look we do see the remarkable concentration of peoples in different areas of the world. We find even in these concentrations of and Japanese, Chinese/South Asians, a different approach to life. We recognize, therefore, that there are major diversities and minor diversities, and the church has always recognized that you can go further and further afield from your own general type of individual and what you will find are fewer things that you would have in terms of genetics and emotional make-up and things that make for a fully happy marriage in common and that you would have with those who are nearer your own background. And

this has to do with even nations within Europe, tribes within Africa, nations within Asia. This is a matter of wisdom. The church has taught, and still does, although there are peoples of different points of view today, some would view it socially not biblically. I would view it socially and biblically, and I think the Bible does imply without any question that God did intend different peoples to dwell in certain areas where their nearest neighbors were more like them than others, and the greatest amount of happiness will result in maintaining such a general relationship. We feel today that the best solution to the problem of what to do should rest with the family. It becomes a family responsibility to guide and instruct.

Therefore, what we are saying is, that your broadest differentiation between the three primary genetic racial stocks is only one of various areas which we should be concerned with. That is, more happiness as a whole will be found when people, even within the group that we consider white, make a wise choice of individuals within that group. Your Slavic areas of the world, you will find that emotionally the Latin area of the world is reasonably different. I have been in Italy, and I have been in Poland, and I won't tell you what my choice is because that's irrelevant, but there are just differences of people, that's all there is to it. And emotionally there are differences we have to recognize that are sufficiently great, that are not just of an individual nature but have to do with the whole nation itself. There are differences right within the United States, between regions.

What you should do as parents is guide your children and instruct them, give them wisdom to know what their social responsibility is to others, not to leave any one unattended in any social group when you have individuals of minor ethnic or cultural backgrounds who happens to be living in an area such as ours in the United States, but otherwise the greatest amount of happiness will be found in the white-within-the-white community, but the Bible does not draw any hard and fast line between whites living in western Europe and some peoples in the Balkans or the Middle East who are really browner skinned. In Romania there are many brown skinned people, remarkably so, and in Turkey, these people are all shading in to another group of people who will be like those in India, and they'll be shading in through Russia into directions that go to the true Asians in Central Asia, and in Far East Asia. We should use our good judgment in this matter as parents. And the church asks parents to be responsible here for proper advice and guidance. I think that's the way we should handle it.

We have, let's say, family traditions. What the family is. We have our national traditions, what the nation is. Or tribal tradition, depending on the area of the world we come from. I think people need to realize that there are no absolute borders, the church does not draw absolute borders. Within the Latin American community there are no absolute borders and between the Latin American community and the rest of the European community on the one hand, there are no hard fixed borders, and between the Latin American community and the African area, let's say in Central America and the Caribbean, there is a drift in that direction. The Latin American community can have Swiss people and Germans in Chile, Italians and Spaniards and Englishmen in Argentina, Spanish and Indian and Negroes in Panama, and Portuguese Negroes or blacks and Ukrainians in Brazil, and we have a huge area of the world, limiting ourselves to either the Portuguese or Latin speaking area, you have a multiracial element, and within the whole Latin American community there has to be wisdom in family tradition.

The family should look at it in terms of what is best for their children, their social upbringing in the community in which they live. I think that if we look at it in terms of our family, responsibility — in the 1950's the church looked at it in terms of the United States as a nation and what it should have done, it should never have brought slaves over to this country in the first place. We are no longer addressing the nation. The nation has made a decision at the Supreme Court level and that decision, of course, governs the nation. What we are addressing is your responsibility in the church. Therefore the larger the group the greater the likelihood that you will find happiness, if you are a Latin American young person, within the broad multiracial multilinguistic background in your area, and by the very nature that is so diverse the border lines are never clear. Spanish people, who are European genetically, linguistically not English, Mexican American people living in the United States who are genetically diverse from their backgrounds whose language may not even be Spanish but English, you have to have the wisdom to guide and to make a choice so that culturally children are going to be brought up in



a home that will be satisfying. Negro young people are no longer really truly Negro, we just call them black now but even that is a misnomer because many of them are Mulatto in terms of background and are very, very light complexioned, the general wisdom of dating in a situation like that would be within one's own general group, but in the United States a person probably has to be three-quarters to even pass for white in terms of any normal definition as it is to be defined on paper. What should we do?

The church recommends that the black community, as we use the term, will find its greatest happiness by marriage within the black community, but I have already stated there are situations where dating can occur, and almost has to occur if there is going to be a normal social life where few blacks may be, where it might be with others. We should seek normally to find a solution at the greater occasions at the Feast of Tabernacles away from the local church if there are limits at the local church. Mr. Ted Armstrong does recommend, Mr. Herbert Armstrong does, and I do, and even those who may not, in or out of the ministry, take a biblical stance but merely a social stance, we recognize that the greatest happiness and the greatest continuity of what God has purposed in creating the diversity of the human family lies within the area of maintaining those family traditions. This is based on the fact that the Levites were asked even to marry within the tribe of Levi, because of the importance of the priesthood. That is very significant there. The Israelites were never forbidden to marry out of Israel per se. We have plenty of examples in the Old Testament when religion was not an issue. Many Israelites have married blacks in this country, and other non-Israelites have and we have a community that is normally associated with the black community that's certainly of multiracial, multi-ethnic or genetic background. I think black young people have to make a choice there of the wisdom of marriage. I don't think that in the community itself there is any basic difference as young black people look at it between those who are much lighter complexion than others. I think the community has to work that out in itself. And in the church I don't know of any such problem. In the world sometimes there are attitudes that are unfortunate.

The church makes a general recommendation. The family has a responsibility, and in this sense we do not forbid, where a large group is together — and I would certainly say we do not forbid dating that occurs between the ethnic groups — we do not recommend that this dating be consistently one-on-one of someone of very different diverse ethnic or racial background in terms of the potential of marriage — it's always possible. You can fall in love with somebody, and you have to ask the question — what is the wisdom of that? If you happen to be a person of Latin American background, one has to weigh the question of your relationship if you marry someone who is not likely to be found in the Latin American area. What are your relationships in terms of the Work if you were to marry someone who is quite different from you. How would it be accepted in the community. In some cases it makes no difference. In Hawaii, for instance, where we have all kinds of Europeans, a few blacks, many varieties of Asians, we have such a mixture there that it really has to be a family responsibility. The church could never make a recommendation. There's no way to. It should be a family responsibility. There is a new racial group developing in Hawaii, that is European-Asian mixture as a whole, with a small amount of African, very small. The barriers have broken down there, so much so that there is no basic way to make distinctions in Hawaii. And so the people in that sense become a new kind of people, and there are always new groups rising.

There is a new kind of black in the world, and that is the American black, who differs very greatly in this sense from the black Africans, because upwards of at least 30% now of the background of the American black is not African but European stock. That is a guess. Nobody really knows, but it is an educated guess. We do not recommend, however, that we should take no cognizance of these differences. Religiously we should be careful. Racially we should be wise in our dating. Culturally we should recognize these differences and try to find individuals who are as compatible as possible, where it will not lead to difficulties for children, and where children will grow up in a home that is as happy as possible. The Bible gives clear examples that an inter-racial marriage, such as Moses and the Cushite woman — and that was not with a Midianite — that was a Cushite — is not something that must be undone. The reaction that happened in the persons of Aaron and Miriam reflects the problems that arise with inter-racial marriage. Moses' sister and brother were upset, and if they were you can imagine

others were. But there is no question but what the issue of divorce as a requirement was never addressed in that case, and the church all through these years has recognized that an inter-racial marriage at the extreme ends — Asian and European or European and African or African and Asian — is still a valid marriage. It may be a happy marriage, but in most cases it would not be a wise marriage. But in any case itit's a valid marriage. And we have always recognized the validity of such a marriage coming into the church. We have not recognized always the wisdom of individuals who, depending on their attitude, got married afterward. But today that is a matter for the individuals to decide on the basis of wisdom, which you should seek.

I hope that my general explanation gives you an idea of your responsibility that we recognize that in any large group there will be inter-racial dancing and inter-racial dating, that it should be minimal, that we should be very careful to avoid consistent dating whether inter-racial or within our own ethnic group, consistent dating of the same person when it would be unwise to marry that individual, unwise for reasons other than ethnic background, and unwise if there are ethnic backgrounds that are sufficiently diverse that there would be social problems that would be misunderstood and/or consequence of children. We have to bear that in mind about the identification of children with the traditional background of the parents. It just is a human factor we have to live with. We are not dealing with a world that is perfect, and we also need to know that God did make us different and there should be some kind of respect and honor to our parents for what we are, not try to run away from that identity, whether I be an American Indian, whether I be a German, or whether I be a Ukrainian, I think there is a matter of upholding those traditions.

— END —

## **APPENDIX 4**

### **PLANNING YOUR SOCIAL LIFE**

Dr. Herman Hoeh  
29-Oct-1977

The primary emphasis that I would like to bring to our attention today is the distinction between the general thought of dating as being an aspect of entertainment in the world as you commonly knew it. That is, you went there to be entertained. You went to a movie. You went to a concert. You went bowling. Or you went to dance. Maybe you shared some things with others apart from your date, but as a whole it was essentially, and often regarded as, a form of entertainment. Now entertainment has its place. There is a time and place for most things. There is, however, another important role in the kind of social contact, dating or fellowship that is quite different and that is concerned essentially for others. One of the problems in a large group such as this is the fact that we have young people — and my previous study in August was essentially addressed to parents and to, therefore, young people who could profit by what was being said. It wasn't addressed especially to the social needs of the elderly, but I think that many older individuals could have taken the thoughts and developed them in their social contact and conversation and conveyed it to others. Too often, perhaps, we overlook how to make use of what we hear to help another.

The basic philosophy of the world today is that I live to please myself. This is a quote that our son Manfred brought home from school from one of his friends. That's his philosophy of life. "I'm here to please myself."

Jesus came to please not Himself. That's the other philosophy. An importance of that is that in pleasing ourselves we often look in the mirror and suddenly become distressed. There are a few of you who will know what I mean. The majority have no recollection or awareness of this undoubtedly, but when you seek to please others, you're not looking at yourself in the mirror and no distress need follow. I'm saying this because too often this is one of the problems in our social relationships. When Jesus came, not to please Himself, in a sense He set an example. You will discover, of course, that in not pleasing Himself He did more for Himself than all the people who thought they were pleasing themselves.

So it is that if we take a new view of what social relationships should be, we discover that we find far greater pleasure in the long run in sharing something of ourselves with another for the sake and the welfare of the other party. Now, it's one thing to make such an explanation; it's another thing to figure out how to implement it. And it is the implementation that I should like to dwell at some length upon a bit later.

First we have to recognize that the biblical principle of giving rather than getting, which is what Mr. Armstrong has emphasized over the years, leaves us with a situation on in which we think of other people whether younger or same age, older or handicapped in some manner, and we suddenly discover that what we termed "dating" need not have the pressure cooker relationship of potential romance every time you have a date. You can have a social occasion or a date without this feeling for the simple reason you have another approach to dating.

So I now would like to explain something regarding dating and its concept for 1977/78. This word comes from the thought of making an appointment, that is to set up a date, at which something would be done. It normally has the idea of with someone else. Unfortunately, of course, there are some people who don't even make an appointment. They just come at the last minute and say "how would you like to do this or that?" Dating in itself presumes ideas developed in advance and plans made for a given period of time, or a specific beginning point. I would like to stress that because one of the problems many girls especially have is the fact the fellows come and offer few options. They

haven't really thought anything through, and secondarily they haven't really given any advance warning as to the time. Just a weekend snap thought is too often the case. But that's not my main point.

The main point is that dating is not in itself equivalent to the pursuit by very definition the pursuit of someone with whom you ultimately choose to live in marriage. Dating, unfortunately, did become that when parents — 40 years ago and more — abdicated much of their responsibility, and instead of an opportunity of young people, parents, older people, groups to get together as often in the autumn season it might be with the opportunity of getting acquainted with others, and socially developing oneself, it moved slowly in the direction of essentially being an institution devoted to romance and marriage as a kind of preliminary. It came to the place, finally, when social responsibilities were often neglected on the part of parents in instructing young people, that the next step was to have someone to go steady with so you didn't have to worry about finding someone else, being told "no, I am either uninterested, or this is not the evening, or someone else has asked me out," and the social inability to cope with that on the part of very many led to the next step in the development, and that is what we know of as going steady. There may be other terms today.

The final step following that is commitment, so that we have a lot of people who are committed to each other and they often use the word "physical" in front of it, which means some kind of sexual relation to make the going-steady a little more steady. This is the way the world has it, and sometimes young people in the Church develop it. Very unfortunately. Of course, marriage at the same time has declined and the stigma that one time fell on older bachelors or old maids — the latter term almost nonexistent in our vocabulary today — began to change.

Bill Butler and I were discussing at some length yesterday what has happened in the last 70 years, and why more and more women remain single and more and more men do so without the penalties that used to come on a woman who had no source of income and a man who had no way of taking care of things at home when he was away at work. We have now so many electrical gadgets that it is possible for men to be bachelors and take care of their washing and their cooking. It is possible for women to have these same things cared for and earn a living themselves. Sometimes they pool their income as married couples, sometimes as two people living together, and these are all various institutions that we have. So there have been some remarkable trends in the last 70 years — broadly speaking — with respect to marriage, in the last 40 years since the great depression with respect to the institution of dating and the minor role of parents today. In a sense I'm harkening back slightly to what I said before but I think it is an important preliminary because it indicates that actually dating is shifting from merely a matter of mate selection to fulfill another important role, and whether it does so in the Church belatedly and earlier in the world, it is nevertheless a social function that now is serving as much the need of solving the question of loneliness as it does solve the question of mate selection. With so many elderly people in the Worldwide Church of God and before us here, percentage-wise we certainly have a larger group and we try to address that group as much as others. We must now have a new emphasis in our minds on the subject of dating and social relationships. And the emphasis should be that we bring about, in our minds, an awareness that dating is a social opportunity to share something of your life and experience with another and to provide someone else with an opportunity which he or she might not otherwise have, either singly or as groups, and where you resolve probably the biggest area of concern of this group here, which is not selecting a mate but which is the question of social intercourse and the opportunity to have someone to talk with, to banish loneliness. There isn't any question that that is more significant for the larger group.

Now the question of finding a mate in the process is a secondary matter for some and it may be primary for others, but if we take dating in its broad social sense — which means we are concerned with the community and our social development as human beings — it means we also are concerned with the cultural awareness of the around and we are concerned with our religious responsibility of visiting the sick, the elderly, the widow, the fatherless, that we learn in other words that dating or making an appointment or a social occasion or a get-together, or whatever term we should choose to use, can have the social development of the human being in terms of the graces that have tended to disappear with the decline of the middle and upper classes. It doesn't mean that class distinction was right. It often meant snobbery, but it tends to mean that certain qualities that

make it possible for men and women to know how to dance, to know how to greet others, to know how to accept a "no" as well as a "yes," and to provide for the concerns of others, these things have tended to be mediocritized instead of emphasized in a proper way. Then there is the great impact of culture in our modern world where we are in a sense one world by means of communication and sharing things from the outside with each other in our own learned experiences. Then there is, again, by way of repetition of the third, this very human need of caring for the widowed, the divorced if you please, the elderly, the handicapped, the very young, and not necessarily in terms of loneliness everybody else in between. We have a religious duty, if you please, to make our social occasions an opportunity something more than they have been. This resolves the question, as I mentioned before, this pressure cooker situation as to why certain young men don't date most women. The answer is they don't intend to marry them, they wouldn't want to marry them so why date them. Or a girl will turn down any number of fellows. Reason? Well, I wouldn't want to marry him. The selection of whom you decide to date has, too often, been based on just the one issue of whether you would ever think of marrying an individual or whether you would ever want to entertain the idea. This is one of the problems that this group, more than the college students, and there are some of you who are presently college students whether at Ambassador or elsewhere, this is the idea that must be paramount. There is, of course, always in a college environment the opportunity there, with a primary emphasis — not the only one, but a primary emphasis — on being very aware of someone of the opposite sex in terms of whether it would make a wise move to be married to such an individual.

Mr. Armstrong long ago reiterated in the autobiography, pointed up that when he found an individual with whom he might be attracted but whom he knew he should never marry, that's the one he chose never to date again. And that's a right decision. I want to bring it up so nobody says "well, based on what you said I got involved with this woman, or I got involved with this man, if you hadn't given me that wrong advice I wouldn't now be married to this creature." There are people with that attitude only three months after marriage, or is it two. These are some of the problems.

The issue that Mr. Armstrong addressed is to avoid dating that leads to a romantic situation when you could be attracted to someone who you know you should not marry. But the fact remains that if a single man here in the front row, let's say, were to date all of you women, had the chance in his life, he wouldn't be attracted to most of you. That's just a reality. Or a woman wouldn't be attracted to most of the men who are in this room. Therefore we don't exclude the dating more than once, or dating broadly once here and there, with someone with whom you are not attracted even if you know you wouldn't marry the individual. We're not talking about those areas at this point where you are attracted to someone. We're talking about the fact that most of your dates can be with people, most of your social contact can be with people whom you would normally not think of marrying. They might be much older, much younger, boys who have no father, girls who have no father or mother, that kind of a situation where you can act as an older brother or an older sister, or like a grandparent for that matter, depending on who you are in this audience. I think we've neglected that, and we have tended to evaluate our dating on the basis of the "yesses," "no's," pro's or con's only in terms of potential marriage. But I'm pointing up that, apart from the question of being attracted to someone with whom you shouldn't go out again, if that's not the right person for you, you make up your mind, that's what Mr. Armstrong said long ago. That's sound. But for the vast majority here you could date three or four or five times and still not be attracted. You know you wouldn't marry the individual but you are providing a social opportunity that you might like to share not just with the other person alone but maybe with third parties, which is now what I should like to approach a little more directly. That is, how do we develop a new and broader look at the social responsibility that we have, both toward ourselves in the development of the individual as a human being as well as the development and the care and the concern of others.

There are many things we share in. We have tended in times past to think of hobbies as something you do in the garage, or a woman does at home, that you might pretty well limit yourself to, and maybe a very few others. But I think there is a whole area of our human interest and experience that we haven't shared and that we have a reason to develop. We have separated so much of what is interesting about us, as human beings, from dating because after all if you're married you assume you don't date any more, which is of course totally untrue because when you ask another married couple

over that's a date, whether you know it or not. That's what the word means. We ought to broaden it out so we understand what we're really saying when we use the term.

In the same way there are many things that single people — the majority of you here — can do that will enable you to fulfill a very significant biblical role that you haven't heretofore. In the process you might discover someone, indeed, who you could be interested in, but it would make that a much more meaningful relationship to discover such an individual than to pursue the idea of finding such an individual and never discovering, and that leads to frustrations or, as no small number of young people would say in middle age "I'm frustrated because I haven't found anyone I could marry in our local area. We don't have that many people." Too often we're looking for what we think is the kind of person we want to marry, and of course there are others who are dating without any intention of marriage at all in the long run, which for many might be better. But I think we must get away from the pressure cooker situation and open up our dating horizons much more broadly to include the cultural and religious needs of the community that is the Worldwide Church of God. I think it will mean a great deal for that matter even sometimes for husbands or wives or children of converted members. That is, you sometimes have young people or mates of the converted person whom you know, you can broaden your horizons and know a little more how to get along with individuals who are not converted. And you can sometimes help bring them into our social relationship instead of abandoning the Church's social relationship to go to the world because the Church has offered no social relationships that seem sufficiently meaningful for you.

Primary responsibility must rest upon the individual. It cannot rest on Mr. Bill Butler. It would be ill-advised that he should be a super master mind of all your social needs, desires, it would be impossible, he has another task, but there are things he can do for you as a kind of coordinator, passing along certain responsibilities to others. We do have — I know I saw it at one of the back tables there — some sign-up sheets and at some later time we probably should comment on what is there that I don't think has been commented on yet. We have never developed, and what I should like to do now, is to suggest that we ought to develop in our social life a far more thoroughly integrated program for contacting others without having it to be rigidly structured, but where we all accept individually responsibility and where you feel you can coordinate, either with your local Church area or here, as need be.

For instance, I talked to an individual, who may or may not be in the audience, so if I say some things that may or may not seem embarrassing, you don't know who she is, you don't know who he is, it doesn't matter, but this individual had some emotional problems pertaining to someone, and it was an ill-advised relationship and I said, "well, don't you find individuals whom you can enjoy dating?" And the answer is, "well, I don't have anyone who's interested in" and she named or he named certain things. Now if you're a man who would come to me and you haven't found anyone in the local congregation, everybody seems interested in somebody else, what do you do? Usually you've waited until the Feast of Tabernacles, where you saw a large group and about the only social thing that was done was dancing. Or you might have gone out with some friends for certain meals. And you had a very great problem. What we did talk about was something that we want to bring up this morning, and I have discussed it at some length with Mr. Butler, who might like to momentarily comment on how we might proceed to develop what I want to lead into here. This particular person mentioned a number of sports that I myself only would be partly interested in. So I would like to bring up the fact that you may be interested in sports, and someone may be interested in photography, someone else may be interested in music, and Peter Miller is interested in fishing at 90, and whoever it was of you who took him out fishing not so long ago, it was very much appreciated. If I mention him he happens to be in our local congregation and I think it illustrates a point that the elderly can enjoy some unusual things as well.

How do we become acquainted with other people who have certain interests in sports, in gardening, or cooking, or hiking, the whole spectrum of music, dancing, photography. I've just listed thoughts that come up here. How do we contact other people? That's been the problem. We never thought of it in those terms, but it could be because we were looking for mates all too often in some of the smaller congregations, and even locally there are not that many individuals in any one congregation. The problem is, what we should learn about marriage is that the more we share of our lives with someone else, the more likely we will find a compatible individual. Therefore, what we really ought to

do is learn to share more of our interests with others. I hope I'm making it simple and clear. And for all of us, whether we are elderly and lonely and would never think of remarriage, or young and lonely and embittered and would never think of remarriage and there are things like that that beset people, we can at least improve ourselves, help others develop culturally and, in some cases without a doubt, serve a very significant religious need, and I use the term religious there in the sense of James defining religion, and that's the only place in all the Bible where religion is defined. It's not defined as sabbath-keeping. Religion is not defined as tithing. True religion is defined in terms of James' account of visiting those who have social and emotional needs. That's what we're really thinking about today. How do we solve this problem? We need to have people more aware of the interests of other people. I could take a show of hands and ask you to explain, and just look at the audience, of how many of you bowl and how many don't. And how many like to dance as well as bowl. We could ultimately get down to ten different points, and there would be a few people who like all ten. But there's some who don't. What we really need to do is have a working relationship locally where we have a way of contacting others, where we can share something of our mutual interests. Some of our Imperial A.M. congregation have done this, this is not of my doing, but there is a group that is involved in wine-tasting, which is not for the extremely poor but it's also not extremely expensive. It provides a very remarkable cultural, as well as social, opportunity for singles and marrieds, and it provides it in an environment that never gets out of hand, in that sense, which is a problem with too many beers and cocktails one to two hours before a meal.

We need young people and older people, married or single, certainly can include some married because some of our married men have the best skills in some of these areas, where we have in a local congregation individuals who can be responsible on their own as a part of the social development of individuals within the congregation. Coordination can certainly be handled here at Headquarters without any question and some of us can share it, I can share some things, Mr. Bill Butler can share others, we have individuals who are interested in any number of sports, and what we would like to do is learn something of your interests, and I know there were some sheets naming bowling or other things back there. I don't know how many sheets of paper there are. Very probably not enough. But we'd like to know who you are, if you have no objection to your address and phone number, I think it would help. Let me illustrate. We have some men who have taught at Imperial who may or may not teach in the College or some public school, who are gifted in many of the areas of sports. I am going to use this as an illustration where we can give the best example. Here are men that some of you know about, and in a few cases some women who might be leaders. What they could do, and we were talking this over, it would be very nice if those of you who were in a specific area of interest knew others who also were — younger or older men or women — maybe it is that you like skiing. In this area you don't do it more than a few times in the year, but it's an opportunity to share your knowledge of skiing and your social pleasures of skiing with others of like mind. We really ought to have a list where, in each of the local congregations and certainly if someone keeps such a list who is especially interested in that, we can also perhaps receive the information here, we'll not assume it's always up-to-date and we'd normally want to pass the responsibility back to the local congregation if you wanted to contact someone at a greater distance than just locally, but I think if we had individuals who could share social experiences, shall we say bowling or tennis or swimming, and I'm concentrating on one area here alone, there are so many more I'll come to, volleyball — you might be surprised the people you meet.

You might discover, if you're interested in playing tennis an individual whom you get to know very well on the other side of the court perhaps a lot better than in volleyball. Of course there's golf for Gerald Waterhouse, who's not here. You get to know people. In some functions you may get to know them less, but you are in contact with someone else. You may meet this person only because you're both interested in bowling, just to use that illustration because there is such a list for sign-up back there because it's one of the opportunities to get acquainted. You may never meet this person again. It may be a man. It may be a woman. Your lives don't normally cross. But again you might meet somebody, the same person, swimming, the same person bowling, or in tennis, or in hiking, or in certain musical occasions, and you discover you're meeting the person far more often. This person you share much

more of your life and thinking with, and you will discover in some cases — if you're single and interested in marriage — that indeed you might find someone where your life crosses so much more.

This society I think is ridiculous in emphasizing the fact that there must be communication. I say that most marriages break up because there's too much of the wrong kind of communication. "You said that." "But you denied that." "And I saw you." And this kind of accusation that we get when we have our counseling. Communication needs definition. It is something that you are actually talking about that you mutually share in. It is not merely talking or communicating. I know there are some silent people who need to learn the art of communicating, but I think more marriages break up because some people talk too much than not enough. Let that be a warning. But the problem is what you were going to talk about what you mutually share. We often have overlooked this in talking about talking instead of what you were going to talk about, which is the real issue. So while we help others, whether of the same sex or the opposite sex, or the same age — younger or older — or handicapped in some manner, there are things that we can do.

Now let me just mention Mr. Bill Butler pointed up interesting things. There are some of you who are physically handicapped who really need an opportunity to get out to Palm Springs, and to relax in many of the spas that are out there and available. Long ago a handicapped man invited me to Palm Springs. It was the only time I stayed there. That was Mr. Howard Clark. He needed to be rejuvenated because he had certain physical problems in spite of what he was healed of. He invited me. I didn't invite him. That was an interesting turn-about, and it was one of my most interesting experiences to be out there. My wife was visiting her father, in case you wonder what had happened. There are opportunities for just physical relaxation, social development, loneliness, where you can even share something with someone of the same sex. It has nothing to do with homosexuality or lesbianism. We're talking here about a need and you get acquainted with the other person. We got acquainted with other people, relax, rest in a chair, we talked to an older couple, a man and wife, while floating in one of these spas. When I got out I blacked out. It was the first time I'd ever been in one and Mr. Clark caught me and that was another experience.

There are many things you can do that you probably never thought about. There are numerous sports and there is most certainly hiking. There is a vast array of music, both in terms of listening to and in performing. I think that no small number of people who do perform well would find a very wonderful social occasion if you could, with someone else — perhaps a girl or another fellow or two girls, whatever your skills are — to provide an evening's entertainment. In some cases it could be done professionally and people shouldn't ask you unless there is mutual agreement in terms of professional pay, but there are some times things you might like to do voluntarily. I have wished sometimes that I could find the right person who would perform certain music when I have special guests from around the world. My wife does her part in cooking. And that's another area I want to come to in a moment, but I believe that there are ways of developing our hobbies, our skills, and sharing them socially with others, that we haven't always thought to do.

There is a vast area in cooking. There is a vast area in gardening, or horticulture. That's probably the most neglected area. It's one that I am especially interested in. It's the one thing that I shared most with my wife before we were married. It's the one thing that Adam was to share with the Almighty and with Eve, and not handling a certain tree properly led to our present situation. So gardening is indeed a significant area that we can share in socially. If we had Peter Miller over too often he'd want to prune our roses, and my wife doesn't want him to, because she believes she knows how. But the fact remains that elderly people can appreciate some things as their sight remains with them, and it's amazing what you can share with people of another age bracket altogether. Or that people of another age bracket might want to share with you. I think we need to take a look at this whole perspective. There's nothing like the experience in really getting acquainted with what we might call window shopping, looking in antique stores, visiting the thieves' market or its equivalent. You will discover the tastes of other people. If you were to visit art galleries as well as museums, but if you were to visit art galleries you would discover the tastes of other people. So she likes Picasso and you like Grandma Moses. Now there may be a reason why you share enough other things in common that you could be happy. But you realize there are also differences. In music this is even greater because



music has so many more areas to express itself in. The more you share with other people, may be nothing but driving, which I don't recommend as a normal thing but on certain occasions in this lovely climate, there are people who can never get out and this is an appropriate thing to do. You can combine many ideas. You like to hike, you're a photographer. You like to garden, you're a photographer. You like to cook, and you're a photographer. You like to dance, and you're a photographer. I'm just illustrating a point. There are many things that you can combine and socially share with others. I have some things later I would like to present as illustrations of how you can share, but I don't think we normally as human beings and as Christians realize what this could do to the development of ourselves in terms of being more able to communicate verbally and physically and emotionally with other people. There may be an occasion where fellows and girls might like to, if you please, clean up somebody's home on a weekend. Ever thought about that as a date? Probably not. The movies, you know, are easier to decide on. But this might be an idea.

(Tape over — some missing)

... no use putting it in the dump, and I was paying to have the rest of it dumped. That was of concern in this particular instance. You might be surprised at things of this nature that you can do. How would you like, if you are a girl, to be with a fellow, and you start to clean up the place at 9 in the morning and by 11 he's hungry and he's about finished doing any work, and you have to keep it up till 12 or 1. You'll soon discover what kind of fellow he is, you know. You might find that the girl is one of these who can do something for an hour or two and then wants to quit. Emotionally you might be surprised what you learn of people that you never learned when you were seated in the movies side-by-side. And it's not the movie experience you will share in marriage the rest of your life. What you will share is a work load in and out of the home. And there is where the problems will arise.

So I propose that we should give some serious thought, and I would like to develop this, but at the moment I would like to ask Bill Butler to discuss — either with me or with you, or however we want to comment on it — how we could best with our local areas of maybe 10 to 13 churches that might be represented here apart from the extremes in the state where some of you are from, but how we could develop what I would call communication at the local level. I don't mean who church administration level. But where some of you locally who are known to be enthusiasts could let others know when certain things are available or where others would at least know that you're interested. I am sure that in a local congregation that there are people who don't have the faintest idea that others are interested in certain things even in their own age bracket. In our congregations when we have 350, 400, to 900 people or a thousand we don't even meet some of these people.

Bill Butler: One comment I could make, Dr. Hoeh, is there is an administrative sort of organization set up right now where we have a representative in every local church area who is a single person, he works with the singles group, and this may provide some means of communication where — the list he was referring to I had mentioned at the beginning of the Bible study — I think we had bowling, tennis, bridge, something else for the singles mailing list itself. If you are from out of town, which many of you are, go ahead and sign up on that list and mention what your church is. We will forward that name to your local church representative. Most of you know him. I don't remember all of the names myself. There are about 20 different representatives and he can see what's prevalent in your area in the way of interest and then organize it on a local basis. Here, as I mentioned earlier, we can redistribute that list among the people who sign it in the Pasadena area, and then you can call each other, or we can pick a person who has the leadership ability and he can organize activities and call you all in at once. I would like to mention regarding something like sports, tennis, tennis is probably the fastest growing participatory game outside of perhaps racquetball, and in tennis it's important for a person to learn right. Important to learn anything right — racquetball, cards, anything, or else you'll never enjoy it as much. We do have the local parks and recreation department here in Pasadena, and also in other local communications, who have programs to teach such things. I'm involved in a guitar class now, and although the Church may itself not be able to teach you or find someone who has the time or the facilities to teach you how to play tennis correctly, if a small group would like to sign up with the Pasadena Parks and Recreational System they have beginning classes, advanced beginning, intermediate, advanced, and they have the different levels and they are qualified and they're trained to do that type thing.

Dr. Hoeh: Very nice. I'm an invited guest, but to know we do have young people or older people, some individual who can — or more than one in some larger congregations — coordinate or convey information of this nature, and where you can either bring it to our attention locally or vice versa. There are areas, I mentioned photography as well as sports, both of these as you mention do demand certain skills, and I think it is so easy to do things in life where we learn poorly and therefore execute poorly thereafter, or learn well, and it's nice to know of people who do know how to do things well and can share some of that knowledge with others and that you learn something about other people who are learning with you. You can learn sometimes in the most remarkable and delightful social environment. Hence my mention in this connection of name and address and phone number as you desire. There are some reasons why privacy would be advised and it would be handled through third parties. I can understand that. I'm not trying to pass out that kind of information except as it meets with your approval. But it would mean that we could coordinate and I think this would be a very fine thing and I do very much appreciate the responsibility that I know has been shouldered by those who work with Mr. Bill Butler on the matter.

What I would like to do momentarily is to point out a few things that might be of help. We were discussing what would you do in Southern California, with the emphasis on Los Angeles, but Los Angeles is more than a city. It's a vast megalopolis. There happens to be a nice summarized up-to-date guide that I picked up yesterday, and without defining it other than as a guide, most of these are aimed at people who are married or have a certain social interest individually in another. You will have a primary emphasis on motels, hotels, and restaurants. But there are many other thoughts expressed along the way and I'm saying this is a way of starting out if you are seriously interested in other young people and marriage. What I like about it is it tells you how many remarkable places you can dine for under \$5. You can add your tip. It's amazing what you can do. I am able to take people out some times where the evening meal is \$4.95 and it isn't McDonald's. There are some very interesting things you learn and something as inexpensive as this for \$1.95 that you can share with others. You don't all have to get a copy. Others may vary in price or be by some other author. Anyway, if you have guests coming here, some of you have guests from another town or you have wanted to do something when you came to this city. What I learned about this is the fact that most of us who live here know less about it than those who come to visit. Because the visitors buy this, and I've been here for 30 years and have never bought one before, but that's why I've said Los Angeles seemed awfully dull until I began to read what's here. Then I realized there are many things quite, quite different from the usual concept of worldly entertainment, the worldly movie, the worldly discoteque, where you are strictly in a world-organized environment in which you are a little cog being entertained. This is what we want to get away from. We want to get to the place where you socially learn how to, if you please, entertain others. I don't mean just at the coffee table. I mean in any number of areas we can imagine. This is certainly something like this very helpful.

One of the most helpful magazines in all of California, since most of you are from California, or western Arizona which would be included, is not a subscription to but a month purchase if you happen to be interested — of course a subscription will also do — and it's *Sunset*. It's an overwhelming magazine and I have never gotten much benefit out of it because it's so big. Until I realized there is an index, a table of contents up front and that would simplify it. I usually look at this and my wife looks at this, and so she knows a lot more about what's going on than I do and that's just a little something that you learn before you die that you can simplify these things. There is a whole section, many subtitles, one whole section on travel, another whole section on gardening, another whole section on food and entertaining, another section on workshop and craft projects in building and remodeling, but I do feel from what I have examined that there are more interesting things up to date.

I was just looking at one here, October in Southern California Gardens, that's not the one I want. Busy Month, A Dozen Shows and Talks, 270b. Busy Month, a Dozen shows, 5 talks, a tea, a luncheon, a symposium, and they aren't all included here that are occurring. It names the cities. Southern California, Hawaii, I haven't gone over how many pages. That's this edition. In Northern California you'd have one devoted to Northern California maybe and Hawaii. Or such like, but it lists each one of the cities and the nearest one you might be living at, and in fact I know of a show that is

occurring in this particular area of gardening that you won't find listed here. It's at Descanso Gardens today and tomorrow. Chrysanthemum show which you would find quite interesting. I took a group of elderly people who live with Mrs. Fern Hehn, I think it must have been 2 years ago, I took them into the Big Tujunga and then I told them I was going to surprise them and I think it was something like this month or next that we went to a nursery devoted exclusively to chrysanthemums and this is the right time of year. I was starting to count the number of flowers we have on our chrysanthemums — I use tens of thousands — and I counted on the basis of one there are over a thousand on one of our chrysanthemums and we have about 20 of them, so I think my figure wasn't wrong, and it's amazing what you can have in an array of color and things you can do with others that you share in going to a place, like a show, and some of you had a wonderful time at the Arboretum, or that you can share by helping others plant who can no longer do it. We sometimes miss this part of life, and you can share something of this with a date. You don't have to merely think of the trowel or the spade or the garden hose. I found it was always interesting before we were married, the students had to take care of Mayfair, I found it much more interesting to work in the garden with the one who became my wife even than with Dr. Meredith however interesting he was. That's just a fact.

Gardening provides real insight into what people are like in that area, just like musical tastes, art, dancing, cooking, and the choice of movies, anything else you would like to share in. The beach. The mountains. Hiking. How people respond and react in these situations when there is a matter of stress and decision making. One of the things we're told about most in marriages that break up, "well, she was never like that" or "he was never like that before we were married." I say "well, what do you mean?" Now maybe there can be spiritual shipwreck. That's an exception. I could tell most of these people that they were like that before. But you don't notice it in certain situation. But when you have the chance to argue or disagree on things that you do together before you're married, you learn a lot more about somebody else. You can learn about somebody else while you're sharing something in life with a third party.

In part of my ministry one of the things that I sometimes do is buy plants for people who can't go out to the nursery and get them. Sometimes you help people plant who are older and handicapped. Sometimes they can do it or you get others to do it. And you can make it a social situation. We too often overlook the fact that sooner or later in life what you wear, what you're saying as distinct from silently watching entertainment, what you eat, what you read, what you want to put on the wall in terms of pictures, all of these things that you argue about later, and that marriages flounder on, the kind of wallpaper — you know, one of the most interesting dates any fellow could have is to take a young woman he might be partially interested in to a wallpaper firm and look at the wallpapers and see what her tastes are. Did you ever think about that? That's why I'm here, to help you.

Some of these things, you don't have to be seriously interested or four feet deep in love. Try it before you're snared to be sure that you really know that this person is someone you really are sharing it well with, because you're going to have to face these questions later and they are both cultural, social — I'm talking now perhaps on a one-on-one basis, not a group situation. Hiking you can have a nice group.

But I think this magazine in terms of what we call the outdoors in Southern California, and speaking shows that are intellectual, visual shows, there are many things in this or equivalent magazines, and I'm not selling — I have no interest — I'm just picking up something that we happened to have in our home. I think it can be a real help for those of you who are looking for something you can do and share in in that particular manner.

Since we are dealing with gardens let me mention that one of the growing areas is native plants of California gardens, you'd be surprised how many things you can share in this way. There is a show and a plant sale of a Theodore Payne Foundation that is on Saturday and Sunday, November 5 and 6, natives for fall, planting in the nursery, indoor plants, ferns, cacti, perennials, native flower seeds. There will be food and drinks served in a picnic area. You wear comfortable shoes. There is a hiking trail and it is within about four minutes of our home. So if you would like to stop by, you'd like to

have a special occasion that weekend, I'd be happy to take you there. It is a very fascinating place where you can learn about how other people respond to an environment such as this.

The matter of gardening, since I'm on it, I thought I'd have a little something different. My little girl planted some corn. Some cobs are larger than others, but this is something that you probably have never seen in your life — this is red popcorn, which is the most delicate popcorn when you eat it. This is the basic size of the cob. We have a little garden of it, and whereas you might use any other corn any day of the week, when you pop this for a Friday evening or after the Sabbath, something like that, there are things you can do and share with others, and many of you are not just student age, you have your own little garden and your own home. I am addressing this to many, even if you have an apartment it's amazing what you can do. This is a very interesting illustration. Look how beautifully and perfectly filled this particular one is. I think when a little girl learns to do this — she's 12 or 13 years of age — she's taking care of this, I think she'll enjoy popping the corn more than if she didn't raise it. If you only bought it. It happens to be something special. It illustrates how many things you can share socially with others if you happen to have a little backyard.

I have mentioned photography, and I would like to point up — I have here just to illustrate the instant it happened, this is an Associated Press publication — most people don't know what makes good photography. One of the important things about all of our publications — the *Plain Truth* for years, and necessarily television, is the skill to photograph. It's amazing. The book is just an illustration. It is classic illustrations of the instant it happened as distinct from the long-planned photograph. If you learn something about this you would be surprised if you like photography and there are other people in the Church who do, the same sex, the opposite sex, younger or older, you can combine that particular art and skill with many many other areas. It can be strictly for personal pleasure. It could be for education, and there are people who make money at it. Some people, not very many. But I think that in terms of learning to do it right, it is a very fine way, and I think that any young couple learn best about the other person, or any couple whether younger or older, when you know something about what the other person is like at home, and their relatives, the way they live, how things are kept. And you see this in photographs. Before we were married my wife's family had numerous pictures and they were often sent out, and I learned what their interests were, what it was like, how she grew up, what kind of a country she grew up in. It was the Panhandle of Texas, and I had never been there before. It was one of the last places I'd ever look for someone to marry, near Oklahoma, you know. We all knew in California what Okies were like in the 30's. These are stereotypes, but God knows best.

I think you could combine a hobby and share some remarkable experiences with all age groups. There are older people who can't afford cameras, who don't know how to take a picture, they couldn't hold it steady. These things happen with age, who might like to have a picture of something. Our own congregation, normally when we have a social function we have an album in which we put the new pictures, which I think is an interesting experience, and we learn something of what older occasions were like, you sort of meet people in a different situation than merely seated in the Church, and this could be carried back to other congregations. I think it would be a very fine opportunity to put some ideas like this to work.

We were discussing sports. This happens to be a book that is devoted to the art and sport of body building. I just happened to pick it up because it's both an artistic work in the sense of the human form, but we have fellows and girls who enjoy sports, especially pumping iron — is what it's called — my daughter, who is an artist, the one that's here, has in fact drawn one of the leading men here and did very well in the presentation of the human form, and I think to keep in form. You know, there are no small number of young men who probably would profit by Harry Sneider's social opportunities. I'm mentioning him, he's a teacher in the area of body building itself. I don't go for it. I don't spend my time doing that, I much prefer to be doing something else, but sometimes young men especially who lack confidence and lack the graces and don't even really know how other competent men make their contacts, can learn a lot by getting over their social inhibitions and their personal inhibitions about themselves. I think that's an area that young people, especially men, can help themselves a great deal in if they get together as a group and learn and profit by those who know how to date and be socially gracious. And the same thing is true of women in other areas of entertainment.

Whenever you go to other people be observant. Very important aspect of social growth and development I feel that one thing we don't do enough of is to have an opportunity for some young people, who are single or some married, to invite others over, and to cook or prepare for others. This is, of course, something we commonly neglect because restaurants and McDonald's tend to be so commonplace, but no small number of you don't have this kind of money. I think you lack a great deal if you haven't learned how to invite others over. One thing I did, we had an occasion, we needed some butter, and I had some raw cream and we were entertaining some older people, and older people like to talk. You know how that is, especially the younger ones know. So what I did, I find it is often easier just to let the older people talk, and on occasion I would respond, and they would talk with each other, and I put the raw cream in a 2-quart jar and while they talked I shook. And I churned it. And we had lots of fun in the living room doing it, and my wife was preparing a meal and cooking. This was not something that young people would normally do just for the elderly, but I think many of you can do it for others.

I know some of you do very well. Fellows as well as girls in cooking, and therefore in introducing other young people. I appreciated very much many years ago when we were only recently married, it was not uncommon in the 50's to invite others over to home meals — this was before restaurants seemed within reach — but now I think the trend has changed, and I have no objection to proper restaurant meals, and I take others out, but frankly I think that many of you women can learn a lot about cooking, and fellows learn a lot about women this way in terms of whether they're the kind of person you would really want to live with morning, noon, and night at the table. The first girl we had cooking in our home prepared marvelous vegetables and a burned offering. The experience of Mr. Oehlman, you know about his wife — that's mostly gossip of course, as he has assured you but for those of you who know the area in the Auditorium P.M. you realize how interesting social life can be at home, and when you are at home and after a meal you know what you can do? You can show slides of your photography, you can show other things that you have done, and you can make a very interesting evening. We have never developed what I could possibly do. I don't take the time, but we're set up, we have a nice large living room, we're set up that we could show many slides and films for entertainment. There's some remarkable films even in this area of body building, and the world championships that are available for young people who have an interest in that after you have an evening occasion. A book that I highly recommend visually, and textually, for this kind of thing, as a gift and to help other young people, this is a paperback which has 60 photographs in color for \$3.95 — I don't think you can beat that. All the great dishes of the world from 20 or 30 countries are given here. It's the finest presentation that I know of, and I think it gives you both a thorough description and otherwise the best of international cuisine, delicious recipes from 26 countries, and you'd be surprised how many older people can do something like this for younger people and bring younger people — married couples bringing single people together to get acquainted with each other.

I think we neglect that. I'm addressing the few who are married here. There is often a tendency to neglect this kind of responsibility where we can help others, and bring others out of their shell so to speak. Not to mention young people alone who are single and who are interested in each other and getting together and doing something for another. And some of you are black. We have at home a very interesting recipe, a West African cookbook which has some very fine recipes. I mention that because ethnic cooking is the kind of cooking I like best. My wife had last night a Thai recipe of ginger and chicken, which was I think our children would say was the finest recipe that we have. It can be eaten warm or cool, or cold. So it's something for every time of the year and for Sabbath and every other kind of day. I don't want to emphasize that too much, but I brought that for our black brethren especially who might have an interest, and since I mentioned Thai cooking this is probably the best — again \$3.95, I don't think you can go wrong on some of these inexpensive works of this nature. Extremely educational. My wife would be happy if any of you were interested to even tell you a little bit about Thai cooking, which from the point of view of my world travels I think that my wife now cooks Thai more than any other form. Many people from England, who travel worldwide would regard Thai cuisine, that's Siamese, same thing — Siam, Thailand, — as susceptible to the least number of failures, because it's peasant cooking, it's not the haute cuisine of the French nobility. I mention that because we have found that no one who has been a guest in our home has ever found Thai cooking other than most acceptable, absolutely most acceptable.

These things, this is probably the primary area in which fellows and girls getting together singly can profit the most, and where elderly people and young people, or a young couple who are somewhat interested in each other, can invite a widow and younger children, and you'd be surprised what can be done to make the social life of others truly happy. I think this is one of the great neglected areas. I mentioned briefly photography. I thought I would bring here what some of our congregation already knows about. We took a trip to the Grand Canyon on the week end of July 4th. It is not the normal time to go down into this desert climate, but it happened to be when a storm was passing over and the temperatures were plummeting, and so we knew this was the right moment. And I don't take pictures normally but our daughter, who is an artist also has a camera which was needed for school, and we have photographs here of the trip. You combine hiking with photography, you can combine photography with so many things and I think that you will find some of these some of the finest pictures anywhere photographically of the Grand Canyon. It illustrates — we took a little girl along who was 13. I thought she was going to be company for the little girl and she turned out to be company for me. That's what happened. She found me most interesting and I found her most interesting. This is Harry Rebonni's little girl, and our little girl who is the same age found her brother most interesting, and I had no other choice. This is an illustration. This one is at another angle, but it gives you an idea of what you can find and experience on a trip.

Now let me tell the rest of the story. These pictures all came from a film that somebody lost in the Grand Canyon and we developed them. Just by chance, a spectacular photographer he must have been. If you've never been there these are better pictures, truer to life and color than I've ever seen, and it was somebody's loss which was our gain.

Some of you are like Winston Churchill. You like to paint. Have you ever thought of cycling, you might like to cycle into the lower hills, or take a ride if it's too high, you cycle to the beach, and you might find some person you'd like to paint — either paint the person or paint with the individual, and you can share certain things together. I doubt that we seriously give heed to sometimes the more quiet moments. Too often dating is one long consistent conversation.

I had to take a woman out who talked too much once, and I knew the solution in her case was to take her to lunch. And she talked while I ate. And she talked while I ate. And I sometimes responded. And then she started to eat and I didn't talk. I ate also. And then we both talked a little when it seemed appropriate. And you know I asked her, I said, "You know why I thought it would be nice to have you for lunch?" She said, "Yes, I talk too much. I have learned" she said "that it is possible to enjoy an occasion without always speaking." This happens at home. Unfortunately, we have the other extreme of men with a beer and TV and their feet are up on something, and that's about all they do except with a newspaper after they get home. We have some in the Church almost like that. Most men and women, after they're married, don't talk nearly as much as before and there's suddenly a shock. There needn't be a shock, they have never learned to share some things quietly together.

My wife and I can sit — we have a sofa, it happens to have a center piece, but they don't have to have a center piece, ours does — she sits there and I sit here. We might read side by side the newspaper, *Sunset*, the Bible, the history books, something, and we might be there for half an hour or an hour and not say a word to each other, and we are appreciating each other's company. Suddenly my wife might want to bring something to my attention and I stop and listen and vice versa. This is an experience that happens after you're married that you don't always talk, and sometimes it is these silent moments that become extremely dreadful later because people didn't know how to live with each other before they were married. And so there is a time sometimes to share the more quiet things together and, as I say, you might like to cycle, you might like to ride to a place where you draw. And some of you are good artists. Some of you could be good artists. And some of you should be taking photographs.

I brought a work here that I thought illustrates how simple something that with just a little skill you can either do at home or somewhere else. My daughter drew something like this in probably one or two sittings. Something simple. I just illustrate something simple, not something elaborate, that you might do on a single Sunday date, where both of you might like to draw. This is AnnaLisa's, who is here today also. I think it is a good illustration of learning some skills. Your first paintings won't look

like this. This is not her first. If you find you have someone who is an artist, you're interested, why don't you have a date and go someplace. Maybe you like to draw something or have them over. You can sit in your own backyard and do something like this and talk and paint. Churchill found this extremely relaxing under the pressures of the second world war. I doubt that we have ever really thought of the perspective, in which case, if you were to look at all we've talked about and Mr. Butler has mentioned, the focus is on sharing things with someone else, entering into someone else's life, or having them enter into yours, irrespective of the age bracket. Some of these things only sighted people can do, and some things like enjoying a spa with someone who's not or someone who's crippled and someone who's healthy, you can climb and hike whether you are handicapped or not in different ways. It's amazing what can be done. And you share things with others. To be able to explain to someone who's not sighted what it's like to be on a hike, to hear the sounds that you do not otherwise see, or someone who hears sounds but you don't because he hears and you only see. There are many things like this that we can share in and such magazines as I have mentioned, and our social contacts within the Church can spread the awareness of what is occurring.

What I wanted to do today was not to tell you what you all know maybe better than I do what you could do Saturday night in being entertained by the world, or briefly dining and entertaining yourself. But thinking what you can do of a long summer evening, or what you can do inside on a long winter evening, and sharing a little something with others in which romance and marriage in this kind of pressure cooker that often leads to marriage is not the big thing you need to be concerned about in your dating and your fellowship. And if it should develop so much the better. But you won't have to worry, as I think too many really have after marriage, of discovering somebody that they are now living with with whom they share practically nothing. I hope we can take from this occasion, and many more things that I haven't mentioned that you could yourself bring up in conversation this afternoon, this evening, tomorrow, as to what you could do locally, of which I don't have any knowledge of what's occurring. I think you can develop yourself, you can perform what dating was really meant to be as a church function, that is where people — a religious duty, if you please — where a part of our life is to share with someone else for our own good. And necessarily, you will discover all kinds of people and opportunities you never thought of before. These are often simple ideas, some can be expensive. You draw the line depending on your natural abilities. Most of what I am talking about would be very simple. Riding a bicycle or just walking, or hiking, doing some things at home with others, or in others' homes, go to their home to help them, where they could not do certain things themselves. Not in the normal class of a fun date, but I'll tell you any older person who's handicapped and can't clean a home, you can always have the woman in or the man in who takes care of things, but to do something special. Young people learn, I think, in helping others whether they're younger or older, they learn something about each other and themselves they wouldn't otherwise know, and the more we make that knowledge available about other people before we marry, the greater the likelihood we won't be making mistakes.

— END —





## APPENDIX 5

### **STUDY ON FINANCES**

Dr. Herman Hoeh  
16-Sep-1978

The subject today, money management, is not where I want to begin the topic for the simple reason that before we can manage money, we must have acquired it. Or acquired the means to have that which we are going to manage. In this sense it is appropriate that we do take a look at some of the principles in the Bible. And here I would suggest that we turn to the book that you would all guess comes first in this matter, which is the book of Proverbs.

I am opening up to the area of Chapter 12, 13, and 14. We could pick others, but after all, there are certain areas, and within a given period of time we can just focus on specific statements. I would encourage you to read more widely on this subject. First of all, let me point out that in a group such as this, we have young men and young women; we have individuals who have over the years been married and now are either widows or divorced circumstantially, who have the responsibility of managing funds or property in some way that now belong on your shoulder and not the shoulder of the mate. There are those also who are older who have gone through a series of crises so that they have very little to manage. That presents a unique problem from those who have that same difficulty but may be 20 to 30 years younger. We will take a look at some of the principles, and I think if we approach this topic as many others with a valid view of life, that we will be able to find solutions much more readily. We will start with a simple proverb in chapter 12 verse 11.

Here in a farming community, we read, he who tills his land shall be satisfied with bread. He that follows vain pursuits, would be the better rendering, is void of understanding. What we learn is very important here, that if we were given the topic such as this in 1948, our approach would be quite different than it would be in 1978 in terms of solving the specific problems. In the days gone by, we had a far more significant emphasis on the farming situation. In the early 1950's when we had the Feast of Tabernacles in Big Sandy, Texas, I would dare say that the bulk of all financial problems were the problems of the farmer in the Church, with incidental problems of some few in the cities, because the bulk of the people God was calling into His Church were rural in orientation. Now we are in 1978 and this is different. So we should recognize that with each passing year there will be a different approach to the problem, and if you were going to either read the Bible and interpret it, you have to read it in the light of your contemporary problems — that is, get the principle and apply it to the contemporary situation. As of this moment, the power of voting in the United States vested in the farming community is 3%. Ninety-seven percent of people are not farming voters. This is very significant in the sense that it implies the problems we deal with are essentially suburban in the Church, not necessarily urban, though some clearly are. And there is the distinction as you should know. And the fact remains that the bulk of the people whom God called live a kind of suburban life. So what we recognize is that there are differences in problems with each generation, and what we once discussed, let us say, some generation ago in the 50's — and that is 20 years ago, and brings a whole new generation into the work force — then we dealt often with the problem of unemployment and a kind of recession or depression situation.

Today our problem is quite different. For the elderly in a recession situation, the problem is far simpler than it is when we have inflation. So we have to take a look at the problems in the world around us, and when we read material, we should also recognize the possibility that information will be dated, and you should keep up-to-date in this very area because it is an area of fluctuation. Money is a measure of human labor. It is not an entity within itself. This measure of human labor is determined broadly

speaking by society in general, and now not insignificantly, by government. With that premise, and I wanted to state it, it is possible to read a set of proverbs where the emphasis may indeed be on a more rural and only slightly suburban community. But the principle is still fundamental, He who tills his land is equivalent to anyone who actually gets out and works. So I will now start with the fundamental premise that was an experience of the last several months. It is very easy for individuals who are looking for work who are on unemployment to be looking for solutions that will enable them to stay on unemployment, hence, we often seek to have interviews that will indicate that we are working at finding interviews so that we can remain unemployed and receive sufficient remuneration that way. This is a very tragic problem in Europe more so than in the United States, especially in Great Britain. On the other hand, if you are face-to-face with a financial crisis, you will want to go to those places where it is quite clear that they are hiring now. That means, today you can get the job. It may not be the job you want. But I do believe that too many face-to-face with financial crisis — I'm not talking about those who can afford to make a long-term decision — need to follow the premise that where the job is available, that's where you go.

I met two young men between 18 and 20 at the time — and I will cite this because I think it is a good illustration — they come from Texas via another state to Southern California and could not afford to rent. The family was without money circumstantially. All they could do was to camp in the national forest at \$2 a night for the family. Now I know for a specific illustration that it is the person often without the money who decides — listen carefully — to rent a motel by the week, and then the Church often becomes burdened. I was very appreciable of the fact that this family had decided on the other route; to come to us for advice. But they chose first of all to camp out because they had no other choice, and they took the wise route.

Now at the moment they came here, the two boys (it was a mother and a son and a father with a son) ... they went out to work and the day they first looked for work they got work and began to bring money in by a week's time or 10 days or whenever the check would next come. They said to me that what we needed was to go to a place that was hiring: not to a place where your job application could be considered in the next two months. I know what that is like, I applied years ago when I was a college student for a job, and I would have starved to death in the meantime because four months later I got the call. I appreciated the fact that these two young men hired out in areas in which they had no expertise but in which the employer said, we will train you. It is not the job that is their lifetime calling, but it enabled them to move from a camp at \$2 a night in the Angeles National Forest, which may seem really odd but it really worked for them, to a place where they could rent. The mother got a job immediately. The father had greater difficulty. In the meantime, what he did, and it was the same principle here, his car did not work. And this is how I got acquainted with him because I had to help a bit in transportation. He walked in the areas in which his sons and wife were working and sought to find a place to rent that was within reason whereby they could commute by bus to guarantee that if something went wrong with the car, that each one could get to work. And he found such a place at a very reasonable price. But he walked. He walked the streets till he found a solution. He didn't find it the first day or the second. But he came up with a solution that I think was the logical result of doing the kind of work he did. This is a principle that we will not have acquired the money unless we have acquired the desire to put out labor and money is the measure of that labor — whether a physical or mental force.

Different people with different backgrounds, and in our society with different ideas and what a job is worth, will find that you will make more or less. But the point that we bear in mind here is that money is not an end in itself. Money is a measurement of effort. It is only a form that makes it convenient to exchange the effort for some product that another man or woman worked on, instead of ourselves having to do everything we need. We have the advantage in our modern industrialized society, despite its disadvantages, of profiting by an individual's expertise. If I'm better at something than something else, I spend my time at that which I am better at, I may not have gotten that as my first job. But at least I got a start which enabled me to then proceed to that place where I would have the kind of work I like. This matter of vain pursuits is very important. We learn in the modern world that there are people who are cut out for sales. And there are people who, frankly, will not succeed well in

such a field. We should be very careful — and I always admonish that in this field of sales, which is one of the very common areas today, an individual may be a remarkable success and an individual may not merely because the job is open, we must be very careful that we do not follow areas in which we are not qualified. I do not say selling or sales is a vain pursuit. I'm only talking about the fact that vain pursuit varies with the individual. What might be a vain pursuit for me might not be for you. It is what leads to nothing. And you need to recognize what your skills and talents are. For a person with many kinds of ability, tests indicating your skills and aptitudes would have far less meaning. There was a married man some two years ago — I guess it is, at least now — who took aptitude tests and found they really told him nothing because he could do so many kinds of work. And this was a real problem. Perhaps with fewer aptitudes and skills, those tests will enable us to better focus and then we learn what would be a vain pursuit.

In chapter 13 are a few important verses. Verse 8: The poor hears not rebuke. Now unfortunately, one of the reasons people tend to be poor — not the only reason but one of them — is that they don't listen to advice, counsel, or some strong admonition. This may not be your problem. It could have been an accident. You might not have been this way in your past. We always recognize it, but then you won't stay this way. But normally speaking, Solomon perceived and we have also that one of the problems of the poor is that they cannot take advice. It is the wise man, you see, who listens to counsel. Hence, we move in verse 10: With the well advised is wisdom. The last part of that verse: if you take good counsel and have been well advised and you are by nature in the possession of wisdom — your own for having listened and others for having listened to someone else. Wealth, verse 11, gotten by vanity. And there are different methods that perhaps are not our problem, but that kind of wealth is quickly accumulated, takes advantage of situations, may well diminish. He that gathers by labor shall increase. That is, you want to be sure always that there is a steady means of growing and turning your labor into money and goods and services for others. What you get quickly is some reward because you happen to get the right number in a lottery is likely also to vanish quickly. So we learn the importance of continuous labor. Not just laboring in spurts or periods of time only.

Verse 18: Poverty and shame shall be to him that refuses instruction. He that regards reproof shall be honored, whether financially or otherwise. And a good man, verse 22, leaves his inheritance to his children's children. For the wealth of the sinner is laid up for the just. That's an incidental statement but that's important there. We learn that we have a responsibility. I have said, Mr. Armstrong has said, that we should act as if the world could come to an end almost overnight and build in terms of the possibility that it might not be here for a thousand years, That is, we must do it in such a way that we have both a long-term and a short-range goal. And in this sense, the Bible admonishes us — and this is part of the Word of God — that we should aim so that we have a responsibility that we can fulfill eyes toward grandchildren. If not our own, then to help through funds for others.

Verse 1 of chapter 14 is interesting in this connection, *"Every wise woman builds her house, but the foolish plucks it down with her hands."* Now in our society this is not literally the case. I visited a society once, and I lived in a house that women very greatly assisted in. In the Kingdom of Tonga, for instance, the man builds the walls and the women put on the roofs. And all the ladies of the community got together and put the roof on. In societies that used to be done. But you know there are different ways of applying this today. It does imply that a woman has more responsibility in the acquisition, the maintenance of her home than many women in our society think. There was a tendency to grow out of the '50s and even the '60s where women were housewives or mothers, and that image, and seemed to have little responsibility beyond rearing children and caring for a husband. Now we've gone in another direction in society. But I would point up here that in the days of Solomon, and in principle today, it is valuable that we take a firm look at the fact, not only in Proverbs 31 but here also, that a woman has a major role in seeing that her home, which becomes if you please an inheritance for her grandchildren, is maintained. My wife knows how to hang paper. For some, paper hanging is a profession. I do not hang paper; my wife does. That is a skill that she has acquired. She tells me not to intrude! Nor do I attempt to do so. She likes to do that, and I just cite it as an illustration. There are things that a woman can do to keep what she has being improved. When it comes to plumbing, that's

my responsibility. But a woman can also let something like this fall into disarray. God does not imply that this is necessarily the man's task in our society; it may well involve it. But what you note is that if you were to read the Proverbs carefully, you will discover that a woman has far more what I would call family responsibility beyond our dreams and far more responsibility for maintenance of the house as distinct from the household and the maintenance of property than one would have thought. And I think we should bear this in mind in terms especially of the older women where this becomes a major burden that they are widowed or divorced.

We can look again in verse 20: *"The poor is hated even of his own neighbors, the rich has many friends;"* would indicate the importance of resolving the problem of poverty for the simple reason that with the acquisition of money, which is a token of one's labor, you also acquire friendship. It may be selfish on the part of others but people who work and have the personality to work well with others acquire friends. And with the knowledge of friends you begin to acquire new opportunities. I will cite an illustration here: my son started at 16 and he is now 17 in a first full-time summer job at a research laboratory, a subsidiary of Bausch & Lomb. Having done well in a certain skill, he had a friend who was his teacher. And his teacher is a success, and he has friends, in this case, professionally. You will discover therefore that it is much easier to find jobs when you have certain skills and next you have friends. Now the skill itself is equivalent to money whether you realize it or not because what you do with it is what generates money, which is equivalent to the labor expended. So it is important to be sure that as you mature — I'm addressing myself to young people here — that you also make use not of your money to acquire friends but of your skills to have friends who know where jobs are. I'm interpreting this for your specific needs. It is unfortunate, of course, in some of the inner cities where young people don't have — especially in the black and secondarily in the chicano community where they don't have the same contact and opportunity. Verse 23 (we'll stop our quotations of proverbs with this); *"In all labor there is profit, but the talk of the lips tends only to penury."* There is profit in labor. It may be more or less depending on society and the kind of job. But the one thing you want to be sure of is if you have a job as a roofer, this is not the place at the housetop from which to preach. This is the place where you work. And you learn that a lot of talk on the job can lead to loss of the job. We happen to have cases just like that because there are men in this Work who employ individuals — and I use this one illustration because it's easy sometimes to talk too much on the job, and you discover that the boss doesn't need you any more. So it is very important that you concentrate on your responsibility.

As we proceed, we'll take a look at some of the major areas. This morning I would like to summarize what you should consider, and then perhaps answer your specific questions that will be generated, that will lead us to some specific and helpful answers. Broadly speaking, I would also like to point the way to solving problems along the way, for we could not possibly answer all the specific difficulties on a morning like this.

The area we will start with in looking at the question of money management and our responsibility to acquire that which we manage would certainly be in the broad area of education. In this area of education, we recognize, first of all, a responsibility of men and women, which is job preparation, and then the responsibility of women more specifically, with respect to marriage or professional needs. First of all, education is broader than job preparation. We should understand this because education should be of the whole man. And Solomon defined it essentially as underwritten by the keeping of the Commandments, which has to do with moral and spiritual responsibility. You would much rather hire a person who tells the truth than a lie. So from that alone, we have an illustration of the importance of keeping the commandments in terms of one's totality of learning and character — one's education. Within this area, in order to live in this world, God has — as the book of Ecclesiastes tells us — assigned mankind the responsibility of learning to handle jobs. These jobs differ for every individual. Most certainly in the area of men and women. There are major responsibilities that differ. It can be fun to work and achieve and sleep sweetly. But when you haven't worked and haven't perspired, that is if you've been working outside, and you haven't achieved, and your mind is troubled, you do not sleep so well. So you learn that it does pay to put out a little effort to accomplish. Job preparation is important in our area because in order to acquire the money to manage, you have to have a job, and to

have that job you must prepare for it. So you see you must run back until you get at the root of the situations. There are different ways of looking for a job.

I pointed up that the kind of job you want might be evaluated through testing, contact, experience. Not everybody knows the kind he or she wishes. Some have a better sense of what they like than others. If you have a good sense of what you like to do, then focus in on it. You might want to change in the middle of life in the 40's. But if you don't have a focus, it is very important that you get some kind of counsel until you do focus on what you want to do. Well, somebody says, I can do most anything or I like to do most anything, and this is the reason, of course, he's unemployed! You should use available sources of information. Here I have brought a book. We could of had any number of books. My wife heard on radio this author interviewed and found it sufficiently interesting that she suggested I acquire a knowledge of the book. And since I was going to speak to you on this broad subject, I told her I would buy the book. And I feel it is a worthwhile volume. It's not the only volume in its field, but it illustrates that a work that is well written can be attractive and you tend to read it for information and pleasure whether you need it or not. It is called "Good Jobs," And its a paperback. "High paying opportunities working for yourself or for others," is the subtitle. The author is Allen J. Lieberoff. High paying jobs working for yourself or others — that is, essentially self employed where you're selling your services. The price is \$5.95. It's a rather thick volume. And I can recommend it for the simple reason I found it is simply and nicely broken down. I will read and give you an idea of the importance of using available sources. It defines the mechanical trades, the construction trades, the technical services trades, paramedicine, creative special fields, administrative and clerical fields, the food service industries, special service businesses, professional sales, fields requiring a four-year college degree. And then under that you would be surprised at all the areas that are broken down. In so doing, what our author tends to do — I'll just turn to a section here — he will explain the nature of the field, what people in it accomplish, what you have to know and the training required to get that information, then the sources of training by writing for information as to where this training is available. For instance, in a creative field such as interior design or decorator, he points up that vast amounts of information may be available, and he lists three institutions that give you that information. I don't need to name them here because that's not the point, something so specific. With this information, then he describes salary and employment opportunities. That is, is this a field with vast areas open to you or is it highly competitive? Thus, his book spends little time on explaining the opportunities for a history teacher because we have already too many and they're unemployed. He spends time in areas where opportunities are available.

Fashion designer, he does the same thing, showing where training may be acquired, and salary and employment opportunities. A way in which you are able to evaluate what your standard of living you would like to have will be. Some jobs are essentially \$10,000 a year; others may be \$50,000. It may depend on you. It may be that the job in fact has limitations. But on the other hand, with these limitations there may be side benefits. Then there is a section on jewelry and flatware designers and the training required. Can you imagine getting down to something like that? Now you have to know something of this field and training. You then make use of opportunities by pushing yourself. You may need to know something of your skill in selling. You may need to know something of your skill with your hands. Anyway, in looking at the broad perspective of education and job preparation, I would like to suggest that before you have already decided, that it would be good for you to analyze this, because there are some of you who can make a successful living at \$10,000 a year and others who could fail at \$20,000. Because income is one thing and management is the next.

Management is important. You may have to have greater management skills or you may be aware of your skills, in which case you might like by nature a job that doesn't pay so well. Because in reality, it will provide you all you need because you have the rest of the skills to make what you earn work for you. I will leave this available — there are other books that for you might even be more satisfying. But having looked at the few that were available, on this specific topic, I thought this certainly was as good as any. And since my wife had heard about it and the interviewer was quite impressed by this man's up-to-date summation in the way he presented it, especially if you are involved in your

own business whatever it might be — he's done a very thorough job in presenting the information you need to know. Then you can proceed for more information because everyone has two, three, four or more areas of broad information. So we will leave this here as a good illustration.

In this connection, there is the Consumer Information Center of the government in Pueblo, Colo., which has significant government publications that are inexpensively available or are free. The zip code is 81009. Consumer Information Center, Pueblo, Colo. 81009 for varied government publications. So we learn of the importance of using the sources of information. Incidentally then, in proceeding to jobs, and these could be developed more than I want to do, you need to have proper resumes and most certainly you need to know how to present yourself in an interview. Different people approach this problem differently. My oldest daughter recently went for an interview — well, not so recently, this was on her previous job — and someone had recommended her, and when she came to the office, the employer asked this person, is this the one you had recommended? The person said yes, and the boss said, she's hired! It is the way you come in, what you look like — and here a very important thought was presented to me from Mr. Bill Butler. We were thinking of it as men, but in this case it was a young woman. To Dress For Success, to dress the part, to dress for the job, dress also to feel good, that is, how you appear when you go for a job will be important. To have a business suit like I have and white gloves is not the way you approach a job in heavy industry unless you're interested in top management. To dress in a tank top when you're asking for a secretarial job in a fine suite is not the way you approach the employer. So let me repeat those: you dress for success. You dress for the part, you dress for the job. Dress to feel good. These are different ways of putting it because they're all a part of the same field. You have to be comfortable, and you have to also realize you have to make others comfortable.

With respect to jobs, I would like to point up the importance of pursuing a job that is immediately available when you need the cash to get the start, and being patient and not taking the first job when you can afford to be patient and selective. You therefore need to know when it is that the money is the issue, that is, you've got to have it in order to have something over your head, something to wear, and something to eat. And when you can afford to take that money and step by step to lay sufficient aside, that you can afford either to have night training, or since you may already be trained, to be more selective in the job you are pursuing. This in my estimation is the greatest weakness of certain men — and I would like to stress this before we go further in this management of funds — and that is the importance of being willing to take most any job that will get your feet financially on the ground. Take, of course, the best paying, the most likely job when you have such an opportunity. But where you can go right to work because as I said to one of the gentlemen here, you acquire momentum. If you're willing to go out to work you are moving in a certain direction. If you don't find a job and you go out again and you don't find a job, you don't get momentum. When you feel you have gone out, you've gotten a job, you are learning, you are being trained, and you can set aside sufficient monies over a period of time to begin to do something else. Then you can sit back later and contemplate a little more carefully and thoroughly what you really want to do or train yourself in the meantime. One of the tragedies would happen when, if you have to get a job right away, you discover that you have to be married or there is a child on the way — in or out of marriage seems to be the way society is today. It's unfortunate when you start a family before you get your feet on the ground.

I think you need to realize that in this case moral responsibility — the issues of marriage and having children — should carefully be thought of because they can make it very difficult for you to get ahead if you've had limited training. The only way there would be to have some kind of night training, night school, that will enable you in the meantime to rise in responsibility. Unless you happen to have special talents. I have always encouraged college age girls — whether they go through a two-year as at Pasadena City College or a four-year institution — to have some saleable skill. I've always also used, when addressing this question the example of Miss Lucy Martin who for years from the very beginning of the college, was a responsible person in our Music Department and who most Church members heard of until she retired. Lucy Martin was a woman who married, had a daughter, and her husband died early in their married life. I do not know the circumstances. It was a tragedy. She never

remarried. She had no reason to, and she looked upon the rest of her life in terms of a job as indeed a professional responsibility, and enjoyed the company of other men and women and young people so that her life was emotionally fulfilled. But she focused in on a professional job as her responsibility. She was a skilled individual. But her example should illustrate that any accident like this could happen to you. And even though you may not use your training for other than pleasure or the home and immediate family, you may discover that an accident can happen. We have men who do die before 69 or 70. We cannot guarantee and therefore the Law of God has built in it the principle of the third tithe as you remember, which was to take care of the needs of the fatherless and the widow, which presumes that men by the very nature of work in society can die unexpectedly and prematurely. So it does help, from the woman's point of view, irrespective of what the man may have done in the meantime, from the woman's point of view to have some potential skills. To develop them in the meantime. If anything were to happen to my wife there are any number of things besides paperhanging that she could do. I will cite an illustration:

Maybe it's not your field but it illustrates what you can use your skills for. And there might be surprising job openings for someone who maintains a general interest. My wife has an interest in horticulture. We were with American Historians Professional Teachers college graduates in 1967 in the Crimea visiting botanical gardens that the Czar had authorized with Swedish assistance. The Russian guide attempted to explain in English what we were all seeing. She had difficulty, and my wife would say, well, this is this in English. Or this is what it is. It came to the place where the guide said, well look, why don't you take over the tour and I will listen? And my wife who only has a degree from Ambassador College where we did not learn horticulture but where she's been learning this on her own, led the tour. With people who not only were college graduates, may have had master degrees and beyond, but had interest in some other fields and really didn't understand what they were seeing without some explanation. This is not something where she is going to use this as a wedge to get free from me. But I think you'll understand and you'd be surprised what we would call either hobbies or interests on the side, can be developed by women in the home or in the garden depending on what you're renting. And ultimately either turned culturally to the advantage of the family and friends and neighbors, community, or could be used in terms of job skills in a crisis. That's the approach we can use at whatever age level — I won't embarrass you by asking how many are over 50 — but no small number of you are definitely over 39, and I'm addressing the case where you may have a family situation in your past and now have to face this. It would be nice to have been able to develop it in the meantime. So it is important that we do consider as well as the job for marriage from a woman's point of view, a job as a professional skill before you're married. Or later, of course, in life.

In this connection, I want to cite something that occurred to my attention years ago. One of the very jobs that we think every young woman normally has skill in is one of the areas in which we have the least number of skilled individuals. And that's simply typing. I would like to state that I don't care what your job. It certainly wouldn't hurt you to be more skilled in typing. Now that came to my attention over the years from business people who say, look, I wish we could hire individuals who could type 60 not 35 words a minute. This brings up the next point as we go along here. The higher your skill in a particular area, the more likely your salary will be greater and your promotion faster. Simple. This is not a revelation. This is a repetition of historical information. But it is important that we repeat it because it's very easy in this society with women's liberation to assume that typing is no longer a responsibility. I've never felt that typing and secretarial work was a very suitable end in itself for women, unless indeed the kind of work you did was so creative, and working with such interesting and lively personalities that it was an education or a real life-time experience. But most such jobs are routine, in which case you use it only as a stepping stone.

I want to address this matter of jobs for women and much as for men because this is important. Having recognized therefore that the Church teaches we all must be willing to work, I say willing because we're not all able. That's a separate matter and the Church cares for those. Once we have acquired certain skills and decided to look into certain areas, then we can proceed to the question of what we do with our earnings. I have a book here which is somewhat out of date. I just pulled it off the

shelf this morning because my wife suggested that we might find in here at least an approach to a topic, such as this. It happens to be *Good Housekeeping's Guide for Young Homemakers*. Now not every homemaker is a married person. You can also be single. And there are some who are men as well as women because you still have to care for these things. And you may not always be that young. But you've got a responsibility. This book is dated. More likely there are up-to-date ones, and I have not felt the need because the principle I've already laid out; keep up-to-date. 1,001 time and money saving ideas for successful home management. You may know of far more interesting books, You might like to recommend anything in the notes in these questions that we will address later do not have to be merely questions of me. They might be principles and advice that you should like to give. But I will merely cite that a book like this covers every imaginable thing — emergencies, handy information, what you should know about appliances, automobiles, clothes, entertaining, food preparation, furniture and furnishings, houses, kitchen ideas, laundering, and specifically, money management. In sections there you will have vast information pertaining to insurance, the working wife, the home itself, credit and debt charge accounts, I will just leave this here as an illustration.

In this area, now, of inflation, to my knowledge it is unlikely in the foreseeable future, knowing the state of government and the power of the electorate, that we will have other than built-in inflation rather than the kind of deep recession and depression of the 1930's. Therefore your approach should take in mind that the savings that come from, let's say, insurances, annuities, or any area that you might have put your money in — savings in the bank — have to be measured against the actual rate of inflation. I deal with a man in the Church. This person retired many years ago, and let's say at 65, or a quarter of a century ago as in his case. He retired and he was to receive certain money from an insurance policy that came from his work. If he had owned his home and could have raised significant amount of his vegetables or had fruit from trees around his home, he would do reasonably well at the time his retirement was to take effect. His check every month was \$31. I want you to think about that in terms of what you spend with two other people in a restaurant today, apart from McDonald's. This man in that day could have lived reasonably well with this for Social Security, and he would have never had to have any other help. But I'm using this to illustrate that you must take a whole new view from what you may have heard from grandparents or parents to experience the 1930's and early 40's. You need a whole new view of what you do with your money. And I'm addressing here first of all the elderly, the older individuals who are not just young and out of high school and college. You need to realize that if inflation is going at the rate of 8 or 9%, and your sayings are bringing in 5 to 5 1/2%, you are losing money every year. You may be gaining on the sum but you are actually losing money. And so it is important that we take note of the specific area and books that on this subject, and that is, assuming you have funds to work with, the importance of investing those funds in areas that keep you ahead or ahead with inflation. *U.S. News and World Report*, I believe in the most recent issue (I didn't bring all sorts of magazines that have articles to keep you up-to-date) pointed up the value of the dollar, how much you would have to save now in order to achieve what you would have if you had saved 20 years ago. The state of the value of the dollar and where the money spent will produce more. The most valuable investment it has turned out in the last 30 years has been farmland. The next most valuable investment has been home or real estate property. The least of course would be the old traditional methods of saving in a bank, where you have gone behind and not kept up with inflation.

My wife's father is a widower. He saved his money up through the '50s. And he has found that what he saved would have been very satisfactory if the standard of living had remained only at basically a 1 or 2% increase. But going an average of 6 to 10% over the last several years, he is finding those savings cannot be significantly maintained in the traditional manner. In order to take care of his needs as an older person in his 80's. Therefore, if you think that older people now have their own problems, but you're 20 or 25, you won't have them, you need to realize, of course, that it's a long way down the road. Nevertheless, it is important to contemplate how we will use the money you receive that you can set aside. The importance of investment and handling such funds is a separate issue because most of us here are more or less starting out. But I would point this up as an aim and consideration. I will use one illustration and ask for a show of hands. How many of you are renting rather than buying a piece of property? How many of you are either owning or buying a piece of property? Did you notice that only



the latter were gaining on inflation and the rest of you are losing? Because that is exactly what's happening. Mr. Bill Butler is a property owner. He decided if he is going to marry, if he is going to be responsible to himself, that it was very important for him to start at some point — even if nothing else but a one-bedroom house and they're still available. You can work up. But to begin. Where your money is not a beautiful stack of rent receipts. But your money is increasing in value because the costs of living in inflation demands that home construction becomes more expensive and the increase in population demands more homes, and therefore it is very difficult today to have an environment in which homes will ever play a normal role in inflation. They are going to be one of the abnormal pressures. And therefore, it is the most likely and advantageous area.

I have found myself that really all the money I've ever saved has ultimately been what I've been able to acquire as a result of having the opportunity to begin to buy one's own home, And now it is possible to say that what inflation has done for me, I didn't do for myself. But inflation has done that, and the value of the property is such now that I at least have the capacity to borrow on it if I want to, which is not the normal route, but you sometimes need to. I would like to suggest that I think not more than 20% are purchasing homes and 80% are not. Now some of you in your old age have no choice, and there are some who are really in old age who are here, I very much appreciate the fact you are. So we'll just take a look at the reality. It does pay — definitely pays — not to be wholly dependent on government funds because those funds will keep you at the lowest standard of living acceptable, whereas if you have the capacity though investment, like the woman in Proverbs 31, you should develop yourself. On the premise it is very important that you do acquire some information from some articles, some books, so I will merely point up that sometimes you can pick up a magazine such as the Sept. 27 issue of *Woman's Day* — I believe that's the latest one — 101 Inflation Fighters, better ways to eat well so you don't have to pay the doctor bill later, you can still save money without scrimping and hurting yourself. Dress superbly. Get a good job and make it pay. And do it inexpensively. And then home decoration, renting a car, buying a house and still keep your money in your pocket. These are ideas and you can get it in a 49¢ publication such as this. You will find that probably every month magazines come out, and they're mostly repetitious. Get one that seems reasonably well and thoroughly presented, and then maybe a book, and then perhaps a night course even at PCC (Pasadena City College) or real estate investment. You'd be surprised what can happen. You have to think, you have to be willing to work, you have to be willing to study.

I started in Proverbs with the determination that effort is important at the beginning. And the effort is measured ultimately in the financial remuneration. And so now we learn, once we receive that, how to govern or manage this money step by step. We should have some serious knowledge of the impact of taxes at all levels throughout our lives, that is, tax rates that will differ when you no longer have an income because you have money set aside, because there are new systems today where you put money aside and then pay taxes later only when you withdraw it. The recognition of the impact of taxes, especially property taxes, would be very important, because if you own a home, you have to bear this in mind. There are some, of course, who have such bargains and rentals that probably you won't need to do it. And some of you will never have the chance to accumulate enough for a down payment. What you really need to do is what the Jewish community always has done, and that is to have friends and relatives who will get you started, and show what you're willing to do.

Unfortunately, without friends or relatives, it's a harder row to hoe. When you have the money — now we've taken the long range look, now we're going to take the shorter look — you are confronted as young people, perhaps interested in home and marriage and children, or just simply friendship and your own education, with the impact of entertainment. It is here important that the old principles of budgeting must not be neglected. That is, you need to evaluate what you are doing with your money. I will not here dwell on the separate subject of how to budget. But we merely address the question that you should budget. Depending on your income, you need to budget more or less. It's always easy if you have a reasonably good income and are single to feel you don't need to. In this area of entertainment, you want to be very careful that you get the most — as in everything else — for your effort. It may be sufficient pleasure. You like to spend money. But you need to be careful. Now on the other

hand, don't go to the other extreme you deny yourself healthful food and you become unbalanced in what you eat and later pay a heavy price in medical bills. That is very significant. This area of entertainment is important, especially for younger people. You need to sit down and contemplate how much money you really need to put out in comparison with, let's say, the car, home, clothing. I would certainly say, if you put entertainment on your priority list as #1, and you are renting at a high level, let's say \$175 to \$225 a month, you're making a terrible mistake. My daughter is not quite like everybody else. She is money conscious. She's renting, but she has a place at \$100 a month. She really pays \$200 but she has somebody with her, so they split it. She found she could put three in there, and that cut it down to \$67.50 let us say. That's not bad. Now she's beginning to be able to put some money aside. You will find sometimes that a cooperative effort of two fellows or two girls can go a long way. You don't have to be just one in a room, you can be two, maybe the place is designed so that it is a little more expensive but you can have three and then the cost can be cut down a great deal. Think about that seriously. In my estimation, in the present set of circumstances, you have no alternative in the long range planning but considering that your home, or your house, or wherever you are living has to be the focus of your #1 priority. What you need to do is design it in such a way that you maximize the value of your money and hopefully are able to set aside some money over a period of time to be able to make a down payment on a piece of property, a home. And you may start out with something very small and gradually through investment you work up.

A car is one of the biggest drains. And I will warn you that there are sometimes for single people far more remarkable uses of the money than expensive cars because you made a wrong choice either in the initial purchase or have gotten a lemon. I have found that if people are very careful here, they can make major savings. A car seems to be essential in our society because 1) we have adopted the idea that we want to live where we want to live and we want to work where we want to work, and to get to the two places we have to have a car. It is much wiser to coordinate the place where you work with the place where you live and have access to it either by foot. And my daughter decided to go that route — she's able to walk to work from where she lives. We could also ride the bus which may be very satisfactory on some routes, less on others. I have designed my home such that if we had a crisis, I would be able to ride a bus back and forth every day, come to church services or go to work, I don't use that unnecessarily; I have in times past, when I had the opportunity and the time to do so. We designed also that we have a freeway from my home directly to the College. That was unusual — it's my private driveway; the 210 West from here.

Clothing can be costly. Clothing need not be. That is a separate area where good advice in women's Journals can go a long way. Where men and women can go through what we call proper stores that have legitimate sales and ask the person who knows how. There are people who are well dressed for very little cost. So if we prioritize in terms of home and transportation, food and clothing, and focus in where the greatest drain will occur, be very careful with even such a little area as a telephone. It can be very expensive. Analyze its real value. How many people can use a single phone, or share? Because you'd be surprised. Each one of these areas becomes a drain.

I would point up that along the way you need to analyze what your decision will be in the question of health insurance. That is, what have you decided is the role that you will take in terms of illness or accident, apart from automobile insurance which would cover accident? You need to be prepared for this because you can have large financial expenses. I will say if anybody decides that he is going to go thoroughly the route of hospitals and medical care, the Church recognizes you have a responsibility to yourself and not to drain the funds from others. You have a responsibility for health insurance. And I have always said with respect to driving or auto that I do not think any Church member, and I will say it here — I don't care what your age — you have, in my estimation, no valid right as a Christian to drive a car in your name if you don't have auto insurance or the equivalent money in cash set aside. Now I know that some do not do what I am telling you, and sooner or later you're going to pay a penalty, and the penalty can run into the thousands of dollars. If you cannot afford insurance you cannot afford to drive your car. You can only afford to take the bus or walk to work, you don't want to take needless chances. We already discussed the area in terms of insurance and property. Be sure

that if you are renting unfurnished, if you are owning a piece of property, that you have a policy that properly will be taking pace with inflation. There will be booklets, books, articles on the subject on how to proceed with respect to keeping a record, photography (photographing what you have) because these are problems to be considered. You need to take a look and read. You may find that there are things that will be important to you that I have not included. But I've tried to give an overview here briefly to give you an idea of areas where you will want to spend a little more time and money on. And now I would like to be able to take some of the questions. And we will see what you think we should cover.

*Q: It has been said that a certain percentage of one's income should be distributed among various expenditures. Can you give us such expenditures, for example, it has been said that 25% of our net pay should be used for house rental or payment on a mortgage. Could you then break down the various percentages for us?*

Now this is the kind of question I would like to suggest, that since this is a Sabbath service, in a certain sense as you know, that what we are doing — and I think it is normally better as we take a look at the approaches as to how to solve problems, the principals that are laid out in scripture, and then proceed. Let me state that normally for people who have property payments or rentals, 20-25% is an appropriate and acceptable figure. I would point up, however, that there are some variations. Obviously for a single person, you might be able to put 30-35% into a more than minimum property. I'm not taking about rentals here but property. You actually could afford to spend more. Because you happen to have been buying a property that is just going like this. I will state what everyone in real estate knows: if you find that the value of your property increases 50% in a three-year period. Now let me illustrate a point. If you were able to buy a property for \$30,000 on the market, at 50% increase in three years it's worth \$45,000, clearly. But suppose you happen to have enough down payment that you could get started on a property that originally was \$60,000. In three years 50% increase it's \$90,000. You get what's happening? You have increased \$30,000 instead of \$15,000. The more expensive the initial property, the greater the actual cash increase, so that if you marry, you now may say (and if you could cash it in), you start out with \$30,000 and not \$15,000 as a result of inflation. Therefore, if you are able to do this, it always pays to analyze specifically one's opportunities. There are no hard and fast rules when you are young and single. Take advantage of your situation.

If you happen to be a person with children — we're not normally addressing that group — but suppose you're falling in love with a widow with five children. There your percentage is much more likely to be 20% and even 25%. For the rest of them, I suggest that you take a good article or book on the subject specifically of budgeting. And here I would like to suggest that a happy solution to things of this nature would be to go to a paperback section in a leading bookstore and go to the area where you can focus in on the specific illustration. Or take a night time course or daytime course for some few who can at a local community college, addressing the question specifically of budgeting. It is better that I approach it that way and you analyze the wisdom of those who are specifically in the field, realizing that you may be able to have great exceptions to your advantage. Once you own the property (and happily I made the right decision once to sell a property where we lived in La Canada and we bought two cheap ones in Sunland and we sold one of the two and paid the other off so that right now I'm paying zero percent of my salary in property payment. Because I was able with inflation to pay the other off. I went down from a four-bedroom home to a two.) And suddenly money can be used for something else. But on the other hand, two of the children have left. I'm able to take that money to pay rent for my children so they can be near the college they want to go to. See the advantage you have. When you get married it definitely pays because it is probably the case that you can have your property paid off at the time your children will be going to college. And then that money that goes into normal rent or property payments can go into taking care of their housing till they get a start. That's the way you should look at your life and think of marriage as a proper place in the sequence the earning money, that is, where you have enough money to really have roots. And that means to have a home. It is absolutely worth it for 90% if you possibly can.

*Q: If a person seems to be in financial need, is it wise to give that person money assuming that one can afford to do so, whether the person asks for it or not?*

If a person is in financial need, you should advise the person if you happen to know the individual on what he should do. If he really needs money, then you should advise him to analyze whether a loan is what he needs to get him over the hurdle, or to encourage him not to be so full of pride as some people are that they won't ask for help. We do not normally recommend that brethren loan to others, unless they are absolutely willing to write the money off. We do not recommend that you loan to anyone else unless you are willing to write the money off as a total loss. If you would be willing to do so, fine. Then that would be your decision. Otherwise, if you think you need the money back, don't loan it. I'll just tell you that. If you know the other person can pay, you're still taking the chance. You're certainly free to make those decisions. You have to really use your judgment. But we know that a number of cases have arisen in this Church in which people have loaned to others and they haven't been able to pay back. If you know somebody has property, somebody has certainly a good job, there's no reason to think you'd ever lose it? Then you may have obviously sufficient security. But don't risk getting into a bad attitude. I wouldn't give anybody any money unless he really needed it, and I wouldn't do it unless he also asked for it, or you discussed the possibility with him that you could help over a temporary crisis. But I think the person should make his own decision in terms of what he really wants.

*Q: Having personal savings is a sound principle. Do you have any suggestions or guidelines to follow while investing?*

Well, I already have in this sense pointed up that in my estimation, I start in the following way. Now, you will understand I'm not really answering the question directly, but indirectly. My son had a summer job. I told him, look, don't get a savings account — you're not going to earn this much. Get a checking account and learn how to use it wisely. There are some people who don't even know how to use a checking account wisely. Now if you have a larger sum, a year-round job, then start with a savings account.

In this matter of a checking account, I actually met a man who did not know that what you write out in checks ought to be equivalent to what you put in. We had to bail him out, and we actually told the bank and worked with the bank to close out his checking account and we guaranteed the remaining checks that were out. We took away all the other checks and his account was closed. Because he didn't know how to handle money, he just plainly didn't. He had to be on a cash basis. Now when you have a savings account and your money is small, then a proper savings investment in a bank savings and loan or some other means — that's a matter for you to investigate as the next step. And when you have a sufficiently large sum that you think you can parley into real estate, then go ahead. Now let me illustrate an interesting point that I heard some time ago. My wife had just before this heard of a man who got his start doing this. You will discover that sometimes after you have a little money — and just a little, doesn't have to be this much — you can offer to purchase a piece of property. Now what will happen is, sometimes the owner will have to sell and somebody comes along and offers more and you come along and offer less. I will use an illustration that I heard.

This person had some money. The wife of the man I talked to bid \$100,000 lower than anybody else and normally would never get the bid. For obvious reasons you take the man that offers you the most. There were about six who bid. The top man couldn't come through with a loan; the next person couldn't come through with a loan; the next person couldn't come through with a loan; and finally the low bid was the one they had to take. She automatically earned \$100,000 because she underbid, and she guessed that the others could not come through with the cash. She wouldn't have lost a thing if she had never been accepted. After all, she would still have her own money. Now I'm talking here about big figures because that was an illustration. What my wife heard was the case of a man who would start — he started out on a shoestring offering the smallest possible sum to get started. And mostly they turned him down. And finally somebody needed it so much that they said, well look, I'll carry — we won't even have anybody down, just the closing costs, and the owner would carry the second in order to get rid of it. Then the bank would loan the rest. Sometimes you can have some marvelous situations start when you start from practically nothing. But you have to wait, you have to think, you have to read a book on the subject. And be a little daring. That is, try something that you

never thought of before. Maybe I made the mistake, I don't know, I knew of a piece of property in one case where it was nothing down, the woman would take the second — it was a one-bedroom affair, too small for anything. We could have picked it up 4-1/2 years ago for \$16,000. A very large piece of property with a one-bedroom house. I needed something else so I didn't go that route because my mind must be on my job and I do not recommend the ministry get involved in anything like this. But it was an illustration. Someone else could have come along. Get the owner to carry the second mortgage or what would be practically the equivalent of a down payment. Or borrow from a relative, get the money down, get somebody to take the second mortgage, you take the second mortgage and pay off your relative. Or did you hear what I said? There are some clever ways of doing things. And you didn't even put any money down of your own; you put your relative's money down, converted it into a second mortgage. Now if you really have some people who are your relatives who could help you get started like this, you'll go a long way. And I feel many marriages that are unhappy can be resolved by some practical solutions this way.

*Q: As it now stands I don't have the money for a down payment in the area we are discussing. Do you recommend borrowing the money for a down payment, plus making the house payments in such a case as mine?*

Well, I do not know what you can do. But I already just told you that you might be able to get started by borrowing from a relative, and converting it, because you have a good job — not a poor job, but a good job — to take care of your payments, and to help you get started in such a way that you can convert your relative's good faith in you into a down payment and then take out a second mortgage to cover that so your relative is paid. Now I think that is a very business-wise maneuver if you are handling affairs correctly.

These were the questions presented. Now I would like to state there are two areas we are looking at in terms of money management. One which I have not dealt with in particular, and that is the day-to-day management of the budget, because we have some very fine material, and we have ourselves in the church published material on budget, in our own literature. And therefore I should not have to repeat that significantly. If you don't have any of those or wanted to put them to work, you'd better take heed because it will certainly profit you in the next step where, when you have a little savings or use the opportunity of friendship with others to convert it into some kind of investment. It is that second step that is critical to a happy marriage. Too many women discover they are living with men living hand-to-mouth from day-to-day, and don't have the feeling of security. A woman deserves the feeling of security. And you get it by properly managing and investing and initially by working in order to have enough to manage. Then day-to-day you learn to conserve expenses. Don't think that you shouldn't set aside something in planning. But you start out little by little. And you know you don't want to start out when the money is tight, unless of course you have an unusual opportunity. You want to start out when the money is loose in terms of loans being more readily available. Right now the money is getting tight and you should analyze that and know that you may have to wait a year or two for some in order to achieve it. But learn to curb it. Especially watch your rents, watch the restaurant outgo expenses. Watch the car expense. It's so easy to be tempted to either buy something cheap that needs immense sums in repair or buy something new when a good used one that is fairly new has all the advantages of not losing the first year's appreciation. Get proper advice. I've always called someone before I've ever purchased a car, I've always called an individual since I'm not a mechanic and not in the field, to know something or to read something from a local public library on the particular model. I say in this case you go to the community library nearest you, ask a reference librarian if you need to. Many of the questions you might have are resolvable. It all goes back to the premise we started with at the beginning: that a wise man seeks counsel; the poor do not heed admonition.

— END —



## **APPENDIX 6**

### **THE NEED FOR GODLY FELLOWSHIP**

Bob Fahey  
28-Apr-1979

Mid-1977 I had the opportunity, and it was an opportunity — a very unique one as far as I was concerned — something can be very unique to visit Lagos, Nigeria. Now that's an unusual state to our Western mind. It's about 2/3 Islamic and our local elder there, he's now a local elder, he was ordained at the Feast '78, he wasn't a local elder at the time, he was a deacon. His name Latif Adelery. He was here for the conference maybe some of you had the chance to meet him. Latif is Nigerian, he speaks about 8 different Nigerian languages and he's a very valuable man helping out Mr. Jackson in that area. Mr. Jackson speaks English — the British are not so sure they want to call it English — but at any rate, he speaks American and Latif is his right arm there to be able to help him out in the mail reading, in the driving, going thru borders and checkpoints and talking with individuals.

Latif, as I say, the first name is Muslim, he wasn't Muslim, he's converted from that in Nigeria. He told me by the way that he had learned to pray, when he began to pray to God, he prayed in the Muslim fashion which means he was facing Mecca and his backside was higher than his head. But, he says, God heard anyway and he got everything straightened out and he's able to get around and now he's a local elder in the church, he spent years in Burming and so on, so he's quite a fellow. But we were sitting at the main hotel in Lagos, it was the main hotel at that time, called the Eko Holiday Inn which may strike you as funny but it's designed in a very Nigerian way and outside, because the weather is beautiful out there, very hot and muggy, you know, steamy weather generally but you sit outside and I happened to be sitting with Latif and Peter Nathan who is now the kind of business manager for Black Africa. We were sitting together and I looked over and saw a crowd of five Nigerian men. They were in Nigerian garb, and I don't know if you know the garb they wear, but it's extremely colorful. It's kind of a long robe with kind of a baggy trouser with it, made usually of a very high-quality material, even silk and it's embroidered in fancy colors, you know, gold, and shines and so on — especially in the sunlight. They have a little pack, kind of a pill-box pack that goes with it. And they were sitting there, the five of them, it was kind of late in the afternoon, after working hours, and they were just having a good session. They were talking, and the five of them were sitting in a circle and you could see they knew each other for years — at least that's the impression I got and I had been watching them for about a half an hour it seems. I don't know what the conversation that Latif and Peter got into, but I was just watching these men because they were so interesting. Here they were in their native garb and they were talking and gesturing and they'd sit back in their chairs; there was no table in between them — they had a table on the side — and they'd talk, and one would lean over and talk to the other one and they'd shared, and then they'd talk, all five, and then three and two, and then the other two and the other three and they'd go back and forth. They were just talking and sharing and they were agreeing with each other and they were disagreeing with each other. But it was all a very pleasant, very beautiful kind of relationship that these five men had, sitting there having a beer in the Eko Holiday Inn in Lagos, Nigeria.

I had just been noticing their talking and laughing and their fellowship together, their companionship, which was striking — it was unusual to see that way. Nobody was left out, everybody was a part of the group, everybody was accepted, everybody was shared in, everyone was enjoying it. I saw the courtesy that they extended to each other — it was striking the way they handled themselves in that situation. I saw the joy that they had in each other's fellowship or comments or the laughter they would have at somebody's crack or remark — there was none of this stuff that so marks our society. But they really enjoyed each other and I saw a real brotherhood in those five men — they certainly

weren't brothers, but they were all close to the same age, and if they were, I feel sorry for the mother who had that many kids that close together. It would be very difficult. But as I say, all accepted each other and all respected each other and they enjoyed each other's company very much.

At that time, I'd been spending quite a bit of time with Mr. Armstrong in his trip through Southern Africa and you've heard the sermon where he starts off and he talks about the Kingdom of God and the relationship and the purpose of human kind where he was very much in that and I was hearing the gospel presented to different audiences with different approaches time after time — of course, in conversation and various meetings with the state leaders, and the purpose of human life, and God's plan and the desire there that God had in mind. It was very much impressed on my mind. And as I saw that, with this background that Mr. Armstrong had put in my mind with all this visiting we had done, and seeing the friendship of the five men who were sitting there and the way they were enjoying each other's company and going back and forth and participating in the conversation; in quite a different area — it was another culture. Their culture was totally different than mine. You could see that by their dress. They were talking in a language I couldn't even understand one word of, it was either Ebo or Hausa, whichever one, and I didn't even know what tribe they belonged to. It was a total different race, a different geography. Here I was in Lagos, Nigeria where everything is different and the trees and the swampy things are just quite different; a different part of the family tree that descended from Adam, a different group — but here they were in this fellowship. I said to myself... "That's it"... "That is very pleasing to God...and it is exactly what he wants, and that's what His plan's all about. This idea that they were sitting together — that is exactly what He wanted.

Take a look at John, chapter 1 — if I can steal a line from Mr. Armstrong here — John, chapter 1. He says in verse one — it's a scripture in the Bible that goes back the very furthest...it goes back before there was a heaven and earth, before there was an angel, before there were stars, before there was a moon, before the sun shawn — shined, I'm sorry, shawn is British, I guess — I happened to learn a new vocabulary. Every time you move...when I went to Britain I had to learn a new vocabulary and words to avoid and then you go up to Scotland and they're slightly different — pretty much the same, but slightly different — and you go out to Australia and they're different again, you know different things for different people — and back in South Africa you start all over again and now I'm coming back to America and I've had to, you know, and I can almost say nothing and I have to be careful of which word is where.

It says, "*In the beginning was the Word.*" This goes right back to Jesus Christ being from the very beginning and that goes back as far as you want to go back, or as far as it's possible to go back. "*And the Word was with God,*" was there with the Father, or the one who became the Father — at this particular juncture, He wasn't the Father; He hadn't begotten anything yet. "*And the Word was God*" — He was a part of that God family — there were the two and there was nothing else. Now that's difficult for us to comprehend — two Beings with NOTHING ELSE. They had a relationship that was unbelievable, and it is to our human minds, basically unbelievable. They were perfect in everything they did. They were perfect by any standard; the highest standards we can imagine. They never sinned in any way. They never tried to take from the other one; they were never selfish. Whenever they spoke to the other, it was always complete trust and confidence between the two — there was a complete, open sharing — they'd known each other forever, and the relationship they had was total trust, total generosity. They were all-wise; there was no wisdom that they lacked. They were all-knowing, they were immortal; they could never die; their life went on, they had life in themselves, as He said. "*The same was in the beginning with God. All things were made by Him, and without Him was not anything made that was made.*" In Him was life. They had life inside themselves. Our life, it says, is in the blood and if it's poured out, we're gone. But they had life inherent in themselves. But they were just the two — and the life was the light of men; they were able to impart that later on to bring life to you and I so that we'd have life as we know it. "*And the light shines in the darkness and the darkness comprehended it not.*" It didn't understand what was being done. These two Beings who had had this incredible relationship, the One was always on the top, by the way. God the Father, as He was called, was always the Senior and the Other was always the Junior, and there was total cooperation. They had the same mind; They had



such a mind that later on the younger one, or the lesser one — not younger was able to say, “if you’ve seen Me, you’ve seen the Father.” Because we look at things — the basic issues. I suppose one might like a blue shirt and another one a yellow, but the basic issues — they looked at everything exactly alike, and their minds were in harmony there, as I say, they were generous and they were all-wise, but they were alone — there was only the two of them. There was nobody else; there was nobody to sort of talk it over with, to kind of share with. And, from what we can gather, the plan they put together — they were LONESOME. They wanted to add other beings. They had life and they wanted to share it — they wanted to give it to other people; other beings who were like them — who had the same characteristics. They decided to share life. They wanted a community of people — more than just the two of them. I mean, they’d known each other forever and they decided they’d like more people to be involved in that community. They wanted diversity; they wanted different personalities — They didn’t want all exactly the same personality, they wanted different ones, they wanted different outlooks, they wanted to be able to share.

In the same way, these five men were sitting around in Nigeria. They wanted to be able to say, what do you think about this? And one man would say, well I think this and another one said well I think that and they went back and forth and they enjoyed each other’s minds, they enjoyed each other’s outlooks and they wanted to be able to share in that way — but there were just the two of them. Mind you, their minds were so superior to anything we know, probably it would be quite different in the whole relationship because of the enormity of the minds and the depth — it must have been fascinating. But still they wanted to produce other beings, but they wanted other beings that were not just there to sort of fill up space. They wanted other beings who were not selfish — they didn’t want someone who was going to foul the rest and say, “No, I won’t go” and fight and scream and say “That’s mine” — they didn’t want that. But they wanted beings who were not selfish; who would shun sin; who said, “No, we don’t want that wrong way — we want the right way. They wanted beings who were generous, who would share what was theirs and give. They wanted beings who were wise and who would enjoy the other person’s outlook and his viewpoints and his feelings. They wanted beings who were equally immortal as themselves, but who always had a respect for God — God would always be the Leader — and always would have a respect for their fellow beings, which came down to us as the basis of the law. First commandment, God’s always the One on top. He’s the Father and there’s certain things about that and our relationships with each other that God and Christ — they never lied to each other; they never bear false witness; they never distort the truth to each other, they never seek their own advantage. They never...they shunned that — that’s the wrong way. That doesn’t produce the good relationship that they knew from the very beginning. They wanted a Godly community.

You know, it’s kind of instructive about how God pictures the World Tomorrow. You and I picture it in different ways. Have you ever thought of looking at it how God pictures it; what He’s looking forward to — exactly what He sees about the plan that’s terrific — where He says, “I rejoice at this — I like this.” I know the idea your children have — some of you have children, I suppose — or brothers or sisters, whatever — the likely idea of a lion and a lamb — that kind of turns them on. I’d like to have a lion, you know — and this snake business, where they won’t harm, you know, and spiders won’t be creepie-crawlies and all that sort of thing.

This is often the way people picture the World Tomorrow. They picture the plowman overtaking the reaper, and kind of a happy family, and growing up in a peaceful environment where there’s no war, which is all very good. But what does God picture about it? What is it that He likes?

I’d like you to look at Zechariah, chapter 8 — the book of Zechariah... *“Again, the word of the Lord of Hosts came to me saying, Thus says the Lord of Hosts, I was jealous for Zion with great jealousy and I was jealous for her with great fury, Thus says the Lord.”* I am returning to Zion — here’s what Christ says. I am returning to Zion and will dwell in the middle of Jerusalem. He’s going to dwell right smack dab in the middle of it. Now why is He going to do that? Who’s going to be around Him? *“And Jerusalem shall be called the City of Truth, and the mountain of the Lord of hosts, the Holy Mountain, thus says the Lord. There shall yet, old men and old women dwell in the streets of*

*Jerusalem — every man with his staff in his hand for very age.*” He’s looking forward to a time when He’s in the middle of Jerusalem dwelling there, that there are people there who live long lives, who do various things, who go His way. And the streets of the city shall be full of people playing in the streets thereof. He likes that idea — that there be a lot of people there, dwelling and playing safely. We won’t have to worry about somebody mugging your kid. He likes that idea. The idea of a community of people together and sharing. It says, *“Thus says the LORD of Hosts, if it be marvelous in the eyes of the remnant of this people in these days, should it also be marvelous in my eyes?”* says the LORD. From my point of view, it’s marvelous! It may be great for people, but isn’t marvelous for me too! That Jesus Christ — the LORD — the Word that we read about there who was in the beginning — was looking forward to different people being in the community in the city. He says, I’m going to dwell in Jerusalem and it’s going to be full of people who are going to be doing things and going places, sharing. It’s a community. That’s exactly what He wanted at the very beginning. Take a look at Jeremiah 33, beginning verse 9. Talking about bringing back the captivity in verse 7. And He will build them, cleanse them of their sin, take away the way where they sinned against Him (verse 8). They went the wrong way, they followed the wrong way, and they got all the wrong results. So He says, I’m going to clean them up, bring them back, and He says in verse 9, *“And it shall be to me a name of Joy (bringing all these people back), a praise and my honor before all the nations of the earth which shall hear all the good that I do unto them.”* They are going to say, *“Hey, God really blesses those people.”* *“And they shall fear and tremble for all the goodness and all the prosperity that I procure unto them. Thus says the LORD, again there shall be heard in this place which you say shall be desolate without man and without beast (Jeremiah had to say that for a time), even in the cities of Judah and in the streets of Jerusalem that are desolate without man and without inhabitants and without beasts, the voice of joy”* — He wanted to hear it ringing out! Kids playing and fellowship and young families and people in parties and socials mud sitting around having a beer together after work, a bunch of fellows sitting around talking just enjoying each other! Enjoying the company. The voice of joy, the voice of gladness, the voice of the bridegroom, the voice of the bride, the voices of them that shall sing, *“Praise the LORD of Hosts!”* when they follow that way, you see. And they follow the way that God has established. It’s going to bring a terrific community, a joy and fellowship together, which was what they wanted in the first place. It’s what the whole plan was about. *“For the LORD is good and His mercy endures forever and of them that shall bring the sacrifice of praise into the House of the LORD. For I will cause to return the captivity of the land as at the first, says the LORD.”* He goes on down, talks about sheep and so on dwelling there.

You know, with that background and having just completed the Passover as we’ve done, you might find it interesting to look at Luke 22. When you realize that the Father and the Son were working out a plan to have other people who have the same value standards they do, the same law, the same respect for the Father and His way, that weren’t, as I said, fouling the nest. Imagine what this particular meal meant to Him. In Luke 22:14: *“And when the hour was come, He sat down and the 12 apostles with Him.”* Now here was the beginning of His government. Here was the beginning of the government that was going to lead into the time when they were all in the God family. These were the beginning men of it, over the 12 tribes of Israel. Can you imagine the Christ who had been with the Father, just the two of them at the beginning — there were only two — and He was sitting at a dinner with twelve men that He enjoyed, some of them He had been with since a very young age, and of course, as disciples for three years and a bit. And now there were 12! Can you imagine how Christ looked at that! From the point of view that there were only two of us. And now these few out of all these masses that are out there are called to be a part of my government. One of them was going to betray Him, which He knew. A very sad thing. It must have grieved Him deeply that it even had to take place, but there it was. It was prophesied, it was set up that way, prophesied from the very beginning. But the 12 were there. And He said, verse 15, He said unto them, *“With desire I have desired to eat this Passover with you before I suffer.”* Do we understand that maybe a little more deeply than we did before? He was so eager — this dinner, His final dinner as a human being here, before His plan went into effect that He was to be killed and crucified and go through all the difficulties: the beating, the scourging, then raised back to God level, and to work with His church to bring other people in through these 12 men, to guide and direct and to do His work up there, and to send them out to preach the

gospel, the Good News that it was going to be all the earth that was eventually going to be encompassed with this particular government. But at this particular time, it was only a small bit. So you see a little more deeply how He said, *"I desire to be at this meal with you."* And as if to reinforce it — and to reinforce it — He said, *"Far I say unto you, I will not anymore eat thereof until it be fulfilled in the Kingdom of God."* I'm not going to have the Passover again. I'm not going to have wine — until the Kingdom of God is set up. I'm going on a 2,000-year wine fast, because I'm so looking forward to the real thing, that I'm not going to be involved in wine until then. I mean, He wanted that. That was the purpose of their whole plan — to have different individuals.

I don't know whether the apostles were single or married here. It doesn't say. Do you get the idea that only married people were involved in things like that? It doesn't say whether they were married or not at this particular juncture. We know most of them did marry, but we don't know every one. But any rate, here they were. Thirteen men, gathered around a table. And He said, this is what I'm looking for. I've desired to eat this, I've desired to be a part of this. They already had different personalities and outlooks, and He had already said you're going to be over the 12 kingdoms, and He was enjoying that! And the last dinner — He wasn't enjoying the part after that last dinner, as we read later on. But that had to come to pass, and as He said in John (I think the very bravest scripture, I won't turn to it) 18 where He said, when Peter said, *"No, you're not going to go through with this, I'm going to fight off the Roman Empire with my sword"* — you got to admire Peter's enthusiasm and his pluck, when he lopped off Malchus' ear. Christ said, put up your sword. The cup that my Father has given me to drink, shall I not drink it? In other words, the troubles, the difficulties that were there before I reach the Kingdom of God, before I'm able to do it and bring all mankind to the Father, shouldn't I drink that cup He put there for me? And all of us have to do that ourselves to be able to say, Well, I'm going to hoe the row that I'm called to hoe, and I've got to do it and here I am, and to be able to do it just like He did, in the same way. And of course, He had His which was obviously far more difficult, far more arduous than ours. But He desired those 12 men (to eat with Him). He appreciated every one of them. He mentions it was John He loved, but you know He loved every single one. He says that later on. And He told them, *"By this shall all men know that you are my disciples that you have that affection for each other."* Remember that in the dinner, when they had that closeness? It will stick out that you are my disciples. That's the kind of people I want, to dwell with Me forever — sit around and do things and accomplish and then relax and fellowship and enjoy the different people — the diversity, the godly community of people who always respond, with the Father at the very top, and who always are concerned with the fellowship among the other beings. That's what the plan's about!

Take a look at Rev. 19:5. *"And a voice came out of the throne, saying, praise our God all His servants, you that fear Him both small and great."* Bring Him praises, all His servants. *"And I heard as it were a voice of a great multitude, a voice of many waters, and a voice of mighty thunderings saying, allelujah, for the LORD God omnipotent reigns."* I think we are waiting for that — when He reigns — and we start singing out praises to Him. *"Let us be glad and rejoice, give honor to Him, for the marriage of the Lamb has come and His wife has made herself ready."* These are the people who are going to be a part of His family forever. And how does He celebrate it? Well, first He gets them nice and dressed up. He says in verse 8: *"And to her it was granted that she should be arrayed in fine linen, clean and white."* White linen is the righteousness of the saints. *"And He said to me, write, blessed are they which are called unto the marriage supper of the Lamb."* He is going to celebrate His reign with a big banquet. And He says, I want them all together. I want them all there. It's a fellowship, a community, a rejoicing, as much as it was for those five men in Nigeria, but how much more with a full banquet. This is what He celebrates it for. He's looking forward to it. This is when He's going to have wine again. Right back here. That's what the plan's about — to bring many, people in, through all the hardships and difficulties they have to face in life. But then, after He knows they won't go the wrong way, that they'll always have the Father on top, they'll always look to the welfare of others. They'll even sacrifice themselves. Then He says I'm going to put them in the family forever. And I'm going to enjoy it! And He said, *"Blessed are they which are called to the marriage supper of the lamb! And He said unto me, these are the true sayings of God."* This is what He wanted them to do. God based His whole law and the things which have come down to man which mankind rejected as a

whole, has turned away from, on love. On what we call love. It's an outgoing concern for the other people, for their welfare, for the feelings of others, for the needs of others, a concern for their welfare and well being.

Love, brethren, is social. If you are stuck on a desert island somewhere and you're sitting out there and there's a tree with three coconuts on it and you, you will have difficulty expressing love and outgoing concern. You will be able to do it with the Father. You'll be able to talk to Him. You'll be able to deal with Him and meet with Him in a way and talk with Him, but as far as being able to sit down and say, "Wow, wasn't that a spectacular sunset!" "Or, do you think we're going to get any fish today?" Have you ever found yourself — and I think we all have — maybe sitting in a movie, and you go in by yourself — I've done this in years gone by; I haven't gone to many movies lately. But I was there by myself, and I leaned over to the person sitting next to me, and there's nobody there and arghghrghrgh!! And you want to say something! You want to share. You want to comment on it. And there's nobody there! A terribly lonesome feeling comes on you. No, love is between people. It's between minds. As I say, that coconut tree with its three coconuts hanging there, you have a difficulty expressing an affection for. It has some difficulty expressing it back! To say, "it's nice to have you on our island!" It's absurd. Love is based on two or more minds interacting, isn't it? Saying, what do you think about something? There's sort of a joy of association there, having a different person to communicate and share or even write to or whatever. This is what it's about. A caring and sharing and enjoying fellowship.

The opposite of love is a hermit who decides I'm fed up with all of it. I don't like any of them! He's given up on everyone. Wants nothing to do with anybody. He never hopes to see another human being. And there are people who get so hurt, so upset from various circumstances — some their own fault and some not — that they get to the point where they don't want any fellowship, any caring or receiving care, any communication. They say, in effect, I only trust me. The rest of you guys I don't trust and I want nothing to do with you, I don't want to see you. That's the opposite of what God wanted to be. He didn't want to be a hermit. He didn't want to sit off there by Himself. "There's just the two of us, but at least we can trust each other." No, He said, let's bring other people into this group. Let's make it a little bit bigger. He even told Adam and Eve to be fruitful and multiply. Look, we want many people. Paul said He was trying to bring many sons to glory. It's part of the whole plan.

Lonesomeness, on the other hand, is becoming epidemic in our society. It's becoming such an enormous problem in our society. And it's interesting that the farther we go from God's law, the farther we go from love and companionship. God's law is called the law of love. The farther we get away from that, the more lonesome people feel, regardless of the size of the crowd they are in. It's surprising that now that people have multiplied on the earth and there's hardly any place on the earth where you can go and get away. It's striking coming back to the United States that you've got wall-to-wall city here. Where do you grow food? It just seems to me wall-to-wall city. It's strange that in all of that lonesomeness is becoming epidemic. A need for love and companionship. Doctors and psychologists know that few come to them and say, "You know, doc, the real problem is, I am lonely." They know that, they understand that. They say, life is boring. I just feel unhappy, I don't know why, but I'm unhappy all the time. I just feel off. Or they'll say, I've been drinking too much, I'm overweight — I've been fighting it and I'm struggling along, I can't sleep, I'm irritable, and I feel basically unfulfilled — would be the bottom line somewhere in all that.

Other signs, medical people find, would be people that brag a lot. I do this and I do that and the other, a fair lot of talking about themselves. That they talk too much or too loud or shoot off some way. Others come in quite quiet, timid, seemingly fearful. But one sign for sure of all those different ones, regardless of the particular problems involved, is discouragement. It's something everybody faces, and it seems to be the sign of our age. And for the church, brethren, it's one of the most effective tools the Adversary has. He can't deceive us on doctrine; at least it says he can't deceive the very elect. Some are pulled off on doctrine, but basically it's not doctrine that causes people to drop out. The easier way is to make you feel you can't make it. That it's too tough, the standard's too high,

there's no way you can perform. Discouragement is his number one tool, I think, against the Church of God. In that discouragement is a terrific lonesomeness. You feel you are alone against the whole world and nobody is out there pulling on your team. And when you're down, who's going to help out? It is a terrible problem and it is a problem that everybody faces — single, married, otherwise. One preacher once said that the happiest people in the world are married people. And then he said, "And the most miserable people in the world are married people." I think that's true. There's nothing worse than a bad marriage.

But few people would say, I'm just a frail human being and I am lonely. My daughter said, "It's strange. People sing about it. It's in all the songs or a large portion of them. But they don't talk about it." The song writers seem to be able to hit it on the head and express it. The lonely feel depressed, miserable, have a very heavy heart, but they don't know what to do about it. It's just there. Because it's not generally recognized what the real problem is, it's impossible then to find a solution. And people do the wrong thing, take the wrong solution. First they do, generally speaking, is give up on people. They say they can't trust them, open up to them, share, and they draw up inwardly — whether they are still showing pizzazz outside or not. They become self-obsessed. As you start drawing away from others, all there is is yourself. And that's all they have to think about. They use their symptoms then for a reason not to fellowship. They say, I'm so depressed, who'd want to be around me? So they don't go around anybody. The symptom becomes the reason for not solving the problem. The person goes downhill — who'd want to be in my company? Poor me. Worse, they become addicted to props. There are props you can put under yourself to hold yourself up. Chemical usually: booze or even drugs. As if they are saying, look, I'm so lonesome I'm just going to stay in oblivion. I'm going to hide behind this chemical stuff. I don't want to face my problems, people, or me. Almost all the doctors now know: chemically addicted people are lonely. That's the real cause.

People become addicted to other things: perhaps their work. You find people who never go home. It's not that they have so much work; they are avoiding situations. It makes them feel needed and gives a certain joy, but really it's an escape — becoming addicted to things because they've given up on people. Or they become addicted to their house, maybe a hobby — and they're always there rather than with people, rather than at socials. They might become addicted to an animal — I can only trust Fido, man's best friend (because he never says a word). They get all wrapped up in non-human company because human company has become so painful and distressing.

Then come the real problems if it's not checked and stopped. There's a constant anger that can build underneath, a constant frustration that keeps boiling and the blood pressure begins to rise. Or anger disguised as depression. Such constant frustration leads to serious problems such as mental breakdown, irrational behavior, physical illness, alcoholism, drugs, and eventually suicide. "I am so lonesome, nobody cares about me, nobody thinks about me, and this whole earth is too tough to face by myself. If I can just bow out." Emotional psychologists today say that lonesomeness is probably the number one problem of our age. Interesting when you consider that God's plan had in mind the exact opposite. And God's way leads exactly away from it.

How do you begin to solve the problem? It's easier to have a little glass of wine at home alone — sit there alone and have dream of grandeur. You must consider the feelings of the other person who also has his lonesomeness, problems, life story, and defenses to contend with. And that's one of the commonest signs of lonely people: they tend to lack an awareness of other people's problems. Because of the situations they find themselves in — and not necessarily their own fault — they become self-conscious and self-obsessed. The way to solve it would be to nurture other people's lonesomeness. Nurture other people's feelings. You generally find that when you become involved with one group, they complain about another group — I don't care which group is which. The group becomes wrapped up in themselves, their obsessions, which is very difficult not to do in our society. They are too busy nurturing themselves. That's the basic key. It's also basic Christianity.

Take a look at Matt. 5:3. A part of God's beginning plan. He says, "*Blessed are the poor in*

*spirit.*” Their own view of themselves is low. *“For theirs is the kingdom of heaven.”* Those are the ones we want, Christ is saying, in the kingdom of heaven. *“Blessed are they that mourn.”* Does it mean, mourn for themselves? No, it means those who look out at the world and see the difficulties there, and they mourn for others. They see their needs, their hardships, and they can translate that out empathetically to other people’s needs. Occasionally we all have to mourn for ourselves when we see certain situations we get into, problems, our own stupidity and sins. But the basic point He is talking about are those who mourn for the whole society, with the world the way it is going, with the individuals in it, the people in hardships. And they feel for them, they mourn. They actually mourn — grieve for them. *“For they shall be comforted.”* It’s going to come right. It’s going to be fixed. *“Blessed are the meek.”* The ones who are willing to think that somebody else can teach me something. The ones willing to drink in of other people’s ideas, feelings, to listen to their stories rather than always wanting to tell their own. *“For they shall inherit the earth.”* Those are the people we want governing. *“Blessed are those who hunger and thirst after righteousness.”* For the right way — that way of give — that pleases God. That makes you pleasing to God and a person He wants to have around. *“For they shall be filled.”* They will be filled with righteousness, and they will completely under all circumstances go the right way. And I frankly can hardly wait till I do everything right. I get so tired of doing things wrong. As a human you can only take in so many things, you can only look on the outward, you have this nature that keeps going the wrong way and sometimes you go right along with it. In fact, far too often.

*“Blessed are the merciful.”* Does it mean merciful to yourself? When you look at it that way, remember Judah, when he was trapped — Tamar had outwitted him, she’d played the role of a harlot, took his ring. Soon as he found out that his daughter Tamar was with child and her uncle wasn’t around, he says “Let her be burned!” She said, “The father is the guy that had these,” and she handed back his bracelet and staff. All of a sudden burning didn’t seem so important. He was merciful to himself. With our faults we say, well, we can forget that. I’m trying. With the other guy, I know his attitude is rotten. We tend to be merciful to ourselves and unmerciful to other people. This is the exact opposite of the way God wants us to be.

*“Blessed are the pure in heart for they shall see God.”* They have an open desire, aren’t deceitful, deal with others openly and are concerned with their welfare. They are pure in their motives and desires.

*“Blessed are the peacemakers.”* The ones who make peace rather than war. Sometimes you have to talk straight, privately to your brother alone: “I can’t understand what you are doing there.” The one who gets the problems out. Because the Kingdom of God is going to be problemless. There are going to be people who don’t make problems, and they get them out when they do come up. We are not going to have somebody forever complaining about the food. Complaining about whatever is not going to be around forever. When you have a peaceful attitude, a cooperating one, almost any system will produce — a lot more than when there is a constant pulling and tugging. The boss says, here’s how we’re going to do it, and everybody cooperates. That’s peacemaking. For they shall be called the children of God. Because they are going to be born into that family.

In I Cor. 13 He talks about love. It’s a matter of the outgoing concern. Verse 4: *“Charity suffers long.”* It puts up with difficulties. It’s willing to make peace. And it’s kind. It doesn’t mean kind to self, it means kind to others around. It doesn’t envy or vaunt itself. It doesn’t get puffed up or behaveth itself unseemly. It doesn’t have irrational behavior. Does not seek its own — own rule, ideas, wants, welfare. Is not easily provoked (although sometimes God does become provoked). Thinks no evil — looks for the best, trying to look for the good. Rejoices not in iniquity — doesn’t really enjoy finding somebody is in trouble, but rejoices in the truth. Bears all things. Believes all things. Has a positive outlook. May even be called a little naive now and then. Hopes all things, is enthusiastic and supporting. Endures all things. The doctors have found in group sessions that the loneliest people never nurture others — never consider the other person’s feelings. They insist that they have their fair share of time. They get their watch out and say, well his time’s up, it’s my turn. It doesn’t matter that the guy might be coming to a great point of interest or coming over some threshold that would be beneficial to him at this particular time — it’s my time now. When others are speaking, they don’t listen. They’re self obsessed and maybe a little critical too. Christ said in Matthew 6 that if we forgive others their sins; He

forgives us too. And so we need to do that. Even carnal doctors come up with the idea that people need to learn to share. They saw the fruits of the other way. They said, let's look around and see someone else who is lonely and try to help them. Not gauchely: "Are you lonely?" Standing there cow-eyed. No, not that. Look around at those whom you come into contact and begin to perceive their lonesomeness and fasten your mind there. 99.9 percent of the people, if it's done in the right way, will respond. They'll respond with a friendship because most people are dying for friendship. It's a very real friend.

A wise man said if you're lucky, you'll be able in a lifetime to have as many close friends as the fingers on one hand. It's a rare thing to have a close friend. If you are able to be one, then you're going to have far more. So the doctors suggest that you develop a skill, do it and share it with somebody. Whatever it might be: tennis, racquetball, sewing, or just walking along the beach. I like walking along the beach, you want to come with me? No pressure. We're just going to do something. We're not going to sit at home and rusticate peacefully in the rocking chair. If you do that, you're asking for a babysitter. After your 40 something, then relax over a cup of tea or something.

Learn to nurture others. That's biblical love. It's an outgoing concern. It is exactly what God wants. He says that love is keeping the commandments, and one of the commandments is "*Honor your father and your mother.*" One of the problems they've found with lonesomeness is the difficulty with families disintegrating. This is especially true for those in a college environment. Most homes now are like a motel where you hang your hat except that you don't wear a hat. Pass through, have a meal, go separate ways. Other people in your family are lonely. You can be sure of that. They would appreciate things. The kids are out with their peer group, doing absolutely nothing. They don't think they are lonely but they are. They're lonely sitting right in the middle of a bunch of kids. They think they won't be lonely having all these people around. It doesn't work that way. It's an awful shock to find out these kids don't really like me. Close families where they talk and do outings and sports and share the family experience. There's never a lonesome person in the middle of a close family. Everybody in a close family feels accepted. Malachi says we are supposed to turn the hearts of the fathers to the children and the children to the fathers. Help society by building a close family. God's law deals with the whole family. It doesn't mean just father and mother — the whole family, aunts, uncles, cousins, the whole neighbors really. When's the last time your family had a family reunion? Wouldn't it be something for Church of God people who understand the commandment and the need for community God's trying to build, to put it together? You'll find them all dragging their feet: "Aw, I don't want to see Uncle Willy!" Shouldn't we be the ones suggesting it, because we understand the need for it more than anybody else. And we understand what the lack of it is doing in our society. Nurturing others is the key to solving lonesomeness. And it's based on God's law right from the beginning.

I remember my college days in Pasadena. The strings in me used to get so uptight, sometimes tighter than others. They all get extremely tight and all play high C. All of them! The problems and tensions and stresses start to get to you. I had a technique that worked. I'd pray about the problems of the guys in the dorm, and wouldn't bring up one of mine. Before you know it, my problems didn't disappear, but they did seem more manageable. Able to control. Not over my head as they did before. One of our greatest needs as human beings is to be understood by other human beings. To be able to share in an open way. We all have deep problems right down there that hurt us. We all have hopes and dreams and apprehensions. We feel we're not getting a fair shake out of life. To have another human being you admire, love, have confidence in because it was built over a period of time — friendship takes time (there's no set time), that you can share your feelings with. I'm always struck by Job. His three friends came for seven days and they so grief-struck for what had befallen Job that they sat there for seven days and never said a word. Their sympathetic feeling was so great. They thought, I'll just sit there beside him. They made one mistake: at the end of seven days they began to talk to him. They began to preach at him. It was the last thing Job needed. Then Job thought, Oh no! Now my friends are against me as well. His wife gave him the encouraging news: Curse God and die! You're right at the bottom when you're there. Now they're blaming me for things I didn't do. His friends were coming across with simplistic answers, not the right story. Well, you must be a bad guy really underneath it all. They lost their charity. When they said nothing, they were spectacular friends. The solution isn't to hunt for a good friend. It's to be like that. They'll seek you out.

There is one person who is always available whom we all know and is always a friend. There does come a time when you have to stand alone. That's the Father. Take a look at Psalm 73. That great Being who initiated the plan. Who said let's have more people in this! The One who sent Christ to do the things He was sent to do: creating. Some assignment: I want you to go down there and build Adam.

The ultimate sharing is with the Father. David understood this because he was after God's own heart. Notice in verse 23. The beginning of the Psalm shows all the problems. David was discouraged and down. "Nevertheless I am continually with you." Sometimes you feel you're not. "You have held me by your right hand. You shall guide me with your counsel and afterward receive me to glory. Who have I in heaven but you?" He was talking to Christ. There was nobody else he could trust or share with. This one being he had come to know since a lad. He had a close relationship with Him. No matter what problems happened — and David had problems — I'm a David's life reader — "and there's none upon earth that I desire besides you." There's nobody on earth who's going to come close to the relationship with the Father because people are people, very fallible. "My flesh and my heart fail but God's the strength of my life and my portion forever." He's the one who strengthens me. "For lo, they that are far from you shall perish." His purpose was to bring those close to Him and give them life. Christ said, "I have come that they might have life and have it more abundantly." Those that are far from Him are going to perish.

Ps. 27:8: I read this psalm when I'm discouraged. Verse 1 and 2 are spectacular for discouragement. "When you said seek my face, my heart said unto you, your face LORD will I seek." You bet, okay, that's what I'm going to do. Part of the Christian life has to be somewhere down the line standing alone. You have to face that. Look at whoever you like in the Bible. They had to come to the place where they said, "everybody's left me." And here I am. If your outlook is that God is first, other people who have that outlook are going to be close to you. You are going to appreciate them more and more. He says preferring the brethren — there will be a closeness among those who are called out. Imagine the single people who are not in the church, don't have the fellowship. They have the difficulties, enormous problems and they're just totally alone in this society where nobody is their friend. Fellowship with God's people is the whole point. That's the point of I John. If we are following God and are close to Him, we are going to enjoy each other. We are going to fellowship with each other and we are going to be together. And appreciate each other.

I want you to notice something in Lev. 26. It's astounding to me. We tend to think of the part where He says what's going to happen if you don't keep the law. But in the early part, He says, if you keep My commandments, here's all the physical blessings coming. Notice in verse 11 one blessing that is certainly not physical. "And I will set my tabernacle among you, and my soul will not abhor you." Here will be a community of people who will accept God's rule and all the blessings that will come from that. And He said, I want to dwell right there with them. I want to see them going right down the streets, into the shops. In their weddings and socials — in all the things they do — I want to be there. "I will walk among you and be your God and you shall be my people." And then He blesses as only He can do with His presence. Blessing every single activity when those people are following His way.

It's so pleasant to be together and to fellowship. We need fellowship, brethren. Don't allow the single life to make you a separate entity, off by itself. You are part of the body that is growing — the group to be brought into sharing eternity with God. I'd let everybody know by your presence. I learned in Spokesman Club there are 3 P's to get involved with before any activity: prayer, preparation, and participation. Let them know that you are here and involved. Let them know: I'm in!!

Those Nigerian fellows didn't know God but the pleasant fellowship there was certainly a start in the right way. I hope you see the need for godly fellowship, being able to be a part and not get off separate, because the whole part of God's plan was to have other beings, diverse, a community of people who always have the Father on top, always respect Him above all, who respect each other and build such a pleasantness in their association that God says, I want to dwell with them forever and make them a part of me, dwell in my land, share with me. I want them around to joy and fellowship.



## APPENDIX 7

### **ETIQUETTE IN EVERY DAY LIFE**

Bill Butler  
9-Feb-1980

*Definition of etiquette — practical rules and approaches to social customs that when used in everyday life will demonstrate true love and consideration. They're not just a set of rules or a list of do's and don't's. They are actually a skill — a skill that will help you show respect to all people under all circumstances.*

Scriptures:

**I Peter 3:8** (RSV) *"Finally, be ye all of one mind, having compassion one on another. Love as brethren, be pitiful, be courteous."*

**I Cor. 13:5** *"Doth not behave itself unseemly, seeketh not her own is not easily provoked, thinketh no evil."*

**Matt. 7:12** *"Therefore all things whatsoever ye would that men should do to you, do ye even so to them: for this is the law and the prophets."*

**Dan. 1:4** *"Children in whom was no blemish, but well favoured, and skillful in all wisdom, and cunning in knowledge, and understanding science, and such as had ability in them to stand in the king's palace, and whom they might teach the learning and the tongue of the Chaldeans."*

#### **I. ETIQUETTE AMONG ROOMMATES**

- A. You spend a lot of time with roommates — charity begins at home..
- B. Pick the right roommates — a good friend is the best way to go as opposed to someone you hardly know.
- C. Good fences make good neighbors — put certain things in writing. Not a legal document. Not something you'll shake in his or her face later, but the shortest pencil is longer than the longest memory.
- D. Recommend that you choose a roommate who is in the Church.
  1. Psa. 133:1
  2. Gal. 6:10
- E. Don't overcrowd an apartment
  1. *Privacy is a problem.*
  2. *Prayer & Bible Study often suffer.*
  3. *More people and a crowded situation causes more friction, annoyances and misunderstandings.*
- F. Neatness and Cleanliness of Your Apartment
  1. *Principle of command to Adam & Eve to dress and keep the garden.*
  2. I Cor. 14:40
  3. John 20:7 *Example of Christ leaving the tomb neat and orderly.*
  4. *Consideration in cleaning up after yourself — the bathroom, dishes, cleaning the broiler or oven if you make a mess, etc..*
  5. *Learn to care for what you have now or how will you care for a city with gold streets? Rev. 21*

## G. Noise

1. *Each person should if possible have his own room.*
2. *Important to control noise because of people praying or studying.*
3. *Respect roommate on Sabbath as far as noise (radio, stereo, t.v.) etc.*
4. *Respect for people who are trying to sleep.*

## H. Paying Bills on Time

1. *Prov. 22:1*
2. *Be responsible for paying your bills promptly.*
3. *Have the right priorities in how you spend your money. Meet your obligations first.*
4. *Being roommates is also a business arrangement.*
5. *Don't abuse friendships.*

## I. Borrowing

1. *Don't borrow without asking first.*
2. *Keep borrowing to a minimum.*
3. *Don't become a "moocher."*
4. *Temporary roommates who stay with people when they're new in town and looking for a job etc. become extended, extended guests. Watch taking advantage of people in this way.*

## J. Communication

1. *Roommate situation is one of the closest relationships before marriage — if you have consistent and multiple problems communicating with roommates, how do you think you'll communicate in marriage.*
2. *Talk over major plans that involve the use of the apartment — parties, entertaining, major decorating, etc..*

**II. DRIVING ETIQUETTE**

- A. Driving carefully & obeying laws.
- B. Responsible for upkeep on your car — poorly maintained vehicle can cause accidents and you are responsible — principle of Ex. 21:28.
- C. Loaning your car — you are responsible in whether you loan the car to a responsible person. Mechanical condition becomes even more important.
- D. If you borrow a car, think about whose responsibility when a car is loaned if there are mechanical problems repairs, etc.
- E. If at all possible, avoid borrowing such an expensive and powerful item as a car.
- F. Keep your car clean — same principles as your apartment.
- G. Matt. 5:16
- H. Use of horn — for a warning only. Don't use it to yell at people or to show your disrespect; many times have a tendency to become impatient with older slower people, Lev. 19:32.
- I. Be considerate of your passengers
  1. *Slower starts and stops*
  2. *Don't take risks or chances*
  3. *Too much air from windows, cold air conditioning, too hot from heater, etc.*
  4. *Noise in car — radio, stereo, rear speakers, etc.*
- J. Passenger should take care of the driver's car; spilling things, etc. Consider driver's preference first in areas of noise — he's responsible for the lives of everyone and must be able to concentrate on what he is doing.

**III. PROMPTNESS**

- A. Part of character and your reputation to be on time.
- B. Promptness at work — morning, lunch, breaks, etc..
- C. Being too early can be almost worse than being late especially in a dinner guest situation.
- D. Multi-million dollar contracts have been lost because of a salesman who was late.

**IV. ETIQUETTE ON THE JOB**

- A. Social life is intricately involved with your job.
- B. The person with an active social life often lets it infringe on his or her performance at work.
- C. You need to be on your job in full capacity — you have contracted with your boss to provide him your full services for 8 hours each day and your social life should not infringe on that. (Example of the secretary who saw Star Wars 5 times))
- D. Build a buffer around your times at work — be 5 minutes early, leave 5 minutes late, etc..
- E. Dress appropriately on your job.

**V. HOSPITALITY**

- A. Important principle of the Bible
- B. Rom 12:13 (Living Bible)
- C. I Pet. 4:9 (Living Bible)
- D. Being friendly and approachable.

**VI. BEING THANKFUL**

- A. Luke 17:11 Only one of the lepers returned to Christ to thank Him for healing him.
- B. Importance of saying thank you and please.

**VII. REACHING OUT**

- A. "Wisdom is the art of knowing what to overlook."
- B. Reach out to a person with your good manners, not expecting him to render the good manners to you first.
- C. It's a matter of giving — helping someone else feel respected etc.
- D. Satan's approach is just the opposite.

#####

Lyrics of the Song "Someone is Looking for Someone Like You"

**SOMEONE IS LOOKING FOR SOMEONE LIKE YOU***Composed and sung by Gail Davies*

You say that nobody cares where you're goin'  
 And that your life don't mean nothin' at all.  
 You've heard the sayin' you reap what you're sowin'  
 So plant a good seed and watch it grow tall.

CHORUS:

Somewhere a man's got no woman to turn to;  
 Somewhere a woman is lonely and blue.  
 Somewhere a child's got no mamma to hold her.  
 Someone is looking for someone like you.

You say there's no road that you'd care to travel,  
 Nothin' to say that ain't been said before,  
 And life's a myst'ry that you can't unravel;  
 Well, there's a key that will open that door.

(CHORUS:)

Think of all the time you waste complainin',  
 Think of all the good that could be done.  
 Think of all the friends you could be gainin'  
 If you lift your hand to help someone.

You say that nobody cares where you're goin', etc.

(CHORUS:)